



Manual for FOMA® D701i '05.9



Quick Search/
Contents/Cautions

Before Using D701i

Making/
Receiving Calls

Video-phone Calls

Phonebook

Sounds/Displays/Lights

Safety Settings

Camera

i-mode/i-motion

Mail

i- ppli

i-channel

Data Management

Other Convenient
Functions

Network Services

Data Communication

Character Entry

Appendix/Data Interchange/
Troubleshooting

INDEX/
Quick Reference



To owners of FOMA D701i,

NOTICE OF CORRECTION

Inaccurate information has been found in the manual for FOMA D701i. We apologize for any inconvenience this may have caused and ask you to refer to the following revised information when using your phone.

Page	Previous	Corrected
P415	(Step 2 in "Installing FOMA PC configuration software") 2 Click スタート and ファイル名を指定して実行. Enter "<CD-ROM drive letter>: ¥FOMA_PCSET¥SETUP.EXE" in 名前 and click OK.	 2 Click スタート and ファイル名を指定して実行. Enter "<CD-ROM drive letter>: ¥FOMA_PCSET¥ <u>CD-ROM版</u> ¥FOMA_PCSET¥setup.exe" in 名前 and click OK. Note: Enter "CD-ROM版" in two-byte and others in one-byte.

860D183A

DoCoMo W-CDMA System

Thank you for selecting the FOMA D701i.

Carefully read this manual, as well as the individual manuals for other devices such as the battery pack, before using your FOMA D701i, and consult the corresponding manuals while using the phone so that you are able to use it correctly and effectively. If you are unclear as to any point indicated in any of these manuals, contact the DoCoMo Information Center that is listed on the back of this manual.

Your FOMA D701i is a valuable asset. Handle it with care and it will be your trusted partner for years to come.

Before using your FOMA terminal

The FOMA terminal is cordless so you may not be able to use it in certain locations where signals cannot penetrate, such as in tunnels, underground, in some buildings or outdoors if the signal is weak or you are outside the service area. You also may not be able to use your FOMA terminal on the upper floors of some highrise building, even though there is nothing around you that interferes with the signal. Please note that your call may be disconnected even when the signal is strong (when the signal strength indication shows three bars) and you are not moving. When using the FOMA terminal in public, busy or quiet places, be careful not to disturb others. Since the FOMA terminal relies on radio transmission, it is theoretically possible for third parties to intercept a call; however, because the W-CDMA system automatically employs a secrecy function for all calls, a third party will pick up nothing but signal noise. Since the FOMA terminal operates by the wireless transmission of voices converted to digital signals, if you are in a location where the signal is weak, the original voice may not be accurately reproduced from the received digital signal, therefore, the voice you hear may differ from the original sound of the speaker's voice.

DoCoMo asks that you keep a separate record (e.g. written copy) of all information you store in your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any loss that occurs should the contents of the FOMA terminal's memory be lost or altered.

The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be responsible for any such damage or loss.

Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Betruusted Japan Co., Ltd., GeoTrust Japan, inc.

The FOMA terminal can be used in the FOMA Plus-Area.

The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.

Using a FOMA terminal for the first time

When you use a FOMA terminal for the first time, read this manual in the following order. You can understand the preparations for using the FOMA terminal and its basic operations.

1. Install the battery pack and charge it. ◀P42
2. Turn the power on and make initial settings, and then confirm your phone number. ◀P47, P50
3. Understand the functions of keys on the terminal. ◀P26
4. Understand the meaning of icons displayed on the screen. ◀P29, P31
5. Understand how to use the menus. ◀P33
6. Understand how to make and receive calls. ◀P52, P62

In the manual for FOMA D701i, the FOMA D701i is usually referred to as "FOMA terminal".

This manual explains functions performed with a miniSD memory card. A miniSD memory card is required separately.

Before using the miniSD memory card ◀P328

Unauthorized copying of a part or all of the contents of this manual is prohibited.

The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

How to use and refer to this manual

How to refer to this manual

You can look for functions or operation procedures that you want to know using various searching ways.

Refer to INDEX

P504

Search for a function name or service name.

Use Quick Search

P4

Search for frequently-used or useful functions using easy-to-understand words.

Use Front Cover Indexes

Front Cover

Search by turning over the pages on this manual using the front cover indexes.

[For details, see the next page.](#)

Use Contents

P6

Refer to the Contents classified into chapters on an objective basis.

Refer to Features

P8

Search for the features using typical or new functions of D701i.

Use Menu List

P452

Search using the menu of D701i.




Use Quick Reference Manual


P508

This manual describes how to operate frequently-used functions. Use it by separating from this Instruction Manual.

Explanatory procedure

The operation procedure is mainly explained in shortcut operations. When there are two or more possible procedures, the simplest one is mentioned.

In this manual, to select an item by placing the cursor with  (Easy Selector Plus) and pressing  (Enter key) is referred to as "select". Also, the step of pressing  which requires after entering characters in the entry field is omitted in description.

The procedure for entering characters is mainly explained by in-line entry (direct insertion of text into the entry field).  P442

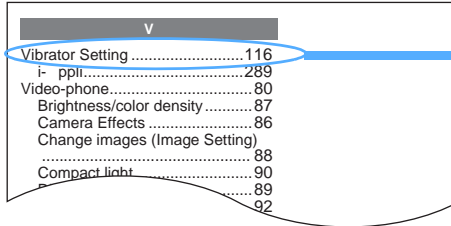
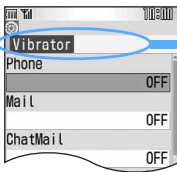


How to use and refer to this manual

Shown below is an example when you search for the page where “Vibrator Setting” is described.

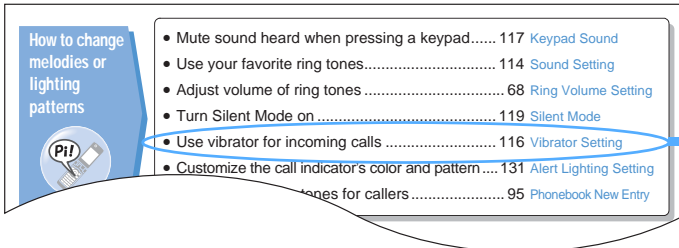
Searching on INDEX

Use INDEX if you have already known a function or service name.



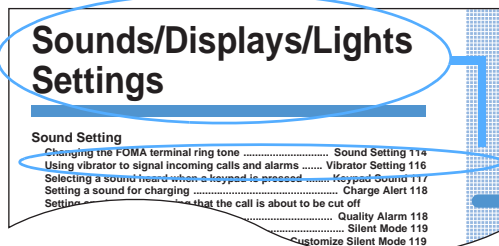
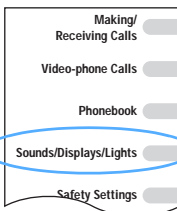
Using Quick Search

You can easily search for frequently-used or useful functions.



Using Front Cover Indexes

You can find a target page by proceeding from the front cover to the cover of a chapter (1st page of the chapter) and the page where a function is described.



Using vibrator to signal incoming calls and alarms

Vibrator Setting

The reception of voice or video-phone call, mail, Message R/F, etc. or the schedule alarm notice is indicated by vibration.

- Note that if FOMA terminal is placed on a desk, etc. with Vibrator Setting on, the vibrations of the vibrator operation may cause it to fall off.
- The settings in this function are reflected to the vibrator set in Incoming Call Setting, Video-phone Receiving Setting, Incoming Msg. Setting, Incoming Chat Mail Setting and Incoming Msg. Alert.

Default | OFF (all)

- 1** Press [Menu] [8 7/7] [1 2] [7 5/5] on the stand-by display.
- 2** Select the item to set.
 - If the incoming setting for Incoming Chat Mail Setting is set to *Same : Msg setting ChatMail* cannot be selected.
 - As for a schedule alarm, the terminal vibrates as set in the *Phone* setting.
- 3** Press [1 2] [5 4/4].

Pattern A : Vibrates as follows: 0.5 second vibration 0.5 second pause 0.5 second


Preventing making/receiving calls

Menu 894
Self Mode

Disable all functions that require communications such as making or receiving calls or sending or receiving mails. Infrared data communication and infrared remote control are also disabled.

When a calendar is set

Dot



The days-off and holidays are displayed in red. The settings for the days-off and holidays follow Day Off Setting or the setting for holidays for Scheduler. Note that when Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access set for Schedule*) or PIM Lock is on, the day set as day-off in Day Off Setting is not displayed in red and reset to the default display.

When a schedule is set, a dot is displayed on the upper right of the date. Note that all schedules with Secret Attribute set are displayed only when Secret Mode is on. In addition, they are not displayed when Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access set for Schedule*) or PIM Lock is on.

The day is displayed in yellow.

INFORMATION

If the date and time have not been set, the calendar is not displayed on the stand-by display.

When the calendar is set for the stand-by display, the clock is displayed small on the upper part. Even when the clock design is set to *Analog* in Clock Display Format, the clock is displayed by *Digital 1*.

An image and a calendar can be set simultaneously. However, if an animation, Create animation or Flash movie is set, the calendar is displayed when the playback is stopped or paused.

Sounds/Display/Lights Settings

Title & Function name:
Function names are listed on INDEX.

Functional overview and notes for operation

Default setting

Operation procedure

Supplement to operation

Shortcut operation
P34

Column:
Useful information

INFORMATION:
Details of functions

Index

INFORMATION

The page shown above is an example. It may be different from the actual page.

The images or illustrations provided in this manual are for information purposes only and may be different from the actual displays or products.

Some screens do not support the bilingual function and items or buttons may be displayed in Japanese. In this manual, these Japanese words are written by both in Japanese and English only for the first time in a chapter or a section.

Quick Search

Use this Quick Search to look for the frequently-used or convenient functions directly.

Useful functions for phone calls



- Notify/not notify your phone number..... 50 [Caller ID Notification](#)
- Talk facing your phone 81 [Speakerphone function](#)
- Adjust volume of caller's voice 68 [Volume Setting](#)
- Put the current call on hold..... 53 [On-hold](#)
- Switch to video-phone call during voice call 55 [Switch to video-phone](#)

When unable to answer an incoming call



- Record caller's messages 75 [Answer Machine](#)
- Use Voice Mail Service..... 398 [Voice Mail](#)
- Put the incoming call on hold..... 71 [Response and Hold](#)

How to change melodies or lighting patterns



- Mute sound heard when pressing a keypad..... 117 [Keypad Sound](#)
- Use your favorite ring tones..... 114 [Sound Setting](#)
- Adjust volume of ring tones 68 [Ring Volume Setting](#)
- Turn Silent Mode on 119 [Silent Mode](#)
- Use vibrator for incoming calls 116 [Vibrator Setting](#)
- Customize the call indicator's color and pattern 131 [Alert Lighting Setting](#)
- Use personal ring tones for callers 95 [Phonebook New Entry](#)

How to change the screen display



- Customize the stand-by display (wallpaper)..... 120 [Stand-by Display Setting](#)
- Show the calendar on the stand-by display 122 [Stand-by calendar](#)
- Adjust the date & time 48 [Date and Time Setting](#)
- Change the size of characters..... 133 [Font](#)
- Learn the meaning of icons on the screen 29 [Reading display](#)



Advanced functions for mail



- Send your original Deco-mail 223 [Deco-mail](#)
- Send images with mail..... 229 [Attachment](#)
- Sort and save mail automatically..... 258 [Sort Criteria](#)

Advanced functions for camera



- Change the size of image to shoot..... 165 [Image size](#)
- Change the shutter sound 165 [Shutter sound](#)
- Turn the compact light on when shooting..... 160 [Compact light](#)
- Save data into the miniSD memory card 165 [Save to](#)
- Display saved images..... 306 [My Picture](#)

Settings for your phone safety



- Keep your phonebook data secret..... 110 [Secret Attribute](#)
- Reject calls without caller ID..... 150 [Anonymous Caller](#)
- Reject callers not registered in your phonebook ... 152 [Reject non-Reg. Caller](#)
- Lock your phone when you don't carry it..... 141 [Remote Lock](#)
- Disable the key operation 147 [Side Key Lock](#)

Other useful functions



- Call up function menus simply..... 35 [Shortcut operations](#)
- Use your phone as a calculator 387 [Calculator](#)
- Read a QR code or barcode..... 172 [Bar Code Reader](#)
- Send/receive data via infrared communication..... 345 [Infrared communication](#)
- Use your phone as an alarm clock 365 [Alarm Clock](#)
- Use the miniSD memory card..... 328 [miniSD memory card](#)

Contents

Before using your FOMA terminal	Inside front cover
Using a FOMA terminal for the first time ...	Inside front cover
How to use and refer to this manual	1
Quick Search.....	4
Features of FOMA D701i	8
Making full use of D701i.....	10
SAFETY PRECAUTIONS (Always follow these directions)....	12
Handling instructions	19
About intellectual property rights	21
Basic package and optional accessories	23

Before Using D701i

25

Names and functions of parts Reading the display Reading the sub-display
Menu selection Using UIM (FOMA card) Attaching/removing battery pack
Charging Battery Level Power ON/OFF Select Language Date and Time Setting
Caller ID Notification Own Number etc.

Making/Receiving Calls

51

Making calls Redial 186/184 Call WORLD CALL Receiving calls Any Key Answer
Open Answer Close Setting Received Calls Volume Setting Ring Volume Setting
Response and Hold Driving Mode Answer Machine etc.

Making/Receiving Video-phone Calls

79

Making video-phone calls Receiving video-phone calls Setting images to send
Customizing video-phone call display Video-phone Settings etc.

Phonebook

93

Phonebook New Entry Group Setting Phonebook Search Edit Phonebook
Delete Phonebook Secret Attribute Quick Dial etc.

Sounds/Displays/Lights Settings

113

Sound Setting Vibrator Setting Silent Mode Stand-by Display Setting
Mail/Call Image Setting Sub-display Info Setting Alert Lighting Setting
Clock Display Format etc.

Safety Settings

135

Security Code Change Terminal Security Code PIN code All Lock Remote Lock
Self Mode PIM Lock Keypad Dial Lock Privacy Mode Setting
Side Key Lock Lock on Close Secret Mode etc.

Camera

155

Still Camera Movie Camera Setting for shooting Bar Code Reader etc.

i-mode/i-motion

175

What's i-mode? Site display Change i-mode Password Internet Connection
Bookmark Screen Memo Save Image i-melody i-mode Setting
Message R/F Certificate i-motion Downloading i-motion i-motion Setting etc.

Mail 213

Composing and sending i-mode Mail Deco-mail Attachment Saving i-mode Mail
 Receiving i-mode Mail Check i-mode Message i-motion Mail Display/Save Image
 Play/Save Melody Mail Setting Chat Mail Composing and sending SMS etc.

i- ppli 281

Download Starting i- ppli i- ppli To function i- ppli Stand-by Display etc.

i-channel 301

i-channel Displaying i-channel Stand-by Telop Setting

Displaying/Editing/Managing Data 305

Displaying/Editing images Playing/Editing video/i-motion Playing melody
 miniSD memory card Managing data Infrared communication
 Sound Recorder etc.

Other Convenient Functions 359

Multiaccess Multitask Auto Power ON/OFF Alarm Clock
 Scheduler Custom Menu Own Number Call Duration/Call Cost
 Reset Call Coast Call Cost Limit Calculator Notepad
 Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch Reset Delete All Data etc.

Network Services 397

Voice Mail Call Waiting Call Forwarding Nuisance Call Blocking
 Caller ID Request Dual Network English Guidance Service Dialing Number
 Arrival Call Act Remote Control etc.

Data Communication 409

Data communication Connecting PC Installing communication configuration file
 Using FOMA PC configuration software AT command etc.

Character Entry 441

Entering characters 5-touch Input Method Save Phrase Copy Character
 KUTEN Code Input Save Word Slot Input Method Input Method Setting

Appendix/Data Interchange/Troubleshooting 451

Menu list List of dial keys and character assignments Play Sound
 Troubleshooting Error Message Warranty and After-Sales Service
 Software Update Virus Scan Function etc.

INDEX/Quick Reference Manual 503

INDEX Quick Reference Manual

Features of FOMA D701i

FOMA is the name of a set of services provided by DoCoMo based on W-CDMA, which is recognized as one of the systems compliant to the global standard for third generation mobile communications (IMT-2000).

It's amazing because it's i-mode!

i-mode is an online service used with i-mode terminals. This service supports connection to i-mode Sites (Programs) or i-mode compatible Internet web sites that provide a variety of useful information and allows you to exchange i-mode Mail.

i-motion

Video/sound can be downloaded from sites to enjoy them. i-motion obtained can be set to a ring tone or incoming image (Movie ringtone). ●P210

i-motion Mail

Video taken with the built-in camera or i-motion downloaded from sites can be attached to i-mode Mail to send them. ●P229

Main functions of FOMA D701i

i-channel

This allows you to receive graphical information about news and weather conditions. You can get information on a regular basis and run the latest information on the stand-by display as tickers. Also, a list of channels available can be displayed by pressing the i-channel-compatible key (i-channel key). In addition, you can get rich, detailed information by selecting your desired channel in the i-channel list. ●P302

Our free Trial channel is available over the fixed period of time for customers who have been using the i-channel compatible terminal but have not applied to i-channel service for the subscriber's line using the i-channel-compatible terminal.

- i-channel is a pay service and requires a subscription.

Video-phone

Allows you to see and talk with others in real time. Using the speakerphone and the out-camera, you can have a conversation and transmit actual views of the surrounding scenery. ●P80

i- ppli/i- ppli DX

Downloading a variety of i- ppli from the sites allows you to make the best use of them, including setting them as the stand-by display. i- ppli DX provides better uses in conjunction with i-mode terminal information such as phonebook and mail data. ●P282

Deco-mail

Allows you to compose and send your original messages. Enjoy expressive decorated mail by changing the character color and size or background color, and by pasting images such as Deco-mail pictures or still images shot with the built-in camera in the text. Since templates can be used with this function, you can create Deco-mail in the same style as for Deco-mail you have received or downloaded from Internet websites. ●P223

Safety settings

Secret Mode

The phonebook data and the schedule data that have set a secret attribute can not be displayed except when Secret Mode is on. ●P148

Privacy Mode

By setting Privacy Mode, access to phonebook entries, mail messages, images, schedules, received calls, redials is prevented without entering the terminal security code. You can also set Privacy Mode automatically when you do nothing for a certain period of time on FOMA terminal. ●P145

- For details on other Safety settings, see P135

Wide array of network services

Voice Mail Service (charged)^{*1} ●P398
 Call Forwarding Service (free of charge)^{*1} ●P401
 SMS (Short Message Service) (free of charge)^{*2}
 ●P273

Call Waiting Service (charged)^{*1} ●P400
 Dual Network Service (charged)^{*1} ●P405
^{*1} Separate application is required.
^{*2} Separate application is not required.

Useful functions

Emotional lighting

The call indicator flashes in various patterns when receiving a call. Lighting can be changed in conjunction with a ring tone or a voice during a call. ●P131

High-quality melody playback

The FOMA terminal also supports ring tones such as PCM generated 64-note harmonic, voice and sound effects (ADPCM sounds).

Built-in camera

FOMA terminal contains an out-camera and in-camera, which allow you to take images while viewing the large display. You can shoot a still image of up to 1.3 M pixels. In addition to Max 4 x zoom, various modes are available for shooting including framed shooting. Using the compact light allows you to shoot an image clearly even in a dark place. You can activate or deactivate Camera by opening/closing the lens cover. ●P156
 [Out-camera] Effective pixels: 1.31 M
 (Max record pixels: 1.31 M)
 [In-camera] Effective pixels: 100,000
 (Max record pixels: 100,000)

Automatic time correction

The time in FOMA terminal is automatically corrected by the information from DoCoMo network. Also you can set the time on your phone ahead or back, if you want. ●P48

Multiaccess function

Voice call and packet communication can be used simultaneously. This allows you to talk during an i-mode connection or send/receive mail while talking. ●P360

Multitask function

Allows you to execute several functions at the same time and perform operations by switching the screen. For example, you can read mail or register phonebook entries while making a call. ●P362

Simple menu

In addition to the main menu, you can use another menu to display frequently-used functions such as でんわ (phone), メール (mail), カメラ (camera) and iモード (i-mode) in large size of characters. Characters in the phonebook or mails are displayed larger in this menu. ●P33

Sub-display

You can confirm the time, or reception of a call or mail on the sub-display with FOMA terminal closed. You can also display information about i-channel, missed calls, unread mail, and the like. ●P31

High-definition large display

The 2.2-inch TFT LCD (240 x 320 dots) is provided for the display. It clearly displays fine images and characters.

High-resolution video

Allows you to record or play smooth motion video. Recording and replaying video on the large display of the QVGA size (320 x 240 dots) are possible. ●P162, P316

Bar Code Reader

JAN codes or QR codes can be scanned using the built-in camera. You can perform a variety of operations such as registering phonebook entries, connecting to sites and sending mail. ●P172

Infrared communication/infrared remote control

You can use the infrared communication function to exchange data between two FOMA terminals. In addition, devices that support TV infrared remote control can be operated from your FOMA terminal. ●P345, P350

Support for miniSD memory card


A miniSD memory card enables you to back up data stored in your FOMA terminal such as images, melodies, phonebook entries and mail messages. ●P328
 You can save video files and music data (i-motion with no image) created by external devices to the miniSD memory card and play them on your FOMA terminal. (Some files may not be played.) ●P471, P472
 By connecting your FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB cable (optional), the miniSD memory card in FOMA terminal can be used as an external memory of a PC. ●P412

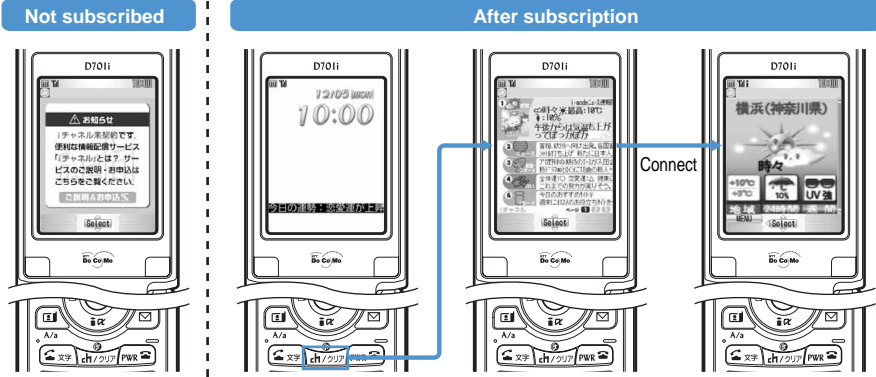
Making full use of D701i

A variety of functions of D701i visual communications are explained here.

i-channel

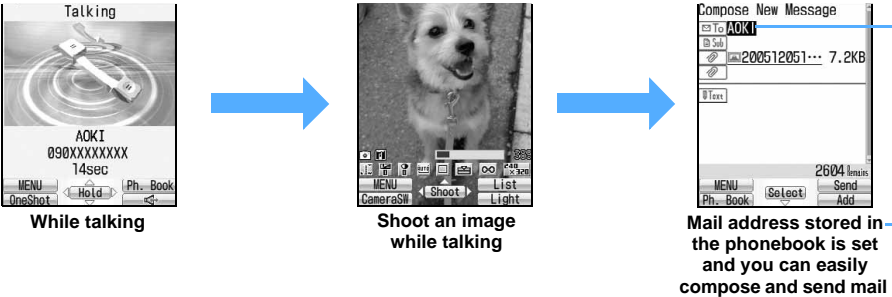
You can receive a variety of information on a regular basis without additional operations.

Press the i-channel compatible key () to display the list of channels so that you can get more richly detailed information. ●P302



One-shot Message to send images

You can shoot an image with the camera during a voice call and mail it immediately to the other party. ●P171



Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion) to signal incoming calls and alarms

If i-motion or video recorded with D701i is set for ring alert, incoming calls are notified by the video with image and voice/sound. You can also register the other party's video in the phonebook. ●P319

If i-motion or video is set for an alarm or schedule, the set time is informed by the video with image and voice/sound. ●P365, P369



Plentiful stand-by display

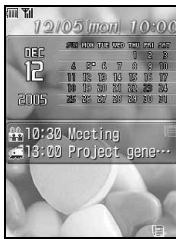
A variety of selection options are available for a clock design on the stand-by display. ●P134


By displaying information on unread mail, missed call, calendar or schedule on the stand-by display, its details screens can be opened with simple operation (Custom stand-by display). ●P123

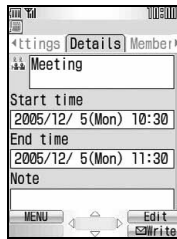
Example of the clock display



Custom stand-by display



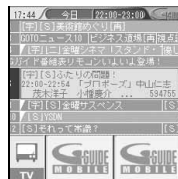
Press  to select an area



Check the contents

G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller

G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller is a free i- ppli service that conveniently combines the TV program information and TV remote controller function. You can get the time schedule and information of desired TV program at anytime from anywhere. Titles, information, start/end time and G-Code® for the TV programs depending on the TV stations in your area are available with this function. You can notify your friends of titles and broadcasting schedules for the TV programs that you like via mail by using *Recommendation Mail*. Also, you can remotely control your TV with G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller (some terminals are not compatible with this function). ●P351



- The screen shown above is for information purpose only and may differ from the actual screen. The actual screen displays the channels in your area.

Deco-mail

You can decorate your mail by changing the character color or pasting images or pictures. Preinstalled Deco-mail picture allows you to set the image easily. ●P223

Also, you can create Deco-mail easily by using Deco-mail template. ●P232

Example of Deco-mail picture



Deco-mail picture

Examples of Deco-mail template






SAFETY PRECAUTIONS (Always follow these directions)







Read the following SAFETY PRECAUTIONS to ensure that the phone is used correctly. Also, store this manual in a convenient location for future reference.

It is essential that these precautions be observed to prevent injury to the user and third parties as well as damage to property.

The following symbols are used to indicate the degree of danger or damage that may result from failing to follow the specified precautions.

 DANGER	Indicates an imminently hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.
 WARNING	Indicates a potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.
 CAUTION	Indicates a potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, may result in injury or property damage.

The following symbols are used to highlight instructions that are very important and that must be strictly followed.

	This indicates the action is prohibited.	
	This indicates disassembly is prohibited.	
	This indicates that handling with wet hands is prohibited.	
	This indicates an action that must be performed in accordance with the directions.	
	This indicates you must remove the plug from the power outlet.	

The SAFETY PRECAUTIONS are separated into six categories.

Handling the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (and charger) and UIM (general information) ..	P13
Handling the FOMA terminal.....	P14
Handling the battery pack	P15
Handling optional devices (AC adapter/DC adapter/desktop holder/in-car holder)	P16
Handling the UIM (FOMA card)	P18
Using the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of medical devices	P18

DANGER



Use only DoCoMo-certified battery packs, adapters (and chargers) with the FOMA terminal.

Use of non-specified items could cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack or other devices to leak, overheat, rupture, catch fire or malfunction.

Battery pack: D05

Desktop holder: D05

Rear cover: D05

FOMA AC adapter: 01

FOMA DC adapter: 01

- For additional items related to the compatible products, contact the nearest DoCoMo Shop.



Do not disassemble or remodel the components. Also, do not solder them.

Attempting to do so will lead to an accident, such as a fire, injury, or electrical shock and damage the equipment. Doing so may also cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture, or ignite.



Do not use or leave the components in a place near fire or heaters. Also avoid a high-temperature place exposed to direct sunlight or a car under the scorching sun.

Otherwise, your equipment will get deformed or troubled. The battery pack may leak, overheat, rupture, or ignite. Other possible problems include a reduction in performance and life. Sometimes, the casing will partly get heated, resulting in an extremely high temperature to get you burnt.



Do not expose the components to water.

The components may overheat, cause electric shock, fire or damage if exposed to water, pet urine or other liquids. Do not use the equipment in locations where it could get wet.

WARNING



Do not use in environments exposed to combustible or explosive materials, such as a gas station.

Using the equipment in locations exposed to flammable gases or liquids such as propane or gasoline could cause fire or explosion.



Do not let the recharging terminal and external device terminal touch any conductive material, such as a piece of metal or lead. Also do not put any conductive material into the recharging terminal and external device terminal.

The battery can short-circuit, causing fire and damage.



Do not place the battery pack, FOMA terminal, adapter (and charger) or UIM in the microwave oven, high-pressure cooker or other cooking appliances.

Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite, and could damage the circuitry of the FOMA terminal and adapter (and charger), causing overheat, smoke or fire.



If there is anything wrong (such as strange odor, heat generation, color change, deformation, or the like) with the components while you are using or charging them or when they are being stored, you should take the following steps immediately.

1. Remove the power plug from the outlet.
2. Turn off your FOMA terminal.
3. Remove the battery pack from your FOMA terminal.

Continuing to use the equipment without taking these steps will cause it to overheat, rupture, or ignite or cause its battery pack to leak.



Do not expose the components to strong shocks by dropping or throwing them.

Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite, and damage the equipment, resulting in fire.



CAUTION



When a child uses the FOMA terminal, first be sure an experienced adult teaches proper usage methods and techniques. Observe the child to determine that they are using the FOMA terminal correctly.
Failure to do so could result in injury.



Do not place the components on an unstable or tilted surface.
Doing so could cause the equipment to slide off, possibly causing personal injury or damaging the equipment.



Keep out of the reach of small children.
The components can be accidentally swallowed, resulting in injury.



Do not store in locations subject to high temperature and humidity or excessive dust.
Doing so could damage the equipment.

Handling the FOMA terminal



WARNING



Turn off the FOMA terminal inside an aircraft, hospital or other location where use of mobile phones is prohibited.

The FOMA terminal may interfere with the correct functioning of electronic equipment. If the automatic power on function is used, cancel the setting and turn the power off. Observe any regulations posted in medical facilities.

If you have done prohibition acts such as using the FOMA terminal inside an aircraft, you may be punished as stipulated by law.



Turn off the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of electronic equipment that relies on high-precision control or faint signals.

The FOMA terminal may interfere with the correct functioning of such electronic equipment.

- Examples: hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted defibrillators, other medical devices, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatically controlled equipment.

Users of such medical equipments should check with the electronic equipment or device manufacturer with respect to the effect of electromagnetic interference.



Do not place the FOMA terminal in a breast or inner pocket if you are carrying or using electronic medical equipment.

The FOMA terminal could cause any medical equipment in its vicinity to malfunction.



People with weak hearts should take care with respect to setting the incoming vibrator and ring volume.

The FOMA terminal may interfere hearts.



Do not use the FOMA terminal while driving.

Use of the mobile phones in vehicles is subject to penal regulations since November 1, 2004. If you try to use a Hands-Free kit, use it after parking your car in a safe place. Use the drive mode or Voice Mail service when you are driving.



Do not aim the infrared port at eyes and attempt to transmit.

Eyes could be affected. Aiming at other infrared devices and transmitting could cause other devices to malfunction.



Do not turn on the compact light and call indicator (emotional lighting) toward eyes at close range.

Taking a look at the light directly affects eyes damage. He or she may be blinded by it and injury could result.



When you talk under hands-free settings (with the speakerphone function), be sure to keep a distance between FOMA terminal and your ear.

Doing so could cause the hearing loss.



Do not aim the compact light and call indicator (emotional lighting) toward oncoming vehicles or other drivers

The other driver could be temporarily blinded or momentarily startled, causing an accident.



Do not place your FOMA terminal in an area over an air bag or in an air bag deployment area such as on a dashboard in a vehicle.

If the air bag inflates, the FOMA terminal may hit you and injury and damage to itself could result.



If you hear thunder while using the FOMA terminal outdoors, immediately turn the power off and move to a safe location.

Use of the phone in such a situation could expose you to lightning strikes or electric shock.



CAUTION



Rarely, some FOMA terminal users may develop itching, skin irritation or eczema. If such a condition occurs, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately and seek medical attention.

Metal is used in the following components:

Part	Material
Easy Selector Plus (except the center key),  ,  ,  , 	Chromium plating



Do not swing the FOMA terminal around by the strap.

Doing so could cause injury to yourself or a third party or damage the phone.



Do not allow water or other liquids, pieces of metal or other foreign material to enter into the UIM slot and a miniSD memory card slot of the FOMA terminal.

Doing so could cause fire, electric shock, or damage to the FOMA terminal.



Use in certain makes of cars may affect onboard electronic equipment.

Continued use under such conditions could cause unsafe driving. Do not use the FOMA terminal in such a case.



Do not bring magnetic cards near the FOMA terminal. Also, do not place the magnetic card between two halves of the FOMA terminal.

Magnetic data stored on bank cards, credit cards, telephone cards, and floppy disks may be corrupted or lost.



Do not use the compact light for purposes other than for use with the camera.

The compact light is turned off if no action is taken. In such a case, the surrounding environment could suddenly become dark, possibly inadvertently causing an accident.



Do not get your finger or the strap caught in the antenna when opening the FOMA terminal.

It could cause an accident such as injury, or damage to the FOMA terminal.

Handling the battery pack

Check the battery type indicated on the battery pack label.

Indication	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium ion battery



DANGER



If electrolyte from the battery pack gets in your eyes, do not rub; instead, rinse immediately with copious amounts of clean water and seek medical attention.
Doing so could cause the loss of vision.



Do not attach metallic materials such as wire to the port. Do not carry or store the battery pack together with a necklace or other metallic items.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



Do not pierce the battery pack with nails, hammer on it or step on it.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



Do not throw the battery pack into a fire.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



When you attach the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, never attempt to forcefully insert, because it should slide in easily and fit correctly. Check the direction of the battery pack and try again.
Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



WARNING



Should any electrolyte from the battery pack come into contact with your skin or clothing, immediately stop using the battery and rinse with clean water.
Failure to do so could cause skin injuries.



Stop charging if it is not possible to fully charge the battery pack within the specified time.
Failure to do so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



If the battery pack leaks or emits strange odors, immediately stop using it, and always keep away from sources of fire.
Failure to do so could cause the battery liquid to catch fire, and the battery pack itself to rupture.



CAUTION



Do not dispose of the battery pack with other regular household waste.
Failure to properly dispose of the battery pack in an environmentally sensitive manner could cause the battery pack to catch fire and damage the environment. Use adhesive tape to cover the terminal of battery pack when it is no longer used and bring it to a DoCoMo Shop after the insulation. Alternatively, you can also dispose of the battery pack in accordance with local regulations.

Handling optional devices (AC adapter/DC adapter/desktop holder/in-car holder)



WARNING



Use care not to short circuit the recharging terminal when the adapter (and charger) is connected to a wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not touch the recharging terminal with your hands or fingers, or some other part of the body.
Doing so could cause fire, equipment failure, electric shock or other injury.



Do not use the AC adapter and desktop holder in bathrooms or other potentially high humidity locations.
Doing so could cause electric shock.



Never use the adapter (and charger) when it has a damaged power cord.
Failure to do so could result in electric shock, overheat or fire.



If the adapter (and charger) or holder is exposed to water or other liquid, immediately disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
Failure to do so could result in electric shock, smoke or fire.



Be sure the power plug is free of dust.
Failure to do so could cause the equipment to catch fire.



During charging, place the adapter (and charger) and desktop holder in a stable location. Do not cover or wrap the adapter (and charger) and desktop holder with a cloth or blanket, etc.
Using the equipment under such conditions could cause the FOMA terminal to be detached from the holder, or cause a heat buildup that leads to fire or equipment failure.



Do not touch the FOMA terminal and AC/DC adapter when hearing thunder.
Contact with the FOMA terminal and adapter could cause you lightning strikes or electric shock.



Do not carry out using beyond the rating of a wall outlet or wiring accessories.
Using in excess of rating such as plugging too many leads into a single socket could cause overheat or fire.



Do not touch the adapter (and charger) cord or wall outlet with wet hands.
Doing so could cause electric shock.



When the adapter (and charger) is not to be used for a prolonged period, disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet.
Failure to do so could result in electric shock, fire, or equipment failure.



When connected to a wall outlet, make sure that the AC adapter does not come into contact with metallic straps or other metal objects and the plug is properly seated.
Failure to do so could result in electric shock, short circuit, or fire.



Use the designated power source and correct voltage.
Use of incorrect voltage could cause fire or equipment failure. When using your FOMA terminal overseas, use the FOMA domestic/overseas AC adapter 01.

AC adapter: 100V AC
FOMA domestic/overseas AC adapter : 100V to 240V AC
(Always connect to the outlet for internal household use.)
DC adapter: 12V DC, 24V DC
(specific for negative ground vehicle)



Use only the specified fuse for the DC adapter.
Use of the incorrect fuse could cause fire or equipment failure. Check the instruction manual for details of the correct fuse to use.



The DC adapter is for use with negative ground cars. Do not use it with positive ground cars.
Doing so could result in fire.



If it is difficult to disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet, do not attempt to forcefully disconnect.
Doing so could damage the equipment, resulting in electric shock or accident.



CAUTION



Disconnect the power plug before beginning any maintenance.
Failure to do so could cause electric shock.



Do not yank on the adapter (and charger) cord or power cord when disconnecting the adapter (and charger) from the wall outlet.
Doing so could damage the cord, resulting in electric shock or fire.



Do not place heavy objects on the adapter (and charger) cord or power cord.
Doing so could cause electric shock or fire.

Handling the UIM (FOMA card)



CAUTION



Take care when removing the UIM (IC chip).
Failure to do so could cause injury to hand and fingers.

Using the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of medical devices

The information given below conforms to the guidelines set forth by the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phone units.



WARNING



Turn off the FOMA terminal on packed trains or in crowded places as someone with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be nearby.
The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.



When inside a medical institution, always remember the following guidelines:

- Never take the FOMA terminal inside an operating room, intensive care unit (ICU) or coronary care unit (CCU).
- Always turn off the FOMA terminal in hospital wards.
- Even in the lobby and other areas, always turn off the FOMA terminal when electronic medical equipment is nearby.
- Follow the directives of the medical institution. There may be specific regulations as to items that are prohibited or use of which is restricted.
- If you are using the automatic power on function, cancel the setting and turn off the power.



If you have an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator, keep your FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away from it.

The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.



If you are using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators at your home or outside the confines of a medical institution, be sure to check with the manufacturer about possible adverse effects caused by electromagnetic interference.

The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of electronic medical equipment.

Handling instructions

General

Do not get the components wet.

The FOMA terminal, battery pack and adapter (and charger) are not waterproof. Avoid using the components in a bathroom or other high humidity areas or locations exposed to rain. If you carry the components, sweat could cause internal corrosion that leads to equipment failure. As a result of investigation, if component failure is found to be water-related, repair is not covered by the warranty and may not be able to be performed. In such a case, should it be found to be possible to repair the unit, you will be billed for all repairs.

Clean the components with a soft, dry cloth.

- Clean the components using a soft, dry cloth (such as a lens cloth).
- Using alcohol, thinner, benzene or detergents could cause the printed text to fade or disappear, or the equipment to become discolored.

Occasionally clean the terminals with a dry cotton swab.

Dirty terminals could cause intermittent contact that could interrupt the flow of power to the unit. Such a situation also causes insufficient charging. Use a dry cloth or cotton swab to clean the terminal.

Do not place the components near an air conditioner vent.

Sudden changes in temperature could cause condensation, leading to corrosion inside the components and equipment failure.

Do not place the FOMA terminal in locations where it could be exposed to excessive pressure.

Do not place it in a bag together with many other things or in your pocket when you sit down as this could exert pressure on the LCD or damage the internal boards, resulting in equipment failure. Damage arising from such causes is not covered by the warranty.

Carefully read the instruction manuals supplied with the battery and adapter (and charger) before use.

FOMA terminal

Avoid extremely high or low temperatures.

Use in an environment with an ambient temperature of 5 to 35 °C and relative humidity of 45 to 85 %.

If the FOMA terminal is used near a radio, television or general subscriber phone, it could affect such equipment. Use the phone as far away from such equipment as possible.

With regard to data stored in the FOMA terminal, keep it separately in a memo, etc. so as not to permanently lose important data.

NTT DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of stored data.

Do not put the FOMA terminal in your back pocket and sit on it. Avoid putting the phone in the bottom of a bag, etc. where it is subject to excessive pressure.

Damage may result.

Do not hold the strap inside when closing the FOMA terminal.

Malfunction or damage may result.

It is normal for the FOMA terminal to become warm during using or recharging. You can continue to use it while warm.

Do not aim the camera directly at the sun and leave it.

Elements may be discolored or baked.

Use the hand strap while holding the FOMA terminal.

Failure to do so could cause you to drop the phone, resulting in equipment failure.

Usually, use the FOMA terminal with the earphone/microphone terminal cap, external device terminal cap, and the miniSD memory card slot cover closed.

Failure to do so could allow water or other contaminants to get inside the unit, causing equipment failure.

Battery pack

The battery pack will gradually wear out.

Battery life also depends on how you use the battery pack; you know it is time to replace it when the usage time is very short even though you fully charge it. The specified battery pack can be purchased separately.

Recharge the battery pack in locations where the ambient temperature is between 5 °C and 35 °C.

When using for the first time or after a long period of non-use, be sure to fully charge the battery pack before use.

The time of use provided by the battery pack depends on the ambient conditions and the condition of the battery pack itself.

Store the battery pack in a cool place avoiding direct sunlight.

If you do not use it for a long time, remove the pack with the battery used up from the FOMA terminal and then place it in a plastic bag.

Adapter (and charger)

Recharge the battery pack in a location where the ambient temperature is between 5 °C and 35 °C. Do not recharge in the following locations:

- Locations that are subject to high humidity, dust or excessive vibration
- Near general subscriber phones, TVs or radios

It is normal for the adapter (and charger) to become warm during recharging. You can continue charging with a warm adapter.

When the battery pack is recharged using the DC adapter, always keep the car engine running.

Failure to do so could cause the car battery to run down more quickly than normal.

When an outlet with falling prevention mechanism is used, check the instruction manual for the outlet before use.

Do not expose to the strong shock and deform the recharging terminal.

Giving the strong shock on an adapter can cause damage.

UIM (FOMA card)

When removing the UIM, do not apply excessive force to it.

Do not place an excessive load on the UIM when inserting it into the terminal.

The UIM becomes warm during use. This is normal and not a cause for concern.

Note that any card failures resulting from inserting the UIM in an IC card reader/writer not designated by NTT DoCoMo are the responsibility of the customer.

Make sure that the ICs are kept clean.

Use a clean dry cloth for cleaning the UIM.

It is recommended that users maintain data stored on the UIM in some other form.

If the data should be erased, NTT DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.

The UIMs that are no longer used should be returned to a DoCoMo Shop for environmental protection.

Avoid extremely high or low temperature.

Take care not to damage, touch, or short-circuit the ICs to prevent them from losing their data or from malfunctioning.

Take care not to drop the UIM or give shock to the UIM to prevent it from malfunctioning.

Do not bend the UIM and place heavy stuff on it to avoid a failure.

[Shooting and sending images]

When you shoot images or send those images as mail attachments, pay careful attention not to infringe intellectual property rights such as copyrights and other rights including the right of portrait and right to privacy. If you infringe other's rights or shoot or send images as mail attachments that cause a nuisance or are against public order or morality, you may be punished as stipulated by law or be the subject of legal action claiming compensation.

If you should use the FOMA terminal to make a public nuisance, you might be punished under the laws and bylaws such as Japan's nuisance prevention ordinance.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

About intellectual property rights

Copyrights and portrait rights

Except in cases where reproduction and quoting for private use is sanctioned under copyright laws, the reproduction, alteration and public transmission of such content as text, images, music or software for which another party owns the copyrights, whether accomplished by using this product to photograph or record that content or by downloading it from Internet websites, is prohibited without the permission of the owner.


Taking photographs or recordings of such events as performances and exhibitions may be prohibited even for purposes of private use.

In addition, if you use this product to take another person's photograph without their permission, or display such a photograph without their permission on an Internet website and make that content public to an indeterminate number of people, you may be in violation of portrait rights.

Trademarks

Company names and trade names used in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

- "FOMA", "movva", "i-motion", "i-mode", "i- ppli", "i- ppli search", "i-motion mail", "i-shot", "i-melody", "i-anime", "DoPa", "mopera", "mopera U", "WORLD CALL", "WORLD WING", "Driving mode", "Short Mail", "QUICKCAST", "Chaku-motion", "Deco-mail", "V-Live", "Multiaccess", "i- ppli DX", "i-area", "i-channel", "Dual Network", "FirstPass", "sigmarion", "Security Scan", "musea", "visualnet" and the FOMA, i-mode and i-channel logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo.
- "キヤッチホン (Call Waiting)" is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- Microsoft[®] and Windows[®] are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the US and other countries.
- Java and all Java-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- "Multitask" is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.
- This product contains NetFront v3.2 for FOMA to provide Internet functionality.
NetFront v3.2 is a product of ACCESS CO., LTD. Copyright© 1996-2005, ACCESS CO., LTD.
NetFront and **NetFront**[®] are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
This software contains a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- This product contains Macromedia[®] Flash[™] Player technology of Macromedia, Inc.
Copyright© 1995-2005 Macromedia, Inc. All rights reserved.
Macromedia, Flash, and Macromedia Flash are trademarks or registered trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the US and other countries.

- McAfee and VirusScan are registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
All other registered and unregistered trademarks herein are the sole property of their respective owners.
©2005 Networks Associates Technology, Inc. All Rights Reserved.
- QR code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.
- miniSD™ and  are trademarks of the SD Card Association.
- Powered By Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™
Mascot Capsule® is a registered trademark of HI CORPORATION.
- G-GUIDE Mobile and the G-GUIDE Mobile logo are trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. in Japan. G-GUIDE, G-Code and the G-GUIDE logo are registered trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. in Japan.
- “くまくるん” is a trademark of TAITO CORPORATION.
©TAITO CORPORATION 2003, 2005 ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.
- QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. in the US and other countries.
- “Privacy Mode” is a registered trademark of FUJITSU.
- This product includes software licensed from Symbian Software Ltd ©1998-2005.
©1998-2005 Symbian Ltd. All rights reserved. **symbian** and Symbian OS are trademarks of Symbian Ltd. All rights reserved.
- In addition to the above, company names and trade names used in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

Other rights and responsibilities

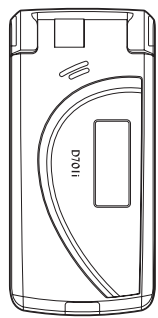
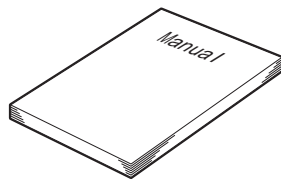
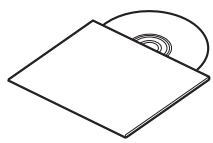
- This product is licensed based on MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License. The use of MPEG-4 Video Codec function is allowed for personal and nonprofit use only in the following cases:
 - Recording videos that conform to MPEG-4 Visual Standard (hereinafter referred to as MPEG-4 Video)
 - Playing MPEG-4 Videos recorded personally by consumers not engaged in profit activities
 - Playing MPEG-4 Videos supplied from the provider licensed from MPEG LA
 For further utilizing such as promotion, in-house use or profit-making business, please contact MPEG LA, LLC in the US.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307	5,600,754	5,267,261	5,506,865	5,710,784
5,504,773	5,416,797	5,568,483	5,228,054	5,778,338
5,109,390	5,490,165	5,414,796	5,544,196	
5,535,239	5,101,501	5,659,569	5,337,338	
5,267,262	5,511,073	5,056,109	5,657,420	
- This product (except for displays, keys and terminals) has antibacterial properties. The SIAA mark conforms to JIS Z 2801 and it is indicated to the products that comply with the quality control and information disclosure in the guide line of the Society of Industrial-technology for Antimicrobial Articles.

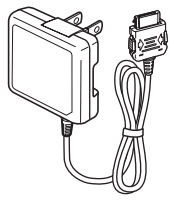
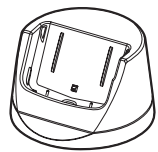
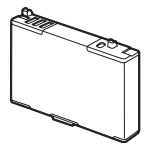


Basic package and optional accessories

Basic package

<p>FOMA D701i (including the written warranty and the rear cover D05)</p>	<p>Instruction manual (this book)</p>	<p>CD-ROM for FOMA D701i</p>
		
	<p>Quick Reference Manual is appended on P508.</p>	

Optional accessories

<p>FOMA AC adapter 01 (including the written warranty and the instruction manual)</p>	<p>Desktop holder D05 (including the instruction manual)</p>	<p>Battery pack D05 (including the instruction manual)</p>
		

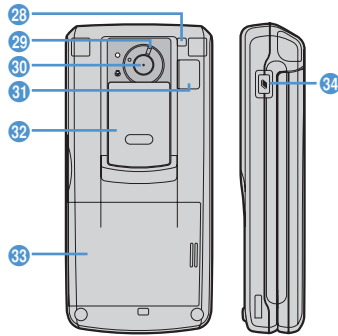
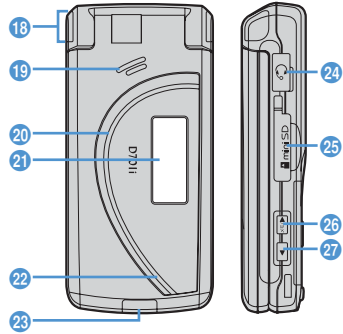
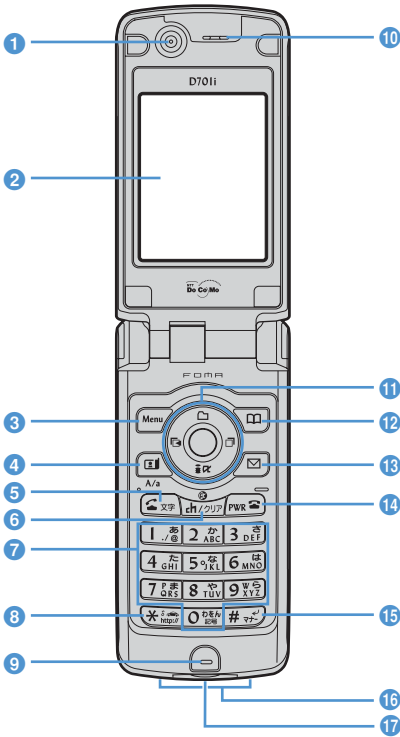
• Other optional accessories ◀P470

MEMO

Before Using D701i

Names and functions of parts	26
Reading the display	29
Reading the sub-display	31
Selecting the menu.....	33
Number of saved, registered and protected items in FOMA terminal	39
Using the UIM (FOMA card)	39
Attaching/removing the battery pack	42
Charging the battery	43
Checking the remaining battery level.....	Battery Level 46
Turning the power on/off	Power ON/OFF 47
Switching to English mode.....	Select Language 48
Setting the date and time.....	Date and Time Setting 48
Notifying your phone number to the other party.....	Caller ID Notification 50
Checking your own phone number.....	Own Number 50

Names and functions of parts



Size (mm): 103 (H) x 49 (W) x 21 (D)
(when closed)

Weight (g): Approx. 104
(with battery pack)

1 In-camera P89, P156

Used to shoot yourself or send your image during a video-phone call.

2 Display P29

3 MENU/upper left soft key

Use this key to display menus, perform the operation shown in the upper left part of the guide row, set/cancel Side Key Lock, etc.

4 Start video-phone/scroll/lower left soft key

Use this key to make/answer video-phone calls, make video-phone calls using the speakerphone function, scroll mail or site display by a page, switch between upper/lower cases when entering characters, perform the operation shown in the lower left part of the guide row, etc.

5 Start voice call/speakerphone/character key

Use this key to make/answer voice calls, switch between ordinary and speakerphone calls, switch input modes for entering characters, etc.

6 i-channel/Clear key

Use this key to delete characters, return to the previous screen, display the channel list or set/cancel Self Mode. On the i- ppli stand-by display, press this key to start i- ppli.

7 Dial keys

Used to enter phone numbers and text and to select menu items.

8 * /Driving Mode key

Use this key to enter " * ", set/cancel Driving Mode, etc.

9 Microphone

Picks up your voice.

10 Earpiece

Caller's voice comes out of here.

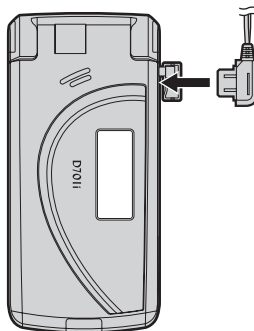
11 Easy Selector Plus

Enter key

Use this key to perform the selected operation, activate Focus Mode, start i- ppli set for One-touch Button, etc.

- ⑤ Data Box/Movie Camera/ key**
Use this key to display Data Box menu, activate Movie Camera, move the cursor upward, adjust volume, etc.
- ⑥ i-mode/i- ppli/ key**
Use this key to display i-mode menu or i- ppli folder list, move the cursor downward, adjust volume, etc.
- ⑦ Received Calls/ (previous) key**
Use this key to display the received call history, switch between pages, move the cursor leftward, set/cancel Privacy Mode, etc.
- ⑧ Redial/ (next) key**
Use this key to display the redial data, switch between pages, move the cursor rightward etc.
- 12 ☎ Phonebook/schedule/upper right soft key**
Use this key to display the phonebook or schedule, perform the operation shown in the upper right part of the guide row, etc.
- 13 ✉ Mail/scroll/lower right soft key**
Use this key to display Mail menu, compose new mail, scroll mail or site display by a page, perform the operation shown in the lower right part of the guide row, etc.
- 14 [ON/OFF] Power/End/Hold key**
Use this key to turn the power on/off, end calls or functions in operation, place incoming calls on hold, cancel Secret Mode, etc.
- 15 [#_*] #/Silent Mode/line-feed key**
Use this key to enter "#", set/cancel Silent Mode, start a new line when entering characters, etc.
- 16 Charging terminals**
Used when charging FOMA terminal in the desktop holder.
- 17 External connection terminals P44, P413**
Used to connect various optional accessories.
- 18 Antenna (built-in)**
Take care not to cover the built-in antenna with your hand so that you can use FOMA terminal on better conditions.
- 19 Speaker**
Ring tone and other sounds come out of here. When the speakerphone function is used, the voice of the other party comes out.
- 20 Call indicator**
Lights or flashes when receiving a call or mail opening/closing FOMA terminal or shooting with the camera. The lighting color and pattern can be set. This indicator lights or flashes when the new information is received or the display light goes out with FOMA terminal open. P131
- 21 Sub-display P31**
- 22 Charge indicator**
Lights in red during charging.
- 23 Infrared data port P345**
Exchange data with the infrared communication.
- 24 Earphone/microphone jack**
Used to connect a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional).
- 25 miniSD memory card slot P331**
Insert the miniSD memory card in this slot to use it.
- 26 [M] Upper side/Answer Machine key P28**
- 27 [L] Lower side key P28**
- 28 Strap opening**
- 29 Macro mode switch P168**
- 30 Out-camera P89, P156**
Used to shoot still images or videos or send images during a video-phone call.
- 31 Compact light P90, P160, P162**
Used during the out-camera use. Lights or flashes in red when shooting still images or videos (however, when the compact light is turned on for shooting, the red light may be difficult to see).
- 32 Lens cover P157**
- 33 Rear cover**
- 34 [TASK] TASK key**
Use this key during Multiaccess or Multitask, or to set/cancel Side Key Lock.

Connecting to earphone/microphone set with switch



- You can plug in a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) and use it. Using the earphone jack converter adapter P001 (optional) allows you to use an existing earphone/microphone set.

Functions available with the side keys

: Available x : Not available

	Function	Open	Closed	Operation	FOMA Terminal State
Sound	Set the earpiece volume			Press .	Talking or recording a talking voice memo
	Set the volume		x	Press .	Playing the stand-by i-motion*1, playing or editing video/i-motion, or playing a recorded message/voice memo
				Press .	Playing the melody, playing video/i-motion or melody album, or continuously playing video/i-motion on the miniSD memory card
	Stop the ring tone			Press .	Receiving a call, mail or message
	Stop the alarm sound			Press .	Sounding an alarm
Answer Machine/Voice Memo	Display Answer Machine/Voice Memo menus		x	Press .	In stand-by
Memo	Set/cancel Answer Machine		x	Hold down over a second.	In stand-by
	Record a message (Quick Record Message)			Hold down over a second.	Receiving a call
	Start/stop Talking Voice Memo			Hold down over a second.	Talking
Camera	Shooting		x	Press .	Waiting to shoot with the camera
Others	Switch the display on the sub-display	x		Press .	In stand-by
	Stop the vibrator			Press .	When receiving a call, sounding an alarm or receiving a mail or message
	Check i-mode Message			Hold down over a second.	Displaying the stand-by display*2
	Set/cancel Silent Mode	x		Hold down over a second.	In stand-by
	Play previous or next data			Hold down over a second.	Playing video/i-motion or melody album, or continuously playing video/i-motion on the miniSD memory card

Open: When FOMA terminal is open. Closed: When FOMA terminal is closed.

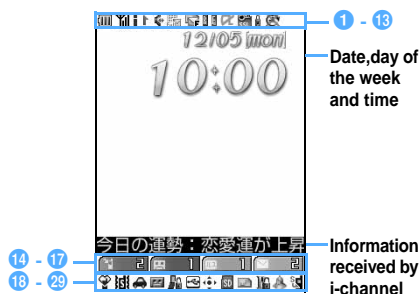
*1 You cannot set the volume when Silent Mode is set.

*2 When FOMA terminal is closed, you can perform Check i-mode Message while not displaying the stand-by display. However, you cannot use Check i-mode Message while you are talking, performing infrared communication, or using a miniSD memory card.

Reading the display

The description of icons displayed at the top or the bottom of the display are shown below:

- When i-channel service is used, received information about i-channel is displayed in tickers on the stand-by display by setting Stand-by Telop Setting to *Display*. ◀P302



- 1 : Battery level ◀P46
漢/半英/半英/半英/全英/全英/全英/全英
- 2 : Received signal level ◀P47
圏外 : Out of service area ◀P47
self : Self Mode is set ◀P143
 : During data transfer ◀P410
Infrared communication in progress ◀P345
Accessing miniSD memory card ◀P332, P337
In the miniSD mode ◀P412
Data link software in progress ◀P471
- 3 : In i-mode communication (site connection in service) ◀P182
 : In i-mode communication (packet communication in service) ◀P202, P236
- 4 : During infrared communication ◀P345
Infrared remote control function in operation ◀P350
- 5 : Speakerphone function used ◀P53
 : During USB hands-free communication ◀P61
 : Total call cost exceeds the maximum limit ◀P386
- 6 : i-mode Mail and Message R/F storage space is full in the Center ^{*2} ◀P237, P202
 : i-mode Mail or Message R/F storage space is full in the Center ◀P237, P202
 : Unreceived i-mode Mail and Message R/F in the Center ◀P237, P202
 : Unreceived i-mode Mail or Message R/F in the Center ◀P237, P202

- 7 : Unread i-mode Mail or SMS storage space is full and SMS storage space is full on UIM ◀P275
 : Unread i-mode Mail or SMS storage space is full ◀P237, P275
 : SMS full on UIM ◀P275
 : Unread i-mode Mail and SMS exist ◀P236, P274
 : Unread i-mode Mail exists ◀P236
 : Unread SMS exists ◀P274
- 8 / (blue/red)
: Unread Message R exists/unread Message R storage space is full ◀P202
- 9 / (green/red)
: Unread Message F exists/unread Message F storage space is full ◀P202
- 10 : i- ppli execution ◀P286
 : i- ppli stand-by display on ◀P122
 : Blinks while starting i- ppli from the i- ppli stand-by display ◀P295
 : i- ppli DX execution ◀P286
 : i- ppli DX stand-by display on ◀P122
 : Blinks while starting i- ppli from the i- ppli DX stand-by display ◀P295
- 11 : Displaying SSL page, using i- ppli downloaded from SSL pages and in SSL communication with i- ppli ◀P183
- 12 : Secret Mode is set ◀P148
- 13 : i- ppli Auto Start failed ◀P294
- 14 : Number of missed calls ◀P38
- 15 : Number of recorded messages ◀P38
- 16 : Number of new voice mail messages ◀P38
- 17 : Number of unread mail ◀P38
- 18 : General silent mode is set ◀P119
 : Personalized silent mode is set ◀P119
- 19 : Ring alert volume is silent ◀P69
 : Vibrator for incoming voice call is set ◀P116
 : Ring alert volume is silent and vibrator for incoming voice call is set ◀P69, P116
- 20 : Driving Mode is set ◀P73
- 21 : Answer Machine is set ◀P75
- 22 : Recorded messages full ◀P75
- 23 : Lock on Close is set ◀P148
 : Using video-phone from external device via USB ◀P92
USB cable connected ◀P413

- 24 : Effective Easy Selector Plus keys in Focus Mode ◀P38
- 25 : miniSD memory card inserted ◀P331
- 26 : Reading UIM ◀P47
- 27 : PIM Lock is set ◀P144
- *1 : Keypad Dial Lock is set ◀P145
- : Side Key Lock is set ◀P147

- 28 : Alarm Clock is set ◀P365
- : Schedule alarm is set ◀P369
- : Alarm Clock and schedule alarm are set simultaneously
- 29 : Software Update reserved ◀P487

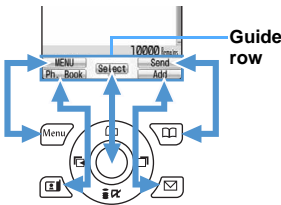
*1 The current highest priority item is displayed. These icons are listed in the order of priority from the top.

*2 Displayed when the storage space for either i-mode Mail or Message R/F is full and other unreceived mail/messages exist.

Reading the guide row

Operations that can be executed by pressing , , , and are displayed in the guide row.

Example Guide row for the mail composition screen



Display positions and keys correspond as shown in the figure. In this manual, the operations displayed in the guide row are explained using the corresponding keys ().

The operations displayed in the guide row differ depending on the screen.

- on the guide row corresponds to of the Easy Selector Plus (it may be different depending on the used function or site).

Reading the task bar

The icon for the function (task) in progress is displayed on the task bar (up to 9 icons).

You can confirm functions being used and run. When receiving mails/messages, the reception result is scrolled.

Example Task bar when schedule calendar is displayed during a voice call



- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Voice call : Video-phone (64 K) : Video-phone (32 K) : 64K data communication : Mail : Receiving i-mode Mail : Receiving SMS : Chat Mail : Message R/F : Checking for i-mode Mail/SMS : i-mode : Bookmark/Internet Connection/Last Visited URL/Screen Memo/i-mode Shortcut | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> : i-channel : i- ppli : Originating/communicating packet via USB : Sending/receiving packet via USB : My Picture (<i>Image</i>) : i-motion : Melody : Camera : Movie Camera : Sound Recorder : Bar Code Reader : Phonebook : Answer Machine/Voice Memo | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Notepad : Scheduler : Schedule alarm sounding : Calculator : Received Calls : Redial : Data exchanging with external device : Saving to INBOX/setting reception method for infrared communication : Accessing/waiting for access to miniSD memory card |
|---|---|---|

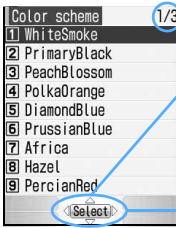
/ (dark blue/gray)
: In the miniSD mode (communication is possible) (USB cable unconnected/no miniSD memory card inserted)

: Alarm Clock ringing
 : Own Number
 / (dark blue/gray) : Setting/holding each function
 : Software Update activated

: Software Update notified
 : Update Definition activated/version display
 : Setting each network service
 : Video-phone call through external device

Reading the list screen

Example *Color scheme* screen



1/3 The number of the currently displayed page and the total number of pages (when a list extends over multiple pages)

indicates that other selectable items exist above and below the selected item.

- Press to move the cursor.
- When is pressed on the last item of the page, the next page appears, and when is pressed on the first item of the page, the previous page appears.

indicates that selectable items exist over multiple pages.

- Press to switch between pages.
(You cannot switch between pages on the icon selection screen, etc.)
- Color scheme names are named based on imagery.

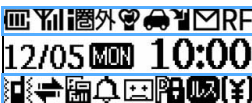
INFORMATION

Note that the following cases may occur due to the characteristics of liquid crystal display (LCD) and they are not defects in FOMA terminal.

- FOMA terminal display is manufactured by taking advantage of highly advanced technology but some dots may be always or never lit.
- When the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal with the power turned on, residual images may remain on the display and the sub-display for some time. Remove the battery pack with the power turned off.
- If FOMA terminal is open and the same screen is displayed for a while, the residual image of the previous screen may remain on the display and the sub-display when the screen display is switched by performing some operations.

Reading the sub-display

When the sub-display is turned off (when the terminal is closed), the date and time or the following icons are displayed by pressing , or .



- 1 - 10** Date, day of the week and time
- 11 - 18**
- : Battery level
 - : Received signal level
 - : Flashes in i-mode
 - : Out of service area
 - : Silent Mode is set

- : Driving Mode is set
- : Missed calls exist
- : Unread i-mode Mail or SMS exists
- : Unread Message R exists
- : Unread Message F exists
- : Ring alert volume is silent
- : Vibrator for incoming voice call is set
- : Ring alert volume is silent and vibrator for incoming voice call is set

- 12 : Self Mode is set
- : Data transfer in progress
- 13 / : Unreceived i-mode Mail or Message R/F in the Center, i-mode Mail or Message R/F storage space is full in the Center

- 14 : Alarm Clock is set
- : Schedule alarm is set
- : Alarm Clock and schedule alarm are set
- 15 : Answer Machine is set
- : Recorded message storage space is full
- 16 : PIM Lock is set
- 17 : Voice mail messages exist in the Center
- 18 : Total calls cost exceeds the limit

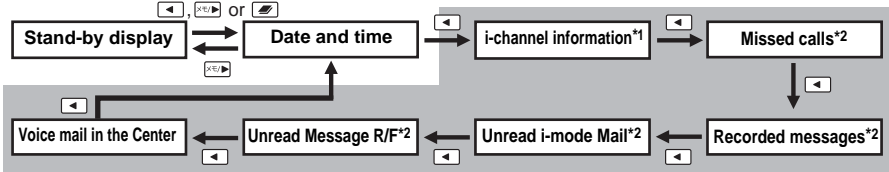
INFORMATION

When FOMA terminal is closed, the following terminal states are displayed on the sub-display:

- The states of the voice call, video-phone and Answer Machine
- Checking or receiving i-mode Mail, SMS or Message R/F
- Sounding Alarm Clock or schedule alarm
- The states of the packet communication, 64K data communication, communication via USB or infrared communication
- No battery

Switching the display on the sub-display

When FOMA terminal is closed, press , or to display the date and time. Afterwards, a display switches each time you press .

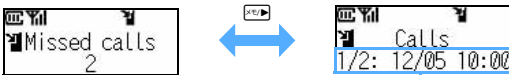


: Displayed if unconfirmed information exists. (i-channel information is displayed even if it is already confirmed.)

*1 Up to 10 items of information are displayed in tickers.

*2 Press to display detail information. (Up to 10 detailed items of information can be displayed. Open FOMA terminal for confirmation.)

Example A details screen displayed when unconfirmed missed calls exist



Scroll and display Number/Total, Detail info

- Press to switch the screen to detail information of the next missed call.
- The name of the caller is displayed in detail information if his or her phone number or mail address is registered in the phonebook.

INFORMATION

The content of the sub-display disappears when you open FOMA terminal or when you do not press any key for a specified period of time.

Set **Hide callers' info** in Sub-display Info Setting not to display the phone number, name or mail address of the caller on the sub-display when receiving a call or mail.

When All Lock, Remote Lock or Side Key Lock is set, press to display the message indicating that the lock is set, and the display switches to the date/time screen.

When the details screen is displayed, **Display set OFF** appears if Privacy Mode is set.

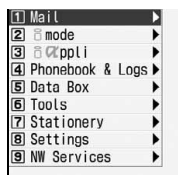
If **On-hold** or **Continue(mute)** is set in Close Setting, information about a caller/sender and the current state of the terminal such as **Dialing** are displayed on the sub-display when closing the terminal while dialing or talking. Displays such as **On hold**, **VP on hold**, **Talking** or **Talking vp** disappear in a short time after.

Selecting the menu

In addition to the normal menu, the simple menu which offers popular features is provided. In the simple menu, the menu items are displayed in large letters. Also, you can create your original menu (Custom Menu P377).

Display format for the normal menu and the custom menu

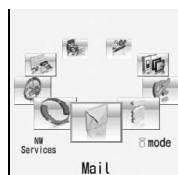
Select from 3 types (Menu Setting P130).



List view



Tile display



3D display

Switching to the simple menu

- You cannot switch FOMA terminal to the simple menu when **English** is set in Select Language. Also, when you choose the simple menu, Select Language settings are unavailable.
- Even if you selected the simple menu before turning your FOMA terminal off, the menu will change to the normal one when you insert the UIM for which English mode is specified as language and then turn the power on again.

1 Press on the stand-by display.



The normal menu is displayed.



- When the custom menu is displayed, press .



2 Press .




The simple menu is displayed.

Switching to the normal menu

① Press  on the stand-by display, and press .

- To switch the custom menu, press   on the stand-by display.

When the simple menu is set

- During a call, you can see how to adjust the volume of caller's voice.
- In stand-by display, enter the phonebook No. (1 to 9) to see the registered names and telephone numbers. Key operations for making voice calls/video-phone calls are also shown. During calls you can also press , select **ダイヤル入力** (Dial) and enter a phonebook number to see the same information.
- The **Maximum** size in the Font setting applies to the fonts for redial, received calls, and phonebook list. The received mail view screen follows the **Large** font size that is specified from that screen. These font sizes cannot be changed.

Functions available on the simple menu


- Some menus cannot be accessed from the simple menu.

Menu Item		Shortcut	Menu Item		Shortcut
でんわ	電話帳検索	  	i モード	Bookmark	   
	電話帳登録	   		ラスト URL	    
	リダイヤル	   		画面メモ	    
	着信履歴	   		i チャネル一覧	    
	伝言メモ一覧	   		待受テロップ設定	    
	自局番号	    /   		i アプリ	ソフト一覧
メール	受信メール	    	待受画面設定	    	
	送信メール	    	i アプリ設定 *1	    	
	未送信メール	    	データBOX*1	  	
	新規メール	    	設定 /	音 / バイブ *1	    
	i モード問合せ	    	ステーションアリー	ディスプレイ *1	    
カメラ	カメラ	    	アラーム	    	
	マイピクチャ	    	電卓	    	
	待受画面設定	    	伝言メモ設定	    	
i モード	iMenu	    	情報表示 / リセット *1	    	
			留守番電話 *1	    	

*1 The menu items beyond the this level are the same as the normal menu.

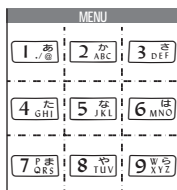
Selecting functions from the menu

Select menu items by using the dial keys (Shortcut operations). Also, use the Easy Selector Plus to select from among menu items.

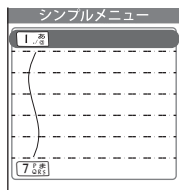
- When any lock function is set or the UIM is not inserted, some functions are disabled. The disabled functions are indicated by  or dimmed, and cannot be selected.

Selecting menu items with the dial keys (Shortcut operations)

Each menu item has a number (item number) and can be selected by pressing the corresponding key. The item position corresponds to each key as follows:



Normal menu
(Tile display)



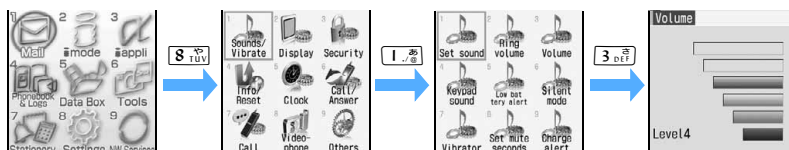
Simple menu
(Japanese only)

- In this manual, the operation procedure is mainly explained in shortcut operations of the normal menu.

Example Executing *Volume* from the normal menu

1 Press **Menu** **8 TUV** **1/お** **3 DEF** on the stand-by display.

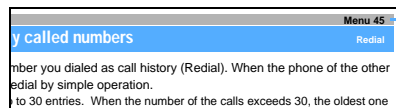
The screen for adjusting volume is displayed.



When several shortcuts are available

If there are multiple shortcut operations, those other than described in the procedures are indicated at the right of a title in a text body.

Example For redialing



Press **Menu** to show the menu, then press **4 GHI** **5 JKL** to show the redial list.

- ☑ means pressing **☑**, and ⬇ means pressing **⬇**.

Selecting menu items with Easy Selector Plus

Example Executing *Volume* from the normal menu (Tile display)

1 Press **Menu** on the stand-by display.

2 Press **⊕** and select *Settings*.

- In the simple menu, press **⊕** to highlight the desired item, then press **⊕** or **⊖**.

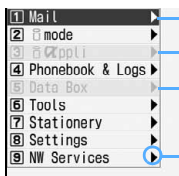
3 Press **⊕** to select *Sounds/Vibrate*.

4 Press **⊕** to select *Volume*.

The screen for adjusting volume is displayed.

Selecting menu items (List view)

Press to place the cursor at a menu item and press .



Menu item at the cursor position

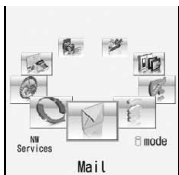
Menu item that cannot be selected (Dimmed)

Lower-level menu exists.

- You can select an item by pressing the dial key for the item number.
- You can also select a menu item by pressing to place the cursor at the item and pressing .
- To return to the previous menu, press or .

Selecting menu items (3D display)

Press to move the icon ring to bring the desired item to the front and press .



- Press to move the the icon at the rear to the front.
- You can select an item by pressing the dial key for the item number. Check the item numbers in the tile display or list view menu.

Displaying description of menu items (Describe function)

Press to place the cursor at the desired menu item. After a brief interval, description of the item's function is displayed.

Example In the normal menu



- The function description disappears automatically after a brief interval.
- You can set FOMA terminal not to display the function description of menu items. P130

Description of Mail menu is displayed.

Returning to the stand-by display or previous screen


: Returns to the stand-by display.

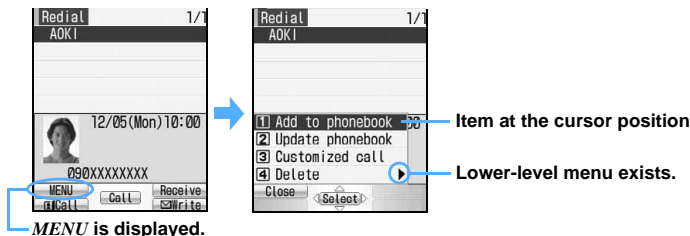
: Returns to the previous screen.

Selecting functions from the submenu






In some functions, **MENU** is displayed at the upper left of the guide row. You can select submenu items and perform various operations.

Example Selecting Redial submenu

1 Press  in the redial list.




2 Press  and select a submenu item.

- You can select an item by pressing the dial key for the item number. Even for the same function, the item numbers may differ depending on the screen.
- You can also select a submenu item by pressing  to place the cursor at the item and pressing .
- To return to the previous menu, press  or .
- Press  while the submenu is displayed to close it.

Selecting items on the screen


Selecting *Yes* or *No* on a confirmation screen



1 Press  and select *Yes* or *No*.



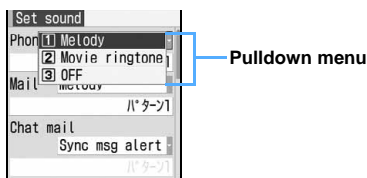
- For some operations, items other than *Yes* and *No* may appear.

Selecting an item from the pulldown menu

1 Press  to place the cursor at an item to set.

2 Press  to display a pulldown menu and press  to place the cursor at an item.

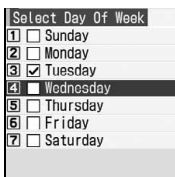
- You can select an item by pressing the dial key for the item number.



3 Press .

Selecting an item from the check box

- 1 Press to place the cursor at a check box and press .



The check box changes from to , and is selected.

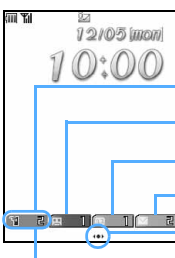
- Select the selected item () to cancel the selection ()
- Depending on the function, select/cancel all items by pressing .
- You can select an item by pressing the dial key for the item number.

Displaying information quickly

Focus Mode

When the icons such as 2 or 1 are displayed on the stand-by display, you can quickly display the information.

- 1 Press on the stand-by display and press to place the cursor at an icon.



- The number of stored items is displayed at the right of each icon.

2: Missed call (unanswered call) exists.

1: Unplayed recorded message exists.

1: New voice mail message exists.

1: Unread received mail exists.

: Effective Easy Selector Plus keys

: Color of the icon at the cursor position changes.

- 2 Press .

The screen for the selected icon is displayed.

2: The received call list is displayed, letting you check the date and time and the caller information.

1: The recorded message list is displayed, letting you play the recorded messages.

1: The confirmation screen for playing voice mail messages is displayed, letting you play the messages.

2: The Inbox folder list is displayed. You can display unread mail.

INFORMATION

When you select an icon and hold down for over a second, the icon temporarily disappears from the screen. It reappears when information is viewed and the number of items changes.

Depending on the setting of lock functions such as PIM Lock, some icons may not be displayed.

Number of saved, registered and protected items in FOMA terminal

Type		No. of saved/ registered items	No. of protected items
Mail	Received mail* ¹ , * ²	Up to 1,000	Up to 500
	Sent mail* ¹ , * ²	Up to 200	Up to 100
	Unsent mail* ¹ , * ²	Up to 200	Up to 100
	Template* ¹	Up to 100	-
SMS in UIM* ³		Up to 20	-
Message R* ¹		Up to 100	Up to 50
Message F* ¹		Up to 50	Up to 25
Bookmark		Up to 100	-
Screen memo* ¹		Up to 100	Up to 50
i- ppli* ⁴		Up to 100	Up to 100
Image* ¹		Up to 1,000	-
Melody* ¹		Up to 500	-
Video/i-motion/sound recorded with Sound Recorder* ¹		Up to 100	-

*¹ Depending on the size of data, the actual number of items that can be saved and registered may be fewer.

*² The total number of i-mode Mail and SMS.

*³ The total number of sent and received SMS. The number of delivery report is not included.

*⁴ Up to 5 items of Message i- ppli (as the part of 100 items, maximum number of i- ppli that can be saved) can be saved. Depending on the i- ppli size, the actual number of items you can save may be fewer.

INFORMATION

Because data saved in FOMA terminal may be lost due to failure, repair or other handlings of FOMA terminal, it is recommended that you maintain a separate record of the important data in FOMA terminal. We are not responsible for any lost data.

It is recommended that you save the data stored in FOMA terminal such as mail, bookmarks, images, melodies or video/i-motion to the miniSD memory card. Exchangeable data ●P332

If you have a PC, you can use FOMA D series data link software contained in the attached CD-ROM to transfer and save the data such as mail, bookmarks, images, melodies, video/i-motion to your PC.

Depending on the function, the displayed file size of data in FOMA terminal may differ slightly.

Using the UIM (FOMA card)

Use the UIM (FOMA card) to store your phone number and other information.

Insert the UIM into a FOMA terminal to use it.

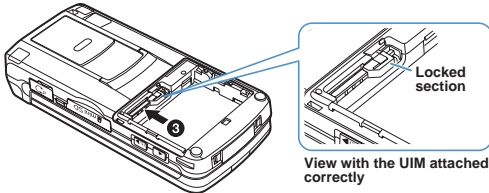
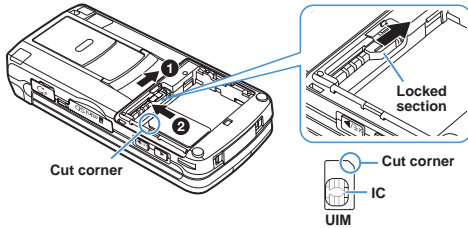
- For details on handling the UIM, refer to the UIM manual.

Inserting/removing the UIM

Use your FOMA terminal with the UIM inserted. If the UIM is not inserted in your FOMA terminal, first insert it.

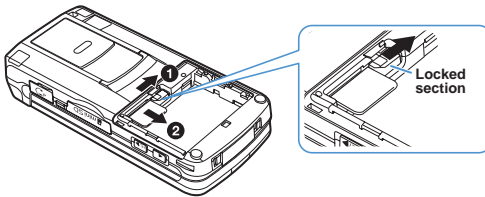
- Before inserting or removing the UIM, turn the power off and remove the rear cover and battery pack. Attaching/removing the rear cover and battery pack ●P42
- Insert or remove the UIM on your hands with FOMA terminal closed.

Inserting the UIM



- ❶ Slide the locked section in the direction of the arrow.
- ❷ Insert the UIM into the slot in the direction shown in the figure with the IC side of the card facing down.
- ❸ Push in the UIM fully until it is clamped after the locked section is returned to its original position.

Removing the UIM



- ❶ Slide the locked section in the direction of the arrow.
The UIM comes out of the slot.
- ❷ Pull the UIM out of the slot.

INFORMATION

Insert or remove the UIM carefully as forcing it may damage the card.

Carefully handle the removed UIM so it does not become lost.

Note that the UIM may pop out when removing it.

If it is hard to remove the UIM because its pop-out amount is small, try to remove the card after reinserting it until it stops.

UIM security codes

The PIN1 and PIN2 codes are used for the UIM.

Both codes are set to "0000" at time of subscription to the FOMA service. You can change this to any code (4 to 8 digits). ☛P138

PUK (PIN Unblocking Key)

- The PUK (PIN Unblocking Key) is the 8-digit number used to unblock the PIN1 and PIN2 lock. It is given to you at time of purchase.
- If you enter the PUK incorrectly 10 times in a row, the UIM is locked. Be sure to keep a separate note of the number. Please be notified, if you forget your PUK or cannot release the lock of UIM, you need to bring your FOMA terminal, UIM and identification (driver's license etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.
Unblocking PIN lock ☛P139

UIM operation restriction function


- FOMA terminal is provided with the UIM operation restriction function for protecting your data and files.
- When data or files downloaded from sites or data attached to mail are saved in FOMA terminal with the UIM inserted, the UIM operation restriction is automatically set to these data or files.
 - If the UIM is replaced by another UIM or is removed from FOMA terminal, data or files with the UIM operation restriction set cannot be displayed or played.
 - Data which is subject to the restriction is as follows:
 - Screen memo
 - Image inserted in Deco-mail text
 - i- ppli (including i- ppli stand-by display)
 - Image (including animation and Flash movie)
 - Message R/F
 - File attached to i-mode Mail
 - i-motion
 - Melody
 - For i- ppli with the UIM operation restriction set, the following operations are disabled when the UIM is replaced by another UIM or is removed from FOMA terminal:
 - Start
 - Auto start
 - Upgrade
 - Displaying Detail Info
 - Changing auto start setting
 - i- ppli Settings
 - Setting the i- ppli stand-by display

INFORMATION

When data with the UIM operation restriction enabled is set for the stand-by display, call image or ring tone, the image and sound settings return to the default if the UIM is replaced by another UIM or is removed from FOMA terminal. In this case, the image and sound that are actually displayed/generated may differ from the settings. Inserting the UIM that was used when the data was downloaded restores the original settings.

The UIM operation restriction is not set to data obtained via infrared communication, the miniSD memory card or data link software or to images taken with the built-in camera.

Data or files with the UIM operation restriction set cannot be moved/copied to the miniSD memory card or cannot be exchanged by infrared communication.

If the UIM is replaced by other i-channel-compatible terminals, the information is not displayed on the stand-by ticker and sub-display. After that, if the information is automatically updated or  is pressed to display the i-channel list, the latest information becomes to be received and displayed on the stand-by ticker and sub-display.

If no UIM is installed, the stand-by ticker will not show i-channel information.

Functional differences between UIM types

There are 2 types of UIMs: green and blue. The functions differ depending on the type as shown below:

Item	UIM (green)	UIM (blue)	Page
Number of digits of phone number that can be registered in the UIM phonebook	Up to 26 digits	Up to 20 digits	P99
Certificate Download for using FirstPass	Available	Unavailable	P208
WORLD WING service	Available	Unavailable	P41
Service Dialing Number	Calling DoCoMo for Repairs and DoCoMo for General Inquiries (DoCoMo Information Center) available	Unavailable	P406

WORLD WING

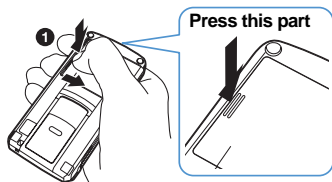
WORLD WING is the DoCoMo FOMA international roaming service. By taking out the UIM (green) from the FOMA terminal you normally use and inserting it into an overseas mobile phone (GSM handset), you can make/receive a call in foreign countries with your own mobile phone number. A separate subscription is required to use WORLD WING. Contact "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual for details.

Some price plans are not applicable.

Attaching/removing the battery pack

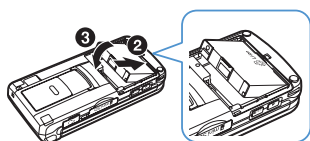
- Turn the power off and close FOMA terminal before attaching or removing the battery pack.
- Be careful not to touch the camera lens.

Attaching the battery pack



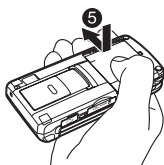
1 Remove the rear cover.

While pressing the top of the rear cover with your thumb, slide it in the direction of the arrow until it is removed.



2 With the DoCoMo logo and recyclable mark of the battery pack facing up, insert the battery pack into FOMA terminal in the angle as shown in the figure.

Do not force the battery pack terminals into FOMA terminal. Doing so could damage these terminals or the body connector.



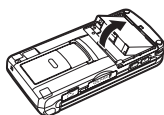
3 Push the battery pack in.

4 Place the rear cover plate so that it can slide about 2 mm on the FOMA terminal.

5 Slide the rear cover in the direction of the arrow pushing its center by finger so that FOMA terminal and the rear cover do not gap.

Failure to follow the correct procedure could damage the rear cover.

Removing the battery pack



1 Remove the rear cover.

2 Lift the edge of the battery pack with your finger and remove it.

Battery recycling

FOMA terminal uses a lithium ion battery containing valuable materials that should be recycled. To protect the environment, return used batteries to an NTT DoCoMo service counter, NTT DoCoMo agent or recycling center.

Please take the following precautions when recycling batteries:

- Attach a piece of adhesive tape on the terminals of used battery packs
- Do not disassemble or modify battery packs



Li-ion

INFORMATION

The FOMA terminal display uses an active LCD. Due to the characteristics of the active LCD, residual images or crossbar may remain for a while when the battery pack is attached or removed. This is not a fault of FOMA terminal.

Charging the battery

When the battery level is low, charge the battery.

- The battery level icon shows how much charge remains in the battery. P46

Charging time and operation time on full charge (estimates)

Charging time	Continuous call time	Continuous stand-by time
Approx. 140 minutes	During a voice call : Approx. 140 minutes During a video-phone call : Approx. 90 minutes	While standing still : Approx. 500 hours While moving : Approx. 360 hours

- Continuous call time is an estimate of call time for FOMA terminal when it can send or receive signals normally.
- Continuous stand-by time is an estimate of operation time of FOMA terminal when it is closed and able to receive signals normally. The call/stand-by time may be reduced to about half, depending on the amount of charge in the battery, the function settings, the ambient temperature and signal conditions (radio waves do not or hardly reach). Using i-mode communication reduces the call (communication)/stand-by time. Even if you do not make a call or use i-mode, the call (communication)/stand-by time will be reduced by composing i-mode Mail, or starting downloaded i- ppli software or the i- ppli stand-by display.
- Continuous stand-by time (while standing still) is the average operation time of FOMA terminal when it is standing still, closed and able to receive signals normally.
- Continuous stand-by time (while moving) is the average operation time of FOMA terminal that is standing still, moving and outside service the area when it is closed and able to receive signals normally.
- Alternatively, if you use data communication, Multiaccess or Camera, the call (communication)/stand-by time will also be reduced.

Notes on battery pack

Use the battery pack D05.

The battery pack is a consumable part and will gradually wear out. Each time it is charged, it will accept slightly less charge than the previous time. When the battery charge lasts only half as long as when it was new, replace it with a new one. The battery pack's life is about 1 year. This life may be shorter depending on the frequency of use.

Starting/ending charging and other items to note

The battery pack can be charged regardless of whether FOMA terminal is turned on or off. However, charging takes longer with the power turned on.

- When charging starts, the charge indicator lights in red.
When FOMA terminal is turned on, the charge alert sounds and the battery level icon blinks.

Icon	Charge indicator	Meaning
(Charging: Blinks) Charged: Lights	Charging: Lights in red Charged: Goes off	Charging normally.

- The icon design can be changed in Battery Icon. P131
- If the charge indicator does not light in red at the start of charging or it flashes in red, charging is unsuccessful. If the battery pack still cannot be charged even after charging again, contact "Repairs" on the back of this manual.
- When charging is completed, the charge indicator goes off.
When FOMA terminal is turned on, the charge alert sounds and the battery level icon lights. (If the battery level icon blinks, charging is not completed.)

- You can set the charge alert not to sound. P118
- Do not charge the battery for an extended period (longer than a full day) with FOMA terminal turned on. FOMA terminal uses power so the adapter continues charging until FOMA terminal is unplugged from the adapter. In such a case, the AC or DC adapter charges again but when FOMA terminal is removed in the middle of charging, the following could occur:
 - Low battery level
 - Message appears indicating that the battery runs out.
 - FOMA terminal is operational for a short time.
- If the battery is sufficiently charged, connecting FOMA terminal to the AC or DC adapter may not start charging.
- If you use FOMA terminal while charging the battery for an extended period with the AC or DC adapter connected, the ambient temperature may rise above the acceptable range.
- Insert or remove the connector to/from FOMA terminal slowly and firmly without forcing it.
- Insert or remove the AC adapter connector straight to/from FOMA terminal.

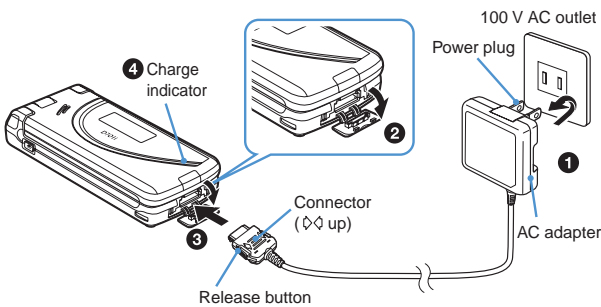
Charging from a wall outlet

Use the FOMA AC adapter 01 (optional) to charge the battery. Also it can be used with the desktop holder D05 (optional).

You can charge the battery with FOMA terminal either closed or open.

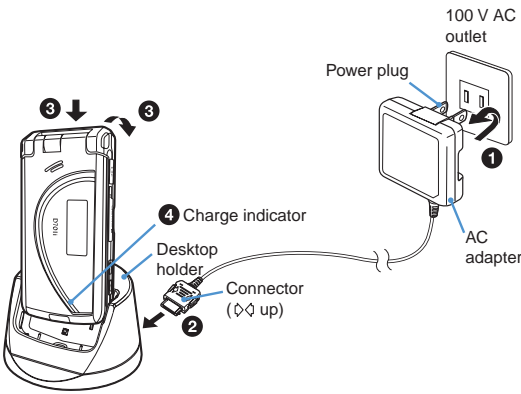
- The battery pack can only be charged when it is attached to FOMA terminal.
- For details, refer to the manuals for the AC adapter and the desktop holder.

Charging the battery with the AC adapter alone



- 1 Unfold the power plug from the AC adapter and plug it into a 100V AC outlet.**
- 2 Open the external connection terminal cap of FOMA terminal.**
- 3 Insert the AC adapter connector in firmly until it clicks.**
- 4 Check that charging starts.** Check that the charge indicator lights in red. When charging is completed, remove the AC adapter connector from FOMA terminal while pressing the release buttons on both sides of the connector, and unplug the AC adapter from the outlet. Then close the terminal cap.

Charging the battery in the desktop holder



- ❶ Unfold the power plug from the AC adapter and plug it into a 100V AC outlet.
- ❷ Insert the AC adapter connector in the desktop holder until it clicks.
- ❸ Insert FOMA terminal vertically into the desktop holder and then tilt back.
- ❹ Check that charging starts. Check that the charge indicator lights in red. When charging is completed, remove FOMA terminal from the desktop holder by tilting to front.

• When inserting FOMA terminal into the desktop holder, be careful not to put a strap in the holder.

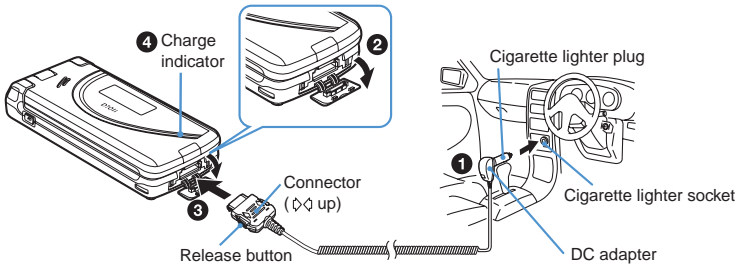
Charging in a car

Use the FOMA DC adapter 01 (optional) to charge the battery in a car. It can be used with negative ground cars (both 12 V and 24 V).

• For details, refer to the DC adapter manual.

- ❶ Insert the cigarette lighter plug of the DC adapter into the cigarette lighter socket of the car.
- ❷ Turn off FOMA terminal and open the external connection terminal cap.
- ❸ Insert the DC adapter connector in firmly until it clicks.
- ❹ Check that charging starts.

When charging is completed, remove the DC adapter connector from FOMA terminal while pressing the release buttons on both sides of the connector, and remove the cigarette lighter plug from the cigarette lighter socket. Then close the terminal cap.



INFORMATION

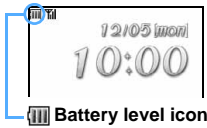
The car battery may be discharged if you charge FOMA terminal with the engine off. Use the DC adapter when the car engine is running.

When not in use, remove the DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket.

The DC adapter fuses (DC adapter: 2A) are consumable items. New fuses are available at automotive supply stores.

The display indicates the remaining battery level in 3 levels.

- The remaining battery level display should be used as a rough indication.



- (Remaining battery level 3): Ample charge
- (Remaining battery level 2): Low charge
- (Remaining battery level 1): Recharging recommended

- The icon can be changed by Battery Icon setting. ●P131

Checking the remaining battery level by sound and display

- The sound does not ring in the following situations:
 - Keypad Sound is set to **OFF**.
 - The ring alert volume for calls is set to **Silent**.
 - Silent Mode is set. (The sound rings if the keypad sound for Customize Silent Mode is not set to **OFF** and the ring alert volume for calls is not set to **Silent** when the personalized silent mode is on.)

1 Press on the stand-by display.

The remaining battery level is displayed. The sound rings at the sound set in Keypad Sound.



When the battery is almost exhausted

A message appears or an alert sound (low battery alert) rings indicating low battery. Charging the battery stops the low battery alert. If you want to stop it immediately, press .

- In stand-by, a message indicating low battery appears. The message disappears by pressing . After a brief interval, it reappears and the low battery alert sounds. At this time, all the icons on top of the screen blink and after approximately 1 minute the power turns off automatically. A message is not displayed on the sub-display while Driving Mode is set. Press to display the message.
- During a call, the low battery alert sounds from the earpiece and a message indicating low battery appears. The message disappears by pressing , , or . When approximately 20 seconds elapses after the low battery alert, the call is cut off and the stand-by display reappears. Then, after approximately 1 minute the power turns off automatically.

- The low battery alert does not sound when Silent Mode or Driving Mode is on. (The low battery alert sounds if the Low battery alert for Customize Silent Mode is set to *ON* when the personalized silent mode is on.)

Default **ON**

- 1 Press **Menu** **8** **1** **5** on the stand-by display.
- 2 Press **2**.
 - To set the alert, press **1**.

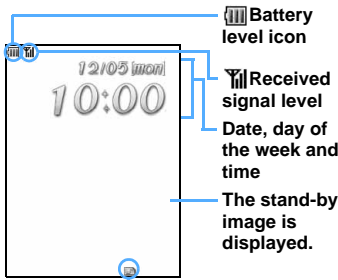
INFORMATION

Even if Low Battery Alert is set to *OFF*, when the battery almost runs out during a call, the low battery alert sounds from the earpiece and a message indicating low battery is displayed.

Turning the power on/off

Turning the power on

- 1 Hold down **PWR** for over 2 seconds.
The wake-up screen is displayed and the stand-by display appears.



UIM is displayed while reading the UIM and disappears when reading is completed.



Received signal level status	
	圏外
Strong \longrightarrow Weak	Outside the service area and where radio waves are hard to reach

- If the date and time have not been set, a message appears informing you that the date and time are not set. Press **OK** and perform Date and Time Setting.
- If no UIM is inserted, a message informing you that attachment of UIM is required is displayed. Turn the power off, insert the UIM and turn the power back on.
- When PIN1 Code ON/OFF is set to *ON*, enter the PIN1 code. The following items can be changed:
 - Stand-by image \blacktriangleleft P120
 - Display format of date and time \blacktriangleleft P134
 - Battery level icon \blacktriangleleft P131

Turning power off

- 1 Hold down **PWR** for over 2 seconds.

INFORMATION

If you make a call or use i-mode communication when  is displayed in locations outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach, move to another locations where the out of service area indication is not displayed. However, calls may be cut off even when  is displayed and you are not moving.





When Reset Call Cost is set to *ON*, enter the PIN2 code.

When the lighting time is set to other than *Always* in Display Light Setting if you do nothing for about 5 minutes while displaying the stand-by display or making a voice call, the display light is turned off automatically. If *AC adapter connected* is set to *Terminal settings* or it is charged, the same situation will occur. The display light is turned on again if there is any key operation or incoming call.

Switching to English mode

Select Language

Default Japanese

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Press .

- To switch to Japanese mode, press .

INFORMATION

The content of the setting is saved in the UIM.

In English mode, the character input mode changes in the following order: 半英 (alphabet) 半数 (numeric) 漢 (hiragana/kanji) 半カナ (katakana)





Setting the date and time

Date and Time Setting

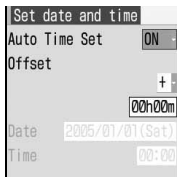
The time setting can be done in two ways: obtaining the time information from DoCoMo network to adjust the time settings of your FOMA terminal, or manually input current time to your terminal.

- If *Auto Time Set* is *ON*, automatic time correction takes place when UIM is inserted and you turn the power on in a location where radio waves reach.
- Automatic time correction sometimes causes a time error of several seconds. It may fail to correct the time depending on the radio wave condition.
- Even if time information is received while i- ppli is running, time might not be able to be corrected depending on i- ppli.
- If *Auto Time Set* is set to *ON*, time might not be set for a while.
- When no UIM is inserted or FOMA terminal is in a location where radio waves are hard to reach or out of the service area, the automatic time correction will be unavailable even if you turn the power off and then on.

Default Auto Time Set: ON Offset: +, 00h00m

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.



- When you set *Auto Time Set* to *ON*, specify the offset time. Date and time adjustment is not available.

Auto Time Set : Turn the automatic time correction on/off.

- To enter the date and time manually, set *Auto Time Set* to *OFF*.

Offset : Specify the amount of time advance (+) or delay (-) so that your terminal's clock advances from/delays to the time obtained at certain hours and minutes.

- Enter the time between 00h00m and 23h59m.
- Prefix 0 if the time and/or minute is single digit (0 to 9).

Date, Time : Set the date and the time.

- The year should be specified by the last 2 digits of year. From January 1, 2000 to December 31, 2050 is available.
 - Enter time in the 24-hour clock (00h00m - 23h59m).
 - Prefix 0 if the month, date, time and/or minute is single digit (0 to 9).
- Also, you can increase or decrease the entered values by pressing \updownarrow . Or, repeat pressing \updownarrow till the value to change is highlighted, and then enter the number.

3 Press \square .

INFORMATION

You cannot use the following functions when the date and time are not set:

- Scheduler
- Auto Power ON/OFF
- i- ppli DX requiring the time setting \blacktriangleleft P282
- Downloading i-motion with replay restrictions set \blacktriangleleft P319
- Data (schedule) transfer \blacktriangleleft P346, P347
- Update Definition
- SSL communication (authentication)
- Alarm Clock
- i- ppli auto start \blacktriangleleft P293
- Software Update
- Certificate Download \blacktriangleleft P208

If the date and time are not set, the date and time are not recorded for the following functions and “-/-/-/” or “-----” is displayed. A number to segmentalize (segmental number) may be appended.

- Redial/Received Calls
- Date and time of image/video shot with the camera \blacktriangleleft P158
- Date and time in file name of data read by Bar Code Reader \blacktriangleleft P173
- Date and time of downloaded i- ppli \blacktriangleleft P287
- Date and time of downloaded still image, melody, i-motion, mail template \blacktriangleleft P342, P229
- Answer Machine, Voice Memo
- Notepad
- Date and time of sent mail, unsent mail \blacktriangleleft P248

The set time remains even when the battery pack is replaced, but may be reset if the battery pack is removed for an extended period. In this case, set the date and time again.

You can set the date and time by pressing Menu $\left[\frac{4}{\text{Call}} \right]$ during a voice call.

When Call Cost Limit or Reset Call Cost is set to *ON*, entry of the security code is required.

Notifying your phone number to the other party

Caller ID Notification

Set FOMA terminal to send your phone number (caller ID) to be displayed on the other party's phone every time you make a call.

- Caller ID is your important information. Carefully consider whether to send your caller ID.
- Caller ID is displayed only when the other party's phone has the ability to display the caller ID.
- You do not need to apply to use Caller ID Notification. No monthly fee is required.
- Caller ID Notification cannot be set in a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Move to another location with good radio reception.
- For details, see "Network Services User's Guide".

1 Press on the stand-by display.

Checking current settings

1 Press on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.

2 Enter the network security code and press .

- The network security code entered is masked with “*”.
- To hide caller ID, press .

INFORMATION

You can use the following ways to show/hide caller ID to the other party.

- Setting to either show/hide caller ID for each phonebook entry
- Setting to either show/hide caller ID for each call

If you hear a guidance to request your caller ID when you make a call, call back after setting FOMA terminal to send your caller ID.

Menu 47

Checking your own phone number

Own Number

Check your phone number (*My phone number*), name, mail address, etc.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

- The phone number of the UIM inserted into the FOMA terminal is displayed as *My phone number*.
- To check your i-mode Mail address, press on the stand-by display to display iMenu, then select *English* *Confirm Mail Address*.

INFORMATION

Press to check your phone number during a call.

Saving information other than phone number

You can send or receive the Own Number information between other FOMA terminals with infrared communication function.

Making/Receiving Calls

Making calls

Making calls	52
Switching from a voice call to a video-phone call.....	55
Calling back previously called numbers	Redial 56
Setting whether to send your phone number for each call ..	186/184 Call 57
Making calls by setting the conditions	Customized Call 58
Using international calls	WORLD CALL 58
Making a call by specifying a sub-address	Sub Address 60
Setting the alarm indicating reconnection of the interrupted call	Reconnect Alarm 60
Suppressing ambient noises to improve the call quality	Noise Reduction 61
Talking without using hands in a car	In-car Handsfree 61

Receiving calls

Receiving calls	62
Receiving a call by switching from a voice call to a video-phone call.....	64
Enabling use of dial keys to answer a call	Any Key Answer 65
Setting to start talking by opening FOMA terminal	Open Answer 65
Disconnecting/holding/continuing a call by closing FOMA terminal	Close Setting 65
Using Received Calls	Received Calls 66
Adjusting the volume of the caller's voice	Volume Setting 68
Adjusting the ring volume	Ring Volume Setting 68
Setting operations when receiving voice/video-phone calls	Incoming Call Setting/Video-phone Receiving Setting 69
Setting priority screen displayed for incoming calls during a call or packet communication	Priority Comm Mode 70

When you can/could not answer a call

Putting incoming calls on hold when you cannot answer right away	Response and Hold 71
Setting a response hold guidance	Status Message 72
Setting an on-hold tone	On-hold Tone 72
Setting not to receive calls during driving	Driving Mode 73
Allowing the caller to leave message when you cannot answer the call	Answer Machine 75

Making calls



The procedures for making voice calls and the common operations for voice calls and video-phone calls are explained here.

- You cannot make calls even if you press dial keys when Keypad Dial Lock is on.
- Do not cover the built-in antenna with your hands during a call.

1 Enter a phone number on the stand-by display.




Calling general subscriber phone	Always include the area code even when calling from the same city.
Calling mobile phone	090 - XXXX - XXXX 080 - XXXX - XXXX
Calling PHS phone	070 - XXXX - XXXX

- You can enter up to 80 digits for the phone number. However, only 24 digits are displayed.
- To correct the phone number, press .
- To return to the stand-by display, hold down  for over a second.

2 Press .




You will hear a dial tone. You can start talking when the call is answered.


- If the phone of the other party is busy, you will hear busy signals. Press  to end the call and make a call again later. You can call back quickly using Redial.
- If the power of the other party's mobile phone or PHS is turned off or the other party is in an area where radio waves are hard to reach, a guidance informs that the connection is unavailable.


3 Press when a call is finished.


- You can also end the call by closing FOMA terminal. To keep the call connected when you close FOMA terminal, change the setting in Close Setting.

INFORMATION

You can also make a call in order of Step 2, Step 1. A voice call will be made automatically about 5 seconds after you have pressed  and entered the phone number.

You may not be able to make a call while executing another function.  P468

When a call is made to the other party with a video/i-motion set for the image of the phonebook data, the first frame of the video/i-motion is displayed on the dialing screen.  P96

Multiple communication functions can be used simultaneously.  P360, P466

If a guidance to request your caller ID is heard when a call is made, call again after you have set FOMA terminal to send your caller ID.

When you make a call by entering a phone number without appending "186" or "184" before the phone number or by setting *Caller ID to No specified* in Customized Call, the operation depends on the setting for Caller ID Notification.

When there is an incoming packet call during a voice call, the incoming screen appears according to the setting for Priority Comm Mode.

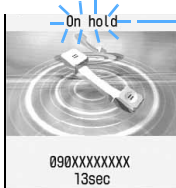
A flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) can be used to make calls.

Putting the call on hold while talking allows you to talk without the caller hearing your voice.

- The callers are charged for the time spent on hold.

1 Press during a call.

The call is put on hold and a guidance is played. For video-phone calls, the on-hold image is displayed on your and the other party's terminals.








On-hold during a voice call

Flashes




On-hold during a video-phone call


On-hold image

- Press  or  while a voice call is on hold to cancel the hold.
- Press  while a video-phone call is on hold to cancel the hold and send the image that has been sent before the hold. Press  to cancel the hold and send your image to the other party. Press  to cancel the hold and send a substitute image.

INFORMATION

To put the call on hold by closing FOMA terminal, change the setting in Close Setting. When the call is put on hold by closing FOMA terminal, the hold cannot be released even if FOMA terminal is opened.





The melody can be played while on hold.  P72

The on-hold image can be changed.  P88

Using the speakerphone function

You can make a call allowing the voice of the other party to be heard from the speaker.

1 Enter a phone number on the stand-by display and hold down or for over a second.

- While dialing, you can switch between the ordinary call and the call using the speakerphone function by pressing . While talking, you can switch by pressing  or .
-  is displayed while using the speakerphone function.
- The operation is the same as when operating from the list of the phonebook, redials, received calls, recorded messages and voice memos.

INFORMATION

When switching to the speakerphone function, the volume may suddenly increase and damage your ears, so use it with FOMA terminal away from your ears.

If a call is hard to hear with a large amount of noise around you or the other party, make the call from earpiece normally.

Talk to FOMA terminal within about 30 cm.

The speakerphone function can also be used even when Silent Mode is on.

Operation during voice calls

- The following operations can be performed from the submenu:

Submenu item	Description	Page
1 Switch to V-phone	Switches from a voice call to a video-phone call.	P55
2 Received calls	Displays received calls.	P66
3 Redial	Displays redials.	P56
4 Set time	Sets the date and time.	P48
5 Reconnect alarm*1	Allows setting an alarm sound indicating reconnection of a call under improved signal quality which has been cut off due to poor signal quality.	P60
6 Quality alarm*1	Sets whether to sound an alarm when your call is about to be cut off due to poor signal quality.	P118
7 Terminal close	Sets whether to hang up by closing FOMA terminal.	P65
8 Dial up	Allows making a call to another party during a call using Call Waiting Service.	P401

*1 The setting can be changed while an alarm sounds. It becomes effective when the alarm is stopped.

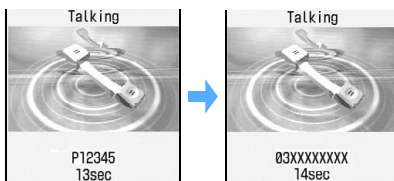
- The operations that can be performed during a call by the keys are as follows:
 - Press to start the phonebook.
 - Hold down for over a second to record the other party's voice (Talking Voice Memo).
 - Press or to adjust the volume.
 - Press for received calls or for redials to display.
 - Press to activate Camera.

Entering pauses or timed pauses

- Pauses and timed pauses apply only to voice calls.

Example When you call to "03XXXXXXXXP12345" (P=Entered pause)

When you press after the call is connected, all phone numbers after the pause are dialed.



Entering a pause "P"

A pause (P) is used for sending messages to beepers*, operating the answering system at home, reserving tickets, etc. At the point the pause (P) is entered, the dial digits are separated and a tone signal (DTMF) is sent.

1 Hold down for over a second.

- You cannot make a call if a pause is entered at the beginning of the phone number.

Entering a timed pause "T"

A timed pause (T) is used to dial outside line numbers with extensions. Enter "T" between the outside line and extension number to dial the extension number after a pause of a set number of seconds following the outside line number.

1 Hold down for over a second.

- Timed pauses can be entered in succession.
- Each timed pause is followed by a second interval.
- You cannot make a call if a timed pause is entered at the beginning of the phone number.

INFORMATION

Tone signals (DTMF) may not be received depending on the receiving device.


When it is necessary to send tone signals (DTMF) following voice prompts as in making ticket reservations, the speakerphone function is useful. In this case, input tone signals (DTMF) after switching to the speakerphone.

A subscriber to Call Waiting Service cannot make a call to another party by putting the current call on hold and entering a pause (P) or timed pause (T).

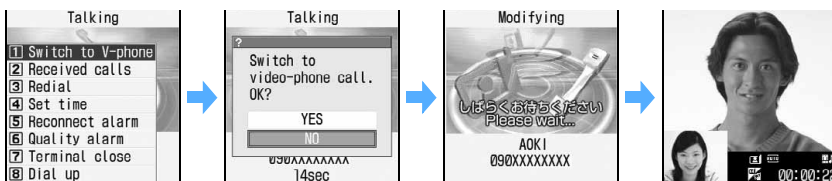
When **On-hold** is set in Close Setting, the call is continued even if you close FOMA terminal while sending tone signals (DTMF). After the tone signals are sent, the call will be put on hold.


Switching from a voice call to a video-phone call

You can switch to a video-phone by operating from the submenu during a voice call when the other terminal is compatible with switching a call. Switching can be performed only from the terminal which made the voice call.

- This operation can be performed during a call between the terminals that support switching between voice call/video-phone call.
- To switch to a video-phone call, the other party needs to set **Indication ON** of Indicate V-phone in advance. P91

1 Press during a voice call and select **YES**.



- The guidance that the call is switched is played during switching the call.
- Select **NO** to return to the voice call talking screen.
- You can switch to the call using the speakerphone function by pressing  while switching the call.

INFORMATION

During packet communication, disconnect the packet communication and switch to a video-phone call.


When the other party is during packet communication, the call cannot be switched to a video-phone call.

While talking on the phone using Call Waiting Service, you cannot switch the call to a video-phone call.

It takes about 5 seconds to switch. In addition, it might take time to switch depending on radio wave conditions.

A voice call may not be switched to a video-phone call and the connection may be interrupted due to radio wave conditions.

The call is not charged while **Modifying** is displayed.

Switching from a video-phone call to a voice call P83

The second call received during switching a call is rejected and recorded in the received call list.

The speakerphone function is used continuously even if a voice call and video-phone call are switched.

The settings (such as switching the cameras) during a video-phone call are canceled when a voice call and a video-phone call are switched.


According to the call duration of a video-phone call and voice call, the call charges are added, respectively.

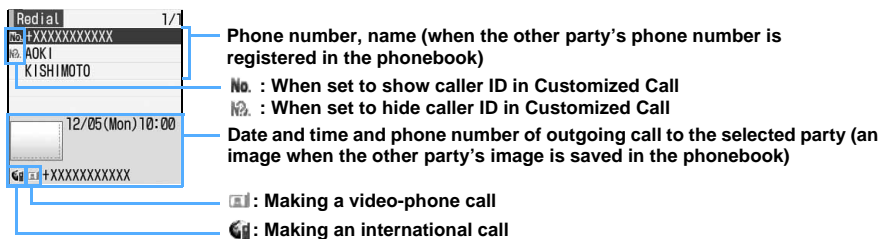
* From January 2001, the DoCoMo display beeper name has changed to "QUICKCAST".

Calling back previously called numbers













This function records the number you dialed as call history (Redial). When the phone of the other party is busy, etc., you can redial by simple operation.

- The redial list can contain up to 30 entries. When the number exceeds 30, the oldest one is deleted.
- When the date and time have not been set, the date and time is not recorded in the redial data.
- When the same number is redialed, only the most recent call is recorded for each of *No specified*, *Notify*, *Not notify* of the caller ID set in Customized Call.
- While not in Secret Mode, when the call is made to the other party who is registered in the phonebook with Secret Attribute set, the phone numbers of the other party is displayed in the redial data.


- 1 Press  on the stand-by display and place the cursor at the party to redial from the redial list.




Registering an entry to the phonebook

- 1 Place the cursor at the redial to register and press  .
 - To add the data to an existing phonebook entry, press  .
- 2 Press   or   and register the name or address. **☛P95, P99**
 - To add the data to an existing phonebook entry, press   or   and select the entry to update. **☛P105**


Composing SMS

- 1 Place the cursor at the redial to set for an address and hold down  for over a second.

The SMS composition screen with the redial phone number specified as the address is displayed.



- If the redial phone number is saved in the phonebook together with mail addresses, pressing  displays the i-mode Mail composition screen with the first mail address specified as the address. If not, the screen is displayed with the redial phone number specified as the address.

Switching to the received call list

- 1 Press .
 - Each press switches the screen between the redial list and received call list.

- 2 Press .

A voice call is made.

- Press  to make a video-phone call.
- Press  to make a call in the same way as in the way of dialing of the selected redial (voice call in case the redial is a voice call/video-phone call in case the redial is a video-phone call). Note that the redial dialed by 32K video-phone call is dialed by 64K video-phone call.

INFORMATION

When Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*), entry of the terminal security code is required.

When Keypad Dial Lock or PIM Lock is set, the numbers recorded in the redial data up to that point are deleted. Note that calls made after the setting are recorded and can be made from the redial data.

When you switch between the voice call and video-phone call during a call, the call type (voice call/video-phone call) that was specified when you dialed will be recorded in the redial data.

You can make a call after switching to show/hide the caller ID or appending a prefix to the phone number.

●P58

Deleting redials

- 1 Press on the stand-by display.
- 2 Place the cursor at the redial to delete and press .
 - To delete all redials, press .
- 3 Select **Yes**.

Setting whether to send your phone number for each call

186/184 Call

Set whether to make your phone number (caller ID) to display on the other party's terminal when you make a call.

- The caller ID is your important information. Carefully consider whether to send your caller ID.
- The caller ID is displayed only when the other party's terminal has the ability to display caller ID.

Making calls by adding "186 (✕31#)" / "184 (#31#)" to the phone numbers

Prefix a specific number to the beginning of the phone number when you make a call.

Showing your caller ID

" (or) + the other party's phone number +

- To make a video-phone call, press instead of .

Hiding your caller ID

" (or) + the other party's phone number +

- To make a video-phone call, press instead of .

INFORMATION

If a guidance to request your caller ID is heard when you make a call, call back after you have set FOMA terminal to notify your caller ID.

When setting/operating the multiple caller ID notification methods simultaneously, the caller ID is notified in the following priority order (① to ③).

- ① When you select the caller ID notification method from *Customized call* in the submenu when making a call
- ② When appending "186 (✕ 31#)" / "184 (#31#)" before the other party's phone number
- ③ When setting Caller ID Notification

Also, when setting/operating the above caller ID notification methods simultaneously, the number displayed on the screen may differ from the actually sent number (with or without caller ID notification).

When making an international call, the caller ID may not be notified depending on the going phone company even if "186 (✕ 31#)" is added.



When making a call adding "186 (✕ 31#)" / "184 (#31#)" to the other party's phone number, the phone number added with "186 (✕ 31#)" / "184 (#31#)" is also recorded in the redial data.

Making calls by setting the conditions

Customized Call

This function allows you to select a call type, show/hide your caller ID, use multi-number and append a prefix for each voice/video-phone call.


1 Enter a phone number on the stand-by display and press **3** .

- The operation is the same as when operating from the list of redials, received calls, recorded messages or voice memos.
- Customized Call can also be made by pressing  **5**  on the phonebook list.


2 Select each item to set a condition for dialing.

Call Type : Select from *Voice call*, *64K V-phone*, or *32K V-phone*.

Caller ID : Set to show/hide caller ID. When *No specified* is set, the setting for Caller ID Notification is used.

Multi No. :  P407

Prefix : Select the number (prefix) appended before the phone number.


- Prefix  P59

3 Press and select *Yes*.

A call is made by the settings.

INFORMATION

Even if the number “186 (✕ 31#)/”184 (#31#)” are added to the phone number in the phonebook, the number notification of this function have the priority.

On the details (*Top/Phone*) screen of the FOMA terminal phonebook, the details screen of the UIM phonebook or the details (*Phone*) screen of Own Number, press  and select *Customized call*.

If a guidance to request your caller ID is played when a call is made, call back after you have set FOMA terminal to send your caller ID.












In case of international call, caller ID may not be notified depending on the going phone company even when *Notify* is selected in *Caller ID*.

Using international calls

WORLD CALL

DoCoMo international call service “WORLD CALL”

- This international call service “WORLD CALL” is available for DoCoMo mobile phones.
- How to call

       ►    ► country code ► area code ► the other party's phone number ► 

- The above phone number can be registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- When the area code begins with “0”, dial without “0”. (When calling to a general subscriber phone and other phones in Italy, you need to dial “0”).

- You can call to approximately 220 countries and regions around the world.
- WORLD CALL charges are added to the FOMA service charges every month.

- No subscription charges or monthly fee is required.
 - You were subscribed to “WORLD CALL” as one of standard services at the time of subscription to the FOMA service (unless you request not to subscribe to it).
- Change the international call dial procedure
MY LINE service is not applicable to mobile telephone communications, including WORLD CALL service. However, along with the introducing of MY LINE service, the dialing procedure for international communications using a mobile telephone was changed. Consequently, the previous dial procedure (without prefix “010”) no longer be used.
- Contact “General Inquiries” on the back of this manual for details.
 - To use the international call services other than the DoCoMo service, contact the carrier for details.
- Some billing plans are not available.

“International video-phone” calls to parties using specific overseas 3G mobile phone terminals can be made by dialing as described above and placing a call in the video-phone mode.

- For the countries and overseas carriers you can connect to, visit the DoCoMo website.
- The image of the other party displayed on FOMA terminal may be distorted or connection may not be established depending on the terminal at the other end of the international video-phone line.

Using “WORLD CALL” by simplified dialing

Auto Assist Setting

If *Auto* is set for Auto Assist Setting, entering “+” followed by phone number from a country code makes an international call easily appending “009130010” for international call automatically.

- If “+” is prefixed to dial followed by the country code of Japan “81”, “009130010” for international call is not appended even when *Auto* is set for Auto Assist Setting.

Default Auto

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press .

- To cancel the setting, press .

When making international calls using Auto Assist Setting

- ① Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display and enter a country code and then phone number.
 - “+” can be entered by holding down for over a second.
- ② Press .

Setting numbers other than “WORLD CALL”

Prefix

By registering a number to add to the beginning of the phone number (Prefix) in advance, you can add a prefix even after entering the phone number to make an international call easily.

- The default setting is “009130010” for international calls. “009130010” can be changed to another prefix.

Default 009130010

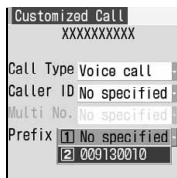
1 Press on the stand-by display.




2 Select *Prefix* field and enter a number.

- Up to 3 numbers in total and up to 10 digits for each number can be entered.
- Do not include a pause or timed pause in the phone number. If you set a prefix containing a pause or timed pause, you cannot add the prefix when making a call.

3 Press .

Selecting a prefix when making an international call



- ① Enter a country code and then phone number on the stand-by display.
- ② Press   and select *Prefix* field.
- ③ Select a prefix number to be used.
- ④ Press  and select *Yes*.





Making a call by specifying a sub-address


Sub Address


Specify a sub-address to call a specific phone or communication device.

- This setting is also used to select the contents in a video delivery service, "V-Live".




 **ON**

1 Press  **8**  **7**  **7**  on the stand-by display.

2 Press .

- To cancel the setting, press .

How to call

Press  (sub-address delimiter) after the phone number, enter a sub-address and press  (for a voice call) or  (for a video-phone call). Note that the sub-address needs to be set for the other party's terminal or communication device.

INFORMATION

Even when Sub Address is *ON*, if a phone number begins with "*" or an added prefix contains "*", the digits after "*" are not recognized as a sub-address and called as the number containing "*". To access "V-Live", enter the number including the first "*".

Even when Sub Address is *ON*, if "*" is pressed after entering a pause or timed pause, it is not recognized as a sub-address delimiter and sent as tone signals (DTMF) containing "*".

Setting the alarm indicating reconnection of the interrupted call

Reconnect Alarm

Sets an alarm that is heard at the time of reconnecting the voice call or video-phone call interrupted by poor signal conditions in a tunnel or behind a building when signal conditions improve.

- The other party's voice is not heard while signals are disrupted.
- The time until the call is reconnected depends on line use or signal conditions. (The approximate time is a maximum of 10 seconds.)
- Note that the call is charged for the time until the call is reconnected (up to 10 seconds).
- The call may be cut off before the alarm sounds depending on line use or signal conditions.

- 1 Press on the stand-by display.
- 2 Press to .

Suppressing ambient noises to improve the call quality

Noise Reduction

By suppressing ambient noises during a call, the other party can hear your voice clearly and you can also hear the other party's voice clearly.

- It is recommended that this function be turned *ON* when using normally.

Default ON

- 1 Press on the stand-by display.
- 2 Press .
 - To cancel the setting, press .

Talking without using hands in a car

In-car Handsfree

You can make and receive voice calls from a handsfree compatible device by connecting FOMA terminal to such device as the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional) or car navigation system via USB.

- To operate from a handsfree device, set USB Mode Setting to *Communication mode*.
- For operations of handsfree devices, refer to the instruction manual for each handsfree device. Note that the FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (optional) is required to use the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional).

INFORMATION

The display and ring tone for incoming calls follow the FOMA terminal settings.

If the setting is made to play sounds from a handsfree device, the ring tone sounds from a handsfree device even if FOMA terminal is set to Silent Mode or *OFF* is set for Sound Setting.

The operation during incoming calls in Driving Mode follows the Driving Mode settings.

If a video-phone call is made with a handsfree compatible device using the phonebook or Redial, it depends on the communication speed setting of the handsfree compatible device. If no communication speed setting is made, the video-phone call is made at fixed 64K.






When a video-phone call is made/received with a handsfree compatible device, a substitute image is sent to the other party.

The operation during incoming calls when Answer Machine is set follows the Answer Machine settings.

If the setting is made to play sounds from FOMA terminal, the operation when FOMA terminal is closed during a call follows Close Setting. If the setting is made to play sounds from a handsfree device, the call continues even if FOMA terminal is closed, regardless of Close Setting.


Receiving calls

The procedures for receiving voice calls and the common operations for voice calls and video-phone calls are explained here.

- For a voice call, calls can also be answered by pressing  to , , and  other than  (Any Key Answer). ●P65

1 A call is received.




The ring tone sounds, the display light turns on and the call indicator lights/flashes.

- Press  to put the call on hold (Response and Hold).

2 Press .



You can talk. The call duration is displayed.

- Press  to put the call on hold (On-hold).
- You can switch to calls using the speakerphone function by pressing  or .
- You can also answer the calls by opening FOMA terminal. ●P65

3 Press when a call is finished.

- You can also end the call by closing FOMA terminal. To keep the call connected when you close FOMA terminal, change the setting in Close Setting.

Display information

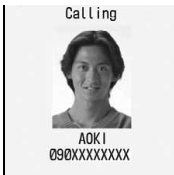
The caller's phone number, name or still image, video/i-motion may be displayed on the screen according to the terminal condition of the caller and the FOMA terminal settings. The name or phone number can be set not to be displayed. ●P127

When the other party has sent their caller ID



When the phone number of the other party is not registered in your phonebook, the phone number and the image set in Incoming Call Setting or Video-phone Receiving Setting is displayed.

- When the phone/video-phone call of Sound Setting is set to **Movie ringtone**, Movie ringtone is played. When Movie ringtone is with sound only (i-motion without image such as singer's vocals), the default incoming image is displayed, however, the image can be changed in Incoming Call Setting or Video-phone Receiving Setting.

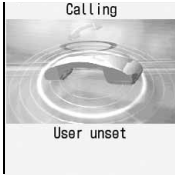


If the phone number of the other party has been already registered in your phonebook, the name and phone number are displayed. In addition, when Contact Image is **ON**, the still image or video/i-motion set in the phonebook is also displayed. ●P126

- When the ring alert settings are set to **Movie ringtone**, the image for Movie ringtone is played according to the setting in order of priority of 1. phonebook (phonebook No.) 2. phonebook (group) 3. phone/video-phone of Sound Setting. When the image for Movie ringtone or the phonebook is not set, the image set in Incoming Call Setting is displayed.

If the other party's caller ID is not notified

Displays a reason why no caller ID is sent.



Reason for no caller ID	Description
<i>User unset</i>	The caller selected not to send the caller ID.
<i>Payphone</i>	The call was made from a payphone, etc.
<i>Not support</i>	The call was made from a party who cannot send caller ID, such as a call from overseas or from a general subscriber phone via forwarding service (however, caller ID may be displayed depending on connecting phone companies.)

When a voice call arrives, an incoming operation or image set in Anonymous Caller is prioritized. When a video-phone call comes in, an incoming image operates according to Video-phone Receiving Setting.

Operations when FOMA terminal is closed

The call indicator flashes/lights and the sub-display indication and ring tone notify you when there is an incoming call.

- When the other party has sent the caller ID, the name registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook is displayed. The reason for no caller ID is displayed when the caller ID has not been sent. Name displays **P94**
- When *Hide callers' info* is set for Sub-display Info Setting, the other party's phone number or name is not displayed regardless of whether the caller ID has been sent or not.

Operations while receiving calls

- When there is an incoming voice call, you can perform the following operations from the submenu. When *Answer* is set for Arrival Call Act, the same operation can also work when there is another incoming call during a call.

Submenu item	Description
① <i>Voice mail</i> ^{*1}	Transfers the incoming call to the Voice Mail Service Center.
② <i>Call rejection</i>	Disconnects the call (the caller does not pay for the call).
③ <i>Call forwarding</i> ^{*2}	Forwards the incoming call to the forwarding phone number.

*1 Valid when you use Voice Mail Service and have received a voice call.

*2 Valid when you use Call Forwarding Service and have set a forwarding phone number.

- You can respond a call with Answer Machine by holding down **[RECORD]** for over a second (Quick Record Message).
- You can also adjust the ring volume or stop the vibrator. **P69**

When you hear beeps (call waiting ring tone) while talking

If you subscribe to Voice Mail, Call Waiting or Call Forwarding Service, you will hear beeps (the call waiting ring tone) when you receive another incoming call while talking and the following operations can be performed:

- If you do not subscribe to Call Waiting Service, you cannot receive calls even if you hear beeps.

Service	Operation	Page
Voice Mail Service ^{*1}	Transfers the incoming call to the Voice Mail Service Center.	P398
Call Waiting Service	Puts the current call on hold and answers the second call.	P400
Call Forwarding Service ^{*1}	Forwards the incoming call to the forwarding phone number.	P401

*1 This service can be selected when you set Arrival Call Act to *Answer* and activate it in Arrival Act Setting.

INFORMATION

For calls received from callers not registered in the phonebook, you can reject calls, or set the ring tone or vibrator ringer action not to start immediately. ●P152, P151

Call Rejection can be set for some parties registered in the phonebook. ●P149

Telephones that do not support dialing out-of-town calls such as in-building phones and PBX cannot be used to make calls to FOMA terminals.

When there is an incoming packet call during a voice call, the incoming screen appears according to the setting for Priority Comm Mode.

Multiple communication functions can be used simultaneously. ●P360, P466

When a call forwarded from FOMA terminal arrives, the phone number from which it was forwarded is displayed at the lower left part of the incoming screen. Note that the name is not displayed but only the phone number is displayed even if the phone number of forwarding source is saved in the phonebook. The phone number may not be displayed depending on the forwarding source.

Even if i-motion is set to the image for incoming calls in the phonebook or Incoming Call Setting, i-motion is not played and the first frame of i-motion is displayed when there is an incoming voice call during the voice call.

If a voice call arrives during Software Update, any video/i-motion set as the ring tone is not played.

i-motion set as the ring tone in Sound Setting may change to *パターン1* if there is an incoming call while i-motion is being deleted or saved, regardless of the settings. If a melody or incoming image is set, when a call arrives while the melody or image is being moved, deleted and saved, the melody may be *パターン1* or the image may be *Standard image*.

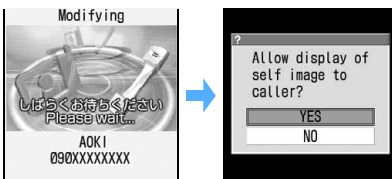
When you receive an international call, a plus sign (+) appears at the beginning of the caller ID.

A flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) can be used to receive calls.

Receiving a call by switching from a voice call to a video-phone call

- The operation for switching can be performed only from the side which made the voice call. It cannot be performed from the side which received the voice call.
- To receive the request of switching to a video-phone call, set *Indication ON* of Indicate V-phone. ●P91

1 Receive the request of switching to a video-phone call during a voice call.



- The guidance notifying that the call is switched is played while switching the call.

2 Select *YES*.

The call is switched to a video-phone call and your self image is sent to the other party.

- Select *NO* to send the substitute image to the other party.
- When you select *YES* in Step 2, your self image is sent for the first time.

Enabling use of dial keys to answer a call

Any Key Answer

Allows you to answer a call by pressing **0** (0 発信 受話), **9** (9 W XYZ), ***** (＊ 発信 Intox?), or **#** (# 77?) other than **☎**.

- This function is available only for voice calls. However, it is unavailable when receiving a call while talking.

Default ON

- 1 Press **Menu** **8** (8 TUV) **6** (6 MNO) **8** (8 TUV) on the stand-by display.
- 2 Press **1** (1 発信).
 - To cancel the setting, press **2** (2 P ABC).

Setting to start talking by opening FOMA terminal

Open Answer

- This function is available only for voice calls (it is also available while Lock on Close is on).

Default OFF

- 1 Press **Menu** **8** (8 TUV) **7** (7 P ABC) **9** (9 W XYZ) on the stand-by display.
- 2 Press **1** (1 発信).
 - To cancel the setting, press **2** (2 P ABC).

Disconnecting/holding/continuing a call by closing FOMA terminal

Close Setting

- This function does not operate during 64K data communication or packet communication.

Default End the call

- 1 Press **Menu** **8** (8 TUV) **7** (7 P ABC) **8** (8 TUV) on the stand-by display.
- 2 Press **1** (1 発信) to **3** (3 DEF).
 - End the call** : Ends the call.
 - On-hold** : Puts the call on hold and sends an on-hold tone to the other party.
 - Continue(mute)**: Continues the call without putting it on hold. During a video-phone call, the call can be continued with the image as it is.

INFORMATION

When **End the call** is set, closing FOMA terminal while on hold ends the call.

When **On-hold** is set, the operations are as follows:

- The call is put on hold if you close FOMA terminal while recording a talking voice memo.
- The call is continued even if you close FOMA terminal while sending tone signals (DTMF) or switching between a voice call and a video-phone call. After the tone signals are sent, the call will be put on hold.

When **Continue(mute)** is set, the substitute image is sent if FOMA terminal is closed while switching from a voice call to a video-phone call or it is opened after switching the call.

When *Continue(mute)* is set or when FOMA terminal is connected with a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) or handsfree compatible device, the following operations occur if you close FOMA terminal:

- While sending your self image, a substitute image is sent to the other party.
- While sending a substitute image or still image, the image continues to be sent to the other party.

When you close FOMA terminal during a call using a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) or other handsfree compatible devices (available in market) connected, the call continues regardless of this function's setting if the settings is made to play sounds from the connected device.

When you close FOMA terminal while recording a message, the recording is continued regardless of this setting.

This setting is applied when FOMA terminal is closed while recording a talking voice memo. When *On-hold* is set, the contents which were being recorded by just before putting on hold are saved.

Using Received Calls

Received Calls records all the incoming calls both answered and unanswered (missed calls) in memory. Recorded messages are also included in the list.

- Up to 30 calls are recorded. When the number exceeds 30, the oldest one is deleted chronologically.
- When the date and time are not set, the date and time are not recorded in the received call history.
- While not in Secret Mode, when the call is received from the other party who is registered in the phonebook with Secret Attribute set, the other party's phone number is displayed on the received call history.

Example Making calls from the received call history

1 Press **⊙** on the stand-by display and place the cursor at a received call from the list.

The screenshot shows the 'Received Calls' menu with the following details:

- Header: Received Calls 1/1
- Call 1: 090XXXXXXXX, AOKI, 03XXXXXXXX, User unset
- Call 2: 12/05 (Mon) 10:00, Ring: 8s, 090XXXXXXXX

Legend for icons:

- : Received video-phone call
- : Received 64K data communication
- : Received international call
- : Missed call (unread)
- : Missed call (read)
- : Recorded message exists
- : Recorded message is deleted

2 Press **⏪** or **⏩**.

- Pressing **⊙** makes calls in the same way as in the way of receiving of the selected received call (voice call/video-phone call).

Registering an entry into the phonebook


① Place the cursor at the received call to register and press **Menu** **1**.

- To add the data to an existing phonebook entry, press **Menu** **2**.



② Press **1** or **2** and register the name or address. **P95, P99**


- To add the data to an existing phonebook entry, press **1** or **2** and select the entry to be registered. **P105**

Composing SMS

- 1 Place the cursor at the received call to be set as an address and hold down  for over a second.

The SMS composition screen that the phone number of the received call is specified as the address appears.

- When the cursor is placed on the received call with the reason for no caller ID, the SMS composition screen without address appears by holding down  for over a second.
- If the phone number of the received call is registered in the phonebook together with the mail address, pressing  displays the i-mode Mail composition screen with the first mail address specified as the address. If not, the screen is displayed with the phone number of the received call specified as the address.


When the cursor is placed on the received call with the reason for no caller ID, pressing  displays the i-mode Mail composition screen without address.

Switching to the redial list

- 1 Press .

- Each press switches the screen between the received call list and redial list.











Unanswered calls (missed calls)


 with the number of missed calls is indicated and the call is recorded in the received call history.

☛P38

- When *Indicator light* in Alert Lighting Setting is set to *ON*, the call indicator flashes while FOMA terminal is closed until the missed calls will be displayed.
- You can confirm the number of missed calls with FOMA terminal closed. ☛P32
- When there is a missed call from an unknown phone number, the ringing time enables you to check whether the call is a malicious call (One-Ring Call, etc.) made for the sole purpose of leaving the phone number in the received call history.

INFORMATION

If *Missed call* is set to *Not display* and *Delayed ring alert* is set to *ON* in Mute Seconds Setting, missed calls within the set delay time are not displayed. Press     on the received call list to display the corresponding missed calls. To return to the previous received call, press    and to display all the received calls, press   .

When only missed calls within the set delay time are recorded as received calls, pressing  on the stand-by display displays a confirmation screen notifying you of received calls not displayed. When *Yes* is selected, missed calls within the set delay time are displayed.

Calls received from callers using dial-in services in such as office may display different numbers from the caller's dial-in number.

When Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*), entry of the terminal security code is required.

When Keypad Dial Lock or PIM Lock is set, the numbers stored in the received call history up to that point are deleted. Note that the received calls after setting are recorded in the received call history and calls can be made from it when PIM Lock is on.

When Reject non-Reg. Caller is set, any call from the other party not registered in the phonebook is rejected and recorded in the received call history.

When you switch between the voice call and video-phone call during a call, the call type (voice call/video-phone call) that was specified when you received it will be recorded in the received call history.

You can make a call after switching to show/hide the caller ID or appending a prefix to the phone number.

☛P58

Deleting received calls

Delete Received Calls

- 1 Press  on the stand-by display.

2 Place a cursor at a received call to delete and press .

- To delete all, press . All the received calls also including missed calls within the set delay time are deleted.

3 Select *Yes*.

Adjusting the volume of the caller's voice

Volume Setting

- The volume of the caller's voice can be adjusted from *Level1* (lowest volume) to *Level6* (highest volume).
- The set ring volume is also reflected to the volume of keypad sounds and playback sounds of recorded messages or voice memos.
- The volume level changed while talking is retained even after the call is ended.
- The set volume is retained even if the power is turned off.

Adjusting during a call

1 Press or during a call.

The volume is set automatically by pressing or waiting for a while after you stopped key operations.

- To turn up the volume, press , , or . To turn down the volume, press , , or .
- When the speakerphone function is used, the volume of the speakerphone is adjusted.
- During a video-phone call adjust the volume by using only.

Adjusting in stand-by

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press or .

3 Press .

Adjusting the ring volume

Ring Volume Setting


Adjust the ring volume for call, mail and Message R/F.







- The ring volume can be adjusted from 7 levels, *Silent* and *Level1* to *Level6*. You can also set *Ascending* (the volume of ring tone changes into *Silent* *Level1* ... *Level6* about every 3 seconds) in stand-by.
- The ring volume changed while receiving a call returns to the original volume when the call is ended.
- The ring volume changed while in stand-by is retained even if the power is turned off.
- The ring volume for calls is also reflected to the volume of i- ppli and schedule alarm. Note that when *Ascending* is set, the volume of i- ppli is *Level4*.

Ring alert volume: Msg. alert volume:


Adjusting the ring volume while receiving a call

1 Press while receiving a call.

The volume is set automatically by pressing  or waiting for a while after you stopped key operations.

- To turn up the volume, press , , or . To turn down the volume, press , , or .

INFORMATION

Pressing  while receiving a call stops the operation of the ring tone and vibrator.






When *Ascending* is set for the ring volume and if you adjust the ring volume while receiving a call, the change begins with *Level6*.

Adjusting in stand-by

Example Adjusting the ring volume for calls

1 Press on the stand-by display.

Adjusting the ring volume for mail








① Press      on the stand-by display.

2 Press or .


- When the volume is *Level6*, press , , or  to set *Ascending*. When the volume is *Level1*, press , , or  to set *Silent*.

3 Press .

INFORMATION

 is indicated on the stand-by display when the ring volume for calls is set to *Silent*. If the vibrator for voice call is set at the same time,  is indicated. The icon also appears on the sub-display. When FOMA terminal is closed, pressing ,  or  displays  or  on the sub-display.

Even when the ring volume is set to *Silent*, incoming calls and mail reception can be notified by vibrator operation or lighting/flashing of the call indicator, in addition to message display on the screen. ●P131

When Side Key Lock is on and FOMA terminal is closed, you cannot adjust the volume by pressing .

Menu 8222 / Menu 8224

Setting operations when receiving voice/video-phone calls

Incoming Call Setting/Video-phone Receiving Setting

- The settings of this function are also reflected to the voice/video-phone call in Sound Setting and Vibrator Setting, and the incoming voice/video-phone call in Alert Lighting Setting.





Default Ring alert: Melody/ バターン 1 (Pattern 1) (Incoming Call Setting), Melody/ 電話・メロディ A (Phone, melody A) (Video-phone Receiving Setting)

Show image: Standard image Vibrator: OFF Lighting: ON/Pattern 20

Example Setting operations when receiving a voice call

1 Press on the stand-by display.

Setting operations when receiving a video-phone call.

① Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

- Ring alert** : Sets a ring tone for an incoming call.
- When you select **OFF**, no ring tone emits.
 - When you select **Melody** or **Movie ringtone**, select a melody or video/i-motion.
- Show image** : Sets an image displayed for an incoming call.
- When **Select image** is selected, select **Select image** in **List images** field to set an image.
 - When **motion** is selected, select a video/i-motion from the video list.
- Vibrator** : Sets operation of the vibrator for an incoming call.
- Lighting** : Sets the lighting pattern and color of the call indicator.
- When the lighting pattern is set to **Sync melody** or **OFF**, the lighting color cannot be set. When **Sync melody** is set, the lighting color and lighting/flashing pattern will change in synchronization with the melody.
 - Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion when selecting **P114**

3 Press .

INFORMATION

Setting Create animation for the image displays the first frame.

When the video/i-motion with sound only (i-motion without image such as singer's vocals) is set for the ring alert, if the incoming image is reset to the video/i-motion with image only or Flash movie, the ring alert sounds by **パターン 1** (for voice call) or **電話・メロディ A** (for video-phone call).

If the video/i-motion with sound and image is set for **Movie ringtone**, **Show image** is switched to **Sync ring alert** and the image cannot be selected in **List images**.

Some video/i-motion may be unable to be set as an image. Also, the video/i-motion with sound cannot be set.

When the video/i-motion with sound only is set for the ring alert, even if an animation (except for the standard image) is set for the image, it does not play and the first frame is displayed on the incoming screen.

When there is an incoming call during a call, if the video/i-motion with sound and image is set for the ring alert or the video/i-motion is set for the incoming image, the first frame is displayed on the incoming screen.

When **Show image** for Incoming Call Setting or Video-phone Receiving Setting is set to other than **Sync ring alert**, the ring alert sounds by **パターン 1** (for voice call) or **電話・メロディ A** (for video-phone call).

When Flash movie or video/i-motion is set for the image, if you set **Movie ringtone** for the ring alert and select the video/i-motion with sound only, the image is switched to **Standard image**. However, the image can be changed by selecting **Select image** in **Show image** field.

If no image is registered in a phonebook entry, the image set for **Show image** is displayed regardless of the setting of Contact Image. However, the image set in Group Setting, if any, is displayed.

Even if **Sync melody** is set for **Lighting**, synchronization may not occur depending on the melody.

Setting priority screen displayed for incoming calls during a call or packet communication Priority Comm Mode

This function allows you to select the voice call or packet communication screen to be given priority when a packet communication (or voice) call is received during a voice (or packet communication) call.

- A screen change caused by this function does not interrupt the call or packet communication.

1 Press **[Menu]** **[8 TUV]** **[6 MNO]** **[9 WXYZ]** on the stand-by display.

2 Press **[1 DEF]** to **[3 DEF]**.

No Set Up : Displays the last incoming screen received without giving display priority.

Voice call : Displays the a voice call screen by priority.

Packet : Displays the packet communication screen by priority.

- While receiving an i-mode packet communication, the voice call talking screen is displayed by priority regardless of this setting.

Screen display

The following screen is displayed depending on the settings for Priority Comm Mode:

- During voice call

Setting	Incoming packet call other than i-mode
<i>No Set Up</i>	Screen displayed during a voice call
<i>Voice call</i>	
<i>Packet</i>	Screen displayed during incoming packet call

- The screen displayed during incoming calls depends on Arrival Call Act. ●P406
- Packet communication in modes other than i-mode does not include receiving of i-mode Mail, SMS and Message R/F.

- During packet communication

Setting	Incoming voice call
<i>No Set Up</i>	Screen displayed during incoming voice call
<i>Voice call</i>	
<i>Packet</i>	Screen displayed during i-mode communication

- Packet communications in modes other than i-mode cannot be received during i-mode communications. ●P466

Putting incoming calls on hold when you cannot answer right away

Response and Hold

- The caller will be charged for the time spent on hold.

1 Press **[PWR]** while receiving a call.

The incoming call is put on hold (Response and Hold). The other party hears a response hold guidance.

When a video-phone call is received, the response hold image is displayed on your and the other party's terminals.



Incoming voice call on hold



Incoming video-phone call on hold

2 Press **[END]** when you are ready to answer the call.

- In case of a voice call, you can answer the call also by opening FOMA terminal. ●P65
- Press **[END]** for a video-phone call. Press **[END]** instead of **[END]** to send a substitute image to the other party. ●P88
- If **[PWR]** is pressed or the other party hangs up during Response and Hold, the call is ended.

INFORMATION

When you use the Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, you can switch to Voice Mail or Call Forwarding by selecting *Voice mail* or *Call forwarding* from the submenu while receiving a call. The response hold image can be changed. ◀P88

Setting a response hold guidance

Status Message

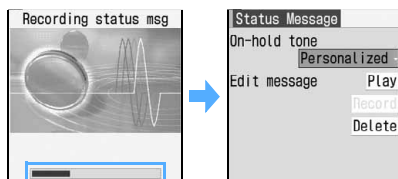
You can record your own voice as a response hold guidance.

- A guidance of up to about 10 seconds long can be recorded.
- While a voice or video-phone call is during Response and Hold, the guidance set by this function is played.

Default Standard

Example Setting a recorded data for guidance

- 1 Press **8** や TUV **6** MNO **7** は P 未 Δ RS on the stand-by display.
- 2 Select *On-hold tone* field and press **2** か ARC.
 - To reset to the default guidance, press **1** あ and go to Step 4.
- 3 Select *Record* in *Edit message* field and speak a response hold guidance after a dial tone.



Indication of the allowable recording time

Recording will start after a message is displayed.

- An end tone (beep) sounds in about 10 seconds from the start of recording.
- Press to stop in the middle of the recording.
- **Record** cannot be selected when a recorded data has already been registered. Select **Delete**, select **Yes** and record after deleting the recorded data.
- Select **Play** to check the recorded guidance.

- 4 Press **END**.

INFORMATION

If *Standard* is set for *On-hold tone*, the guidance “I cannot answer the phone right now. Please wait or call back later (in Japanese)” is played for the other party during Response and Hold.

If you delete the recorded guidance, the default guidance is returned.

Setting an on-hold tone

On-hold Tone

- You can set not only the default melody registered in FOMA terminal but the melody saved from i-mode sites or mail as an on-hold tone.
- While a voice or video-phone call is during On-hold, the melody set by this function is played.
- The setting of this function is also reflected to the on-hold tone in Sound Setting.

Default Default tone, 保留音・ボイス (On-hold tone, voice)

- 1 Press on the stand-by display.
- 2 Select **On-hold tone** field and press .
 - To reset to the default melody, press and go to Step 4.
- 3 Select **On-hold melody** field and select a melody.
 - Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion when selecting
- 4 Press .

INFORMATION

The volume of the on-hold tone cannot be changed.

If you set a melody other than those in **Preinstalled** folder as the on-hold melody, the default melody is played while PIM Lock is on.

Setting not to receive calls during driving

Driving Mode

Driving Mode is an automatic answering service considering safety driving. With Driving Mode set, the caller hears a guidance informing that you are driving and cannot answer the call and the call is disconnected.

- Calls can be made even in Driving Mode.
- The following sounds do not sound. In addition, the vibrator or call indicator does not operate. It is also the same as when the display light is turned off.
 - Ring tone of phone and 64K data communication
 - Ring tone of mail or Message R/F
 - Sound of alarm or schedule alarm
 - Sound of i- ppli
- In Driving Mode, even if **Alert** for Call Cost Limit is set to **ON** and an alarm is set, the message is not displayed and the alarm does not sound.
- In Driving Mode, the i-channel information does not appear in the stand-by ticker.
- Even if mail or Message R/F is received, the receiving screen or reception result screen is not displayed. Note that, when Check i-mode Message is performed, the receiving screen or reception result screen is displayed. In addition, if mail or Message R/F is received at this time, the receiving screen is displayed and the reception result is updated when receiving is completed.
- When FOMA terminal is turned off or you are outside the service area, the caller hears a guidance for out-of-service area notice and the guidance for Driving Mode is not played.
- The following sounds are played even in Driving Mode:
 - Keypad sound
 - Open phone/close phone sound when opening/closing FOMA terminal
 - Shutter sound when shooting with the camera
- Driving Mode can be set or canceled even when is indicated.
- You do not need to apply to use Driving Mode. No monthly fee is required.
- For details, see “Network Services User’s Guide”.

Activating Driving Mode


- 1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display. is indicated. When FOMA terminal is closed, press , or to display on the sub-display.

Canceling

- ① Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display in Driving Mode.

INFORMATION

If there is an incoming call while Driving Mode is being set in stand-by, the following takes place:

- In case of voice calls, the other party receives a guidance for Driving Mode and the call is disconnected. In case of video-phone calls, a message indicating that Driving Mode is being set is displayed on the other party's terminal and the call is disconnected. In any case, your FOMA terminal does not process the incoming call. The stand-by display shows  with the number of missed calls, which is recorded in the received call history.

Even in Silent Mode, Driving Mode takes precedence.

When Driving Mode and network services are used at the same time, the following operations are applied. Priority is given to network services depending on the setting status or the way of calling of the other party and neither operation in Driving Mode nor recording incoming calls (displaying the icon which shows the number of missed calls and recording in the received call history) is performed.

Service	Receiving voice calls	Receiving video-phone calls
Voice Mail Service	The other party receives a Driving Mode guidance and the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.*1	The call is disconnected without connecting to the Voice Mail Service Center.
Call Forwarding Service	The other party receives a Driving Mode guidance and the call is forwarded to the specified destination.*1	The other party does not receive a message indicating that Driving Mode is being set and then the call is forwarded to the specified destination.*2
Call Waiting Service	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • During voice calls, the other party receives a Driving Mode guidance and then the call is disconnected. • During video-phone calls, the terminal of the other party receives busy signals. 	The other party receives a message indicating that the call was not connected and then the call is disconnected.
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	If the other party is registered as the nuisance caller, the other party receives a call reject guidance and the call is disconnected.*3	The other party receives a message indicating that the call cannot be connected and then the call is disconnected.*3
Caller ID Request Service	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the other party does not notify the caller ID, the other party receives a guidance requesting to notify the caller ID and then the call is disconnected. • If the other party notifies the caller ID, the other party receives a Driving Mode guidance and then the call is disconnected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the other party does not send the caller ID, the other party receives a message indicating that the call cannot be connected and then the call is disconnected. • If the other party notifies the caller ID, the other party receives a message indicating that Driving Mode is being set and then the call is disconnected.

*1 If the ringing time of Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is set to 0 sec , a Driving Mode guidance is not played and also the incoming call is not recorded.

*2 If the ringing time of Call Forwarding Service is set to 0 sec , the incoming call is not recorded.

*3 The incoming call is not recorded.

Even in Driving Mode, a call from a phone number set for the sender in Remote Lock is counted as an incoming call and Remote Lock is activated.

This function cannot be set during data communication.

If a call is received while using i-mode in Driving Mode, the call is ended after the following operations. The call is recorded in the received call history.

- In case of voice calls, the other party receives the guidance for Driving Mode.*1
- In case of video-phone calls, the message indicating that it is while talking is displayed.*1

*1 When Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is used, the incoming voice call operates according to each setting.

Making emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) in Driving Mode cancels Driving Mode.

By setting Answer Machine, a greeting will be played and the caller can leave a recorded message when you cannot answer the call.






- Up to 4 messages can be recorded for voice and video-phone calls in total, a maximum of about 30 seconds for each.
- The date and time and the phone number of message are also recorded. However, when the date and time have not been set or the phone number is not notified, they are not recorded.
- Answer Machine can answer a video-phone call, but it records only voice messages as when answering a voice call and the image is not recorded.
- You can set the time interval between the reception of the call and the start of the greeting.
- The greeting in your own voice can be created.
- It is advisable that the contents of recorded messages be separately written down in a notebook, etc. Recorded data may be lost due to failure, repair, change of model or other handlings of FOMA terminal. If the data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.


Menu 4611

Setting Answer Machine

Default Deactivate


1 Press on the stand-by display.

 is indicated. When FOMA terminal is closed, press ,  or  to display  on the sub-display.


- When FOMA terminal is open, you can also set Answer Machine by holding down  for over a second.

Canceling


① Press on the stand-by display while Answer Machine is set.





- When FOMA terminal is open, you can also cancel Answer Machine by holding down  for over a second.


Replying with Quick Record Message

When Answer Machine has not been set to start, you can activate the function only once by holding down  for over a second while the phone is ringing. This operation does not set Answer Machine to start.

INFORMATION

When the total number of the recorded messages becomes 4,  is indicated on the stand-by display.

When FOMA terminal is closed, pressing ,  or  displays  on the sub-display. The icon does not disappear even if Answer Machine is canceled.

If there are already 4 record messages, Answer Machine cannot be set. If you attempt to activate Quick Record Message by holding down  for over a second while the phone is ringing, a warning tone (bleep) sounds and the ring tone keeps sounding. Delete unnecessary recorded messages and set again.

Receiving a call while Answer Machine is set

1 A call is received.

After the ring tone sounds according to Greeting Response Time, the greeting screen is displayed.

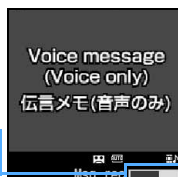
- When the greeting is set to *Preinstalled*, the caller hears the guidance "I cannot answer the phone right now, please leave your name and message after the beep (in Japanese)". Set *Personalized* to play the recorded guidance.

2 The other party's message is recorded.



Recording a message of voice call


Indication of the allowable recording time





Recording a message of video-phone call

- A beep announces the other party the start and end of the recording. And when about 25 seconds have elapsed since the start of recording, rapid beeps are heard to warn that the end of recording is approaching.


3 When the recording is completed, the call is disconnected.

 with the number of recorded messages is indicated.

INFORMATION

You can answer a call even while playing the greeting or recording a message. Pressing  answers the call as a normal voice or video-phone call (substitute image is sent to the other party) and pressing  sends your image and answers the call as a video-phone. In case of a voice call, you can also answer the call by opening FOMA terminal. ●P65

If the message is on recording at this time, the contents before receiving the call will not be recorded.

When  is indicated, Answer Machine does not operate. Use Voice Mail Service (pay service).

Answer Machine cannot be started and the ring tone keeps sounding when 4 messages have already been recorded. If Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is set to start, each service starts its operation. Driving Mode has priority over Answer Machine and does not operate in Driving Mode.

The recording may be disrupted if the signal conditions are poor.

Calls answered by Answer Machine are recorded in the received call history.

Another call received while recording a message is rejected and recording continues. In this case, the rejected incoming calls are recorded in the received call history.

When a video-phone call is answered with Answer Machine, an answer machine image is displayed on your and the other party's terminal. The answer machine image can be changed. ●P88

When *Indicator light* is set to *ON* in Alert Lighting Setting, the call indicator flashes while FOMA terminal is closed until the unplayed message is played.

Menu 4613


Setting the response time until the greeting starts

Greeting Response Time

Default 008 Sec

1 Press    on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the response time (between 0 and 120 seconds).

- You can also increase or decrease the entered values by pressing .

INFORMATION

When Auto Answer (when a flat type earphone/microphone set with a switch (optional) is connected), Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service and this function are set simultaneously, those priorities change with the ringing times set for each service and function. To give priority to Answer Machine, the response time set for this function should be shorter than the ringing times set for Auto Answer, Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service. Note that Answer Machine may not be given priority depending on the signal conditions. In this case, answer a call with Quick Record Message.

The same time period cannot be set for both the delayed time for Auto Answer and the response time for Answer Machine.

Menu 4614

Setting a greeting message

Greeting Setting

You can record your own voice as a greeting message.

- A greeting of up to about 10 seconds long can be recorded.

Default Preinstalled

Example Setting a recorded data for a greeting

- 1 Press on the stand-by display.
- 2 Select **Set Greeting** field and press .
 - To reset to the default greeting, press and go to Step 4.
- 3 Select **Record in Edit greeting** field and speak a greeting message after a dial tone.
 - The operation procedure is the same as when recording a response hold guidance. [P72](#)
- 4 Press .

INFORMATION

If you delete the recorded greeting, the default greeting is returned.

Menu 462

Playing recorded messages

You can play or delete recorded messages from the list.

- Unplayed recorded messages, if any, can be played quickly from the stand-by display. [P38](#)

- 1 Press on the stand-by display.

Recorded Messages
AOKI
03XXXXXXXX
2005/12/05 (Mo) 10:00
090XXXXXXXX

On the recorded message list screen, the date and time of recording and the other party's phone number appear.

- : Unplayed recorded message of a voice call
- : Unplayed recorded message of a video-phone call
- : Played recorded message of a voice call
- : Played recorded message of a video-phone call

- When the caller's phone number is notified, the phone number is displayed and when the caller's phone number is not notified, the reason for no caller ID is displayed. When the caller is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed.

2 Select a recorded message to play.



The recorded message is played back.

- During playback, the following operations are enabled:

: Adjust volume
 : Stop

Indication of the playing time

Deleting

- ① Place the cursor at the recorded message to delete and press .
 - To delete all, press .
- ② Select *Yes*.

Registering an entry into the phonebook

- ① Place the cursor at the recorded message to register and press .
 - To add the data to an existing phonebook entry, press .
- ② Press or and register the name or address. ➔P95, P99
 - To add the data to an existing phonebook entry, press or and select the entry to be registered. ➔P105

3 Select whether to delete the played recorded message.

- Select *Yes* to delete the recorded message.

INFORMATION

When *Indicator light* is set to *ON* in Alert Lighting Setting, the call indicator flashes while FOMA terminal is closed until the unplayed message is played.

Place the cursor at the entry in the recorded message list and press to make a voice call or press to make a video-phone call. Customized Call can be used from the submenu to make voice or video-phone calls with showing/hiding the caller ID set or to make video-phone calls with the communication speed specified.

When Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*), entry of the terminal security code is required.

Making/Receiving Video-phone Calls

Video-phone	80
Making video-phone calls	80
Receiving video-phone calls	84
Setting images to be sent to the other party	85
Customizing the display settings during a video-phone call	89
Changing the video-phone settings	Video-phone Settings 90
Setting of switching between a voice call and a video-phone call	Indicate V-phone 91
Using the video-phone by connecting with the external device	External Device 92

Video-phone

The video-phone function is available between terminals that support DoCoMo's video-phone. By using the video-phone, you can talk on the phone while looking each other images. It is also possible to display a still image, substitute image, etc. instead of your self image.

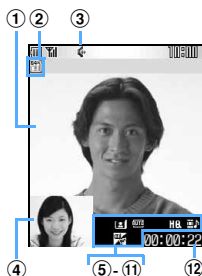
DoCoMo video-phone specifications are compliant with "3G-324M*1 that has been standardized by the international standard 3GPP*2". Note that the connection with the video-phones of different specifications can not be established.

*1 3G-324M...An international standard for the 3rd generation mobile video-phone

*2 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)...Area standardization organization established to develop the standard technology specification for 3rd generation mobile communications systems (IMT-2000).

- The following 2 communication speeds are provided for the video-phone:
 - 64K: Connects at communication speed of 64 kbps.
 - 32K: Connects at communication speed of 32 kbps.

Screen display during a video-phone call





In-camera selected

①	Main screen	Image of the other party is displayed by default.
②	Communication speed	: 64K : 32K
③	Speakerphone function	No icon: Normal video-phone call : With the speakerphone function operating
④	Sub screen	Your self image is displayed by default.
⑤	Zoom	to : Normal to 4 x (out-camera only)
⑥	Status	: Sending your self image : Sending a substitute image : Sending a still image : On-hold : On Response and Hold : Recording a message
⑦	Camera effects	: Full auto, etc. The icons for other camera effects P86
⑧	Compact light	No icon: Turn light off : Turn light on (out-camera only)
⑨	Quality of outgoing image	No icon: Standard : Prefer image quality : Prefer motion speed
⑩	Channel establishment	: Sound channel established : Image channel established : Sound/image channel established
	Volume/speakerphone volume	No icon: Normal 1 to 10 : Volume/speakerphone volume adjusted
⑪	Switch to V-phone	No icon: Switching is not available. : Switching is available.
⑫	Call duration	Displayed in the HH:MM:SS format

Making video-phone calls

- If you make a video-phone call while viewing the face of other party, use a speakerphone function or connect to a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional).
- International video-phone calls are available by using the DoCoMo's international call service "WORLD". P58
- If the message indicating that the call cannot be connected is displayed when making a video-phone call, set Caller ID Notification and dial again.


1 Enter a phone number on the stand-by display.

- Entering method is the same as for the voice calls.
- You can make a video-phone call by specifying the communication speed (64K or 32K) from Customized Call if you enter a phone number and press  .

2 Press .








Your image is displayed while being connected.

- If the phone of the other party is busy, you will hear busy signals. The message, *Busy*. or *Failed to connect*. is displayed on the screen. Press  to cancel the call and dial again after for a while. You can call back quickly by using Redial.
- The charging begins when *Connected* is displayed on the screen.

3 Talk with the other party.



The image of the other party is displayed on the screen.











- Putting the call on hold sends an on-hold image. The on-hold image can be changed. 
- Depending on the other party's settings, the substitute image may be displayed.
- You can switch to the call using the speakerphone function by pressing  or .
- While talking, the image to be sent to the other party is switched between your self image and the substitute image every time  is pressed. 

4 When you finish a call, press .

- You can also end the call by closing FOMA terminal. To keep the call connected when you close FOMA terminal, change the setting in Close Setting.

Operations during video-phone calls

- The following operations can be performed from the submenu:

Submenu item	Description	Page
 <i>Change to voice</i>	Switches from a video-phone call to a voice call.	P83
 <i>Switch cameras</i>	Switches between the in-camera/out-camera.	P89
 <i>Compact light ON</i>	Switches between the compact light on/off.	P90
 <i>Camera settings</i>	Applies effects on images to be displayed, sets the brightness and color density for the camera images to be sent during video-phone calls.	P86
 <i>Receive quality</i>	Sets the quality of received images. This setting may not be enabled depending on the function of the other party's terminal.	P90
 <i>V-phone settings</i>	Changes settings for the screen to be displayed during video-phone calls.	P90
 <i>Substitute image</i>	Displays the still image set as the substitute image in Image Setting.	P86
 <i>Play file</i>	Sends still images to the other party.	P87
 <i>Send DTMF</i>	Transmits tone signals (DTMF) during video-phone calls.	P89
 <i>Own number</i>	Confirms your own phone number.	P50

- You can adjust the volume by pressing .

INFORMATION

You can make a video-phone call even by performing in order of Steps 2, Step 1. When **[OK]** is pressed and the phone number is entered, the video-phone call can be made automatically after about 5 seconds.

You may not be able to make a video-phone call while executing another function. ●P468

Please note that the communication charges for video-phone calls are based on the rate for digital communication rather than the voice calls even if the substitute image is used.

If a video-phone call cannot be made, the following message (text information) is displayed on the screen and then the stand-by display returns. Note that the displayed messages may not reflect the status of the other party's terminal correctly, depending on the type of the terminal and/or the network service used by the other party.

Message	Description
<i>Check the number and retry.</i>	You dialed the phone number not used.
<i>Busy.</i>	The other party is busy or during a packet communication.
<i>Disconnected due to outside of service/power off.</i>	The other party is outside the service area or the other party's terminal is turned off.
<i>Select on for Call ID Notification.</i>	This message is displayed in case connecting without notifying the caller ID (when accessing to the V-Live or visualnet).
<i>Please redial phone call.</i>	This message is displayed when the other party sets Voice Mail Service or sets Call Forwarding Service and the forwarding destination is the terminal which is not compatible with video-phone.
<i>Driving mode.</i>	The other party's terminal is in Driving Mode.
<i>Failed to connect.</i>	Set Caller ID Notification to <i>Notify</i> and dial again. • The message may be also displayed for cases other than the above.

Video-phone via 32K line is intended for connection with devices such as PHS with which video-phone calls via 64K line may not be available depending on the network condition. When a video-phone call is made via 64K line, the call type is automatically switched to via 32K for redialing if the communication environment of the other party is found to be 32K area. When *ON* is set for *Voice call auto switch*, redialing via 32K line is also given priority. ●P90

• If a call is made via 32K line, the charge is the same as the digital communication charge via 64K.

If a video-phone call made is not connected, redialing is automatically performed as described below:

Call type	Voice call auto switch setting	Switching operation
64K	ON	64K 32K Voice call
	OFF	64K 32K Disconnection
32K	ON	32K Voice call
	OFF	32K Disconnection

If you preset the communication speed (64K or 32K) in the phonebook, you can change the communication speed depending on the other party you are making a video-phone call.

If you set the communication speed in Customized Call from the submenu after entering the phone number to make a call, this setting becomes effective. If the communication speed has not been set, 64K connection is attempted.

When *ON* is set for *Voice call auto switch*, the call type is automatically switched to voice call for redialing if the other party's terminal does not support the video-phone function or uses the mova service through Dual Network Service, hence, making the more certain connection to the other party. ●P90

• If you redial as a voice call, the charge is committed as a voice call.

If the video-phone call is made to emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) from FOMA terminal while *Voice call auto switch* is set to *ON*, the call automatically switches to a voice call.

New voice or video-phone calls cannot be made during video-phone calls. The message indicating that the call cannot be made is displayed. i-mode connection or sending/receiving i-mode Mail, Message R/F or SMS is not available, either.



A video-phone call is not available to the terminals not supporting the video-phone function, or to the terminals that are turned off or located outside the service area. If you set **Voice call auto switch** to **ON** and attempt to make a video-phone call with an unsupported device, the other party will abort the communications before connected. For this case, voice call redialing will automatically begin. The redialing function cannot work as written above if you call an ISDN-sync 64 kbps or PIAFS access point, or an ISDN video-phone incompatible with 3G-324M (as of August, 2005), or if you dial the wrong number. Note that some calls may require the call charge.

If a pause or timed pause is entered, dialing before the pause and the timed pause is made and all the phone numbers entered after the pause or timed pause are ignored.

You can switch to show/hide the caller ID when making a video-phone call. ◀P58

When there is an incoming call during dialing or redialing a video-phone call, the dialing may be interrupted and the ring tone may sound.

Incoming calls during a video-phone call ◀P466

Even if sending/receiving the voice or image is aborted and  (only voice) or  (only image) is displayed during a video-phone call, the call may be continued as it is.

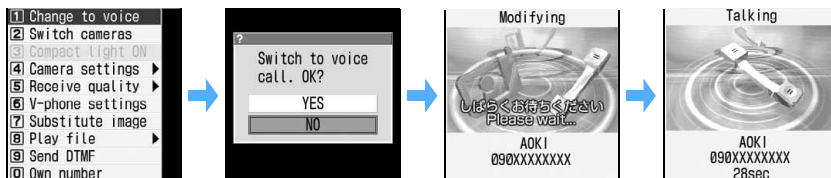
If the radio wave conditions are poor during a video-phone call, the image may be displayed as mosaic.


Switching from a video-phone call to a voice call

You can switch to a voice call by operating from the submenu during a video-phone call when the other terminal is compatible with switching a call. Switching can be performed only from the terminal which made the video-phone call.

- This operation can be performed during a call between the terminals that support switching between voice call/video-phone call.
- To switch to a voice call, the other party needs to set **Indication ON** of Indicate V-phone in advance. ◀P91

1 Press   during a video-phone call and select **YES**.



- The guidance notifying that the call is switched is played while switching the call.
- Select **NO** to return to the video-phone talking screen.
- You can switch to the call using the speakerphone function by pressing  while switching the call.

INFORMATION

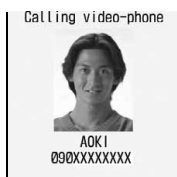
For precautions when switching between a voice and video-phone call, see INFORMATION in “Switching from a voice call to a video-phone call”. ◀P55

Switching from a voice call to a video-phone call ◀P55

Receiving video-phone calls

- You cannot receive a video-phone call by pressing the keys other than or (Any Key Answer is unavailable).

1 A call is received.



The ring alert sounds, the display light turns on and the call indicator lights/flashes.

- The other party's phone number, name, still image or video/i-motion may be displayed on the screen according to the terminal condition of the caller or FOMA terminal settings. ●P62
- Press to put your answer on hold and a response hold image is displayed on the screen of the other party's terminal.

2 Press .



Your image is displayed while being connected.

Receiving a video-phone call with the substitute image

① Press .

The substitute image is sent to the other party when the video-phone call is connected.

3 Talk with the other party.



The image of the other party is displayed on the screen.

- Putting the call on hold displays an on-hold image. The on-hold image can be changed.
- Depending on the other party's settings, the substitute image may be displayed.
- You can switch to the call using the speakerphone function by pressing or .
- While talking, the image to be sent to the other party is switched between your self image and the substitute image every time is pressed. ●P86

4 When you finish a call, press .

- You can also end the call by closing FOMA terminal. To keep the call connected when you close FOMA terminal, change the setting in Close Setting.

Operations while receiving calls

- You can perform the following operations from the submenu:

Submenu item	Description
① Call forwarding*1	Makes incoming calls transferred to the forwarding phone number.
② Call rejection	A call is disconnected. Caller does not pay for calling.



*1 Valid when you use Call Forwarding Service and the phone numbers for forwarding have been set.

- You can respond a call with Answer Machine by holding down for over a second (Quick Record Message).
- You can also adjust the ring volume or stop the vibrator. ●P69

INFORMATION


When a video-phone call arrives while a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) is connected, holding down the headset switch for over a second allows you to answer the call with the substitute image. In addition, when you set Auto Answer, you can respond by sending the substitute image to the caller automatically. Even if Voice Mail Service is activated, an incoming video-phone call is not transferred to the Voice Mail Service Center. The call will be disconnected after the ringing time set for Voice Mail Service passes.

When a video-phone call arrives, it is not connected if the forwarding destination is not set to the video-phone possible terminal which is compatible with the 3G-324M even if Call Forwarding Service is activated. Check the specifications of the forwarding destination when setting it.


If a video-phone call from a phone number registered in Nuisance Call Blocking Service arrives, the message appears indicating that the call could not be connected to the other party and the call is ended. Even if sending/receiving the voice or image is aborted and  (only voice) or  (only image) is displayed during a video-phone call, the call may be continued as it is.

Any video-phone call that arrives during Software Update is rejected and recorded in the received call history. When you end a video-phone call, the image while disconnecting may not appear depending on your terminal condition.

Call Waiting Service is unavailable during a video-phone call.

Changing the operation when a video-phone call arrives  P69

Receiving a call by switching from a video-phone call to a voice call

- The operation for switching can be performed only from the side which made the video-phone call. It cannot be performed from the side which received the video-phone call.
- To receive the request of switching to a voice call, set **Indication ON** of Indicate V-phone in advance.
 P91

1 Receive the request of switching to a voice call during a video-phone call.



A video-phone call is switched to a voice call automatically.

- The guidance notifying that the call is switched is played while switching the call.


Setting images to be sent to the other party

- The following items can be set:

Item	Page	Item	Page
Switching the outgoing image between your self image and the substitute image	P86	Changing the image to be displayed during video-phone calls	P88
Setting the quality of outgoing images	P86	Switching display magnifications	P88
Applying special effects to outgoing images	P86	Switching the in-camera/out-camera	P89
Adjusting the brightness and color density of outgoing images*1	P87	Transmitting tone signals (DTMF)	P89
Sending still images	P87		




*1 The settings are retained after the call.

Switching the outgoing image between your self image and the substitute image

1 Press  during a call.



The substitute image





- Each press switches the image between your self image () and the substitute image () . **➡P88**
- When sending your self image, you can also switch to the substitute image by pressing **Menu** .

Setting the quality of outgoing images

- Setting the image quality by priority makes motions a little slower in a higher-definition image.
- Setting the motion speed by priority makes motions smoother in a little lower-definition image.







Default Standard

1 Press  during a call.

- Each press of  switches the quality as follows. Press  to switch in the reverse order.
 Standard (no icon) Prefer image quality () Prefer motion speed () Standard (no icon)
 ...

Applying special effects to outgoing images Camera Effects

You can apply the following effects to the outgoing images. These settings can be changed only when sending your self image.


Item	Icon	Description
1 Full auto		Sends standard images.
2 Adjust backlight		Used when shooting subjects against the light (available with the out-camera only).
3 Sepia		Used for shooting in sepia colors.
4 Monotone		Used for shooting in black and white.
5 Surf&Snow		Suitable for shooting sea or snow with light reflection.
6 Twilight		Used when shooting subjects in the sunset.

Default Full auto

1 Press **Menu**   during a call.

2 Press  to .






- To cancel the effect, press .


The effect currently applied

Adjusting the brightness and color density of outgoing images

- You can adjust the brightness and color density at 5 levels.
- This setting can be changed only when sending your self image.
- The brightness and color density may be unable to be changed depending on the setting for Camera Effects.


Default Brightness: Level 3 Density: Level 3

1 Press    during a call.

2 Select **Brightness** slider and press .



Your self image is displayed on the main screen while adjusting the brightness. You can check the changing of the brightness as you shift the slider's position.

- If you do nothing on the terminal for some time after adjusting, the settings are not changed and return to the talking screen.
- When **Brightness** slider is not selected, press .

3 Press  to select **Density** slider and press .

Your self image is displayed on the main screen while adjusting the color density. You can check the changing of the color density as you shift the slider's position.

- If you do nothing on the terminal for some time after adjusting, the settings are not changed and return to the talking screen.

4 Press .

Sending still images

Select Image



Select an image to be sent from the still images.

- Only the still image that is 176 x 144 (QCIF) or smaller and permitted to output from FOMA terminal can be set. Outputting still images from FOMA terminal (File restriction) ▶P343

1 Press    during a call.

2 Select a folder and select a still image.



- You can display the still image by placing the cursor at it and pressing .
- If you press  while sending still images, the previous image is displayed.

Change the images to be sent to the other party during a video-phone call such as the substitute image, answer machine image, response hold image, and on-hold image.

• You cannot set the following still images:

- Still image with a size of more than 176 x 144 (QCIF)
- Animation and Create animation
- Still image in the format other than JPEG and GIF formats
- Still image that is prohibited from being output from FOMA terminal (File restriction) ●P343

Default Substitutive image, Answer machine image, Response hold image, On-hold image: Default

1 Press **Menu** **8** **8** **4** on the stand-by display.

2 Press **1** to **4**.

3 Select *image* field and press **2**.



In case of the answer machine image

• To reset to the default image, press **1** and go to Step 5.

4 Select *Select image* in *List images* field and select an image.

- Place the cursor at the still image to set and press **Enter** to display the still image.

5 Press **Enter**.

INFORMATION

The selected image overlapped with text messages is displayed on the other terminal.

If you activate PIM Lock or Privacy Mode (*Authorized access* set for *My picture*) after changing the image by selecting *Select image* in *image* field, the default image is sent.

Switching display magnifications

Zoom

• Available only while your self image is sent and using the out-camera.

Default Normal

1 Press **Zoom** during a call.

- Each time you press **Zoom**, the magnification of outgoing image switches as follows. Press **Zoom** to switch in the reverse order.

Normal (**x1**) 2x (**x2**) 4x (**x4**)

INFORMATION

Zooming will be canceled if the camera is switched to the in-camera.

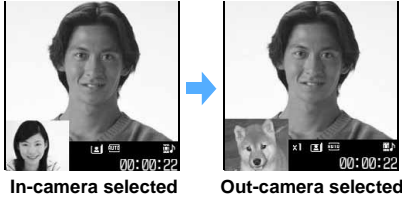
Switching the in-camera/out-camera

- Available only while your self image is sent.

Default In-camera


1 Press during a call.

The image is displayed through the switched camera.





- Each press switches between the in-camera and out-camera.
- Even if you switch the camera, the brightness/color density settings of outgoing image are kept.
- Open the lens cover to switch to the out-camera. If you close the lens cover while using the out-camera, the substitute image is sent to the other party. If you open the lens cover while **Open lens cover.** is being displayed, your self image is sent as usual.

INFORMATION

When taking and sending images of subjects about 7 to 10 cm away with the out-camera, turn the macro mode switch to  (macro). •P168




Transmitting tone signals (DTMF)

Send DTMF

- The signals may not be received depending on the device of receiver side.
- The input of tone signals (DTMF) is available only while your self image () or the substitute image () is being sent during a video-phone call.

1 Press during a video-phone call and press the dial keys.

The number you pressed is displayed and the tone signal is transmitted.

- To cancel transmitting tone signals (DTMF), press .
- The tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted only by pressing dial keys even without pressing  .
- If the tone signals (DTMF) are transmitted, the setting of Select Image is canceled.

Customizing the display settings during a video-phone call

Switching between the main screen and sub screen

- The settings are retained after the call is finished.

Default Main screen image: Other Sub screen image: Me

1 Press during a call.

- Each press switches the main screen and sub screen by turns.

Main screen : Other party's image ↔ Main screen : Your self image
Sub screen : Your self image ↔ Sub screen : Other party's image

Changing the main screen size

- The settings are retained after the call is finished.

Default Large


1 Hold down for over a second during a call.

- Each press switches the screen size in the following order: Large standard small large
....

Turning the compact light on

- You can turn the compact light on only when the out-camera is used.
- The compact light may go out temporarily depending on the setting operation while talking.

1 Press during a call.

- The compact light is turned on. If the light has been turned on, it goes out.
- Each press switches the compact light between on () and off (no icon).

Setting the quality of the images sent from the other party

- The setting may not be enabled depending on the function of the other party's terminal.

Default Standard

1 Press during a call.

2 Press to .

- Setting *Prefer motion spd* makes motions smoother in a little lower-definition image and setting *Prefer img qual* makes motions a little slower in a higher-definition image.

Setting the screen to be displayed during a call Video-phone Settings during a call

- The settings are retained after the call.

Default Display setting: Both Sub Screen: Me Display screen size: Large Display light: Always on (normal)

1 Press during a call.

2 Select each item to set.

- For the set items, refer to Step 2 in "Changing the video-phone settings". ◀P91

3 Press .

Changing the video-phone settings

Video-phone Settings

Sets the operation to be performed when a video-phone call is not connected and the image to be displayed during a video-phone call.

- The voice call auto switch function is provided to make the access to the other party for sure. Setting this function on switches the call type to voice call by redialing automatically when the other party's terminal does not support the video-phone function or cannot receive a video-phone call while using the mova service through Dual Network Service.

Default Voice call auto switch: OFF Display setting: Both Sub screen: Me Display screen size: Large
Send camera image: ON Sending image quality: Normal Display light: Always on (normal)

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Voice call auto switch : Sets whether to redial a voice call automatically when a video-phone call is not connected.

Display setting : Specifies whether to display either your self image or the other party's image or both of images during a video-phone call.

- If you set other than **Both**, **Sub screen** cannot be set.

Sub screen : Specifies whether to display your self image or the other party's image on the sub screen during a video-phone call.

Display screen size : Sets the main screen view size.

Send camera image : Specifies whether to send your self image to the other party.

Sending image quality : Sets the image quality on the other party's screen.

Display light : Sets the display light during a video-phone call.

- If you set **Terminal settings**, it operates according to the setting for Display Light Setting (P128).

3 Press .

INFORMATION

Even when the voice call auto switch function is set to **ON**, redialing may not be performed depending on the situation of the other party or network.

When the voice call auto switch function is set to **ON**, if you make a video-phone call during a packet communication connected to a PC, the call is redialed without connecting to a video-phone call and connected to a voice call. During a voice call or 64K data communication, the call is not connected to a video-phone call and redialing is not performed, either.

If you redial voice calls with the voice call auto switch function set to **ON**, the voice call charge is applied instead of digital communication charge.

If a video-phone call is connected, redialing to a voice call is not performed.

Setting of switching between a voice call and a video-phone call Indicate V-phone

Set whether to notify that your terminal can switch between a voice call and a video-phone call to the other party's terminal.

- You cannot change the setting during a voice/video-phone call.
- The setting cannot be operated in a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Operate the terminal in locations with good radio wave condition.

Default Indication **ON**: active

1 Press on the stand-by display.

Deactivating

1 Press on the stand-by display.

Checking the current setting

1 Press on the stand-by display.

- 2 Select *Yes*.
Indication ON is set.

Using the video-phone by connecting with the external device

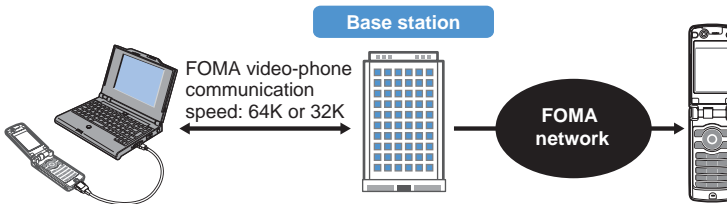
External Device

By connecting FOMA terminal to an external device such as PC by the FOMA USB cable (optional), you can make and receive video-phone calls from the external device.

If you want to use this function, install a video-phone application in a dedicated external device or in a PC, and prepare devices such as an earphone/microphone (optional) or USB-compatible Web camera (available in market).

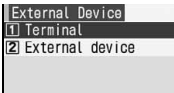
- This function is not available when FOMA terminal is not connected to the external device.
- Refer to the instruction manual of external devices for hardware requirements or setting/operating instructions of video-phone applications.
- The application software called “ドコモテレビ電話ソフト 2005 (DoCoMo video-phone software 2005)” that is compatible with this function is available on the DoCoMo video-phone software website. Visit the site below and download it:
<http://videophonesoft.nttdocomo.co.jp/>

Default Terminal



- 1 Press **Menu** **8** **8** **5** on the stand-by display.

- 2 Press **1** or **2**.



INFORMATION

A video-phone call cannot be made through an external device during a voice call.

If you subscribe to Call Waiting Service, any incoming video-phone call during a voice call from an external device is recorded as a missed call in the received call history. The same rule applies when received a voice call, video-phone call or 64K data communication during the video-phone call from the external device.

Phonebook

Phonebooks supported by FOMA terminal	94
Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook Phonebook New Entry	95
Registering entries into the UIM phonebook Register Entries into UIM Phonebook	99
Setting group names and incoming/outgoing actions.....	Group Setting 100
Making calls from the phonebook.....	Phonebook Search 101
Editing phonebook entries	Edit Phonebook 105
Copying phonebook entries	107
Deleting phonebook entries	Delete Phonebook 108
Setting functions for phonebook entries	109
Protecting the secret phonebook entries.....	Secret Attribute 110
Checking the number of registered phonebook entries Check No. of Items	111
Using simple dialing to make calls	Quick Dial 112

Phonebooks supported by FOMA terminal

FOMA D701i supports the FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM phonebook.

- The items that can be registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook and UIM phonebook are as follows:

: Available × : Not available

Item	FOMA terminal phonebook	UIM phonebook
The number of entries	Up to 700*1	Up to 50
Entry items		
Name/reading	Up to 32 one-byte (16 two-byte) characters for name and up to 32 one-byte characters for reading can be set.	Up to 21 one-byte (10 two-byte) characters for name and up to 25 one-byte (12 two-byte) characters for reading can be set.
Still image/video	1entry per person	×
Group	Entries can be classified into 30 groups and グループなし (No group).	Entries can be classified into 10 groups and グループなし (No group).
Phone number/icon	Up to 5 phone numbers per person, 2,105 in total of the phonebook can be set. An icon can be set for each.	Only one phone number can be set per person. Icons cannot be set.
Mail address/icon	Up to 5 mail addresses per person, 2,105 in total of the phonebook can be set. An icon can be set for each.	Only one mail address can be set per person. Icons cannot be set.
Setting for incoming phone calls*2		×
Settings for receiving mail*2		×
Other settings*3		×
Phonebook No.		×
Phonebook Search		
Show All Names		
Group Search		
Name Search		
Ranking Search		×
Ph Book No. Search		×
Number Search		
Secrecy Search		×
Various settings		
Secret Attribute		×
Caller ID Setting		×
Reject/Accept Call		×
Secret Code Setting		×
V-phone Setting		×
Others		
Changing order of phone numbers or mail addresses/switching phonebook Nos.		×
Quick Dial		×
Quick Mail		×
Site display		×
Send Ir Data		

*1 The number of items that can be registered may be decreased depending on the type of data registered.

*2 Ring alert, incoming vibrator, lighting pattern and lighting color can be set. In addition, the settings for incoming calls by groups are available.

*3 The settings for URL, note, postal code, address, company name, job title and birthday.

Name displays

If a call is made/received to/from a party registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook, the name registered in the phonebook is displayed on the screen displayed during making/receiving a call or talking.

In addition, the name registered in the phonebook is also displayed in the redial data, received call history, recorded messages, senders of received mail, addresses of sent/unsent mail, custom menu, etc.

- When phonebook entries of different names with the same phone number/mail address are registered in both phonebooks, if you enter the phone number or mail address without searching the phonebook, the name registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook is displayed.
- When a mail is received, if the mail address including "@docomo.ne.jp" exactly matches a mail address registered in the phonebook, the settings of phonebook take precedence and the name registered in the phonebook is displayed. Note that when the mail address is "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp", the settings of phonebook take precedence only when the mail address excluding "@docomo.ne.jp" is registered and the name registered in the phonebook is displayed.
- When SMS is received and the phone number exactly matches a phone number registered in the phonebook, the settings of phonebook take precedence.

INFORMATION

When Secret Attribute is set in the FOMA terminal phonebook data, names are displayed on the display or sub-display only in Secret Mode. The same applies when the phonebook data with Secret Attribute set are displayed in the redial data, received call history, recorded messages and voice memos while talking.

Calls or mail received from a party for whom Secret Attribute is set in Secret Mode use ring tone, incoming vibrator and incoming lighting set in the phonebook data. When not in Secret Mode, the terminal operates as in the settings made in Sound Setting, Vibrator Setting and Alert Lighting Setting.

If PIM Lock or Privacy Mode (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*) is on, the other party's name is not displayed on logs and only phone number or mail address is displayed on the display or sub-display when a call is made or received. Canceling these restrictions displays the other party's name.

If mail is received from the other party saved in the phonebook, the name registered in the phonebook is displayed as ticker in the task bar. Note that if mail is received from the other party with Secret Attribute set while not in Secret Mode, the mail address is displayed in the task bar.


Setting can be made to hide phone numbers or names when receiving calls or mails/messages.

☛P127, P128

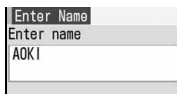
Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook

Phonebook New Entry

- The maximum number of items that can be registered ☛P94
- You can register phonebook entries even when you are out of the service area.
- It is recommended that you keep a separate written record of all the information you register in the phonebook.
You can use a miniSD memory card to register phonebook entries (☛P332). If you have a PC, you can use data link software and the FOMA USB cable (optional) to send the data to the PC.
- The phonebook data that is saved in FOMA terminal can be backed up to a miniSD memory card.
- Registered data may be lost due to failure, repair, change of model or other handlings of FOMA terminal. DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for accidentally erased data.
- Phonebook data registered while in Secret Mode are set as the data with Secret Attribute.
- In Privacy Mode (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*), the entry of the terminal security code is required.
- Please be informed that if you copy the data registered in FOMA terminal to a new terminal at a DoCoMo Shop when switching to a new model, etc., the specifications of some new models may not allow copying of the data.

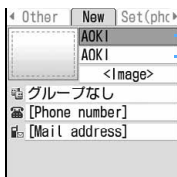
1 Press    on the stand-by display.

2 Enter a name (Up to 32 one-byte or 16 two-byte characters).



- Kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic and numeric characters, symbols and pictograms can be entered. However, symbols and pictograms entered may not appear correctly if transferred by infrared communication, etc.
- If a name is not entered, the entry cannot be registered.

3 Press .



Name and reading

Check the name and reading on *New* screen.

Correcting the name

- 1 Select the name field, correct the name and press .

Correcting the reading

- 1 Select the reading field, correct the reading (up to 32 one-byte characters).


- If you correct the name, the reading of the name will not automatically reflect changes made to the name.

4 Press to select and enter necessary items.

- If settings of each item have already been made, the setting is displayed.

Image

: Set a still image or video/i-motion that is displayed when a call is made/received or the phonebook data is checked.


- To restore the default setting, press .
- The set image is displayed only when the registered party notifies the phone number.

Setting a still image

- 1 Press  to select an image folder and select a still image.

- If a still image with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 is selected, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save the reduced image. If you select *Yes* and set the still image, the still image of which size is reduced to 96 x 72 (phonebook) or smaller is saved.
- When a call is made or received or the phonebook data is checked, the playing image is displayed for animation and the first image is displayed for Create animation.


Shooting a still image with Camera

- 1 Press  to shoot and save the still image.

- The size of a still image to be shot is set to 96 x 72 (phonebook) automatically.

Setting video/i-motion



- 1 Press  to select an i-motion folder and select video/i-motion.


- You can set video/i-motion with only images when the size is set to Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) or QCIF (176 x 144).
- Playing and checking a video/i-motion when selecting .

Recording video with Movie Camera


- 1 Press  to shoot and save the video.


- The size of a video to be recorded is set to QCIF (176 x 144) automatically. Sounds are not recorded.

 **Group** : Select a group from *グループ1* (Group 1) to *グループ30* (Group 30) and *グループなし* (No group). *グループなし* is set by default.
Group Setting 

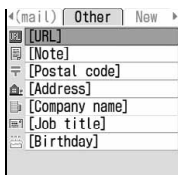
 **Phone number**: Enter the phone number including the area code (up to 26 digits) and select an icon.








- Up to 5 phone numbers per person can be registered. Saving the first phone number displays items to be added.
- Pause (P), timed pause (T), " + ", " # " and sub-address delimiter (※) can be registered.

 **Mail address** : Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered. Select an icon.

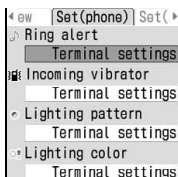
- Up to 5 addresses per person can be registered. Saving the first mail address displays items to be added.
- Please register a mail address with the domain name after @ included correctly. Note that when the mail address is "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp", register only the mobile phone number.
- When the other party has registered a secret code 

5 Press to display *Other* screen and select each item to set.

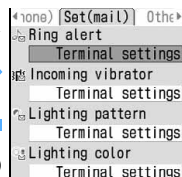


-  **URL** : Up to 256 one-byte characters can be entered.
-  **Note** : Up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters can be entered.
-  **Postal code** : Up to 7 digits can be entered.
-  **Address** : Up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters can be entered.
-  **Company name** : Up to 100 one-byte or 50 two-byte characters can be entered.
-  **Job title** : Up to 100 one-byte or 50 two-byte characters can be entered.
-  **Birthday** : Set *Set birthday* to *ON* and enter the birthday in *Birthday* field.


6 Press and switch *Set* screen (*phone/mail*) and select each item to set.




Set (phone) screen




Set (mail) screen

- In case of setting to *グループなし* for a group, all the items are set to *Terminal settings*. If you select a group, all items are set to *Group settings*.
- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion when selecting 

 **Ring alert** : Select *Movie ringtone* or *Melody* to select a video/i-motion or melody.

- Only videos/i-motion with the ring alert setting of the detail information specified to *Available* can be set as ring alert.
- To operate as set in the setting for phone/video-phone of Sound Setting, select *Terminal Settings*.

 **Incoming vibrator**

- Select *Yes* to set the vibration for receiving a call or mail.
- To operate as set in Vibrator Setting, select *Terminal Settings*.

/ **Lighting pattern**

: Select *Yes* to set the lighting pattern of the call indicator.

- If *Sync melody* or *OFF* is set, the lighting color cannot be set. When *Sync melody* is set, the lighting color and lighting/flashing pattern will change in synchronization with the melody.
- To operate as set in Alert Lighting Setting, select *Terminal Settings*.

/ **Lighting color**

: Select *Yes* to set the lighting color of the call indicator.

- To operate as set in Alert Lighting Setting, select *Terminal Settings*.

7 Press .

The lowest available phonebook No. is assigned automatically.


Entering the phonebook No. to register

① Enter a number between 0 and 699.

- Zeroes before single- or double-digit phonebook No. can be omitted.
- When a phonebook No. that has already been used to save information is specified, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite. Select *New entry* not to overwrite and specify another phonebook No.

8 Press .

INFORMATION

Setting can be made to hide image for outgoing/incoming calls even when the image is set in *Image*.  P126

A phone number saved in the phonebook with preceding 184 or 186 does not allow sending of SMS even if it is selected as the address. In addition, if a party whose mail address is "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp" is saved in the phonebook with preceding 184 or 186, no i-mode Mail can be sent to the address.

For saving mail addresses of i-mode terminals, the @ and the following domain name ("@docomo.ne.jp") of the addresses can be omitted, however, it is recommended to save the whole addresses including "@docomo.ne.jp".

- For saving mail addresses of i-mode terminals as chat members, save the whole addresses including "@docomo.ne.jp".
- When receiving mail, if a mail address of incoming mail including "@docomo.ne.jp" does not match a mail address registered in the phonebook exactly, the incoming action set for the phonebook data or group is not activated.

When a call is made to a party with a video/i-motion set in *Image*, the first image of the video/i-motion is shown on the display while the call is being dialed. When a call arrives from such a party, the video/i-motion is played on the display and the ring alert set in the phonebook data sounds while the call is being received. If video/i-motion is set for the ring alert for phone of the phonebook data or the ring alert for phone/video-phone of Sound Setting, the video/i-motion with sound and image set for the ring alert is played regardless of the settings of *Image*. However, if the video/i-motion set as the ring alert only contains sounds (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers), the image set as the call image is shown on the display while a call is being received.

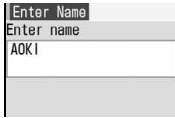
When Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*), the name registered in the phonebook data is not displayed and the ring tone or vibrator set in the phonebook data does not operate. The ring tone or vibrator operates according to the setting of FOMA terminal.

Even if *Sync melody* is set for *Lighting pattern*, synchronization may not occur depending on the melody.

- The maximum number of items that can be registered ◀P94

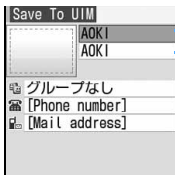
1 Press **4** **3** on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the name (up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters).



- Kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic and numeric characters, symbols and pictograms can be entered. However, symbols and pictograms may not appear correctly if transferred by infrared communication, etc.
- When both one- and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used, up to 10 characters can be registered.
- If a name is not entered, the entry cannot be registered.

3 Press .



Name and reading

You can confirm the name and reading on *Save To UIM* screen.

Correcting the name

- ① Select the name field, correct the name and press .

Correcting the reading

- ① Select the reading field, correct the reading (up to 25 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters).

- Two-byte katakana and one-byte alphanumeric characters can be used to enter the reading.
- When both one- and two-byte characters are used, up to 12 characters can be registered.
- If you correct the name, the reading of the name will not automatically reflect changes made to the name.

4 Select each item to enter.

- If the settings of each item have already been made, the settings are displayed.

Group : Select a group from **グループ1** (Group 1) to **グループ10** (Group 10) and **グループなし** (No group). **グループなし** is set by default.

Phone number : Enter phone numbers including the area codes. You can enter up to 26 digits (up to 20 digits depending on the UIM type).

- Only one phone number can be registered. No icon can be set.
- Pause (P), “ + ”, “ # ” and sub-address delimiter (✕) can be registered. Timed pause (T) can be entered but cannot be registered. Also, if you enter “ + ” except for at the first digit of the phone number, digits after “ + ” cannot be registered.

Mail address : Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered.

- Only one mail address can be registered. No icon can be set.

5 Press .

INFORMATION

For saving mail addresses of i-mode terminals, the @ and the following domain name (“@docomo.ne.jp”) of the addresses can be omitted, however, it is recommended to save the whole addresses including “@docomo.ne.jp”. For saving mail addresses of i-mode terminals as chat members, save the whole addresses including “@docomo.ne.jp”.

When Privacy Mode is on (Authorized access set for *Phonebook & Logs*), entry of the terminal security code is required.



Setting group names and incoming/outgoing actions

Group Setting

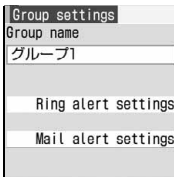
You can change the group name of the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook and set the ring tone by group in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- In Group Setting of the UIM phonebook, only the group name can be modified.
- As for グループなし, the group name cannot be changed or the incoming/outgoing action cannot be set.

1 Press 4 1 2 on the stand-by display.

- Press  4  1  2  to change the UIM phonebook group names.

2 Place the cursor at the group to set and press .




3 Set the group name.

- In case of the UIM phonebook, go to Step 5.
- You can enter up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for group names in the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- You can enter up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for group names in the UIM phonebook. Note that when both one- and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used, up to 10 characters can be registered.


4 Select each item to set.

- The procedure for setting the call image is the same as Step 4 of “Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook”. ◀P96

The procedure for setting other items is the same as Step 6 of “Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook”. ◀P97.

Ring alert settings : Sets the ring alert, vibrator, lighting pattern and lighting color for incoming calls and the call image and press .









- When *Movie ringtone* is selected for the ring alert, the call image is set to *Sync ring alert*. Note that when the video/i-motion with only sound (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers) is set to *Movie ringtone*, *Select image*, *Shoot still image* or *Back to default* can be selected.

Mail alert settings : Sets the ring alert, vibrator, lighting pattern and lighting color for incoming mails and press .



Making calls from the phonebook

You can make a call easily by calling the other party's phonebook data from the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook.

The phonebook data can be called by specifying the following search procedure:

- Show All Names  P102
- Group Search  P102
- Name Search  P102
- Ranking Search*1  P103
- Ph book No. Search*1  P103
- Number Search  P104
- Column Search  P104
- Secrecy Search*1  P111

*1 Cannot be used in the UIM phonebook.

- By the searching method also available in the UIM phonebook list, each press  switches the FOMA terminal phonebook list and the UIM phonebook list.
- To search for phonebook entries including the entries with Secret Attribute set, set Secret Mode and then search the entries.
- The UIM phonebook list indicates  in front of each entry name.
- When Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*), entry of the terminal security code is required.


1 Press .


The first time you use the search method, the phonebook list by showing all names (phonebook entries with readings starting with あ (a) line characters in order of Japanese syllabary) is displayed. After that, the phonebook list showed by the search method you selected in the last use of phonebook is displayed.

Icon set for the first phone number

Number of phone numbers and mail addresses registered in the selected entry




The first phone number registered in the selected entry (The part that cannot be displayed will be omitted.)

2 Place the cursor to the party you make a call to and press .

- When making a video-phone call, place the cursor to the party you make a video-phone call and press .
- When several phone numbers are registered, *Call to* screen is displayed. Select the phone number to dial.

Composing i-mode Mail

① Place the cursor at the party to send a mail and press .

- When multiple mail addresses have been registered, select a mail address on *Select Address* screen.
- Composing and sending i-mode Mail  P221
- When only the phone number is registered in the selected phonebook data, pressing  on the phonebook list or details screen displays the SMS composition screen.
- Pressing  on the Own Number details screen can compose i-mode Mail.

Composing SMS

① Place the cursor at the party to send SMS and hold down for over a second.

- When multiple phone numbers have been registered, select a phone number on *Select Address* screen.
- Composing and sending SMS P273
- If a phone numbers is registered in the selected phonebook data, pressing on the details screen can also compose SMS. You can operate in the same way also on the Own Number details screen.

Displaying sites

① Select the target entry and press to display *その他 (other)* screen.

② Place the cursor at the URL and press .

- You can operate in the same way also on the Own Number details screen.

INFORMATION

You can make a call by switching to show/hide the caller ID and adding the prefix. P58

You can change search method by pressing from the phonebook list.

Displaying the phonebook data in order of Japanese syllabary

Show All Names

The phonebook data is displayed in the order of Japanese syllabary (line a line ka line sa ... others (alphabets, numbers, readings which start with blank, symbols and no reading)).

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press to select the line to display.

- Pressing to , or instead of displays the line to which the dial key is assigned. For example, pressing displays line a. To display *その他 (other)* line, press or .

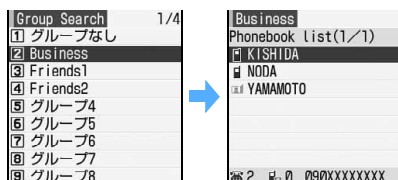
Searching by group

Group Search

- Phonebook entries registered without specifying group are saved under *グループなし*.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select a group to search.



- The entries in the group are displayed in the following order:
 1. Japanese syllabary order
 2. Alphabetical order
 3. Numbers
 4. Entries starting with blank
 5. Symbols
 6. No reading

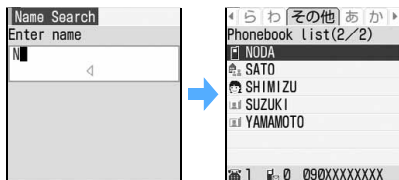
Searching by name

Name Search

Enter a name to search for the entries that start with the first character of the entered name.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Enter a name.



- You can search the name by entering the first part of the name even if you do not enter the entire reading.

Searching the party frequently talked with or sent mail to/received mail from

Ranking Search

The phonebook data saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook can be sorted by the number of calls that took place (Call frequency rank) or by the number of i-mode Mail sent or received (Mail frequency rank).

- The total number of calls and messages are displayed up to 9999.

Example When displaying call frequency ranks

1 Press **Menu** **4** **た** **GH1** **1** **あ** **∕@** **4** **た** **GH1** **1** **あ** **∕@** on the stand-by display.



Total number of calls

- The total number of calls is the number of calls made or received up to the present after the purchase or the last reset. Counting is started with the call made or received after the phonebook data is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

When displaying mail frequency ranks

① Press **Menu** **4** **た** **GH1** **1** **あ** **∕@** **4** **た** **GH1** **2** **あ** **ABC** on the stand-by display.

- The total number of mails is the number of mails sent or received up to the present after the purchase or the last reset. Counting is started with the i-mode Mail sent or received after the phonebook data is saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

INFORMATION

When the total number of calls and mails of multiple entries are the same, the entries are displayed in the following order:

1. Japanese syllabary order
2. Alphabetical order
3. Numbers
4. Entries starting with blanks
5. Symbols
6. No reading

Set Secret Mode and then operate to display the frequency ranks including entries with Secret Attribute set.

Resetting the number of calls/mails

1 Search the phonebook, place the cursor at the entry to reset and press **Menu** **9** **あ** **XYZ** **3** **DEF**.

2 Select **Yes**.

- The total number of calls, date and time of the last call, total number of mails, and date and time of the last mail for each phonebook entry are reset.

Searching by phonebook No.

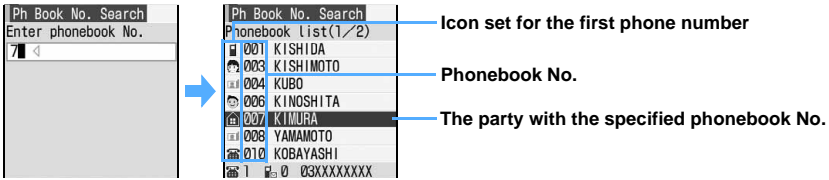
Ph Book No. Search

Enter a phonebook No. from the FOMA terminal phonebook to search for the entry with the specified phonebook No. You can search the entries even if you enter nothing.

1 Press **Menu** **4** **た** **GH1** **1** **あ** **∕@** **5** **な** **JKL** on the stand-by display.

Next

2 Enter a phonebook No.



- Zeroes before single- or double-digit phonebook No. can be omitted.

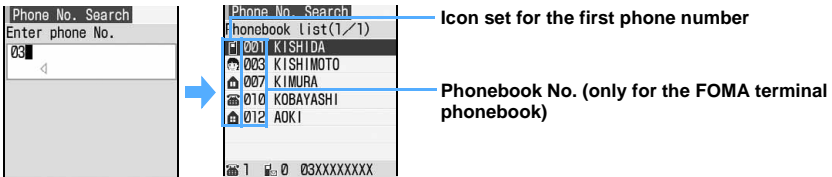
Searching by phone number

Number Search

Enter only a part of phone number to search for the phone numbers that contain it. You can search the entries even if you enter nothing.

1 Press **Menu** **4** **た** **1** **あ** **6** **は** on the stand-by display.

2 Enter a part of phone number.



INFORMATION

When multiple phonebook entries are available with Number Search, the phonebook entries in FOMA terminal are displayed in the order of the phonebook No. The entries in the UIM phonebook are displayed in the following order:

1. Japanese syllabary order
2. Alphabetical order
3. Numbers
4. Entries starting with blanks
5. Symbols
6. No reading

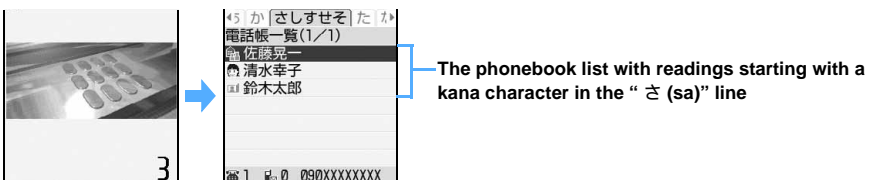
Searching by Column Search quickly

Search for the phonebook data by the characters assigned to the dial key **0** **0** **0** to **9** **0** **0**.

- The previously used phonebook (the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook) is searched.

Example Searching for “佐藤” (Sato)



1 Press **3** **さ** **DEF** **田** on the stand-by display.

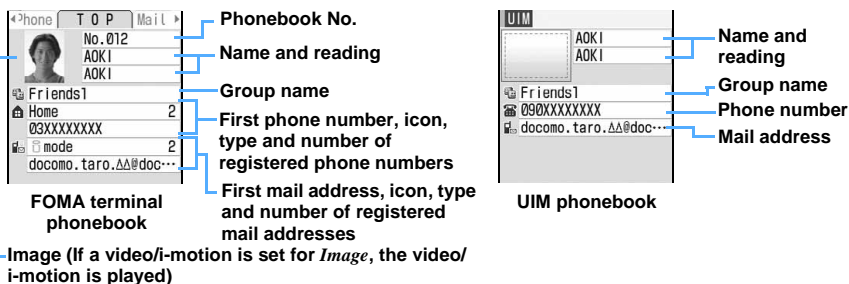


- In the search result screen, pressing **0** **0** **0** to **9** **0** **0**, **#** **0** **0**, ***** **0** **0** or **☺** switches lines.

Checking phonebook entries



1 Search the phonebook and select the phonebook data to display details.

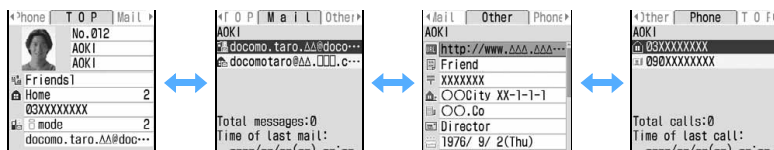
- You can display the details screen for the previous/next phonebook entry by pressing .
- When Reject/Accept Call, Caller ID Setting or Secret Code is set,  is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No.



Displaying details of registered information (only for the FOMA terminal phonebook)

① Press .


- Each time you press , the details screen switches as follows: **TOP Mail Other Phone**. Press  to switch the screen in the reverse order.



- Mail** screen displays the total number of mails sent/received and the date and time of the last mail.
- Phone** screen displays the total number of calls made/received and the date and time of the last call.

Displaying all registered information of the details screen

① Press .

- Pressing  returns to the previous screen.

INFORMATION

The total numbers of calls/mails and the date and time of the last call/mail apply to both incoming and outgoing calls/mails. Note that uncompleted calls/mails due to no reply of the other party or the radio wave conditions are not counted.

Editing phonebook entries

Edit Phonebook

You can edit or copy the phonebook data and change the order of the phone numbers and mail addresses in the data. In addition, the phonebook Nos. for the phonebook data can be switched.

Editing saved phonebook entries

1 Search the phonebook, place the cursor at the entry to correct and press .

2 Edit phonebook entries.

- For details:
 - ☛P96 from Step 3 in “Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook”, ☛P99 from Step 3 in “Registering entries into the UIM phonebook”.

3 Press .

- In case of the FOMA terminal phonebook, the phonebook No. entry screen is displayed. Select *Overwrite* or *New entry* according to the message displayed after entering the phonebook No. When *Overwrite* is selected, even if the number is changed in the phonebook No. entry screen, the previous phonebook data are discarded. When *New entry* is selected, the phonebook No. entry screen is displayed again. Enter the number (0 to 699) if needed.
- In case of the UIM phonebook, a screen selecting registering method appears. Select *Overwrite* or *New entry*.

INFORMATION

The data may not be overwritten when registering if “*” is included in the phonebook data in the UIM phonebook. In that case, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to make a new entry. Select *Yes* to register as a new entry.

The phonebook data with Secret Attribute set cannot be edited unless Secret Mode is set.

When multiple phone numbers and mail addresses are registered, if the first registered phone number or mail address is deleted, the second or after that are moved up and registered.

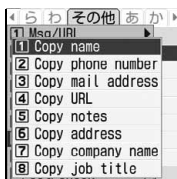
Copying registered information

You can copy items in phonebook entries. Copied items can be pasted into the entry field on the screen such as the mail composition and phonebook registration screens.

- Copied items remain recorded in FOMA terminal until the power is turned off. They can be pasted any number of times while the power is on.
- Only one item can be recorded. Copying new items overwrites the retained item.

1 Search the phonebook, place the cursor at the entry to copy and press .

2 Press to .




FOMA terminal
phonebook

The data of appropriate items is recorded temporarily.

3 Display the character entry screen to be pasted and paste the characters.

INFORMATION

On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, the UIM phonebook list/details screen or Own Number details screen, press  and select *Copy*.

Copy phone number/Copy mail address copies the mail address registered as the first item. To copy the second or after phone number or mail address, place the cursor at the phone number or mail address to copy on the FOMA terminal phonebook or Own Number details screen and copy it.

Replacing the orders of phone numbers, mail addresses and phonebook Nos.










When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are registered in the phonebook data, the orders of the phone numbers and mail addresses can be replaced on the search result screen of the FOMA terminal phonebook. In addition, the phonebook Nos. for 2 phonebook entries can be replaced.

1 Search the phonebook and replace the order.

Replacing the order of phone numbers











- 1 Place the cursor at the target entry and press

        .

- 2 Select a phone number to register as the first phone number.

The positions of the selected phone number and the first phone number are replaced.









Replacing the order of mail addresses

- 1 Place the cursor at the target entry and press        .

- 2 Select a mail address to register as the first mail address.

The positions of the selected mail address and the first mail address are replaced.

Replacing the phonebook Nos.

- 1 Place the cursor at the target entry and press        .

- 2 Select the entry to replace the phonebook No.

The phonebook Nos. are replaced.

INFORMATION

On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press  and select *Set/Check* *Switch order* *Phone numbers*, *Mail addresses* or *Phonebook Nos.*

Copying phonebook entries

Copy phonebook entries from the FOMA terminal phonebook to the UIM phonebook or from the UIM phonebook to FOMA terminal. In addition, FOMA terminal phonebook entries can be copied one by one or backed up (copying all entries) to the miniSD memory card.

- If the group in the phonebook data to copy has the same name as the group in the target phonebook, the data is copied to that group.

Items copied from the FOMA terminal phonebook to UIM phonebook

Name	Copies the name (up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters. Note that, up to 10 characters can be copied when both one- and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used).
Reading	Copies the reading (up to 25 one-byte characters). One-byte katakana changes to two-byte katakana.

Phone number	Copies the first registered phone number (up to 26 digits (20 digits depending on the UIM types) P41. If a timed pause (T) is registered, only the timed pause (T) is deleted. In addition, when “+” is entered except for at the beginning of the phone number, the number after “+” is deleted. For all icons, ☎ is set.
Mail address	Copies the first registered mail address (up to 50 one-byte characters). In the UIM phonebook, for all icons, ✉ is set.

- If the number of characters exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be saved in the UIM phonebook, the exceeding part is deleted.

Items copied from the UIM phonebook to FOMA terminal phonebook

Name	Copies the name.
Reading	Copies the reading. Two-byte katakana are changed to one-byte katakana.
Phone number	Copies the phone number. For the icon, ☎ is set.
Mail address	Copies the mail address. For the icon, ✉ is set.

1 Search the phonebook and press .

2 Select an entry to copy.



FOMA terminal phonebook

- You can switch select/cancel by pressing and select/cancel all the data by pressing .

3 Press .

INFORMATION

- On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press and select *IrDA/miniSD/UIM Copy to UIM*.
- On the UIM phonebook details screen, press and select *IrDA/Phone mem Copy to phone*.

Deleting phonebook entries

Delete Phonebook

Delete one phonebook entry.

1 Search the phonebook, place the cursor at the entry to delete and press .

2 Select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

- On the details screen of the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook, press and select *Delete*.

Setting functions for phonebook entries

You can set to show/hide caller ID or the video-phone communication speed for each phone number in the phonebook data saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook. In addition, a secret code can be set for each mail address.

- The function described here cannot be set in the UIM phonebook.

Setting to show/hide caller ID for each phone number

Caller ID Setting

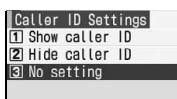
Default No setting

- 1 Search the phonebook, place the cursor at the entry to be set and press

9 1 2

- 2 Enter the terminal security code and select a phone number.

- 3 Press or .



- To cancel the setting, press .

INFORMATION

On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press and select *Set/Check Settings Caller ID settings*.

When *No setting* is set, the terminal operates according to the setting for Caller ID Notification.

For the entry with the caller ID set, is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No. on *TOP* screen.

When you set to show/hide caller ID for every call you make, that setting takes precedence over Caller ID Setting for each phone number.

Setting the communication speed when making video-phone calls for each phone number

V-phone Setting

Default 64K

- 1 Search the phonebook, place the cursor at the entry to be set and press 9 1 5 .

- 2 Select a phone number.

- 3 Press or .

- To make a video-phone call to FOMA terminal, select .

INFORMATION

On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press and select *Set/Check Settings V-phone settings*.

When you specify the communication speed of the video-phone for each call you make, that setting takes precedence over the communication speed setting for each phone number.

When the other party has registered a secret code for its mail address (mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp), if you set the secret code as the mail address in the phonebook data, the secret code is automatically added to i-mode Mail composed by searching the phonebook.

1 Search the phonebook, place the cursor at the entry to be set and press



2 Enter the terminal security code and select a mail address.

3 Enter a secret code of 4 digits.

- To cancel Secret Code Setting, hold down for over a second to delete the secret code.

INFORMATION

The set secret code is not displayed on the phonebook data details screen or the address set when composing i-mode Mail. You can check it by the same operation as the setting of a secret code.

On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press and select *Set/Check Settings Secret code*.

For the entry with a secret code set, is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No. on *TOP* screen.

If a mail address is saved in the phonebook as "mobile phone number + secret code@docomo.ne.jp", you cannot reply to mail from the party. In addition, when a mail address is saved in the phonebook as "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp", you cannot reply to mail from the party even if the secret code is set.

Delete "@docomo.ne.jp" in the phonebook data before setting.

You cannot set a secret code for your own number.

Protecting the secret phonebook entries

The phonebook entry is set as the data having a secret attribute that is called only when you enter the terminal security code. To set Secret Attribute, perform the setting operation in Secret Mode.

Setting Secret Attribute for the phonebook entry

- You cannot set Secret Attribute for the entries in the UIM phonebook.
- Secret Attribute cannot be set/canceled when Secret Mode is not set.

1 Set Secret Mode.

2 Search the phonebook, place the cursor at the entry to set and press .



Flashes when Secret Attribute is set for the selected entry.

Canceling

- 1 Place the cursor at the phonebook data for which Secret Attribute is set and press .**

INFORMATION

In the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press and select *Set/Check Settings Secrecy ON*. To release Secret Attribute, press and select *Set/Check Settings Secrecy OFF*.

If the phonebook entry is registered and edited while Secret Mode is on, Secret Attribute is set for the phonebook entry.

When Secret Mode is not set, the names of the phonebook data and registered images or video/i-motion for which Secret Attribute has been set are not displayed in the incoming screen, redial data, received call history, received mail list, sub-display, etc. In addition, the ring tone or vibrator set for the phonebook data is not operated.

Name displays P94

The set secret code is not displayed on the phonebook data detail screen or the address set when composing i-mode messages. The secret code can be displayed by the same operation as Secret Code Setting.

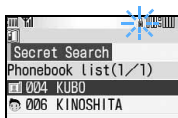
Searching the phonebook data with Secret Attribute set

Secrecy Search

- You can search only the phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set.
- You cannot search the phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set unless Secret Mode is set.

1 Set Secret Mode.

2 Press on the stand-by display.



- The subsequent steps are the same as for the normal searching method.

INFORMATION

The phonebook data with Secret Attribute set cannot be searched unless Secret Mode is set. In addition, Quick Dial or Quick Mail is also disabled.

When the search other than Secrecy Search is performed in Secret Mode, the phonebook data with and without Secret Attribute set are both searched.

When the phonebook list is displayed after Secrecy Search was performed last time, the same phonebook list of Secrecy Search as last time is displayed when Secret Mode is set. The phonebook No. search screen is displayed unless Secret Mode is set.

Checking the number of registered phonebook entries

Check No. of Items

You can display the number of registered phonebook entries or phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

1 Search the phonebook and press .

INFORMATION

In the details screen of the FOMA terminal phonebook, press and select *Set/Check No. of items*. When checking from the UIM phonebook, press in the phonebook list screen or details screen and select *No. of items*.

Recorded items includes the number of phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set.

Using simple dialing to make calls

Quick Dial

Calls can be made by simple operation to the parties with the phonebook No. 0 to 99 in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- The first phone number in the phonebook data is the number to be dialed.

Example Calling the phone number with phonebook No.2

1 Enter the phonebook No. (in this case) on the standby display and press .



- Enter the phonebook No. without prefixing it with 0, etc. If you enter an initial zero, etc., the call is not made.
- You can make a video-phone call by pressing instead of .

The first phone number registered in the phonebook

INFORMATION

In case no phone number is registered in the phonebook data of entered phonebook No. or no phonebook data is registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook, when you press or , the message indicating that there is no applicable data is displayed.

Sounds/Displays/Lights Settings

Sound Setting

Changing the FOMA terminal ring tone	Sound Setting	114
Using vibrator to signal incoming calls and alarms	Vibrator Setting	116
Selecting a sound heard when a keypad is pressed	Keypad Sound	117
Setting a sound for charging	Charge Alert	118
Setting an alarm announcing that the call is about to be cut off	Quality Alarm	118
Making FOMA terminal silent	Silent Mode	119
Customizing Silent Mode	Customize Silent Mode	119

Displays/Lights Settings

Changing the stand-by display	Stand-by Display Setting	120
Changing images to be displayed for incoming/outgoing calls/mails	Mail/Call Image Setting	126
Setting the sub-display	Sub-display Info Setting	128
Setting the light for display and key	Display Light Setting	128
Changing display colors	Color Scheme	129
Setting the menu display format/the menu design	Menu Setting	130
Changing the battery level icon	Battery Icon	131
Setting the color and lighting pattern for the call indicator	Alert Lighting Setting	131
Changing the font size	Font	133
Setting clock display	Clock Display Format	134

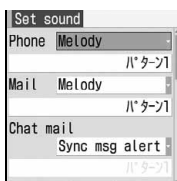
Set melodies as ring tones to announce the reception of call, mail, Message R/F, etc. In addition, the sound played while on hold or when opening/closing FOMA terminal can be set. If video/i-motion is set as a ring tone, a video and/or sound is played for incoming call or mail (Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion)).

- The settings in this function are reflected to the ring tones set in Incoming Call Setting, Video-phone Receiving Setting, Incoming Msg. Setting, Incoming Chat Mail Setting and Incoming Msg. Alert, and also to the on-hold tone set in On-hold Tone.

Default Phone: Melody/ パターン 1(Pattern 1) Mail: Melody/ パターン 1(Pattern 1) Chat mail: Sync msg alert
 MessageR: Melody/ パターン 1(Pattern 1) MessageF: Melody/ パターン 1(Pattern 1)
 On-hold tone: Default tone, 保留音・ボイス (On-hold tone, voice)
 Video-phone: Melody/ 電話・メロディ A (Phone melody A)
 Open phone: Melody/ 端末・オープン音 1(Terminal opening sound 1)
 Close phone: Melody/ 端末・クローズ音 1(Terminal closing sound 1)

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Set each item.



Setting ring tones of phone call, video-phone call, mail, chat mail, or Message R/F

① Select an item and press to (to for chat mail).

- When **Melody** is selected, select **Melody** field and select a melody. Reading the melody list
- When **Movie ringtone** is selected, select **Melody** field and select video/i-motion. Reading the video/i-motion list
- When **OFF** is selected, the ring tone does not sound.
- If the ring tone for chat mail is set to **Sync msg alert**, the setting for the mail ring tone is used.

Setting an on-hold tone

① Select an item and press or .

- When **Select tone** is selected, select **Melody** field and select a melody. Reading the melody list
- When **Default tone** is selected, the message (Preinstalled 保留音・ボイス) is played while a call is on hold.

Setting a beep sound for open phone/close phone

① Select an item and press or .

- When **Melody** is selected, select **Melody** field and select a melody. Reading the melody list
- When **OFF** is selected, the beep sound does not sound.

3 Press .

For playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion

Place the cursor at the melody in the melody list and press to play it. Press to set. The following operations can be performed during playing.

- Adjust volume:
- Play previous/next melody:

Place the cursor at the video/i-motion in the video/i-motion list and press to play it. Press to go back to the list screen and press to set. The following operations can be performed during playing.

- Adjust volume:
- Pause/restart:
- Stop:
- Play at fast speed:

Melody list

The following melodies are provided in the *Preinstalled* folder by default. Melody names that are too long to be shown on the display are partially omitted.

• Names in 【 】 show the composers. The names of the composers are described in accordance with the JASRAC home page.

- パターン 1 ~ 5 (Pattern 1 to 5)
- 電話・SuperBell™Z (Phone, SuperBell™Z)
- メール・SuperBell™Z (Mail, SuperBell™Z)
- アラーム・SuperBell™ (Alarm, SuperBell™Z)
- 保留音・ボイス (On-hold tone, voice)
- 火星【HOLST GUSTAV】 (Mars [HOLST GUSTAV])
- 森のくまさん【アメリカ民謡】 (The Bear [American folk song])
- Rhapsody in Blue [GERSHWIN GEORGE]
- ツアラトウストラはかく語りき【STRAUSS RICHARD】 (Also Sprach Zarathustra [STRAUSS RICHARD])
- ジムノペディ第 1 番【SATIE ERIK ALFREDI LE】 (1 ere Gymnopédie [SATIE ERIK ALFREDI LE])
- ハレルヤコーラス【HANDEL GEORGE FRIDERIC】 (Hallelujah Chorus [HANDEL GEORGE FRIDERIC])
- 電話・メロディ A (Phone, melody A)
- 電話・女性ボイス (Phone, female voice)
- メール・女性ボイス (Mail, female voice)
- アラーム・女性ボイス (Alarm, female voice)
- ヴァーチャルトレイン (Virtual Train)
- 電話・メロディ B (Phone, melody B)
- メール・メロディ A (Mail, melody A)
- メール・英語ボイス (Mail, English voice)
- 端末・オープン音 1 ~ 3 (Phone opening sounds 1 to 3)
- おもちゃの兵隊のマーチ【JESSEL LEON】 (Parade of the wooden soldiers [JESSEL LEON])
- 凱旋行進曲【VERDI GIUSEPPE】 (Triumphal March [VERDI GIUSEPPE])
- 四季~冬~【VIVALDI ANTONIO LUCIO】 (The Four Seasons "Winter" [VIVALDI ANTONIO LUCIO])
- SUMMERTIME [GERSHWIN GEORGE]
- 幻想即興曲【CHOPIN FREDERIC FRANCOIS】 (Fantasie Impromptu [CHOPIN FREDERIC FRANCOIS])
- 電話・黒電話 (Phone, phone retro)
- メール・メロディ B (Mail, melody B)
- アラーム・アナログ時計 (Alarm, analog clock)
- 端末・クローズ音 1 ~ 3 (Phone closing sounds 1 to 3)

Ring tone priority

Ring tones for voice call or video-phone set in multiple functions sound according to the following prioritization:

- ① FOMA terminal phonebook settings
- ② Settings by groups in the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ③ Sound Setting/Incoming Call Setting/Video-phone Receiving Setting

- When the other party did not notify the caller ID, the ring tone for incoming voice calls operates as set in Anonymous Caller. The ring tone for incoming video-phone calls operates as set in Sound Setting or Video-phone Receiving Setting.
- When the sounds or images set in Anonymous Caller are deleted, the settings are changed. In this case, the sounds played or images displayed in reality may differ from the sounds played or images displayed on the setting screen.
- Assuming that the phonebook has image settings but does not have ring-tone settings, priority goes to *Movie ringtone* in Sound Setting/Incoming Call Setting/Video-phone Receiving Setting and the incoming image if the ring tone's *Movie ringtone* has settings about a video/i-motion file containing voice and video signals. If *Movie ringtone* has settings about a video/i-motion file containing only voice signals (an i-motion file containing songs of singers but containing no video signals), the ring tone becomes the no-voice image/i-motion file that is set in the *Movie ringtone*, with the result that the incoming image corresponds to the image that is set in the phonebook.

Setting other sounds

- Set the mail ring alert. ◀P266
- Set the mail ring alert so that its sound comes only from the earphone when the flat type earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected. ◀P392

INFORMATION

The sound recorded with Sound Recorder can be set for **Movie ringtone**. In this case, only the sound is played and the image set as the incoming image is displayed on the screen.

When the video/i-motion with sound and image is set for the ring alert, the incoming image is set for **Sync ring alert** and then reset the ring alert to **OFF**, Movie ringtone will be replayed but the ring alert volume becomes silent.

If the video/i-motion with only sound, (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers) or a melody is set for the ring alert when the incoming image is set to **Sync ring alert**, the standard image is displayed for the incoming image.

If the video/i-motion with only sound is set for the ring alert even when the video/i-motion or Flash movie with only image is set for the incoming image, the standard image is displayed for the incoming image.

The video/i-motion that is set to **Unavailable** for the ring alert of View/Edit Detail Info (P342) cannot be set to **Movie ringtone**.

When the video/i-motion with only sound is set for the ring alert, even if the animation (other than the standard image) or Create animation is set for the incoming image, it does not move and the first frame is displayed on the incoming screen.

When the video/i-motion with image and sound is set for the ring alert or the video/i-motion is set for the incoming image in case that there is an incoming voice call during a voice call, the first frame of the video/i-motion is displayed on the incoming screen.

If you open/close FOMA terminal rapidly, the beep sound for open phone/close phone may not be heard. During the following operations, there will be no beep sounds even when opening/closing FOMA terminal.

- While dialing
- On Response and Hold
- During Silent Mode
- While the melody is sounding
- While shooting video
- While the greeting message is playing
- While recording with Sound Recorder
- While receiving
- While talking
- While the alarm is sounding
- While the video/i-motion is playing
- While playing recorded messages/voice memos
- While i- ppli is activated
- While the alarm for Call Cost Limit is sounding

The volume of beep sound for open phone/close phone cannot be changed.

Using vibrator to signal incoming calls and alarms

Vibrator Setting

The reception of voice or video-phone call, mail, Message R/F, etc. or the schedule alarm notice is indicated by vibration.

- Note that if FOMA terminal is placed on a desk, etc. with Vibrator Setting on, the vibrations of the vibrator operation may cause it to fall off.
- The settings in this function are reflected to the vibrator set in Incoming Call Setting, Video-phone Receiving Setting, Incoming Msg. Setting, Incoming Chat Mail Setting and Incoming Msg. Alert.

Default OFF (all)

1 Press       on the stand-by display.

2 Select the item to set.

- If the incoming setting for Incoming Chat Mail Setting is set to **Same : Msg setting**, **ChatMail** cannot be selected.
- As for a schedule alarm, the terminal vibrates as set in the **Phone** setting.

3 Press **1** to **5** .

Pattern A : Vibrates as follows: 0.5 second vibration 0.5 second pause 0.5 second vibration 1.5 seconds pause (repeated)

Pattern B : Vibrates as follows: 1 second vibration 2 seconds pause (repeated)

Pattern C : Vibrates as follows: 0.25 second vibration 0.25 second pause (repeated)

Sync melody : Vibrates along with the melody selected in Sound Setting.

- Vibration may not synchronize depending on melodies. In addition, vibration may not synchronize with the theme.

OFF : No vibration.

- If you press , the vibrator operates by the pattern of the cursor position. Note that the vibrator does not operate when *Sync melody* or *OFF* is selected.

4 Press .

- When the vibrator for calls is set, () when the ring volume for calls is set to *Silent* is indicated on the stand-by display.

- If you press , or when FOMA terminal is closed, () when the ring volume for calls is set to *Silent* is indicated on the sub-display.

INFORMATION

The vibrator does not operate when a call is received during another call.

When the vibrator for incoming calls or mails of the phonebook have been set, the settings for the phonebook are given priority and then each group setting is given priority.

Even when *OFF* is set, the vibrator may operate while some Flash movies are being played.

Selecting a sound heard when a keypad is pressed

Keypad Sound

Default Keypad sound1

1 Press **8** **1** **4** on the stand-by display.

2 Press **1** to **3** .

Keypad Sound
1 Keypad sound1
2 Keypad sound2
3 Keypad sound3
4 OFF

- Press to hear the keypad sound of the cursor position. However, the keypad sound does not sound when *OFF* is selected.
- To disable Keypad Sound, press **4** .





INFORMATION

When **OFF** is set, the following sounds are not heard.

- Confirmation sounds when the battery level is indicated
- End alert for infrared communication or data transfer

The keypad sound volume is set according to the setting for Volume Setting.

In the following cases, the keypad sound is not heard even if this function is set to other than **OFF**.

- In Silent Mode (In the personalized silent mode and when the keypad sound of Customize Silent Mode is set to other than **OFF**, the keypad sound is heard.)
- When i- ppli is running (Press  to hear the keypad sound.)
- When   are pressed.
- When  is pressed with FOMA terminal closed.





Even when **OFF** is set, if you press the dial keys while on call, tone signals (DTMF) can be sent to the other party. At this time, you will hear the touch-tone from the earpiece.

Setting a sound for charging

Charge Alert

Set whether to sound the charge alert for the start and end of charging.

Default **ON**

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Press  or .

INFORMATION

Even when **ON** is set, the charge alert is not sounded in the following cases.

- In Silent Mode
- In Driving Mode
- During a voice call
- During a video-phone call
- During 64K data communication
- During i-mode communication
- During packet communication

Setting an alarm announcing that the call is about to be cut off



Quality Alarm


When signal conditions deteriorate, inform you by sounding an alarm before the call is cut off.

- If signal conditions deteriorate suddenly, the call may be cut off before the alarm sounds.
- This function applies only to voice calls.

Default **High alarm**

1 Press     on the stand-by display.



2 Press  or .

- Not to sound the alarm, press .


Disable the sounds from FOMA terminal in order to prevent disturbance to the people around you by enabling the vibrator for incoming calls or muting the keypad sound.

Default not set


1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display.


Silent Mode that is specified in the Silent Mode selection is set,  (in the general silent mode) or  (in the personalized silent mode) is indicated on the stand-by display.

Canceling

① Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display.

When FOMA terminal is closed

Hold down  for over a second in stand-by to set or release Silent Mode.

- Pressing , , or  during Silent Mode indicates  on the sub-display.

When the general silent mode is set

Incoming call or mail is notified with vibrator by muting sounds heard from FOMA terminal such as ring tone, keypad sound and alarm. Microphone is sensitized so that a call can be made in a small voice.

The operations of the vibrator when receiving calls or messages change to *Pattern A* regardless of the setting in Vibrator Setting.

The operations of the vibrator when an alarm is active are as set in Alarm Clock.

The operation of the vibrator when a schedule alarm is active are as set in Silent Mode.

Melodies are not played automatically even if received mail or Message R/F is displayed with *Auto play* set for Message Attachment.

When starting play-back of a melody or video/i-motion with sound, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether you want to play it back.

INFORMATION

The following sounds are played even in Silent Mode.

- The shutter sound during shooting with the camera and Movie Camera
- The shutter sound during recording by Sound Recorder

In the general silent mode, even if Call Cost Limit is set to *ON* and the setting notified by alarm is made, only a message is displayed. In Customize Silent Mode, the alarm sounds according to Customize Silent Mode.

Customizing Silent Mode

The setting for Silent Mode can be changed (Personalized silent mode). Which Silent Mode is set can be selected.


Default General

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press .

General : Notifies the arrival of a call or mail by muting the sounds heard from FOMA terminal and by vibrating FOMA terminal itself.

Personalized : The settings can be changed.

- Pressing  sets the general silent mode and the previous screen reappears.

3 Select each item to set.

Vibrator : Sets the operation of vibrator when receiving a call or mail.

- When **ON** is set, an incoming call or mail is informed by vibration according to Vibrator Setting. Note that **OFF** is set in Vibrator Setting (P116), the vibrator operates by **Pattern A**.
- When **OFF** is set, the vibrator does not operate.

Keypad sound : Sets keypad sounds.

Ring alert volume : Sets the ring volume for incoming calls.

- The sound volume of i- ppli is up to **Ring alert volume**. If **Ring alert volume** is set to **Step tone**, the volume is **Level4**.

Msg. alert volume : Sets the ring volume for incoming mail.

Low Battery Alert : Specifies whether to activate the alarm when the battery becomes low.

Alarm/Schedule sound : Sets whether to sound an alarm or schedule alarm.

- When **ON** is set, the alarm or schedule alarm sounds according to each setting. The setting of **Ring alert volume** in Customize Silent Mode applies to the volume of schedule alarm.
- When **OFF** is set, the alarm or schedule alarm does not sound.

Sensitize microphone : Sets whether to sensitize the microphone.

4 Press .

Personalized silent mode is set.

Changing the stand-by display

Stand-by Display Setting

You can change the stand-by display to your favorite image.

- Depending on the image, video/i-motion, or i- ppli, settings for the stand-by display will be disabled if you do not insert the same UIM as used when downloading the data.
- While All Lock or PIM Lock is on (when the data which is subject to PIM Lock is set to the stand-by display), the set stand-by image is canceled and the image of the default setting is displayed temporarily. The set stand-by image reappears when lock is canceled. However, if the data in **Preinstalled** folder is set, the set data is displayed even when PIM Lock is on.
- Setting the clock display P134
- Setting the stand-by ticker P304

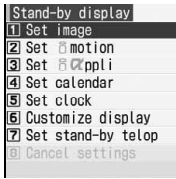
Setting image or video/i-motion as the stand-by display

The image or video/i-motion saved from an i-mode site or the mail or the still image or video shot with FOMA terminal can be set as the stand-by display. Animation, Create animation, etc. can also be set.

- i-motion cannot be set while the stand-by ticker is being displayed.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press **1** あ / @ or **2** か ABC.



3 Select a folder and select the image or video/i-motion to be set as the stand-by display.

- To check the image, place the cursor at the image in the image list and press **[Enter]**. Press **[Home]** to set. The following operations can be performed on the image display screen:
 - Display the previous/next screen: **[Left/Right]**
 - Return to the image list: **[FOMA]**
- Playing and checking of video/i-motion **▶P114**

4 Select **YES**.

- When you set a video/i-motion as the stand-by display, the first frame is displayed.
- If the selected image or video/i-motion can be zoomed, a confirmation screen asking whether to display at the same size or large size is displayed. Select **YES (Same size)** to maintain the image size or select **YES (Large size)** to enlarge the image to the screen size.
- If the i-ppli stand-by display is set, a confirmation screen is additionally displayed asking whether to cancel it. If **YES** is selected, the i-ppli stand-by display is canceled.

Playing the video/i-motion or animation set as the stand-by display

The following operations are available for video/i-motion.

- Play: **[FOMA]**/open FOMA terminal
- Stop: **[FOMA]**/**[Power]**
- Adjust volume: **[Left/Right]**

The following operations are available for animation, Create animation or Flash movie.

- Play: Open FOMA terminal/return to the stand-by display/turn the power on
- Pause/replay: **[Power]**

Images/i-motion for the stand-by display screen preinstalled by default

Image



(Default)



©BVIG



i-motion



This can also be set to Movie ringtone

INFORMATION

Animation is played up to 16 times repeatedly.

When Flash movie is set as the stand-by display, playing is brought to a pause after a certain period of time. The melody for Flash movie set on the stand-by display is not played.

If zoom display is set for animation, the display may be distorted.

You cannot set the video/i-motion which restrictions for the number of replay or playback period are set for the stand-by display. Some video/i-motion may not be set for the stand-by display.

Even if Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions are set as links in tickers of video/i-motion, these links cannot be available from the stand-by display.

When a video/i-motion is set for the stand-by display, the clock is displayed small on the upper part. Even when the clock design is set to *Analog* in Clock Display Format, the clock is displayed by *Digital 1*.

When Lock on Close is active, animation, Create animation, Flash movie, or video/i-motion set as the stand-by display cannot be played and stopped.

Setting the i- ppli stand-by display

- i- ppli cannot be set while the stand-by ticker is being displayed.
- Multiple i- ppli applications cannot be set on the i- ppli stand-by display.
- The following i- ppli provided at manufacture can be set as the i- ppli stand-by display:
 - 珍さん計画 DX おこづかい帖プラス

1 Press on the stand-by display.

A list of i- ppli compatible with the i- ppli stand-by display appears.

2 Select i- ppli and select **YES**.

The i- ppli stand-by display is set and  or  is indicated on the stand-by display.

INFORMATION

Operating i- ppli Stand-by Display ●P295

When you set i- ppli that performs communication by connecting to the network for the i- ppli stand-by display, it may not operate correctly depending on radio wave conditions, etc. Some i- ppli and settings communicate automatically depending on the settings.

When the i- ppli stand-by display is canceled, the stand-by display is set back to the previous one.

If you set the i- ppli stand-by display during Privacy Mode (*Authorized access* set for *i- ppli*), the setting is not activated. Note that when Privacy Mode is turned on after the i- ppli stand-by display is set, the i- ppli stand-by display is not displayed, but the stand-by image which has been set before is displayed. If Privacy Mode is canceled, the i- ppli stand-by display reappears.

In PIM Lock on, the i- ppli stand-by display is not displayed but a stand-by image set previously is displayed. Note that the default stand-by display is displayed when the data which is subject to PIM Lock has been set.

When i- ppli is set for the stand-by display, the clock is displayed small on the upper part. Even when the clock design is set to *Analog* in Clock Display Format, the clock is displayed by *Digital 1*.

Setting a calendar on the stand-by display

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select **YES**.

- If the i- ppli stand-by display is set, a confirmation screen is displayed additionally asking whether to cancel it. If **YES** is selected, the i- ppli stand-by display is canceled.

When a calendar is set



Dot

The day is displayed in yellow.

The days-off and holidays are displayed in red. The settings for the days-off and holidays follow Day Off Setting or the setting for holidays for Scheduler. Note that when Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *Schedule*) or PIM Lock is on, the day set as day-off in Day Off Setting is not displayed in red and reset to the default display.

When a schedule is set, a dot is displayed on the upper right of the date. Note that all schedules with Secret Attribute set are displayed only when Secret Mode is on. In addition, they are not displayed when Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *Schedule*) or PIM Lock is on.

INFORMATION

If the date and time have not been set, the calendar is not displayed on the stand-by display.

When the calendar is set for the stand-by display, the clock is displayed small on the upper part. Even when the clock design is set to *Analog* in Clock Display Format, the clock is displayed by *Digital 1*.

An image and a calendar can be set simultaneously. However, if an animation, Create animation or Flash movie is set, the calendar is displayed when the playback is stopped or paused.

Customizing the stand-by display

Custom Stand-by

The stand-by display can be divided into several areas to display the latest information such as unread mail or missed calls, notes, calendar or schedule in each area. The pattern of dividing areas can be selected from the following 7 types:



Pattern 1

Pattern 2

Pattern 3

Pattern 4

Pattern 5

Pattern 6

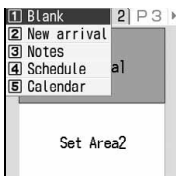
Pattern 7

- While the stand-by ticker is being displayed, even if Pattern 1 is selected, the display area is changed to the upper half area (e.g. Set Area1 of Pattern 2). When Pattern 2 through 7 is selected, the bottom area is not displayed.

1 Press **Menu** **8** **や** **か** **1** **6** on the stand-by display.

2 Press **↔** to switch patterns.

3 Select an area and press **1** to **5**.



- If the pattern including multiple areas is selected, repeat Step 3.
- The calendar cannot be set in an area smaller than half of the screen. (e.g. Set Area1 of Pattern 3)

Setting New arrival



- ① Press **[2 7abc]**.
- ② **Select information to display.**
 - Press **[↻]** to switch selecting/canceling, press **[Menu]** to select or cancel all items.
- ③ Press **[☐]**.

Setting Notes

- ① Press **[3 012]**.
The list of recorded notes is displayed.
- ② **Select a note to display.**
 - Press **[☐]** to display the content of the note. Press **[H/1234]** to return to the note list. Press **[↻]** on the notepad view screen to set.

4 Press **[☐]** and select **YES**.

- If the i- ppli stand-by display is set, a confirmation screen is displayed additionally asking whether to cancel it. If **YES** is selected, the i- ppli stand-by display is canceled.
- While the stand-by ticker is being displayed, a message is displayed. Press **[↻]**.

INFORMATION

When the area that the content should be displayed overlaps with the clock display position on the stand-by display, the clock is displayed small on the upper part. Even when the clock design is set to *Analog* in Clock Display Format, the clock is displayed by *Digital 1*.

Checking information on the custom stand-by display

1 Press **[↻]** on the stand-by display.



The top area is displayed with a red cursor frame.

- Press **[↻]** to move the cursor frame.

2 Select an area.

INFORMATION

If you set animation, Create animation or Flash movie in the image setting, the information is displayed when the playback is stopped or paused.

Displayed information


The custom stand-by display and various information appear as follows:

- The numbers of information entries and lines which are displayed depend on the area size.
- For each information entry, the time is displayed for the current day and the date is displayed for other days.

New arrival




The selected items of unread mail, Message R, Message F, missed calls or recorded messages are listed starting with the most recent item. If this area is selected, the list screen of the first item is displayed.


 **Unread messages**

: The reception date and time and the first part of subject are displayed. Selecting the area when this item is displayed at the beginning displays the Inbox folder list.

 **MessageR/MessageF**

: The reception date and time and the first part of title are displayed. Selecting the area when this item is displayed at the beginning display the Message R/F list.

 **Missed calls** : The date and time of incoming calls and the phone number of the other party (or name when registered in the phonebook) are displayed. Selecting the area when this item is displayed at the beginning, display the received call list.

 **Recorded messages**

: The date and time of recording and the phone number of the other party (or name when registered in the phonebook) are displayed. Selecting the area when this item is displayed at the beginning displays the recorded message list.

Notes






The beginning of the contents recorded in notepad is displayed. Select this area to display the details of notes.

Schedule




Scheduled entries of which the start time has not come yet are displayed starting from the earliest date and time. Select this area to display the details of the first schedule.

- The icon, date and time and the beginning of the contents are displayed.
- In case of long-term schedule,  start date ~ is displayed instead of the registered icon. If the start date/time is on the current day,  start time is displayed, however, once the start date/time runs over the current time, the display changes to  start date ~ and it is displayed next to the schedule entries of which the start time has not come yet for the day (in order of start date). Long-term schedule entries are displayed until the end date/time elapses.
- If any schedule for all day is set on the current day, *AllDay* is displayed instead of the start time.

Calendar



The current calendar is displayed. Select this area to display the schedule calendar screen of Scheduler.

- Viewing the calendar  P123

INFORMATION

The area with no content to be displayed is not displayed.

When Secret Mode is not set, schedules with Secret Attribute set are not displayed on the custom stand-by display. If there is any incoming call or message recording from a party with Secret Attribute set, the phone number is displayed without the name on *New arrival* area with *Missed calls* or *Recorded messages* set.

When Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs, Mail* or *Schedule*), all unread mail, missed calls, recorded messages or schedules are not displayed on the area of *New arrival* or *Schedule*.

When Privacy Mode is on (*Hide secret fldrs* set for *Mail*), unread mail other than the folders with the privacy set to *ON* in the folder settings are displayed.

When PIM Lock is activated, *PIM lock* is displayed and the contents are not displayed on the area of notepad or schedule. In addition, only missed calls after PIM Lock is set are displayed on the area of *New arrival*.

Canceling the setting items other than images

Cancel the settings for the video/i-motion, the i- ppli stand-by display, the calendar for stand-by and the custom stand-by display and display an image on the stand-by display.

- 1 Press **Menu** **8** **2** **1** **8** on the stand-by display.
- 2 Select *Yes*.
 - If an image has been previously set before the image is canceled, the image is displayed, otherwise, the default image is displayed on the stand-by display.

Changing images to be displayed for incoming/outgoing calls/mails Mail/Call Image Setting

Set images to be displayed for outgoing calls, incoming/outgoing mails or for message retrieval.

- Setting images to be displayed when receiving calls **▶**P69

Changing images for outgoing calls Outgoing Call Image/Video-phone Dialing Image

Menu 861 / Menu 881

Set images to be displayed for outgoing voice calls or video-phone calls.

Default **Default**

- 1 Press **Menu** **8** **2** **2** on the stand-by display.
- 2 Press **1** or **3**.
 - Press **1** to set an image for making a voice call.
 - Press **3** to set an image for making a video-phone call.
- 3 Select *Display image* field and press **2**.



• To set the default image, press **1**.

- 4 Select *Select image* in *Image list* field and select an image.
- 5 Press **Enter**.

INFORMATION

Setting Create animation displays the first frame.

Displaying images saved in the phonebook for incoming/outgoing calls/mails Contact Image

When a call from/to the other party registered in the phonebook is received/made, the portrait image saved in the phonebook can be displayed.

Default **ON**

- 1 Press **Menu** **8** **2** **2** **5** on the stand-by display.

2 Press **1**

- Not to display a portrait image, press **2**

Call image priority

The call images set in multiple functions are displayed by priorities given below:

- ① FOMA terminal phonebook settings*1
- ② FOMA terminal phonebook settings by the groups
- ③ Sound Setting/Outgoing Call Image/Incoming Call Setting/Video-phone Dialing Image/Video-phone Receiving Setting

*1 When Contact Image is set to *ON*, the setting is available.

- When the other party does not notify the caller ID, the incoming image for the voice call operates according to Anonymous Caller. For the incoming image for the video-phone call, it operates according to Sound Setting/Video-phone Receiving Setting.
- When the sounds or images set in Anonymous Caller are deleted, the settings are changed. In this case, the sounds played or images displayed on the setting screen after deleting may differ from the sounds played or images displayed in reality may differ from the sounds played or images displayed on the setting screen.

Changing images for incoming/outgoing mails and message retrieval

Outgoing Msg. Image/Incoming Msg. Image/Retrieving Image

- You cannot set Flash movie for the retrieving image.

Default Default

1 Press **Menu** **8** **2** **2** on the stand-by display.

2 Press **6** to **8** .

- Press **6** to set an image to be displayed when sending the i-mode Mail or SMS.
- Press **7** to set an image to be displayed when receiving the i-mode Mail, SMS or Message R/F.
- Press **8** to set an image to be displayed when retrieving the i-mode message or SMS.

3 Select the image to register.

- Follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Changing images for outgoing calls". ◀P126

Displaying the other party's name and phone number when receiving calls Receive Display

Set whether to display the name and phone number when a call is received as well as setting the character sizes for the name. In addition, whether to display the reception result as ticker in the task bar when receiving an i-mode Mail, SMS or Message R/F can be set.

- Name displays ◀P94

Default Caller's phone number: Display Caller's name: Standard Receive mail/message: Display

1 Press **Menu** **8** **2** **2** **9**

2 Select each item to set.

Caller's phone number

: Sets whether to display the phone number when a call is received.

Caller's name

: Sets whether to display the caller's name in a normal size or a small size or not to display the name when a call is received.

Receive mail/message

: Sets whether to display the reception result as ticker in the task bar when receiving an i-mode Mail, SMS or Message R/F.

3 Press .


Setting the sub-display


Sub-display Info Setting

Set whether to display the phone number or the mail address when receiving a call or a mail.

Default Show callers' info


1 Press      on the stand-by display.

2 Press .

• To release, press .

INFORMATION

If Sub-display Info Setting is set to *Show callers' info* and you receive/make a call or receive a mail when FOMA terminal is closed, the other party's phone number or mail address is displayed on the sub-display. If the other party's phone number or mail address is registered in the phonebook, his/her name is displayed.

- If a call is received without caller ID notification, the caller's phone number and name are not displayed.
- Displaying the name 





Even if Sub-display Info Setting is set to *Show callers' info* in Privacy Mode (when *Authorized access* set for *Mail*), a name or mail address is not displayed.

If Sub-display Info Setting is set to *Hide callers' info*, only the status such as receiving a call is displayed on the sub-display.

Setting the light for display and key

Display Light Setting

Default Lighting method: Turn light ON Turn light on: 10 seconds Range: Display + Key
Brightness: Normal AC adapter connected: Terminal settings

1 Press     on the stand-by display.








2 Select each item to set.

Lighting method : Sets whether to turn the lighting on or off.

- Setting *Turn light ON* maintains lighting for the time set in *Turn light on*.
- Setting *Turn light OFF* does not turn the lighting on. *Turn light on*, *Range* and *Brightness* cannot be set.

Turn light on : Sets the lighting time.

Range : Sets whether to light only the display or both the display and keys.

- The keys light when the range is set to *Display + Key* are as follows: , , ,  to , , .

Brightness : Sets the brightness in case the display lights.

AC adapter connected

- : Sets how to light the display when connecting to the AC adapter (desktop holder) or to the DC adapter.
- Setting *Terminal settings* lights the display according to the settings of the above items.
- Setting *Always on* lights the display at *High*.

3 Press .





INFORMATION

When the lighting time is set to other than *Always* and if you do nothing for about 5 minutes while displaying the stand-by display or making a voice call, the display light is turned off automatically. (If *AC adapter connected* is set to *Terminal settings* and it is charged, the same situation will occur.) The display light is turned on again if there is any key operation or incoming call.
This setting is not reflected on the sub-display.

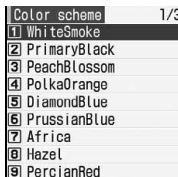
Changing display colors



Color Scheme

Default WhiteSmoke

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Press  to .




- You can select a color from 24 colors.
- Press  to switch pages.
- Press  to place the cursor at a type of the color, so the screen is displayed in that color.
- The color name is an image.

INFORMATION

Changing this setting does not affect the colors of the website and sub-display.

The menu display format for the normal menu and the custom menu can be changed. Whether to display the function description when a menu item is selected can be set as well.

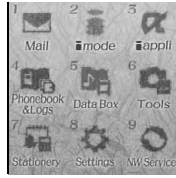
- The icon design for the normal menu in tile display can be selected from 4 types. The selected icon design applies to the first-level menu that appears first when you press .



Type1



Type2





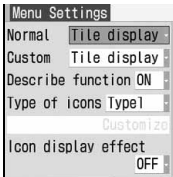
Type3




Type4

Default Normal: Tile display Custom: Tile display Describe function: ON Type of icons: Type1
Icon display effect: OFF Default MENU: Normal Active shortcut: Custom

- 1 Press   on the stand-by display.
- 2 Select each item to set.





- Normal** : Sets the display format for the normal menu.
- Custom** : Sets the display format for the custom menu.
- Describe function** : Sets whether to display the function description.
- Type of icons** : Sets the design of icons displayed in tile display of the normal menu.
- Icon display effect** : Sets whether to magnify an icon when it is selected.
- Default MENU** : Sets the menu which is displayed when pressing  on the stand-by display.
- Active shortcut** : Sets the shortcut operations to be used for the custom menu.
 - **Normal**: the same item numbers as the normal menu can be used for shortcut operations.
 - **Custom**: the item numbers for the positions of the respective functions on the custom menu can be used for shortcut operations.

- 3 Press .

Changing the menu design

Two patterns of the design of the menu screen can be created by changing the icons or background images of the menu.

- When the image size exceeds 96 x 96 for icons and 240 x 240 for background images, they are reduced to be displayed.

- 1 Press   on the stand-by display, select **Custom1** or **Custom2** in **Type of icons** field and select **Customize**.

2 Select a function to change icons and select an image from the image folder list.

Canceling a menu icon

- ① Place the cursor at the icon to be canceled, press **Menu** **1** **あ** and select *Yes*.
 - To cancel all, press **Menu** **2** **あ** and select *Yes*.

3 Press **Menu** to select a background image for the menu screen from the image folder list.

Canceling a background

- ① Press **Menu** **4** **あ** and select *Yes*.

4 Press **Menu** twice.

INFORMATION

Create animations, Flash movies or images in *Item* folder cannot be set. Also, if an animation is set, the first frame is displayed.

The current settings for *Custom1* and *Custom2* of the type of icons cannot be changed while PIM Lock is on.

Changing the battery level icon

Battery Icon

Default   

1 Press **Menu** **8** **あ** **か** **あ** **4** **あ** on the stand-by display.

2 Press **1** **あ** to **3** **あ**.



Setting the color and lighting pattern for the call indicator

Alert Lighting Setting

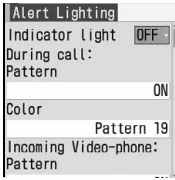
Set whether to flash the call indicator or not when there is the latest information such as missed calls or unread mail. It also sets the lighting pattern and color for the call indicator during a call or when receiving a call/mail or opening/closing FOMA terminal.

- The settings for this function are also reflected to the lighting for all of the following settings: Incoming Call Setting, Video-phone Receiving Setting, Incoming Msg. Setting, Incoming Chat Mail Setting, Incoming Msg. Alert, and Setting of melody.
- The settings are as follows by default:

Item	Default	Item	Default	Item	Default
Indicator light	OFF	During call	ON/Pattern 19	Incoming Video-phone	ON/Pattern 20
Incoming call	ON/Pattern 20	Incoming Mail	ON/Pattern 9	Incoming Message R	ON/Pattern 9
Incoming Message F	ON/Pattern 9	Incoming Chat Mail	ON/Pattern 9	Alarm	OFF
Schedule	OFF	Play melody	Sync melody	Open phone	ON/Pattern 13
Close phone	ON/Pattern 13				

1 Press **Menu** **8** **や TUV** **2** **か ABC** **6** **ほ MNO** on the stand-by display.

2 Select **Indicator light** field and press **1** **あ / ㊟** or **2** **か ABC**.



- If **ON** is set, the call indicator flashes in blue at around 6-second intervals when there is a missed call (voice call/video-phone/recorded message) with FOMA terminal closed. It flashes in green at the same intervals when there is unread information (mail/SMS/Message R/F/chat mail). If the new arrival information is confirmed, the call indicator stops flashing.
- When **OFF** is set, the call indicator does not flash even if there is new arrival information.

3 Select **Pattern** field of the item to be set and press **1** **あ / ㊟** to **3** **さ DEF**.

- Place the cursor on **ON** to light/flash the call indicator by the color and pattern specified in **Color** field.
- When **Sync melody**, **Sync microphone**, or **OFF** is set, **Color** field cannot be set. The lighting color and lighting/flashing pattern change in conjunction with a melody when **Sync melody** is set and with a talking voice when **Sync microphone** is set.
- If the incoming setting for Incoming Chat Mail Setting is set to **Same : Msg setting**, **Incoming Chat Mail** cannot be selected.

4 Select **Color** field of the item to be set and press **1** **あ / ㊟** to **9** **㊿ XYZ**.

- Press **+/-** to switch the pages.
- If you press **↻**, the call indicator lights/flashes by the color and lighting pattern of the cursor position.
- If the incoming setting for Incoming Chat Mail Setting is set to **Same : Msg setting**, **Incoming Chat Mail** cannot be selected.

5 Press **□**.

INFORMATION

If there are multiple newly-arrived information, the call indicator flashes in the following priority when **Indicator light** is set to **ON**.

- ① Missed calls (voice call/video-phone call/recorded message)
- ② Unread messages (mail/SMS/Message R/F/chat mail)

Even when **Indicator light** is set to **ON**, the call indicator does not flash in the following cases:

- During Driving Mode
- During a call
- While receiving a call
- When FOMA terminal is opened

Even when **Indicator light** is set to **ON**, if there have been no newly-arrived information for about 24 hours since there was the first arrival or if **1** **あ / ㊟** (with the number of newly-arrived information) on the display are deleted, the call indicator stops to flash even if the information are not confirmed.

Even if **Sync melody** is set for the lighting pattern, it may not be synchronized depending on the melodies.

Assuming that the alarm setting or schedule has video/i-motion settings for the alarm sound or that the sound settings include either **Movie ringtone** or **OFF** for the following ring tones, the call indicator lights or flashes according to the specified lighting color and pattern even if the lighting pattern has been set at **Sync melody**.

- Phone
- Mail
- Chat mail
- Message R
- Message F
- Video-phone
- Open phone
- Close phone

Even when the lighting color during a call is set, the call indicator flashes by **Pattern 5** while on-hold.

When a call or mail is received from a party registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the operation depends on the FOMA terminal phonebook setting.

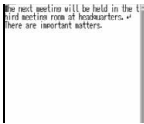
List of Illumination Colors

- Pattern 1
- Pattern 5
- Pattern 9
- Pattern 13
- Pattern 17
- Pattern 21
- Pattern 25
- Pattern 2
- Pattern 6
- Pattern 10
- Pattern 14
- Pattern 18
- Pattern 22
- Pattern 26
- Pattern 3
- Pattern 7
- Pattern 11
- Pattern 15
- Pattern 19
- Pattern 23
- Pattern 27
- Pattern 4
- Pattern 8
- Pattern 12
- Pattern 16
- Pattern 20
- Pattern 24

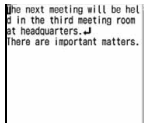
Changing the font size

Font

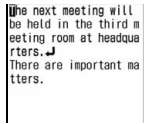
The character size can be changed from 5 types for entering characters by full-screen entry.



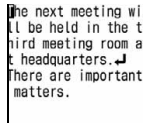
Minimum: 12 dots



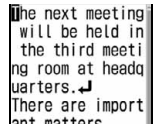
Small: 16 dots



Standard: 20 dots



Large: 24 dots

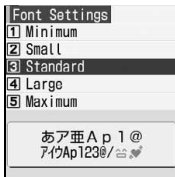


Maximum: 28 dots

Default Standard

1 Press **Menu** **8** **2** **8** on the stand-by display.

2 Press **1** to **5**.



• Press **⊙** to display the example in the character size at the cursor position.

INFORMATION

The font size of mail message to be entered cannot be changed.

The character size is not changed for in-line entry.

The character size is changed for displaying a site screen and Message R/F. However, if a character is set to *Minimum*, the *Small* character size is set. If set to *Maximum*, the *Large* character size is set.

Setting clock display

Clock Display Format

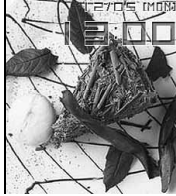
Set whether to display the clock on the stand by display. The design, display format (24 hour/12 hour) and the language used to display the day of the week can also be set.

- The clock display on the sub-display reflects only the display format (24 hour/12 hour) and language used to display the day specified in this function's setting.

Default Clock size: **Digital1/Large/Top** Day: **Terminal settings** Time format: **24 hour**



Displaying **Digital 1** by 12 hour format in a large size at the center



Displaying **Digital 2** by 24 hour format in a large size at the top



Displaying **Digital 3** by 12 hour format in a small size at the bottom



Displaying **Analog** at the center

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Clock size : Sets the clock design, clock size and layout.

- When the clock design is set to **Analog**, the clock size cannot be set.
- When the clock design is set to **No clock**, the clock is not displayed.

Day : Sets Japanese or English to display a day of the week.

- If **Terminal settings** is set for the day of the week, the display depends on the setting for Select Language.

Time format : Specifies 24 hour or 12 hour format to display the clock.

- When the analog clock is set for the stand-by clock, the clock is displayed by 12 hour format regardless of the setting of the time format.

3 Press .

INFORMATION

On the screen other than the stand-by screen, the clock is displayed on the upper right of the screen. The clock display format (24 hour/12 hour) follows this function's setting.

When the display areas are overlapped with the clock as in the following cases, the clock is displayed in a small size on the upper part, regardless of this function's setting. Even when the clock design is set to **Analog**, the clock is displayed by **Digital 1**. Also, while the stand-by ticker is being displayed, even when the clock is set to be displayed on the lower part, it is displayed on the upper part.

- When the video/i-motion or calendar is displayed on the stand-by display
- When the i- ppli stand-by display is displayed
- When, on the custom stand-by display, the area where the information to be displayed has been set is different from the area where the clock is displayed

During ALL Lock, the clock is displayed on the upper part regardless of this function's setting.

The direction of hands of an analog clock is displayed as a guide.

Safety Settings

Security code

Security codes available with FOMA terminal	136
Changing the terminal security code Change Security Code	137
Setting the PIN code	137
Unlocking PIN lock	139

Restricting Mobile Phone Operations

Various lock functions	140
Preventing unauthorized use of your terminal All Lock	141
Preventing unauthorized use of your terminal by remote access Remote Lock	141
Preventing making/receiving calls Self Mode	143
Preventing display of the phonebook or schedule PIM Lock	144
Prohibiting keypad dial Keypad Dial Lock	145
Preventing unauthorized use for the functions such as phonebook and mail Privacy Mode Setting	145
Preventing inadvertent use of side keys Side Key Lock	147
Setting keylock each time FOMA terminal is closed Lock on Close	148
Displaying the data with Secret Attribute set Secret Mode	148

Restricting outgoing/incoming or sending/receiving

Rejecting/accepting incoming calls from the specified phone numbers Reject/Accept Call	149
Setting the operation for an incoming call that does not notify the caller ID Anonymous Caller	150
Setting not to answer a call from the party not registered in the phonebook Mute Seconds Setting	151
Rejecting calls from phone numbers not registered in the phonebook Reject non-Reg. Caller	152

Other “Safety settings”

Other “Safety settings”	153
-------------------------------	-----

Security codes available with FOMA terminal

Some FOMA terminal functions for convenient use require the entry of security codes. There are the network security code for use in network services and DoCoMo e-site, password for i-mode in addition to the terminal security code for various functions. Fully use your FOMA terminal by choosing the security code to suit your needs.

Terminal security code

The default terminal security code is "0000", which can be changed to a code of your own choice.

- Please be notified that, if you forget the terminal security code, you need to bring FOMA terminal*¹, the UIM (FOMA card) in use and the identification (driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.

*¹ In case the terminal is not purchased by the subscriber, it may not be accepted.

Network security code

Network security code is the 4-digit code that is set when you subscribed to FOMA terminal for usage of network services and various procedures for the DoCoMo e-site.

- If you forgot the network security code, contact "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual. DoCoMo Shops make subscription after confirming the subscriber's identification based on a certificate such as the driver's license. If you have "User ID" and "Password", you can make subscription by accessing to DoCoMo e-site from the PC.
- Please refer to the back of this manual for "DoCoMo e-site".

PIN1 code/PIN2 code

The PIN1 and PIN2 codes can be set for the UIM. The default PIN1 and PIN2 codes are "0000", which can be changed to a code of your own choice.

The PIN1 code is the 4 to 8 digits security code entered to confirm the user every time the UIM is inserted to FOMA terminal or the power of FOMA terminal is turned on to protect your FOMA terminal from unauthorized use by the third party. Entering the PIN1 code enables making or receiving calls and FOMA terminal operations. The PIN2 code is the 4 to 8 digits security code required when using or requesting the issue of a user certificate, resetting the total call cost or changing the setting of Reset Call Cost.

i-mode password

A 4-digit i-mode password is required to store/delete sites in My Menu and apply to/cancel message services or i-mode pay sites. The default i-mode password is "0000", which can be changed to a code of your own choice (in addition, there may be passwords required by individual information providers).

- Please be notified that, if you forget the i-mode password, you need to bring the identification (driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.

INFORMATION

To prevent tampering, change the terminal security code, PIN1 code, PIN2 code or i-mode password to a code of your own choice after the completion of the application for subscription. Be sure to remember the set security codes.

Be sure to avoid recognizable numbers such as the last 4 digits of the phone number and not to be revealed the security codes or password by others.
If a wrong terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively, the power is automatically turned off. If the power is turned on again or the correct terminal security code is entered, the number of accumulated times is cleared.

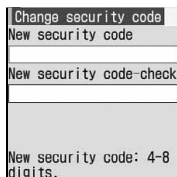
Changing the terminal security code

Change Security Code

- Enter the 4 to 8 digits number for the terminal security code.
- The entered terminal security code is masked with “ * ”.

Default 0000

- 1 Press on the stand-by display.
- 2 Enter the current terminal security code.
 - If the entered terminal security code is not correct, the message indicating that is displayed. Press and enter the correct terminal security code.
- 3 Select *New security code* field and enter a new terminal security code.



- 4 Select *New security code-check* field and enter the same terminal security code as entered in Step 3.
- 5 Press .

Setting the PIN code

- The PIN1/PIN2 code can be changed.
- Enter the 4 to 8 digits number for the PIN1/PIN2 code
- The entered PIN1/PIN2 code is masked with “ * ”.


Setting to require the entry of the PIN1 code when turning the power on

PIN1 Code ON/OFF

Subscribed to FOMA OFF

- 1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press **1** .

- To cancel the setting, press **2** .


3 Enter the PIN1 code.




- The PIN1 code is set to "0000" at the time of subscription.

When PIN1 Code ON/OFF is set to ON

When FOMA terminal is powered on, the PIN1 code entry screen is displayed. After entering the correct PIN1 code, the stand-by display appears.

- Making/receiving calls or operating the communication functions are unavailable if a wrong PIN1 code is entered.
- If a wrong PIN1 code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN1 code is locked. Press  to cancel the PIN lock.

INFORMATION

If Alarm Auto Power ON has been set to *ON*, the alarm sounds before displaying the PIN1 code entry screen when the power is turned on at the set time for an alarm or schedule. When pressing  to end the alarm, the PIN1 code entry screen is displayed. At this time, the alarm sounds by the melody preinstalled by default (アラーム・アナログ時計 (Alarm・analog clock) is for the alarm, アラーム・女性ボイス (Alarm・Female voice) is for the schedule alarm) even when the downloaded melody or i-motion is set for the alarm sound.






The settings of the PIN1/PIN2 codes and PIN1 Code ON/OFF are recorded in the UIM. When applying the current UIM to FOMA terminal you newly purchased, the settings of the PIN1/PIN2 codes and PIN1 Code ON/OFF that you set previously can be used likewise.

Changing the PIN1/PIN2 code

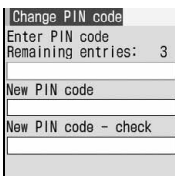
Change PIN1/PIN2 Code

- To change the PIN1 code, set PIN1 Code ON/OFF to *ON*.

Subscribed to FOMA PIN1 code: 0000 PIN2 code: 0000

1 Press **Menu**  **8**  **3**  **4**  or **2** .



2 Enter the terminal security code and then the current PIN1/PIN2 code.



3 Select *New PIN/PIN2 code* field and enter the new PIN1/PIN2 code.

4 Select *New PIN/PIN2 code - check* field and enter the same PIN1/PIN2 code as entered in Step 3.

5 Press .

- If the current PIN1/PIN2 code is not correctly entered, the message indicating that is displayed. Press  and enter the correct PIN1/PIN2 code. If a wrong PIN1/PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively, the PIN1/PIN2 code is locked. Press  to cancel the PIN lock.

INFORMATION


Even if a wrong PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively and FOMA terminal is locked, making/receiving calls or sending/receiving mail is available, but if a wrong PIN1 code is entered 3 times consecutively and FOMA terminal is locked, those operations become unavailable.

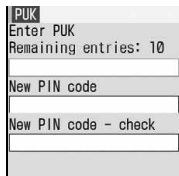
Unlocking PIN lock


If a wrong PIN1/PIN2 code is entered 3 times consecutively on the PIN1/PIN2 code entry screen, the PIN code is locked. In that case, unblock and enter a new PIN code.

- The user is notified of the PUK (PIN Unlocking Key) at the time of purchase.
- Please be notified that, if you forget the PUK or PIN Lock is blocked completely, you need to bring FOMA terminal, the UIM in use, and the identification (driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.
- The PUK and PIN1/PIN2 code entered are masked with “ * ”.

Example Unlocking the PIN1 code's lock

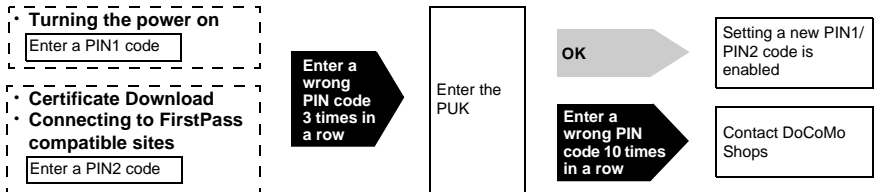
- 1 Press  on the confirmation screen of the PIN code's lock.
- 2 Enter the 8-digit PUK.



- 3 Select *New PIN code* field and enter a new PIN code.
 - 4 Select *New PIN code - check* field and enter the same PIN code as entered in Step 3.
 - 5 Press .
- The PIN lock is canceled and the new PIN1 code is set.

INFORMATION

If a wrong PUK is entered 10 times consecutively, the UIM is locked.



Various lock functions


A variety of lock functions are available to prevent FOMA terminal from being used by others or to keep your private information and phonebook entries confidential. You can choose the function to suit your needs.

- You can set multiple lock functions at the same time.
- The settings of lock functions other than Secret Mode are retained even if the power is turned off.
- You can make emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) even when the lock functions are set.

Item	Description	Page
All Lock	Disables menu operations to prevent unauthorized use by others parties.	P141
Remote Lock	Any unauthorized use of your FOMA terminal by others is avoided by setting All Lock by remote control in case your FOMA terminal is lost or stolen.	P141
Self Mode	Disables communication functions such as making/receiving of calls, sending/receiving of mail and the infrared communication.	P143
PIM Lock	Disables using of private information functions such as Phonebook, Own Number and Scheduler and prevents the display of and tampering with private information. When PIM Lock is on, the name of the other party is not displayed even if the call is made/received to from the party registered in the phonebook or mail is received.	P144
Keypad Dial Lock	Disables pressing dial keys to make calls.	P145
Privacy Mode Setting	If FOMA terminal is left unoperated for a certain period of time, displaying the phonebook and logs, mail, My Picture, i-motion, schedule or i- ppli data becomes unavailable automatically, which prevents unauthorized viewing by others.	P145
Side Key Lock	Disables the side key operations when FOMA terminal is closed to prevent inadvertent operations.	P147
Lock on Close	Requires security code entry every time FOMA terminal is opened to prevent unauthorized use by others.	P148
Secret Mode	When you set Secret Attributes for the phonebook or schedule data, the data is displayed only when the terminal security code is entered and Secret Mode is set.	P148






Menu operations are disabled to prevent unauthorized use of FOMA terminal by others.

Calls cannot be made or received when All Lock is on.

To make emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) when All Lock is on, enter the emergency call number on the stand-by display and press . The emergency call number is displayed as “ * ”.

- When All Lock is on, the set stand-by display is canceled and the default image is displayed. When All Lock is canceled, the set stand-by display reappears.

Default not set

1 Press      on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code.


All locked. is displayed.

Canceling

- ① Enter the terminal security code on the stand-by display.

INFORMATION

You can turn the power on/off. In addition, when Auto Power ON/OFF is set, Auto Power ON/OFF is executed.

Calls received during All Lock are rejected and the callers hear busy signals, but the calls are recorded in the received call history. When All Lock is canceled,  1 with the number of missed calls is indicated on the stand-by display.

i-mode Mail, SMS and Message R/F can also be received when All Lock is on, but the receiving screen, icon for the received mail and reception result screen are not displayed. When All Lock is canceled, the icon for the received mail is displayed.

When All Lock is on, the alarm or schedule alarm does not operate even when the specified date and time arrive.






When All Lock is on, the stand-by ticker is not displayed.

If a wrong terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively when canceling All Lock, the power is automatically turned off.

If you make a call to FOMA terminal under the preset operating conditions in case your FOMA terminal is lost or stolen, All Lock is activated to prevent unauthorized use by others.

Default OFF

Setting Remote Lock operating conditions

1 Press      on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code and select each item to set.

Remote lock : Sets the terminal whether to enable or disable Remote Lock.

- When **OFF** is set, the following items cannot be set.

Monitoring period : Sets the time limit from the time of the first incoming call to the time until the specified number of calls will be made (in the 1 to 10 minutes range). Even after the time limit has expired, if the pre-set number of incoming calls are not received, Remote Lock will not be activated. In this case, the number of incoming calls that have been counted is reset.


Received calls : Sets the number of incoming voice calls allowed before Remote Lock is activated (between 3 and 10 times).


Sender 1 to 3 : Sets the original phone numbers that activates Remote Lock. The number of payphone can also be set.

Setting the sender's information

① Select **Sender 1 to 3** field.

② Select **Select sender field** and press  or .

- When **Sender number** is set, enter a phone number in the entry field. Press  to enter from the phonebook.

③ Press .

3 Press .

INFORMATION

Even if you set the same phone number to **Sender 1 to 3**, the operation of Remote Lock is not changed.

If the phonebook data in which a pause or timed pause has been set is registered to the sender's information, the information registered after the pause or timed pause is deleted.

Setting Remote Lock


Remote Lock is activated by making a call to FOMA terminal under the preset conditions.

- Send your caller ID and make a call to FOMA terminal.
- In the following cases, the counting of the number of incoming calls is not started and Remote Lock is not set.
 - The other party receives a call (including the case that the call is handled by Response and Hold or Answer Machine or received by Auto Answer).
 - FOMA terminal is busy.
 - The call cannot be received because FOMA terminal is outside the service area, the power is turned off or Self Mode is on, etc.
- If the following states occur before making the specified number of calls, the number of incoming calls is reset.
 - The other party receives a call (including the case that the call is handled by Response and Hold or Answer Machine or received by Auto Answer).
 - The power of FOMA terminal is turned off.
 - The set monitoring period has passed.

1 Make a voice call to FOMA terminal under the set conditions.

The guidance notifying that All Lock is set is played and Remote Lock is set for FOMA terminal.

Canceling

Enter the terminal security code into FOMA terminal with Remote Lock set and press .

INFORMATION

The counting of the number of incoming calls is only effective only for the first call made from the specified sender. After the counting has been started, additional incoming calls from other senders are not counted. Even if a call is rejected, or transferred by Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service (excluding when the ringing time is 0 sec), that call is counted as an incoming call.

When there is an incoming call from the phone number of the sender registered in Remote Lock while Answer Machine or Auto Answer is set, Answer Machine or Auto Answer operates in about 4 seconds after the response time set by Answer Machine or the delayed time set by Auto Answer has elapsed. End the call before Answer Machine or Auto Answer starts.

The phone number "186 (✕31#)" or "184 (#31#)" that has been set for the sender does not need to be set as "186 (✕31#)" or "184 (#31#)" when dialing.

Even if a call arrives while Remote Lock is on, the call is disconnected. If a call arrives from phone numbers that are set as senders, the guidance informing that All Lock is on is played and then the call is disconnected.

Menu 894






Preventing making/receiving calls


Self Mode

Disable all functions that require communications such as making/receiving calls or sending/receiving mails. Infrared data communication and infrared remote control are also disabled.

Default OFF

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display and select Yes.

Self Mode is set and  is indicated on the stand-by display. When FOMA terminal is closed, pressing ,  or  indicates  on the sub-display.

- When you operate from the menu, press  and select Yes.

Canceling

① Hold down for over a second when Self Mode is on.

- When you operate from the menu, press .

INFORMATION

If you receive a call when Self Mode is on, a guidance is played for the caller notifying that radio waves are hard to reach or the power of your terminal is turned off. You can use Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service.






i-mode Mail or Message R/F sent when Self Mode is on are stored at the i-mode Center and SMS are stored at the SMS Center. When you receive messages, cancel Self Mode and perform Check i-mode Message or Check SMS.

Note that if emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) are made in Self Mode, Self Mode is canceled.






PIM Lock prevents the display of and tampering with private information:


- This function cannot be set when Reject Non-Reg. Caller is set to *ON*.
- When PIM Lock is set, the previous redial data and received call history are deleted. Note that making or receiving calls after the setting are recorded and dialing from the redial data or received call history can be performed.

Default OFF

1 Press  **8**  **3**  **1**  **2**  on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code and press .

PIM Lock is set and  is indicated on the stand-by display. When FOMA terminal is closed, pressing ,  or  indicates  on the sub-display.



- To cancel the setting, press .

When PIM Lock is on

- The following all operations or some settings become unavailable.

• Mail/Chat mail/SMS/Message R/F **1	• iMenu	• Bookmark
• Internet	• Screen Memo	• Last Visited URL
• i- ppli	• Upgrading i- ppli	• Phonebook
• Answer Machine/Voice Memo	• My Picture (<i>Image</i>)	• i-motion
• Melody	• Camera	• Sound Recorder
• Bar Code Reader	• miniSD card	• Call Cost Limit
• Notepad	• Handset Quick Dial	• Software Update
• Own Number	• Virus Scan Function	• Stand-by Telop Setting
• Data transfer in infrared communication	• Stand-by Telop Setting	• i-channel
- Menu Setting (changing the settings for *Custom1* or *Custom2* of icon designs)

*1 Messages can be received but the receiving screen, the icon for the received mail or the reception result screen is not displayed.

- If the menu is displayed, the icon is indicated by  and the characters are grayed out not to select them.
- Even if an incoming call or mail is received from a caller registered in the phonebook, only the phone number or mail address is displayed without displaying the caller's name.
-  is not indicated on the stand-by display even when Answer Machine is set because Answer Machine does not operate. An icon for a recorded message which has not been played is also not displayed either.
- i-channel information is not displayed on the stand-by ticker or the sub-display.

INFORMATION

When the data which is subject to PIM Lock has been set as the stand-by display or ring tone, the default setting becomes active while PIM Lock is on. The setting you made is restored when PIM Lock is canceled. When data saved in *Preinstalled* folder is set, however, the setting becomes the set stand-by display or ring tone even if PIM Lock is on.

When PIM Lock is on, the alert tone or vibrator does not notify that the number of voice messages of Voice Mail Service is increased.

You cannot set/cancel PIM Lock from external devices using AT commands.

Disable making a call by dialing a phone number (Keypad Dial).

- You can make a call using the phonebook and redial data.
- When this function is set to *ON*, the previous redial data and received call history are deleted. The numbers dialed from the phonebook after the setting is made are recorded under the redial data.

Default OFF

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code and press .

Keypad Dial Lock is set and is indicated on the stand-by display.

- To cancel the setting, press .

When Keypad Dial Lock is on

- The following operations become unavailable:
 - Dialing from the received call history
 - Editing, adding and deleting the phonebook entries
 - Editing and resetting your own number
 - Phone To (AV Phone To) and Mail To functions
 - Phonebook data transfer to/from external devices
 - Sending i-mode Mail/SMS (Mail can be sent by specifying addresses using the phonebook or mail from the party registered in the phonebook can be replied.)
 - Reading mail template from the mail composition screen
 - Using network services by the dial key operation

INFORMATION

You cannot set/cancel Keypad Dial Lock from external devices using AT commands.

Preventing unauthorized use for the functions such as phonebook and mail

Setting Privacy Mode operations

Set whether to enter the terminal security code when using the phonebook, mail or My Picture in Privacy Mode. Also, you can set Privacy Mode to manually start or to automatically start when no operation has taken place in a certain period of time.

- To enable Privacy Mode Setting, you need to start Privacy Mode.

Default Phonebook & Logs: Show all Mail: Show all My picture: Show all i-motion: Show all Schedule: Show all i- ppli: Show all Auto start: OFF

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code and select each item to set.

- When you use the following functions in Privacy Mode, set whether to enter the terminal security code. In addition, set the time period until Privacy Mode starts automatically if you do nothing on FOMA terminal in stand-by.

Phonebook & Logs

: Sets for the display of the phonebook, redials, received calls, recorded messages or voice memos.

Mail : Sets for the display of the mail messages.

- Setting **Hide secret fldrs** hides the folders with the privacy set to **ON**.

My picture : Sets for using My Picture.

i-motion : Sets for using i-motion.

Schedule : Sets for using schedules.

ppli : Sets for using i- ppli.

Auto start : Sets the value of time required before Privacy Mode is automatically started.

3 Press .

4 Press .

INFORMATION

In case Privacy Mode is activated (**Authorized access** set for **My picture**, **i-motion** and **i- ppli**), when trying to perform the following operation after the terminal security code is entered, a message indicating that the items set not to be displayed in Privacy Mode Setting are reflected when Privacy Mode is canceled is displayed.

- | | | |
|---|--|--|
| • Outgoing Call Setting | • Incoming Call Setting | • Video-phone Dialing Image |
| • Video-phone Receiving Setting | • Outgoing Msg. Image | • Incoming Msg. Image |
| • Retrieving Image | • Image Setting (video-phone) | |
| • Registering new entry/editing data in the phonebook | | • Ring alert settings by Group Setting |
| • Sound Setting | • i- ppli settings of Stand-by Display Setting | |
| • Anonymous Caller | • Incoming Msg. Alert | • Incoming Msg. Setting |
| • Incoming Chat Mail Setting | • Editing schedule alarm settings | • Editing Own Number |

Images or i-motion set for the stand-by display or for icons or background of the menu screen are usually displayed even in Privacy Mode (**Authorized access** set for **My picture** and **i-motion**).


If all items except the automatic start are set to **Show all**, Privacy Mode is not activated. In addition, when Privacy Mode is activated, it is canceled automatically.

Starting Privacy Mode


1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display.

Canceling

① Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display and enter the terminal security code.

- If **Hide secret fldrs** has been set for **Mail** and the privacy of Inbox, Outbox and Unsent messages has been set to **ON**, holding down  for over a second on the applicable folder list screen and entering the terminal security code cancels Privacy Mode temporarily and display the folders.

INFORMATION

While you use the function restricted by Privacy Mode, once the terminal security code have been entered, further authentication is not required until the stand-by display is displayed by pressing . The same rule applies when multiple items are set to *Authorized access* in Privacy Mode Setting. Note that when you use the function which is not subject to Privacy Mode and requires the terminal security code entry, you need to enter the terminal security code when activating the function.

Example

- Once you have entered the terminal security code while you are using the phonebook, you do not need to enter it again until you have finished using the phonebook functions.
- In case you try to send the image saved in My Picture by mail when *My picture* and *Phonebook & Logs* have been set to *Authorized access*, entry of the terminal security code is not required even when trying to access to the phonebook from the mail composition screen because the terminal security code is already entered in starting My Picture.

Even though there is an incoming call or mail from the caller registered in the phonebook during Privacy Mode (when a phonebook and history are set to *Authorized access*), the caller's name is not displayed. Only the phone number or mail address is displayed.

When Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*), you cannot refer to the phonebook while entering the characters.

When Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *My picture* and *i-motion*), the terminal operates according to Sound Setting, Incoming Call Setting, Video-phone Receiving Setting instead of the setting of the phonebook or phonebook by the group for which the data other than the *Preinstalled* folder data is set for the ring alert or image in the FOMA terminal phonebook. Note that when you set the data except for the *Preinstalled* folder data in Sound Setting, Incoming Call Setting, Video-phone Receiving Setting, Privacy Mode operates by the default setting.

When Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *My picture*), shooting while setting a frame cannot be performed in still image shooting. In addition, even if entries in the FOMA terminal phonebook are copied/backed up to the miniSD memory card, the still images set in the FOMA terminal phonebook are not copied or backed up.

When Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *i-motion*), editing tickers directly after recording video cannot be performed.

Preventing inadvertent use of side keys


Side Key Lock

Disable the side key operations when FOMA terminal is closed and prevent the wrong operations while you carry the terminal around by putting it in a bag.

- Even while Side Key Lock is on, you can operate the side keys when FOMA terminal is opened.

Default not set


1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display.

Side Key Lock is set and  is indicated on the stand-by display.

Canceling

- ① Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display.

When FOMA terminal is closed

Holding down  over a second in stand-by sets/cancels Side Key Lock.

INFORMATION

Even if Side Key Lock is on, the date and time screen can be displayed on the sub-display.

Setting keylock each time FOMA terminal is closed

Lock on Close

If you set Lock on Close to *ON*, you need to enter the terminal security code each time you open FOMA terminal. This prevents unauthorized use of your FOMA terminal by others.

To make emergency calls (110, 119, or 118) when Lock on Close is on, enter an emergency call number on the terminal security code entry screen and press . The emergency call number is displayed as “ * ”.

- Even if Lock on Close is on, you can answer incoming calls and turn off the power.

Default OFF

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code and press .

- To cancel Lock on Close when FOMA terminal is closed, press .

3 Close FOMA terminal when it shows its stand-by display.

Operating FOMA terminal while Lock on Close is on

1 Open FOMA terminal and enter the terminal security code.

- If the stand-by display reappears by pressing , is indicated. When you press or a dial key, the terminal security code entry screen is displayed. Key operations other than that will be invalid.
- Lock on Close is set every time you close FOMA terminal.

INFORMATION

Lock on Close is not set even though FOMA terminal is closed on the display other than the stand-by display. Also, it is not set if a message appears on the stand-by display. Press any key other than to delete the message and close FOMA terminal.

You can make calls using a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (optional) even when Lock on Close is on.

Displaying the data with Secret Attribute set

Secret Mode

If Secret Mode is set, the phonebook data and the schedule data with Secret Attribute set can be displayed. When you set/cancel Secret Attribute, you need to set Secret Mode on.

Default not set

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code.

Secret Mode is set and is indicated.

Canceling

① Press on the stand-by display.

INFORMATION

- Setting Secret Attribute for the phonebook data ●P110
- Setting Secret Attribute for the schedule data ●P376

Rejecting/accepting incoming calls from the specified phone numbers Reject/Accept Call

Reject/Accept Call is set for each phone number registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- To use this function, set Reject/Accept Call for each phone number and then enable Reject/Accept Call. The items to be set and operations of rejecting/accepting calls are as follows.

Reject/Accept Call	Reject/Accept Call setting for each phone number		
	Accept call	Reject call	No setting
Accept call	Accept	Reject*1	Reject*1
Reject call	Accept	Reject*1	Accept
Cancel settings	Accept	Accept	Accept

*1 Even if a call is received from the set phone number, the call is cut off without the ring tone sounding and the other party hears busy signals.

- This function is activated only when the other party sends the caller ID.
- Rejected calls are recorded in the received call history.
- If the ringing time is set to 0 sec for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is activated and the call is not recorded as a received call.
- Combination with Caller ID Request Service and Anonymous Caller is recommended when used.

Specifying phone numbers to reject/accept

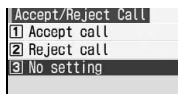
Rejecting/accepting incoming calls is set for phone numbers registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- Rejecting/accepting incoming calls is not set for phone numbers registered in the UIM phonebook.

1 Search the phonebook and place the cursor at the target to set and press .

2 Enter the terminal security code and select phone numbers.

3 Press to .



- is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No. in the details screen of the phonebook data for which Reject/Accept Call is set.
- To cancel the setting, press .

INFORMATION

On the FOMA terminal phonebook details screen, press and select *Set/Check Settings Accept/Reject call*.

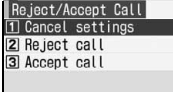
The setting of this function is canceled for the phone number changed or deleted. In that case, set Reject/Accept Call for the phone number changed or registered again.

Enabling Reject/Accept Call

- The setting of this function applies to all phone numbers with Reject/Accept Call set.
- Reject Call and Accept Call cannot be enabled simultaneously.

Default Cancel settings

- 1 Press **Menu** **8** **や TUV** **6** **ほ MNO** **5** **な JKL** on the stand-by display.
- 2 Enter the terminal security code and press **2** **か ABC** or **3** **き DEF**.



- To cancel the setting, press **1** **こ OK**.

INFORMATION

If a call without the caller ID is received from a party that you set Reject Call to, FOMA terminal operates according to Anonymous Caller regardless of this function's setting.

i-mode Mail messages and SMS are received regardless of this function's setting.

You can make a call to the phone numbers with Reject/Accept Call set regardless of this function's setting. In addition, the phonebook data can be edited.

Setting the operation for an incoming call that does not notify the caller ID

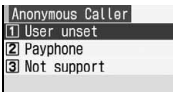
Anonymous Caller

The operation for an incoming call that does not notify the caller ID is set for each reason for no caller ID.

- As for the ring tone and image for an incoming voice call that does not notify the caller ID, this function's setting is prioritized over Incoming Call Setting and Sound Setting.

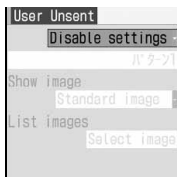
Default Disable settings (all)

- 1 Press **Menu** **8** **や TUV** **6** **ほ MNO** **3** **き DEF** on the stand-by display.
- 2 Enter the terminal security code.
- 3 Press **1** **こ OK** to **3** **き DEF**.



- Perform Step 3 to 5 repeatedly for every reason to hide the caller ID.
- The reason for no caller ID ➡ P63

4 Select each item to set.



Incoming setting

- : Sets operation for incoming calls that do not notify the caller ID.
 - When *Disable settings* is set, the ring tone set in *Phone* in Sound Setting sounds.
 - Setting *Call Rejection* rejects an incoming call.
 - Set *Ring alert off* to make the ring alert to be silent.
 - When *Select ring tone* or *Movie ringtone* is selected, select a melody or video/i-motion file.
 - When *Disable settings* or *Call Rejection* is set, *Show image* cannot be set.

Show image: Sets an image displayed for incoming calls that do not notify the caller ID.

- When *Standard image* is selected, the default image is set.
- When *Select image* (under *Show image*) is selected, select *Select image* (under *List images*) to select an image.
- When *i-motion* is selected, select *Select image* to select a video/i-motion.
- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion when selecting. ◀P114

5 Press .

INFORMATION

When *Call Rejection* has been set, the rejected calls are recorded in the received call history.

When there is an incoming video-phone call without caller ID notification, this function operates only when *Call Rejection* is set for the operation of the corresponding reason for no caller ID. If set otherwise, the ring tone or incoming image operates as set in Sound Setting or Video-phone Receiving Setting. i-mode Mail messages and SMS are received regardless of this function.

If *Movie ringtone* is set, *Sync ring alert* set in *Show image* and i-motion alert are played.

Standard image is set when the video/i-motion with only sounds (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers) is set for *Movie ringtone* in the incoming setting. Note that the image except for Flash movie can be changed by selecting *Select image* in *Show image* field.

When you set the incoming setting to *Movie ringtone* and reset it to *Ring alert off*, the video/i-motion set for *Movie ringtone* is played, but the ring volume becomes silent.

When Reject non-Reg. Caller is set and a call without caller ID notification is received, the setting for Reject non-Reg. Caller takes precedence over this function.

Setting not to answer a call from the party not registered in the phonebook

Mute Seconds Setting

The ringer action by a ring tone or vibrator is activated for a voice call or video-phone call from a caller who is not registered in the phonebook or does not notify the phone number after the specified time has elapsed. The function is effective to nuisance calls such as "One-Ring Call".

- This function cannot be set when Reject non-Reg. Caller is set to *ON*.

Default OFF

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Delayed ring alert : Specifies whether to enable Mute Seconds Setting.

- When **OFF** is set, the following items cannot be set.

Delay time (sec) : Sets the time between the arrival of calls and the start of ringing (between 1 to 99 seconds).

Missed call : Sets whether to display a missed call which ends in less than the time set in **Delay time** in the received call history.

3 Press .

When Mute Seconds Setting is set

When a call is received from a caller who is not registered in the phonebook, the arrival will be notified only on the display for the period of specified time. After the set time has elapsed, normal ringer action will start.

- Before the specified time passes, answering an incoming call or replying by Answer Machine can be performed. In that case, even if **Missed call** is set to **Not display**, incoming calls are recorded in the received call history.
- This function is operated even for incoming calls from the other party saved in the phonebook when PIM Lock or Privacy Mode is on (**Authorized access** set for **Phonebook & Logs**).
- This function also operates in the following case:
 - When the other party makes a call without notifying the caller ID even if the party is registered in the phonebook.
 - While not in Secret Mode, there is an incoming call from the other party of which number is registered in the phonebook as an entry with Secret Attribute set.

INFORMATION

The following functions are prioritized over the settings of this function:

- Driving Mode
- Answer Machine
- Auto Answer
- Voice Mail Service
- Call Forwarding Service

If you receive a call from a phone number set to be rejected in Reject/Accept Call or Anonymous Caller, that operation takes priority over this function.

i-mode Mail and SMS messages are received regardless of this function's setting.

In case **Delay time** is set to the same seconds as set for Auto Answer, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, the ring tone may sound.

Rejecting calls from phone numbers not registered in the phonebook

Reject non-Reg. Caller

- Combination with Caller ID Request Service is recommended when used.
- When **Delayed ring alert** in Mute Seconds Setting is set to **ON**, this function cannot be set.

Default OFF

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code and press .

- To cancel the setting, press .

When Reject non-Reg. Caller is set

When receiving a call from the party who is not registered in the phonebook, the call is disconnected without activating a ring tone and the caller hears busy signals.

- Rejected calls are recorded in the received call history.
- The phone rejects the call also in the following cases:
 - When the other party makes a call without notifying the caller ID even if the party is registered in the phonebook.
 - While not in Secret Mode, there is an incoming call from the party who is registered in the phonebook as an entry with Secret Attribute set.
- As for the incoming call that does not notify the caller ID, this function is prioritized over Anonymous Caller.
- i-mode Mail and SMS messages are received regardless of this function's settings.

Other "Safety settings"

The following Safety settings can be used.

Purpose	Function or Service	Page
To receive only necessary mail messages out of large-volume messages received	Receive Option Setting	P262
To change mail addresses	Change Mail Address	See "i-mode User's Manual".
To receive only mail messages sent from the specified domain	Receive Mail from Selected Domains	
To receive/reject mail messages only between i-mode terminals	Receive/Reject only i-mode Mail	
To reject unsolicited AD mail messages	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
To reject i-mode Mail messages after 200th messages sent from an i-mode terminal in a day	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
To register/check the safety of relatives by using i-mode when a disaster occurs	i-mode Disaster Message Board Service	
To receive/reject only mail messages from the specified addresses	Receive/Reject Selected Mail	
To reject all SMS or SMS with no caller ID	Reject all SMS/SMS with no caller ID	
To stop mail function temporarily	Suspend Mail	
To reject "Nuisance calls" including malicious calls and repeating misdialed calls	Nuisance Call Blocking Service	P403
To enable safe and reliable data communications by using the electronic authentication service, "FirstPass" (FirstPass-compatible sites only)	FirstPass	P183, P208
To update FOMA terminal software by using packet communication	Software Update	P485
To protect FOMA terminal from viruses by deleting data that may cause problems or stopping the starting of applications	Virus Scan Function	P489

MEMO

Camera

Before using the camera	156
Shooting still images with Camera	Still Camera 160
Recording videos with Movie Camera	Movie Camera 162
Setting the still image/video size or the saving method	Still Image Setting/Recording Setting 165
Shooting in various modes	167
Changing the settings for shooting	168
Sending images shot during voice calls	One-shot Message 171
Using Bar Code Reader	Bar Code Reader 172

Before using the camera

Still images and videos can be shot with your FOMA terminal camera. Still images and videos can be displayed/played on FOMA terminal or saved to the miniSD memory card, or can be sent via i-mode Mail as attachments.








- The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle. If you have no miniSD memory card, you can purchase it at electric appliance stores.

Using the camera

About the camera

- Note that though the camera is manufactured using extremely accurate technology, some pixels and lines may always be displayed to be lighter or darker than you expect. Noise such as dots and lines may increase especially when you shoot in a place with very low light intensity, but note that such noise is not a malfunction.
- When the lens is exposed to direct sunlight for a long period of time, the inside color filter will become discolored and images may be correspondingly discolored as well.
- When you attempt to shoot a strong light source such as the sun or a lamp or when the battery level is low, the image may become dark or degraded.
- Depending on the characteristics of the lens, displayed images may be distorted.
- Capturing under illumination flickering at high frequencies such as fluorescent lights, mercury vapor lights, or sodium lights may cause stripes to appear on the screen, but this is not a malfunction. Strips may be reduced by changing the distance or the angle of shooting the object or by moving to another position.
- Images taken with the camera may differ from the actual subjects in color and brightness, depending on conditions.

Points of concern when shooting images

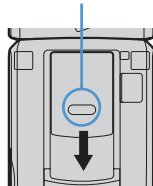
- If the lens is contaminated with fingerprints or skin oil, you cannot shoot clean images. Use a soft cloth to remove any such contaminants before shooting.
- To shoot, hold FOMA terminal firmly and then keep a camera stable. If you use auto timer, the shutter is automatically released, and you can avoid blurring of images due to hand movement.
- Do not cover the lens with fingers or strap.
- Set brightness depending on the situation of the shooting. ◀P168
The compact light can be used for shooting in a dark place. ◀P160, P162
- There is a small time lag between taking a picture and pressing  or . Do not move FOMA terminal for period after pressing  or . If you shoot a fast moving subject, the shot image might slightly differ from the subject displayed on the screen when you press  or .
- If you shoot the quickly moving subjects in the Movie Camera mode, the image may be blurred.
- When you direct the camera toward yourself by using the in-camera, the screen displays a mirror image, but shot still images and videos are normal. For still images, setting *Auto save* of Still Image Setting to *No* can be used to save as mirror images.
- When you use the camera from i- ppli, the shot still images and the recorded videos are not saved in *Image* (My Picture) or *i-motion* folder but saved in i- ppli (some i- ppli versions save them in the  *mode* folder or *Deco-Mail picture* folder). Shot images and videos may be automatically sent to the server.
- When the miniSD memory card is set as the memory to save, do not remove the miniSD memory card while using the camera. FOMA terminal may malfunction.
- You may not be able to shoot when the available space in the miniSD memory card is not enough. Before shooting, check that there is enough available space in the miniSD memory card to save images.

- If battery power goes out before saving a shot still image or video, it is not saved.
- Because the camera consumes a lot of battery power, do not leave the camera activated long time or do not keep shot images long time without being saved.
- Some settings may require extra time to show an image on the shooting screen after you start the camera.

Lens cover

- With FOMA terminal open, opening the lens cover from the stand-by display lets you hear an open cover sound, and the camera starts to operate.
- While shooting with the out-camera, closing the lens cover during a shooting stand-by deactivates Camera or Movie Camera with close cover sound. It is not deactivated if the lens cover is closed during a recording/viewing still images or videos, or performing some settings.
- The open cover sound and the close cover sound will not beep in Silent Mode.

Press here and slide to the indicated direction.



About copyrights and portrait rights

The copyright laws prohibit unauthorized use, such as reproduction, alteration and modification, of photographs or videos and i-mode or Internet web site information obtained by using the FOMA terminal without the permission of the relevant copyright holders except for personal use. Please refrain from unauthorized use of portraits or names of other persons that may infringe on portrait rights. When you release shot or recorded work on Internet web pages, use care not to infringe on copyrights or portrait rights. Note that shooting or recordings at some demonstrations, performances or exhibitions may be prohibited even when only for personal use.

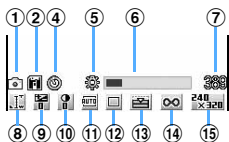


Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

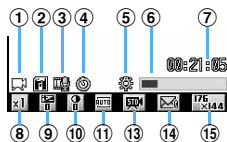
Shooting screen and files

Viewing the shooting screen

- The indicator, counter and size restrictions are not displayed when the screen is started from i- ppli. You can only switch the in-camera/out-camera, turn on the compact light, start auto timer and zoom in/out can be operated.
- During video recording, when image size is set to 320 x 240 (QVGA) and horizontal shot is taken place, **STANDBY** (recording stand-by), **REC** (recording) and **PAUSE** (in pause) are indicated instead of the icons below:















Still image shooting screen




Video recording screen

- Shooting mode** : Indicates the mode for shooting.
 📷: Still image ◀P160 📹: Video ◀P162 🔊: Sound ◀P354
- Save to** : Indicates the memory to save. ◀P166
 📱: FOMA terminal 📀: miniSD memory card
- Recording type** : Indicates the type of the video to be recorded. ◀P166

- ④ **Auto timer** : Indicates  during the setting.  P167
- ⑤ **Compact light** : Indicates  when the compact light is on.  P160, P162
- ⑥ **Indicator** : **During stand-by for shooting**
Indicates the available storage space of the memory to save during the normal shooting. During auto timer countdown, indicates the remaining time until the shutter is released.
• The miniSD memory card storage area usage rate may not become 0 even when no shot images have been saved.
- During video recording/pause**
This indicates the ratio of the photographing size to the file size that is specified by the size restriction setting (the allowable storage size is applied if the setting is *None*).
- ⑦ **Counter** : **During stand-by for shooting**
During the normal shooting, it indicates the current maximum number (estimates) of still images or the current maximum recording time (estimate) of videos that can be saved to FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card. Indicates the remaining time until the shutter is released during auto timer count down.
During video recording/pause
Indicates the elapsed/remaining time (estimated remaining time before the recording stops).
- ⑧ **Zoom** : Indicates display magnification of the image.  P167
- ⑨ **Brightness** : Indicates the brightness of the image.  P170
- ⑩ **Color density** : Indicates the color density of the image.  P171
- ⑪ **Camera effects** : Indicates the camera effects that are applied to the image.  P170
- ⑫ **Frame setting** : Indicates the current frame setting.  P169
- ⑬ **Quality** : Indicates the quality of the still image and video.  P169
- ⑭ **Size restrictions** : Indicates the size restrictions of the file to be saved.  P170
- ⑮ **Image size** : Indicates the size of the still image to shoot and the video to record.  P169

Still image files/video files

Item	Still image file	Video file
File format	JPEG	MP4 (MobileMP4)
Encoding method		Video: MPEG-4 Sound: AMR
Extension	jpg	3gp
File name/display name/title	Automatically set by the shooting date/time. Example: For 12:34:56 on December 5, 2005 20051205123456.jpg/3gp • The file name and display name can be changed after shooting  P342. • If the date and time of FOMA terminal are not set, the file name, display name and title (for video only) appear as "-----".	
Mail attachment/output	Files can be attached to the mail to send and can also be imported to PCs and other terminals by using the miniSD memory card and proprietary data link software.	

Maximum saved number of still images

Number of still images that can be stored in the FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card varies depending on the settings of quality, size restrictions and image size or the shooting conditions. The quality, image size and size restrictions can be set in Still Image Setting.

Number of still images that can be stored in FOMA terminal (estimates)

Unit: number of images

Quality \ Size	96 x 72	128 x 96	176 x 144	240 x 320	352 x 288	640 x 480	480 x 640	960 x 1280	1024 x 1280
Economy	767	767	767	540	417	199	199	77	69
Standard	767	767	706	399	316	143	139	47	42
Fine	767	706	483	241	199	84	83	26	23

Number of still images that can be stored in the miniSD memory card (estimates)

Unit: number of images

Capacity/Quality \ Size	96 x 72	128 x 96	176 x 144	240 x 320	352 x 288	640 x 480	480 x 640	960 x 1280	1024 x 1280	
16 MB	Economy	2,034	1,582	1,294	837	647	309	309	119	107
	Standard	1,780	1,424	1,095	619	491	222	215	73	66
	Fine	1,582	1,095	749	374	309	130	129	41	36
32 MB	Economy	4,246	3,303	2,702	1,748	1,351	646	646	249	225
	Standard	3,716	2,972	2,286	1,292	1,025	464	450	154	138
	Fine	3,303	2,286	1,564	782	646	272	270	86	76

Maximum recording time of videos

The video recording time available varies depending on the quality, recording type, image size and size restriction settings and the recording conditions. The quality, recording type, image size and size restrictions can be set in Recording Setting.

Recording time of videos that can be stored in FOMA terminal (estimates)

Size restrictions	Size	Recording type	Recording time per 1 recording (unit: second)				Maximum recording time on FOMA terminal (unit: minute)			
			Quality				Quality			
			LP	STD	HQ	HQ+	LP	STD	HQ	HQ+
Msg attachment (S) (290 KB)	128 x 96	Video + Voice	112	68	50	20	63	38	28	11
		Video only	187	90	69	23	106	51	39	13
	176 x 144	Video + Voice	86	43	29	10	48	24	16	5
		Video only	126	50	35	11	71	28	19	6
	320 x 240	Video + Voice	31	17	13	11	17	9	7	6
		Video only	35	15	11	9	19	8	6	5
Msg attachment (L) (490 KB)	128 x 96	Video + Voice	189	116	85	35	63	39	28	11
		Video only	319	154	117	40	107	51	39	13
	176 x 144	Video + Voice	147	73	50	18	49	24	16	6
		Video only	215	86	60	20	72	28	20	6
	320 x 240	Video + Voice	54	29	23	19	18	9	7	6
		Video only	61	26	20	16	20	8	6	5

Recording time of videos that can be stored in the miniSD memory card (estimates)

Unit: minute

Size restrictions	Size	Recording type	Capacity: 16 MB				Capacity: 32 MB			
			Quality				Quality			
			LP	STD	HQ	HQ+	LP	STD	HQ	HQ+
Msg attachment (S) (290 KB)	128 x 96	Video + Voice	90	55	40	16	189	115	84	33
		Video only	151	72	55	18	316	152	116	38
	176 x 144	Video + Voice	69	34	23	8	145	72	49	16
		Video only	102	40	28	8	213	84	59	18
	320 x 240	Video + Voice	25	13	10	8	52	28	21	18
		Video only	28	12	8	7	59	25	18	15

Size restrictions	Size	Recording type	Capacity: 16 MB				Capacity: 32 MB			
			Quality				Quality			
			LP	STD	HQ	HQ+	LP	STD	HQ	HQ+
Msg attachment (L) (490 KB)	128 x 96	Video + Voice	90	55	40	16	189	116	85	35
		Video only	152	73	56	19	319	154	117	40
	176 x 144	Video + Voice	70	34	23	8	147	73	50	18
		Video only	103	41	28	9	215	86	60	20
	320 x 240	Video + Voice	25	13	11	9	54	29	23	19
		Video only	29	12	9	7	61	26	20	16
None	128 x 96	Video + Voice	85	52	38	15	184	113	83	34
		Video only	143	69	52	18	311	150	114	39
	176 x 144	Video + Voice	66	32	22	8	143	71	48	17
		Video only	96	38	27	9	210	84	58	19
	320 x 240	Video + Voice	24	13	10	8	52	28	22	18
		Video only	27	11	9	7	59	25	19	15



Shooting still images with Camera

- Shutter sound is heard even when *Silent* is set in Ring Volume Setting or Silent Mode is active.

1 Open FOMA terminal and then the lens cover in stand-by.


The call indicator turns on in blue. Camera is activated in the Still Camera mode.

- During shooting stand-by, the following operations are enabled:

 : Switches the compact light on () / off (no icon) (for out-camera shooting only).

 : Switches the screen between the full mode/standard mode

- When the full mode is set, the icons and guide row disappear at the bottom of the screen to make an image easy to view.

 : Switches the in-camera/out-camera.

 **for over a second**

- Switches between the Movie Camera mode/Still Camera mode.

2 Point the camera at the object and press or .






Still image shooting screen

The compact light and the call indicator turn on in red with the shutter sound, and a still image is shot. A confirmation screen is displayed.

- If *Auto save* of Still Image Setting is set to *Yes*, the shot still image is saved and the shooting screen reappears. Confirmation and save operations are not needed.


3 View and confirm the still image.

- Go to Step 4 to save the still image immediately.
- Press  to retake another image without saving the shot image.
- When the image size is smaller than 240 x 320 (stand-by), you can enlarge the shot still image by pressing . Press  to return to the original size.

Sending the shot still image via mail

① Press .

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether or not to save the shot still image. Select *Yes* to save the image in FOMA terminal, and the mail composition screen is displayed.

Depending on the image size or file size setting, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to convert the image to stand-by size or save it to Data Box. 

- Even when the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the still image is saved to FOMA terminal.
- A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to adjust the file size of the shot still image depending on the settings of image size and size restrictions. Select *No limit* to save the shot still image at the original size and select *9000 bytes* to save the shot still image smaller than 9,000 bytes in FOMA terminal.
- If the shot and saved image is smaller than 9,000 bytes, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether you attach the shot still image to mail text. Select *Yes* to attach it to mail text.

Setting the image for the stand-by display

① Press and select *YES*.

The shot still image is saved to FOMA terminal and set for the stand-by display.

- If the shot still image can be zoomed, select *YES (Same size)* to maintain the image size, or select *YES (Large size)* to enlarge it to the screen size.
- If the i- ppli stand-by display has been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether or not to cancel it. If you select *YES*, the i- ppli stand-by display is canceled.
- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the image cannot be set for the stand-by display.

Adding the image to phonebook entries (only when the image size is 96 x 72 (phonebook))

① Press , then press or and select *Yes*.

The shot still image is saved to FOMA terminal and the phonebook registration screen is displayed.


- To update the entry, select the phonebook entry to register.
- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the image cannot be added to the phonebook entry.

Changing the title

① Press , then enter the title and press (up to 31 characters regardless of one- or two-byte).

Adjusting the brightness or color balance

① Press .

This brings you to the image correction mode. For the subsequent steps, 

- Images can be adjusted only when the size is less than 352 x 288 (CIF).

Saving as mirror image (only when shooting with the in-camera)

① Press .

- When a frame is set to the shot image, it cannot be saved by the mirror image.

Switching the normal display/mirror display (only when shooting with the in-camera)

① Press .

Switching the memory to save between FOMA terminal/miniSD memory card

① Press .

Displaying the list of images stored in FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card

① Press and then press or .




4 Press or .

The shot still images are saved in *Camera* folder of *Image* (My Picture).

- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the image is saved in *My picture* folder of the miniSD memory card.

Checking the saved still image immediately

① Press and select the still image to check.

- Press  twice to return to the still image shooting screen.
- When the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, select a folder by pressing  and then select the still image. Press  3 times to return to the still image shooting screen.
- The images cannot be checked when Camera is started from the phonebook, mail or i- ppli.

INFORMATION

Saving the shot still image may take time depending on the image size, quality or memory to save.

When the size of a shot still image file is larger than the value set for the size restrictions, the file automatically degrades the quality or saves the reduced-size file.

When there is not enough available storage space to save the image, or you have exceeded the maximum allowable number of images, still images cannot be shot. According to the confirmation screen, delete unwanted images or change the settings of image size and quality to lower values.

Shooting still images during a voice call may interrupt the call.

If there is an incoming call before the shutter sound is heard during stand-by for shooting still image, shooting will stop. When the shutter sound has been heard and a still image has been shot already, the still image is saved automatically if *Auto save* is set to *Yes*. If *Auto save* is set to *No*, a confirmation screen is displayed after the end of the call.

If there is an incoming call while saving a still image, the incoming image is displayed though saving continues.

If there is incoming mail while shooting still images, shooting can be continued as before without stop.

You cannot use the following functions at the confirmation screen when Camera is started from the phonebook or mail:

- Composing mail
- Stand-by display settings
- Saving images in the phonebook
- Adjustment
- Switching where to save
- Displaying the image list

Following settings should be set for the out-camera and the in-camera respectively. When you switch between them, the settings also change accordingly.

- Zooming
- Camera effects
- Frame
- Image quality
- Size restrictions
- Image size

Some functions may not be used at the confirmation screen when the miniSD memory card is not inserted or the miniSD memory card is activated.



Recording videos with Movie Camera


- Videos cannot be recorded while talking or recording voice. Exit any other function before starting recording.
- Movie Camera is set to record with voice by default. The setting can be changed in Recording Setting.
- Shutter sound is heard even when *Silent* is set in Ring Volume Setting or Silent Mode is active.


1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display to open the lens cover.

The call indicator turns on in blue, and Movie Camera is activated in the Movie Camera mode.

- During stand-by for recording, the following operations are enabled:

 : Switches the compact light on () / off (no icon).*1

 : Switches the vertical shot/horizontal shot. (only when the image size is set to 320 x 240 (QVGA))*1

 : Switches the in-camera/out-camera.

 **for over a second**



: Switches between the Still Camera mode/Movie Camera mode.






*1 You can perform this operation only when shooting with the out-camera.

2 Point the camera at the object and press or .



Video recording screen

The shutter sound is heard, the compact light blinks in red, and the call indicator blinks in blue, for every 2 seconds respectively. Recording is started and  switches to .


- Press  to pause while recording. The compact light lit in red and the call indicator lit in green, and  switches to . Press  or , and the recording restarts.
- In the following cases, the video recording is finished and a confirmation screen is displayed. Go to Step 4.
 - When the file size of the video being shot exceeds the value set for the size restrictions.
 - When FOMA terminal is closed (A confirmation screen is displayed when FOMA terminal is opened.)

If *Auto save* of Recording Setting is set to *Yes*, the recorded video is saved and the shooting screen reappears. Confirmation and saving operations are not needed.



3 Press or .



The shutter sound is heard and the video recording is finished. A confirmation screen is displayed.

- If *Auto save* of Recording Setting is set to *Yes*, the shooting screen reappears after saving the video shot. Confirmation and saving operations are not needed.
- If  is pressed to end the recording while in pause, the video recorded up to that point is saved.

4 View and confirm the video shot.

- Go to Step 5 to save the still image immediately.
- Press  to retake another video without saving the shot video.
- Press  to play the video. When *Auto play* in Recording Setting is set to *Yes*, the recorded video is played automatically.

Sending the recorded video via mail

① Press .

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save the recorded video. Select *Yes* to save the recorded video in FOMA terminal, and the mail composition screen is displayed.

- Even when the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the video is saved to FOMA terminal.
- If the file size of the recorded video exceeds 500 Kbytes, the video cannot be attached.
- When the image size is set to 320 x 240 (QVGA), the image cannot be attached.

Setting the video for the stand-by display

① Press and select *YES*.

The shot video is saved to FOMA terminal and set for the stand-by display.

- If zooming is available for the shot video, select *YES (Same size)* to maintain the image size or select *YES (Large size)* to enlarge it to the screen size.
- If the *i- ppli* stand-by display has been set, a confirmation screen appears asking whether or not to cancel it. If you select *YES*, the *i- ppli* stand-by display is canceled.
- The shot video cannot be set when the stand-by ticker is being displayed.
- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the video cannot be set for the stand-by display.

Adding the video to phonebook entries

- ① Press **Menu** **2** **ABC**, then press **2** **か** **ABC** or **3** **DEF** and select **Yes**.

The recorded video is saved to FOMA terminal and the phonebook registration screen is displayed.

- To update the entry, select the phonebook entry to register.
- Videos can be added to the phonebook entry only when the image size is set to 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF) or 176 x 144 (QCIF) and the recording type is set to **Video only**.
- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the video cannot be added to the phonebook entry.

Changing the title

- ① Press **Menu** **3** **DEF** **1** **あ**, then enter the title and press **□** (up to 31 characters regardless of one- or two-byte).

- The changed title will be valid after the video is saved.

Inserting a ticker

- ① Press **Menu** **3** **DEF** **2** **あ** and select **Yes**.

The recorded video is saved to FOMA terminal and the ticker setting screen is displayed.

Follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Inserting the ticker". ◀P323

- When the image size is set to 320 x 240 (QVGA), a ticker cannot be inserted.
- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, a ticker cannot be inserted.

Switching the memory to save between FOMA terminal/miniSD memory card

- ① Press **Menu** **5** **あ**.

- If the file size of the recorded video exceeds 490 Kbytes, the saving destination cannot be switched.

Displaying the list of videos stored in FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card

- ① Press **Menu** **6** **MNO** and press **1** **あ** or **2** **か** **ABC**.

5 Press **⏪** or **⏩**.

The recorded video is saved in **Camera** folder of **i-motion**.

- When the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, the image is saved in **Movie** folder of the miniSD memory card.

Checking the saved video immediately

- ① Press **□** and select a video to check.

- After the confirmation, press **あ/あ** twice to return to the video recording screen.
- When the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, select a folder by pressing **□** and then select the video. Press **あ/あ** 3 times to return to the video recording screen.
- The check is not available when Movie Camera is started from the phonebook, mail or i- ppli software.

INFORMATION

When key operation is made or recharging is started during recording, operation tone may be recorded. During recording, updating of the indicator and counter displays may be delayed.



Recording may be stopped before the file size reaches the limit set for the size restrictions, depending on data you record.

If you set the size restrictions to **None**, data may not be saved when battery power goes out during recording.

When there is not enough memory for video/sound or the saved data exceeds the maximum number, videos cannot be recorded. According to the confirmation screen, delete unwanted videos or sounds or change settings of the size restrictions.

You should avoid a continuous shooting of video/sound that lasts 10 hours or more, because you may fail to display or replay the video/sound if it is stored in the miniSD memory card.

When a call arrives or the alarm or schedule alarm time gets to the setting time during video recording, the recording is stopped at that point. The data recorded before the stop is saved automatically when *Auto save* is set to *Yes*. When *Auto save* is set to *No*, a confirmation screen is displayed.

If there is an incoming call while saving a video, the incoming image is displayed though saving continues. If the battery is almost exhausted during recording, the low battery message appears and the recording process stops. If *Auto save* is set to *Yes*, the data that has been recorded till then is automatically stored; pressing  returns you to the recording screen. If *Auto save* is set to *No*, pressing  displays a confirmation screen. Even after you return to the recording screen, you cannot operate it while you see a message indicating that the battery level is too low for recording.

If an alarm or battery alarm interrupts recording, you may hear the alarm or battery alarm recorded at the end of the saved video/sound.

You cannot use the following functions at the confirmation screen when Movie Camera is started from the phonebook or mail.

- Composing mail
- Stand-by display settings
- Saving videos in the phonebook
- Creating a ticker
- Switching where to save
- Displaying the video list

The following should be set for the out-camera and the in-camera separately. When you switch between the cameras, the settings are also switched accordingly.

- Zooming
- Camera effects
- Image quality
- Size restrictions
- Image size
- Recording type

Some functions may not be used at the confirmation screen when the miniSD memory card is not inserted or the miniSD memory card is activated.

Setting the still image/video size or the saving method

Still Image Setting/Recording Setting

- Images/videos cannot be set when Still Camera or Movie Camera is started from the phonebook, mail or i- ppli software. In this case, *Camera time-out* is automatically reset to *1 min*.

Default



Still Image Setting

Image size: 240 x 320 (stand-by) Quality: Standard Shooting date/time: None Size restrictions: None
 Auto-timer duration: 10 sec. Auto save: No Save to: Phone
 Camera time-out: 1 min. Shutter sound: Shutter sound1 Open cover sound: Open cover sound1
 Close cover sound: Close cover sound1 Set lighting: Always on




Recording Setting

Quality: STD Recording Type: Video + Voice Size restrictions: Msg attach (S) Size: 176 x 144 (QCIF)
 Auto-timer duration: 10 sec. Auto Play: No Auto save: No Save to: Phone Camera time-out: 1 min.
 Shutter sound: Shutter sound1 Set lighting: Always on

Example When changing Still Image Setting

1 In stand-by, open the lens cover and press  .

When changing Recording Setting




① On the stand-by display, press  for over a second to open the lens cover, and then press  .

2 Select each item to set.

3 Press .

Details on the set items

: Setting available × : Setting not available

Item	Still image Setting	Recording Setting	Description
<i>Image size</i> *1		×	Sets the image size for still images to be shot. ●P169 • The image size cannot be set to 240 x 320 (stand-by), 640 x 480 (VGA), 480 x 640 (VGA), 960 x 1280 (SXGA), or 1024 x 1280 (1.3M) during shooting with the in-camera.
<i>Quality</i> *1		×	Sets the quality for the still image files to be saved. ●P169
<i>Shooting date/time</i>		×	Sets whether to insert shooting date and time at the lower right of the still image.
<i>Quality</i> *1	×		Sets the quality of video/sound files to be saved. ●P169
<i>Recording Type</i> *1	×		Sets the type of video/sound to be recorded. 📹 : <i>Video + Voice</i> 📹 : <i>Video only</i> 🎤 : <i>Voice only</i> (Sound Recorder)
<i>Size restrictions</i> *1			Sets the size restrictions of files to be saved. ●P170
<i>Size</i> *1	×		Sets the image size for videos to be recorded. ●P169
<i>Auto-timer duration</i>			Sets the duration of time until the shutter is released while using auto timer (2 to 15 seconds.)
<i>Auto play</i>	×		Sets whether to play the video/sound automatically when a confirmation screen is displayed.
<i>Auto save</i>			Select <i>Yes</i> to save the shot still images or video/sounds automatically in the specified destination. Selecting <i>No</i> displays a confirmation screen after shooting/recording.
<i>Save to</i>			Sets the memory to save the shot still image/video.
<i>Camera time-out</i>			Sets the duration of time until Still Camera/Movie Camera/Sound Recorder turns off when no operation is made.
<i>Shutter sound</i>			Select the shooting confirmation sound from shutter sounds 1 to 5. • Press  to play the sound indicated by the cursor.
<i>Open cover sound</i>		×	The sound played when the lens cover is opened to activate Camera should be selected from any of the open cover sounds 1 to 3 and <i>OFF</i> . • Press  to play the sound indicated by the cursor (not played if set to <i>OFF</i>).
<i>Close cover sound</i>		×	The sound played when the lens cover is closed to deactivate Camera/Movie Camera should be selected from any of the close cover sounds 1 to 3 and <i>OFF</i> . This setting should be done in Still Image Setting, while it also changes the sound for deactivating Movie Camera. • Press  to play the sound indicated by the cursor (not played if set to <i>OFF</i>).
<i>Set lighting</i>			When <i>Always on</i> is set, the lighting of the display stays on while the shooting/recording screen is displayed. Setting <i>Phone settings</i> applies the settings of Display Light Setting (●P128).

*1 Items that are separately set by an out-camera and in-camera. The out-camera setting while using the out-camera and the in-camera setting while using the in-camera will be changed when the item is set.

INFORMATION

Shooting date/time cannot be set when *Image size* is set to 96 x 72 (phonebook) in Still Image Setting. In Still Image Setting, 352 x 288 (CIF), 640 x 480 (VGA), 480 x 640 (VGA), 960 x 1280 (SXGA), or 1024 x 1280 (1.3M) for *Image size* and 9000 bytes for *Size restrictions* cannot be set simultaneously. In Recording Setting, *LP* or *HQ+* for *Quality* and *Voice only* for *Recording Type* cannot be set at the same time. When *Phone* is set for *Save to*, *None* cannot be set for *Size restrictions*. Resetting does not restore the default settings for Still Image Setting and Recording Setting.

Shooting in various modes

Zooming

- The available display magnifications depend on the camera mode and image size, which are as shown below:

Shooting mode	Image size	Display magnification
Still Camera	96 x 72 (phonebook), 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF), 176 x 144 (QCIF), 240 x 320 (stand-by)	1 to 4 times (16 levels)
	352 x 288 (CIF), 480 x 640 (VGA)	1 to 2 times (6 levels)
	640 x 480 (VGA), 960 x 1280 (SXGA), 1024 x 1280 (1.3M)	1 time only (zoom unavailable)
Movie Camera	128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF), 176 x 144 (QCIF), 320 x 240 (QVGA, horizontal shooting)	1, 2, and 4 times
	320 x 240 (QVGA, vertical shooting)	1 and 2 times

- Zoom is unavailable during in-camera shooting.

- Press on the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen.



Icon of zoom Slider

Each time you press, the slider shifts.

- You can also press , then shift the slider with and press .
- Shooting procedures for still images and videos are the same as in normal shooting.

During still image shooting



Normal

Maximum

During video recording

: Normal : 2 times : 4 times

Using auto timer

Since the shutter is automatically released after the specified time has elapsed, you can take your own picture and avoid blurring of images due to hand movement.

- The time until the shutter is released can be set in Still image Setting or Recording Setting.

- Press on the still image shooting screen or on the video recording screen.

Auto timer is set and is indicated.

- To cancel the setting, press or again.


- Point the camera at the object and press or .



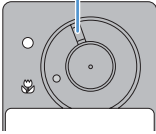
Icon of auto timer




The countdown sound is heard, the compact light flashes in red and the call indicator flashes in green. The indicator and counter show an estimate of the remaining time before shooting and the remaining number of seconds. The intervals of flashing become shorter as the time. After the specified time has elapsed, the shutter sound is heard and shooting is started.

- To stop the auto timer on the way, press .
- Note that shooting is stopped if the alarm or alarm schedule time gets to the setting time or is pressed during auto timer countdown.

When shooting a very near object with the out-camera, set the macro mode switch to  (macro). With the macro mode you can shoot the subject from a short distance.

Put your fingertip here and rotate  (protrusion) until it stops at .



- During the macro mode, shoot from a distance of about 7 to 10 cm, and about 50 cm or more during the standard mode.
- Shooting procedures are the same as for the standard mode.
- Be sure to set the switch to  (standard) after shooting with the macro mode. You cannot take clear pictures of far objects leaving the switch at  (macro).
- The shooting distance for the in-camera does not change even with  (macro).


Changing the settings for shooting

Frames, image size, quality, size restrictions, effects, brightness or color density can be set.



- The following settings will be kept even if you finish using Camera or Movie camera:
 - Image size
 - Quality
 - Size restrictions
 - Brightness
 - Color density
- Frames cannot be set for Movie Camera.
- When *Voice only* is set for the recording type in Movie Camera, the settings cannot be changed except for quality and size restrictions.










Default Frame: not set Size: (Still image)240 x 320 (Video)176 x 144
 Quality: (Still image)Standard (Video)STD Size Limit: (Still image)None (Video)Msg attach S
 Effect: Full auto Brightness: ± 0 ColorDensity: ± 0



Example Setting a frame






1 Press  on the still image shooting screen and place the cursor at the icon of frame.



- Similarly, to change other settings than a frame, put the cursor on each icon.
- Keys  to  are assigned to the icon in order from the left. The cursor also moves by pressing the following keys:

 : Zoom 	 : Effect	 : Size Limit
 : Brightness	 : Frame	 : Size
 : ColorDensity	 : Quality	



2 Press  to select a frame and press .

- As in the case of changing other settings, change the value with  and press .
- For *Effect*, *Frame*, *Quality*, *Size Limit* and *Size*, you can also set the value by pressing the corresponding keys ( to ) and then pressing .





Frames








You can select frames saved in FOMA terminal or frame images downloaded from sites.

: Frame is set : Frame is canceled







- The frames saved in FOMA terminal by default are applicable to image sizes of 176 x 144 (QCIF) and 240 x 320 (stand-by). 
- Frames cannot be set for Movie Camera.
- Frames cannot be set when 96 x 72 (phonebook), 640 x 480 (VGA), 480 x 640 (VGA), 960 x 1280 (SXGA), or 1024 x 1280 (1.3M) is set as the image size.
- Frames cannot be applied when Camera is started from the phonebook, i- ppli software or mail.
- To cancel the setting, hold down  for over a second.

INFORMATION

You can also select frames from the list by pressing    .

If you select a frame that is opposite in horizontal and vertical values to the image size, the frame is displayed after rotating 90 degrees clockwise; for example, suppose that you have selected a 144 x 176 frame when the image size is 176 x 144 (QCIF). In this case, the frame rotates 180 degrees by pressing       . Note that your frame cannot be rotated if it is the same as the image size in terms of horizontal and vertical values.













If the frame is downloaded from a site during shooting, the added frame becomes selectable by pressing

     .

It is also possible to add frames to the shot still images after saving them.

Image size

You can set the following image size:

Shooting mode	Size	Icon	Sending mail available/not available
Still Camera	96 x 72 (phonebook)		Images can be attached to i-mode Mail or Deco-mail to send to an i-mode terminal or PC.
	128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)		
	176 x 144 (QCIF)		
	240 x 320 (stand-by)*1		
	352 x 288 (CIF)		Images can be attached to i-mode Mail to send to an i-mode terminal or PC. A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to convert to 240 x 320 (stand-by) when attaching files to mail.
	640 x 480 (VGA)*1		
	480 x 640 (VGA)*1		
	960 x 1280 (SXGA)*1		
1024 x 1280 (1.3M)*1			
Movie Camera	128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF)		Images can be attached to i-mode Mail to send to an i-mode terminal or PC.
	176 x 144 (QCIF)		
	320 x 240 (QVGA)		Images cannot be attached to i-mode Mail.

*1 This is a valid image size only when shooting with the out-camera


- The maximum size of an image file that can be sent to the i-mode terminal is 500 Kbytes.
- The image size best suited for viewing on the i-mode terminal is 240 x 320 (stand-by).
- The size restriction setting may be changed automatically depending on the image size setting.

Quality of still images/videos


During still image shooting

 **Economy** : Provides the lowest quality. File size is reduced.


 **Standard** : Standard image quality


 **Fine** : Provides the highest quality. File size becomes large.

During video recording

 **LP** : Provides the lowest quality. File size is small and maximum duration of recording becomes longest.

 **STD** : Standard quality

 **HQ** : The video motion becomes smooth.


 **HQ+** : Provides the highest quality. File size is large and maximum duration of recording becomes shortest.


Size restrictions

During still image shooting

When the size of a shot still image file is larger than the limit value, the file automatically degrades the quality or saves the reduced-size file.

 **9000 bytes** : This file size is suited for being attached to i-mode Mail.


 **500K bytes** : You can attach to i-mode Mail without changing file size.


 **None** : No restriction for file size


- When you attach a shot still image to i-mode Mail and send it to an i-mode terminal, set the size restrictions to other than *None*.
- This setting may be changed automatically depending on the image size setting.

During video recording

When file size exceeds the limit value during video recording, recording ends automatically.

 **Msg attach S** : Restricts file size to 290 Kbytes. Images of this file size can be attached to i-mode Mail and sent to the terminal which does not support large message.

 **Msg attach L** : Restricts file size to 490 Kbytes. Images of this file size can be sent to the terminal which supports large message.


 **None** : No restriction for file size. In Recording Setting, when the memory to save is set to *Phone*, you cannot select this.


- When you attach a video shot to i-mode Mail and send it to an i-mode terminal, set the size restrictions to other than *None*.


Camera effects

The following camera effects are available:


 **Full auto** : Standard shooting mode. Use this mode usually.

 **Backlight** : Detects brightness of backlit subjects and automatically corrects exposure.


 **Sepia** : Shoots in sepia.

 **Monotone** : Shoots images in black and white.

 **Twilight** : Shoots portraits with the sunset in the back.






 **Surf&Snow** : Enhances the reflection of light from the ocean and snow surfaces.

 **Scenery** : Shoots vivid images with emphasized contrast.

 **Night** : Long exposure mode. It is suitable for shooting in the dark.

- *Scenery* and *Night* cannot be set during video recording. *Backlight* cannot be set when you shoot using the in-camera.

Brightness

 : -2  : -1  : ± 0  : +1  : +2

- Adjusting brightness may not have much effect depending on the image to be shot.

Color density

: -2 : -1 : ± 0 : +1 : +2

- Adjusting color density may not have much effect depending on the image to be shot.

Restoring the default setting during shooting

- The following functions are reset to the default settings:
 - Camera effects • Zoom • Brightness • Color density
- For the camera effects, only the out-camera setting is reset during the out-camera shooting; only the in-camera setting is reset during the in-camera shooting.

1 Press on the still image shooting screen or on the video recording screen.

2 Select *Yes*.

Sending images shot during voice calls

One-shot Message

When you shoot a still image during a voice call, you can attach it to i-mode Mail and then send it to the other party.

- Set the memory to save to *Phone* in Still Image Setting to use this function.

1 Press during a call.

2 Shoot the still image.

- When *Yes* is set for *Auto save* in Still Image Setting, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to attach the shot image to mail. If *Yes* is selected, the shot image can be checked.

3 Press and select *Yes*.

The shot still image is saved to FOMA terminal and the mail composition screen is displayed. If a mail address of the other party of current call has been stored in the phonebook, the other party's address is inserted in the receiver field automatically. The mail address is not be inserted when Privacy Mode is active (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*).

- Depending on the settings of image size and file size of the shot image, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to convert the image to stand-by size or save it to Data Box.
- A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to adjust the shot still image depending on the settings of image size and size restrictions. Select *No limit* to save the shot still image at the original size and select *9000 bytes* to save the shot still image smaller than 9,000 bytes in FOMA terminal.
- If the shot and saved image is smaller than 9,000 bytes, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether or not to paste the shot still image to mail text. Select *Yes* to paste it to mail text.
- Press to return to the shooting screen without composing i-mode Mail. To cancel shooting, press on the shooting screen.

4 Compose and send the i-mode Mail.

Data such as text and number contained in the JAN code or QR code can be read using the camera. The scanned data can be saved as the phonebook and bookmark data. Also, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions are available from the data.

- You can save up to 5 scanned data.
- Bar Code Reader can be used only with the out-camera.
- The bar codes and 2 dimensional codes other than JAN and QR codes cannot be read.
- Bar codes may not be scanned depending on the types and sizes.
- Scratches, dirt, damages, low print quality, the strong reflection of light or some QR code versions may prevent the codes from being read.
- You can activate Bar Code Reader on the character entry screen and enter the scanned data directly. ◀P447

JAN Code



The JAN code is a bar code indicating a number with the vertical lines (bars) of different width. The bar codes of 8 digits (JAN8) or 13 digits (JAN13) can be read.

The left JAN code shows the numeral data "4942857120448".

QR Code



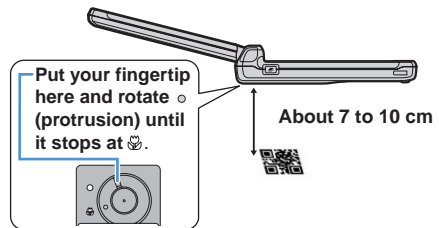
The QR code is one of the two-dimensional codes indicating a string of alphanumeric and other characters (kanji/kana and pictograms) or data such as melody and image with the vertical and horizontal patterns.

The left QR code shows the text data "FOMA D701i".

Scanning the code

When scanning a code, set the macro mode switch to ☺ (macro) and scan it with the out-camera from the distance of about 7 to 10 cm.

- When scanning a large sized code, set the switch to ○ (standard).
- After using Bar Code Reader, return the macro mode switch to ○ (standard) for using the camera next time. You cannot take clear pictures of far objects leaving the switch at ☺ (macro).



1 Press on the stand-by display.

Bar Code Reader is started.



2 Open the lens cover and set the macro mode switch to ☺ (macro).

- Each time you press , the compact light switches to on (☺) or off (no icon).




3 Scan the code.



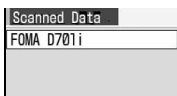
When you point the out-camera toward the code, it is scanned automatically. If scanned correctly, a confirmation sound is played and the scanned data is displayed.

- If data exceeds 11,000 one-byte or 5,500 two-byte characters, exceeded characters are not displayed, but can be saved.
- When you pause scanning such as while a submenu is displayed, the icon  displayed at the upper right corner changes to .

Re-scanning the code

- ① Press  or  .


4 Press .



The scanned data is saved to FOMA terminal.

- When the 5 data has already saved or the memory for data is not enough, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete saved data. Select *Yes* to delete the saved data.


Copying text in scanned data

- ① Press  .
- ② Select the start position to copy.
 - To copy the entire text data, press  .
- ③ Select the end position to copy.

Scanning divided QR codes

When data is divided into multiple parts (up to 16), scan them one by one according to messages appearing on the screen.



- Press  to cancel scanning of the divided QR codes. Select *Yes* when a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to discard the scanned QR codes data.

These squares indicate the number of QR codes.





Green: last scanned Blue: scan completed Gray: yet unscanned

Remaining number of QR codes/total number of QR codes

INFORMATION

Also, if you press  on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen and select *Switch modes*

Bar code reader, the bar code reader can be used.

Press   on the bar code reading screen and press  or  to switch to the still image shooting screen or the video recording screen. When Bar Code Reader is started from other than the stand-by display, the switching is not available.

Bar Code Reader can be activated from the i-ppli software that supports Bar Code Reader. When Bar Code Reader is activated from i-ppli software, the scanned data is saved and used by the software.

The scanned data is given a file name made up of the scanned date and time + serial number + .jan or .qr ("jan" is for JAN code and ".qr" for QR code). The file name "20051205123400.jan", for example, means JAN code scanned at December 5, 2005 12:34. When there are any previously saved data in the same date and time, 1 is added to the serial file number. Note that the date and time part of the file name appears as "-----" if the date and time of FOMA terminal is not set. The file name cannot be changed.

Using scanned data

- The available operations vary depending on the scanned data.

Example Adding data to the phonebook

1 Press on the stand-by display and open the lens cover.

2 Press and select scanned data to use.

Deleting scanned data

- ① Place the cursor at the scanned data to delete, press and select *Yes*.
 - To delete all, press , enter the terminal security code and select *Yes*.

3 Place the cursor at the data to add, press (Add new data) or (Update) and press or .

The phonebook registration screen is displayed with the selected data entered.

- To update the entry, select the phonebook entry to register.

Adding all data to the phonebook at one time

- ① Select *Add to phonebook* and press or .

The phonebook registration screen is displayed. Depending on the data, the name and the reading for it are entered.

Sending mail

- ① Select a mail address or *Compose message*.

The mail composition screen is displayed.

- When *Compose message* is selected, the subject and the text are entered depending on the data.

Connecting i-mode or Internet web sites

- ① Select URL and select *Yes*.

Saving URL as bookmarks

- ① Place the cursor at the URL and press . Or select *Add bookmark*.
- ② Select a folder where the URL is saved to.
 - When *Add bookmark* is selected, the site name is saved depending on the data.

Starting i- ppli software

- ① Select *Start i- ppli*.

Making a voice call or a video-phone call

- ① Select the phone number to call, select items of Customized Call, and then set the call conditions. **☛P58**
- ② Press and select *Yes*.

Saving still images

- ① Select a file name of a still image and select *Save*.
 - Selecting *Display* displays the still image.
- ② Select the items to set and press . **☛P342**
- ③ Select a folder to save the still image.

Saving melodies

- ① Select a file name of melody and select *Save*.
 - Selecting *Play* plays the melody.
 - ② Enter the display name and press .
- The melody is saved in *Data transfer* folder of *Melody* of Data Box.

i-mode/i-motion

What's i-mode?	176
Displaying sites	
Displaying sites	182
Reading and operating sites	184
Using My Menu	My Menu 187
Changing your current i-mode password into another number	Change i-mode Password 187
Displaying Internet websites	Internet Connection 188
Registering websites and i-mode sites for quick browsing ...	Bookmark 189
Saving site contents.....	Screen Memo 192
Downloading images and melodies from sites	
Downloading images from sites and messages.....	Save Image 194
Downloading melodies from sites	i-melody 195
Useful functions of i-mode	
Useful functions of i-mode	196
Making i-mode settings	
Making i-mode settings.....	i-mode Setting 198
Using Message Service	
When Message R/F is received	Receive Message R/F 201
Displaying Message R/F in FOMA terminal.....	Message R/Message F 204
Using certificate	
Operating certificates	207
Using i-motion	
i-motion.....	210
Downloading i-motion from sites.....	210
Setting auto play of i-motion	i-motion Setting 212

What's i-mode?

With i-mode, you can use online services such as connecting to Sites (Programs) or Internet websites, or sending and receiving i-mode Mail by using i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (hereinafter called as i-mode terminal).

- Sites (Programs) connection

You can access various online services such as weather information or news provided by IPs (Information service providers) from Menu List of iMenu. You can also download and enjoy games and stand-by images, etc.

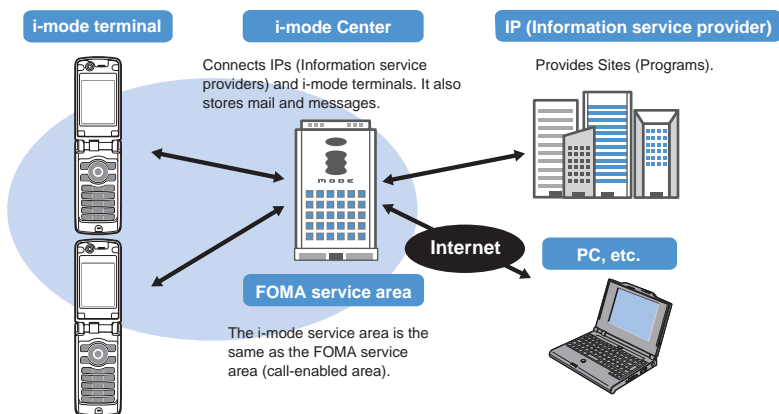
- Internet connection

You can view a wide variety of i-mode compatible websites by directly entering the URLs into your i-mode terminal.

- i-mode Mail

You can exchange e-mail (of up to 5,000 two-byte characters) with other i-mode terminals and with anyone with Internet mail address. You can also transmit Deco-mail, mail with still image and video.

Service schematic



- i-mode is an optional service to be charged requiring subscription. Please refer to the back of this manual for further information on subscription.

INFORMATION

When you newly subscribe to the FOMA service, all services are available as of the first day.

My Menu is carried over as it is when you change the mova service (with i-mode subscription) to the FOMA service. However, some sites are not carried over to My Menu of the FOMA service. In that case, register them again. You can check the sites that can be carried over to My Menu in "お知らせ&ヘルプ" of iMenu.

◆P177

i-mode service is charged based on sent/received information volume (packet count). This manual does not include fee-related information. For details of usage fees, see "i-mode User's Manual" you received when you subscribed to i-mode.

i-mode service contents are subject to change; for details, see the latest "i-mode User's Manual".

Sites (Programs) connection

You can access sites using a simple key sequence and use various online services provided by IPs (Information service providers).

For example, you can check your bank balance, make wire transfers, reserve tickets, watch news, search dictionaries, download melodies, etc.

Displaying sites

When you are connected to the i-mode Center, iMenu is displayed first. From this menu, you can access Sites (Programs) or “週刊 i ガイド”, etc.



- Sites displaying procedure ●P182
- The screen shown here is for information purpose only. The appearance may differ depending on the settings.

Menu name	Description
① マイメニュー (My Menu)	You can register your favorite sites and quickly access the sites later. ●P187 Pay sites in iMenu are automatically registered; a total of 45 sites can be registered.
② 週刊 i ガイド	The latest site information including new and recommended sites is released and updated every day from Monday to Friday every week.
③ メニューリスト (Menu List)	Lists all sites by categories or regions. You can access the desired site from here.
④ とくするメニュー	Includes enjoyable information on campaigns, gifts, and discount coupons. The information is updated every week (provided by D2 Communications).
⑤ i エリア	You can check weather, map and town information in your place or vicinity.
⑥ かんたん検索	You can search sites easily by keyword from categories such as game and stand-by display.
i アプリサーチ	Introduces i- ppli based on usage purposes, e.g. free of charge, game, etc.
便利サイトサーチ	Introduces useful sites in Menu List that can be used daily according to usage scenarios.
⑦ マイボックス	This is a service for members to access more conveniently to certain shop information and sites through advance registration.
⑧ オプション設定 (Options)	Used to set i-mode Mail and change i-mode password, etc.
⑨ お知らせ&ヘルプ	Includes information from DoCoMo, i-mode operation procedure and rules.
料金&お申込	You can confirm fees and payment, change subscriptions, or apply for services.
ENGLISH	iMenu changes to English mode.

INFORMATION

You may need to pay information fee to access certain sites (i-mode pay sites).

You may need to subscribe to use some services provided by IPs (Information service providers).

You will not be charged for packet communication unless the i-mode Center is accessed, even if the i-mode icon flashes.

The screen such as iMenu appears different for Dual Network Service subscribers.

Other convenient functions

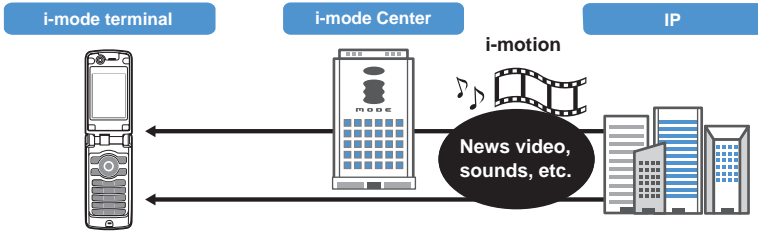
i-channel

This service is provided by DoCoMo or IPs and delivers graphical information such as news and weather information to your i-mode terminal. You can receive information regularly, and read the latest information as it appears on the stand-by display as ticker. You can also view the information in the channel list that is displayed by pressing [ch/チャンネル]. In addition, you can download rich detail information by selecting a channel in the channel list.

i-motion

You can download videos and sounds from sites to your i-mode terminal and play or set them for the stand-by display.

- Downloading i-motion ◀P210
- Playing i-motion ▶P316
- Setting auto play of i-motion ◀P212



Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion)/Chaku-Uta®

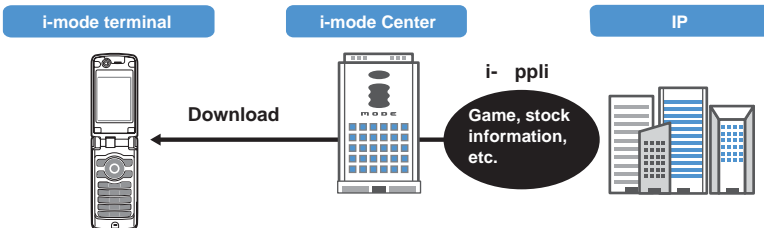
i-motion can be downloaded from i-mode sites to your i-mode terminal and set as ring tone or incoming image. The vocals of your favorite singers can be used as ring tone as well as melodies (some i-motion may not be set for Movie ringtone).

- Setting Movie ringtone ◀P114, P319
- Chaku-Uta is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

i- ppli

You can conveniently use your i-mode terminal by downloading i- ppli from sites. For example, you can download games to play or i- ppli stock software to automatically check stock prices periodically. Furthermore, because map-related i- ppli downloads only necessary data, smooth scrolling can be performed.

- Downloading i- ppli ◀P284
- Starting i- ppli ▶P286
- Automatically starting i- ppli ◀P293



i- ppli stand-by display

On the i- ppli stand-by display, i- ppli can be used as the stand-by display, which also allows directly receiving mail and making phone calls. The function of the stand-by display can be enhanced by setting it to display news and weather forecast update or by using your favorite character to inform you of incoming mail and alarms, etc.

- Setting the i- ppli stand-by display ▶P122

i- ppli DX

i- ppli DX is more convenient and enjoyable i- ppli. In conjunction with the i-mode terminal data (such as mail, call log or phonebook data), i- ppli DX allows you to compose a message on your favorite character screen and to inform you of the caller of incoming call by character's comments. Also, i- ppli DX updates stock price information, game status, or other information in real time in conjunction with mail.

- i- ppli DX ➔P282

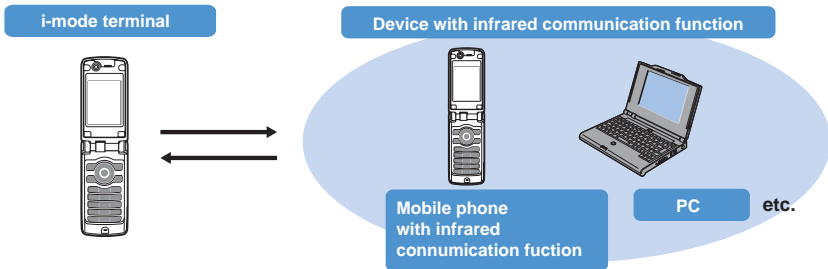
Infrared communication function

Phonebook data, mail, bookmarks, etc. can be exchanged with mobile phones, PCs and other devices that are provided with the infrared communication function.*1

In addition, using infrared communication with i- ppli, you can use your terminal in a wide range of ways in conjunction with other devices provided with the infrared communication function. For example, a mobile phone with this function can be used as a TV remote control or member card, etc.

*1 Some types of data may not be exchanged depending on the other party's device, even if it is provided with the infrared communication function.

- Using infrared communication ➔P345, P300

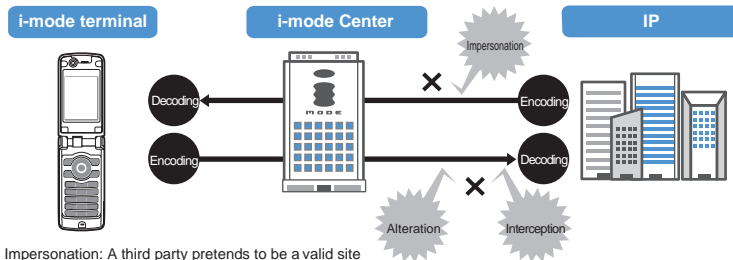


SSL communication

SSL is a safer data communication method that uses certification/encryption technology to protect privacy. On SSL pages, data is encrypted and sent/received to prevent information interception, impersonation or alteration, thus allowing personal information such as credit card numbers and street addresses to be exchanged safely.

There are 2 types of SSL communication: one is to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) using the CA certificate stored in i-mode terminal and the other is to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) using the user certificate downloaded from the FirstPass center. The certificates used to display the sites differ depending on the site. ➔P207

- You cannot send/receive mail or receive Message R/F while being connected to the FirstPass center.
- Using the CA certificate stored in i-mode terminal ➔P207
- Using the user certificate of FirstPass ➔P208



Impersonation: A third party pretends to be a valid site to obtain customer information illegally.

UIM operation restriction function

When the UIM containing user information (phone numbers, part of phonebook data, etc.) is inserted in your i-mode terminal, this function restricts operations of melodies, still images and i-motion downloaded from sites or received by mail. When the terminal is turned on with another UIM or no UIM inserted, playing or displaying of these obtained files will be disabled. ◀P41

- This function does not apply to still images or videos you shot with the camera, or files saved to your i-mode terminal from external memory.
- This function resets the ring tone, stand-by display or other settings, if any, made in your i-mode terminal.

i-melody

You can download your favorite music to your i-mode terminal and use it as ring tone. ◀P195

i-anime

You can download your favorite animation to your i-mode terminal and use it as the stand-by display or incoming image. ◀P194

Message Service

Message Service is a service that automatically delivers desired information (messages) to your i-mode terminal. There are 2 types of Message Service: Message R (request) and Message F (free).

Message Request (Message R)	Information is delivered automatically after subscribing to a site that provides Message Service.
Message Free (Message F)	Messages are delivered free of packet communication fee.

- Receiving Message R/F ◀P201, P239
- If you apply to the i-mode service at the same time as new subscription to FOMA on or after October 1, 2004, the initial Message F (free) setting is 受信する(Receive). Please note that, if you do not like to receive Message F, you have to change the setting to 受信しない!(Not receive) by yourself.
 - If you like to use Message F in cases other than above, you have to make the setting from “オプション設定” of iMenu in advance. The initial setting is 受信しない!.
 - For details, see “i-mode User’s Manual” you received when you subscribed to i-mode.
- Message R/F is stored in the i-mode Center when i-mode terminal is off or outside the service area.
- The maximum number of Message R/Fs and the period they are stored at the i-mode Center are as follows. Message R/F will be deleted after the maximum storage period expires. When the maximum number of messages that can be stored is exceeded, Message R/F is deleted beginning with the chronologically oldest message.

Message type	Maximum number of items	Maximum storage period
Message R	300	72 hours
Message F	300	72 hours

- You can use Check i-mode Message (◀P239) to receive Message R/F stored in the i-mode Center.

トクだねニュース便 (Convenient News)

This service is provided by DoCoMo and delivers information such as news and weather forecasts to your i-mode terminal using Message R (request).

Separate application (pay) is required. After application, the site for this service is automatically registered in My Menu, and you can access the site from My Menu.

- Reading the Message R screen ◀P205

i-mode password

You need an i-mode password to subscribe to pay sites, register and cancel sites in My Menu, or make i-mode Mail settings. By default, the i-mode password is set to “0000”. Be sure to change it to a unique 4-digit number. ◀P187

Be careful never to reveal your i-mode password to others.

Internet connection

You can connect to i-mode compatible websites via the Internet by entering the addresses (URLs).

- Displaying Internet websites ●P188

INFORMATION

Internet websites not compatible with i-mode may not be displayed correctly. i-mode compatible sites refer to websites created using i-mode compatible tags.

Sites may be displayed differently on a PC.

Internet websites with the URLs longer than 512 characters may not be displayed.

Before using i-mode

The contents of Sites (Programs) and Internet websites are usually protected by copyright laws. All or any portion of text, image or other data downloaded to your i-mode terminal from a Site (Program) or Internet website cannot be used or altered except for personal use, and cannot be sold or redistributed in any form without the express permission of the copyright holder.

Data saved/registered in your i-mode terminal (mail, Message R/F, screen memo, i- ppli, i-motion, and bookmark) may be erased due to failure, repair, or other handling of i-mode terminal. It is recommended that you maintain a separate record of the data you saved/registered in your i-mode terminal. We are not responsible for any lost data.



When i-mode terminal is sent for repair etc., the data you downloaded using i-mode, i- ppli or i-motion (except some data) is not transferred to the new mobile terminal in accordance with copyright laws. You cannot display still images/i-motion/melodies downloaded from sites, files attached to sent/received mail, screen memos and Message R/Fs when the terminal is turned on with another UIM or no UIM inserted. When data with the UIM operation restriction enabled is set for the stand-by display or ring tone, the settings return to default if another UIM other than yours or no UIM is inserted. It returns to the previous settings when the UIM that was used during receiving/downloading the data is inserted.

INFORMATION

Data such as mail and bookmarks can be saved to the miniSD memory card.





If you have a PC, data such as mail and bookmarks can be transferred and saved to the PC by using the FOMA D series data link software in the attached CD-ROM and the FOMA USB cable (optional).


Displaying sites

- 1 Press   on the stand-by display and select **ENGLISH**.




Flashes in i-mode communication.

- Press  on the i-mode connecting screen to stop connection.
- Hold down  for over a second during site display to disconnect i-mode.
- Items with numbers such as  and  can be selected by pressing the corresponding numbers (Direct key function). You may not be able to select them on some sites.


- 2 Select  **Menu List**.



- Press  while accessing the page to stop it.

- 3 Select an item to view.


You are connected to a site. You can display the target page by repeating this operation.

- 4 When you finish viewing the site, press  and select **Yes**.




INFORMATION

To return to iMenu during site display, press  and select  **Menu**.

When the site requests your "FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number", a confirmation screen is displayed. When you select **Yes**, your "FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number" is sent. The IP (Information service provider) uses "FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number" that has been sent to identify you for providing the information and determining whether your FOMA terminal supports the site contents provided by the IP (Information service provider). Since your "FOMA terminal/FOMA card (UIM) serial number" is sent to the IP (Information service provider) via the Internet, there is a possibility the information could be intercepted by third parties. However, your information such as FOMA terminal's phone number, your address, age, and sex will never be disclosed to the IP (Information service provider) with this operation.

When the site requests entry of the user name and password, the entry screen is displayed. Enter the user name and password of the site and press .

When you display a site containing an image, the following icons may be displayed instead of the image:

-  : When **Not display** is set for the image in Image & Effect Setting or when FOMA terminal is out of service area while receiving the image
-  : When the image data is invalid or cannot be found
-  : When the image cannot be downloaded for incorrect URL


i-mode requires online connection and cannot be used outside the service area.

Connecting to SSL pages

You can display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) using the same operation as for ordinary sites.


- Some SSL pages may not allow connection unless the date and time is set.
- To connect to a FirstPass compatible site, you need to download a user certificate for the site from the FirstPass center and save it on the green UIM. You cannot connect to the FirstPass center if the blue UIM is inserted.

Connecting to an SSL page


A screen informing SSL session is started is displayed.  appears in the upper-right corner of the screen when the SSL page is displayed.

Displaying certificate during SSL page display

① Press     .

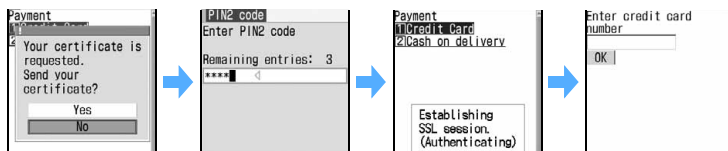
- Certificates 

Displaying an ordinary page from an SSL page

A confirmation screen is displayed. Select *Yes* to display an ordinary page and  disappears from the upper-right corner of the screen.

Connecting to a FirstPass compatible page

The following screens are displayed:




① Select *Yes*.

② Enter the PIN2 code.

The user certificate is sent and the FirstPass compatible page is displayed.

INFORMATION

If site communication safety cannot be confirmed, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to connect. Select *Yes* to connect or *No* to cancel.

Establishment of SSL session requires electronic information called "certificate" for the connected site and FOMA terminal issued by the same certifier. 

Packet communication fee while being connected to FirstPass compatible sites will not be included in the Pake-Houdai service.




Menu 25

Reconnecting to the last page displayed

Last Visited URL

Last Visited URL allows you to quickly reconnect to the page displayed last.

- Some pages may not be displayed. Pages different from the last visited one may be displayed.

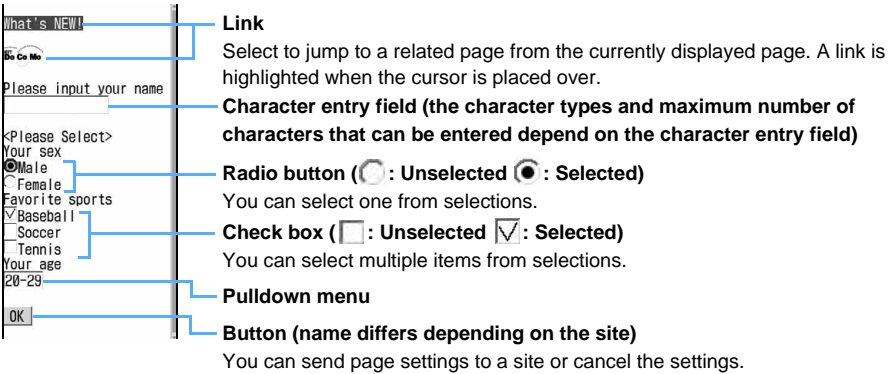
1 Press    on the stand-by display.

- When no last visited URL is recorded, the message informing you that there is no record appears.

2 Press .

Selecting links and items

During i-mode connection, the following operations are available depending on sites:



Displaying links

- 1 Press to place the cursor at an item and press .

 - Links may be set in some images. Place the cursor at an image (surrounded with a frame) and press to display the linked page.
 - Items with numbers such as and can be selected by pressing the corresponding numbers (Direct key function). You may not be able to select them on some sites.

Entering characters

- 1 Press to place the cursor at a character entry field and press .
- 2 Enter characters.
 - The entered i-mode password may be masked with “*”.
 - The content read by Bar Code Reader can be entered by pressing on the character entry screen.

Selecting radio button

- 1 Press to place the cursor at a radio button and press .

Selecting check box

- 1 Press to place the cursor at a check box and press .
 - Selecting returns the box to .

Selecting pull-down menu

- 1 Press to place the cursor at a pull-down menu and press .
- 2 Select a menu item.
 - On some sites, multiple items can be selected by repeating the operation of pressing to place the cursor at a menu item and pressing . Press after selecting items.

Selecting button

- 1 Press to place the cursor at a button (surrounded with a solid frame) and press .

INFORMATION









































The information entered/set using radio buttons, check boxes, pull-down menus, and character entry fields does not replace the contents of registered bookmarks, screen memos, etc.

Flash function

Flash is an animation technology that uses images and sounds, which makes colorful animations and expressive sites be displayed. Images using Flash (Flash movie) can be downloaded to an i-mode terminal and set as the stand-by display or incoming image.



- Some Flash movies use the information of your i-mode terminal. To use the terminal information, set *Use saved data* to *Yes* in Image & Effect Setting. It is set to *Yes* by default. The information to be used by Flash movie is listed below:
 - Battery level
 - Received signal level
 - Time information
 - Ring Volume Setting
 - Select Language
 - Model information

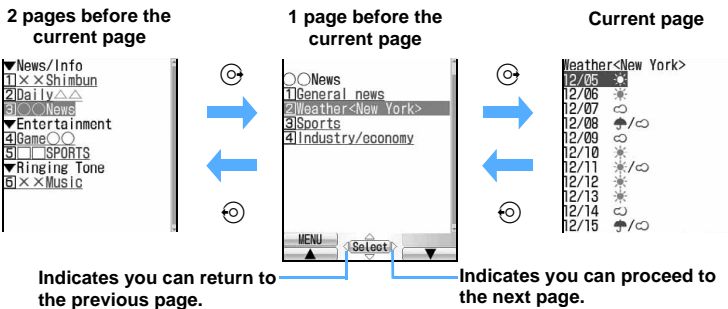
Flash movie

- Flash movie is not displayed when *Not display* is set for the image in Image & Effect Setting.
- On sites that use Flash movie, the operations are the same but the indications may be different.
- When saved as image or screen memo, some Flash movies may appear different from those displayed on sites because part of the image is not saved.
- The melody of Flash movie set for the stand-by display or incoming image is not played.
- Even if Flash movie is displayed, it may not operate correctly. Also, you may not be able to save Flash movie that does not operate correctly.
- If an error occurs while playing Flash movie, the image cannot be saved.
- Even if  is indicated in the guide row, some Flash movies may not be operated.
- To play Flash movie again, press          .
- Some Flash movies may have sound effects. The volume conforms to the ring alert volume for calls. To disable sound effects during site display, press         and set the sound effect setting to **OFF**.
- Some Flash movies may vibrate FOMA terminal during play. Note that even if Vibrator Setting is off, FOMA terminal vibrates.
- Sound effects or the vibrator is activated when you play Flash movie saved in FOMA terminal from Data Box. However, you cannot activate sound effects or the vibrator by selecting an item in the Flash movie displayed.
- If no operation is performed for 30 seconds or longer while playing Flash movie, it is brought to a pause. To replay, press , ,  , , , ,        ,    , or  .
- If the screen is switched to another and redisplayed while playing Flash movie, the play starts from the beginning.

Displaying previous or next pages

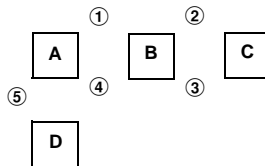
FOMA terminal keeps a record of the last 20 pages displayed in a cache, which allows you to display previous or next pages.

- Cache is a storage space in FOMA terminal that temporarily records the displayed pages. You can display the recorded pages by pressing   without establishing communication. When the cache is full or displaying a page that is set by the site to load the latest page, FOMA terminal starts communication.
- This function is unavailable while being connected to the FirstPass center (P208).



INFORMATION

When you display page A page B page C in this order (①, ②), return to page A (③, ④), and proceed to page D (⑤), the display record of page A page B page C is deleted. You can return to page A from page D but you cannot then return to page B. Records in the cache may be deleted when it is full. Pressing ⏪ may not return to previous pages.



When displaying a page again which is deleted from the record or when displaying a page set to read the latest information, a new page downloaded appears by establishing communication again. However, some pages may establish communication even if the page is recorded. Information such as entered characters or settings is not recorded. When you terminate i-mode, all records in the cache are deleted. The operation may differ when Flash movie is displayed.

Scrolling the screen



When there are additional lines or selectable link items, or is indicated.

- Press ⏴ to scroll the screen. Hold down the button to scroll continuously.
- Press ⏴ or ⏵ to scroll the screen by a page. Hold down the button to scroll the screen continuously by a page.

Reloading data


When sites are not displayed because of connection interruption etc., you may be able to display the sites by reload.

- 1 Press **Menu** **5** **JKL** during site display.

Displaying the URL of current site

- 1 Press **Menu** **9** **WXYZ** **1** **あ** during site display.

INFORMATION

In the list of URL history, bookmark, i-mode shortcut, or screen memo, press .

Using My Menu

My Menu

You can register i-mode sites in My Menu, which allows you to quickly access the sites later.

- Up to 45 sites can be registered.
- You need the i-mode password to register sites. The i-mode password is set to "0000" by default.
- My Menu is carried over as it is when you change the mova service (with i-mode subscription) to the FOMA service. However, some sites are not carried over to My Menu. In this case, you need to register these sites in My Menu again. You can check the sites that can be carried over to My Menu in "お知らせ & ヘルプ" of iMenu. ☎P177
- When you submit an application to a pay site registered in Menu List of iMenu, the site is automatically registered in My Menu.
- Only the sites registered in Menu List of iMenu can be registered in My Menu. However, some sites cannot be registered in My Menu. To register Internet websites, use Bookmark.

Registering sites in My Menu

- 1 Display a site and select **マイメニュー登録** (Register).
 - Since the page structure differs depending on the site, press the applicable number or select the applicable item.
- 2 Select the i-mode password field and enter the i-mode password.
 - The entered i-mode password is masked with " * ".
- 3 Select **決定** (OK).

Displaying sites from My Menu

- 1 Select **1** **My Menu** in iMenu (English).
- 2 Select a site to display.

Changing your current i-mode password into another number

Change i-mode Password

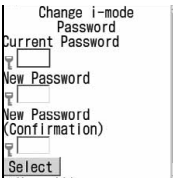
You need your i-mode password to register/delete sites in/from My Menu, subscribe to/cancel Message Service or i-mode pay sites, or make the mail settings. The i-mode password is set to "0000" by default; be sure to change it to another unique number (4 digits). Be careful never to reveal your i-mode password to others.

- The entered i-mode password is masked with " * ".
- Please be notified that, if you forget the i-mode password, you need to bring the identification (driver's license etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.

- 1 Select **4** **Options** in iMenu (English) and select **2** **Change i-mode Password**.

Next

2 Select *Current Password* field and enter the i-mode password.



3 Select *New Password* field and enter a new password.

4 Select *New Password (Confirmation)* field and re-enter the password entered in Step 3.

5 Select *Select*.

- When there is an error or omission in the entered contents, an error screen is displayed. Select *Re-enter* and operate again.

Menu 231

Displaying Internet websites

Internet Connection

- Internet websites not compatible with i-mode may not be displayed correctly.

1 Press C 3 DEF I .@ on the stand-by display.

- From the next time, the last URL you connected to appears.

2 Enter a URL (up to 256 one-byte characters) and press Enter .

- Press I .@ in the alphabet input mode to enter symbols such as “/”, “.” and “-”. In addition, “http://www.”, “.co.jp”, “.ne.jp”, “.com” and “.html” can be entered by pressing X i-mode in the alphabet input mode.

INFORMATION

In the site screen, press Menu and select *Go to location* *Enter URL*.

The available operations on Internet website displays are the same as on i-mode site displays.

A message is displayed when received data exceeds the maximum size for a page. Press C to clear the message and display the received data.

Menu 232

Displaying sites using URL history

URL History

FOMA terminal keeps a record of the last 20 URLs you connected to. You can use URL History to connect to Internet websites.

1 Press C 3 DEF 2 ABC on the stand-by display.

2 Select the URL of Internet website to display.

- When a full URL is not displayed, place the cursor at the URL and press Enter .


Deleting URL history

① Place the cursor at the URL to delete and press Menu 4 GHI I .@ .

- To delete all, press Menu 4 GHI 2 ABC and enter the terminal security code.

② Select *Yes*.

INFORMATION





In the site screen, press  and select **Go to location URL history**.

When the number of recorded URLs exceeds 20, the oldest URL will be overwritten.

Displaying characters correctly

Character Encode

When characters are not displayed correctly on i-mode or Internet web sites, they may be displayed correctly by changing the character encode. Character encode is a generic term for encoding schemes and structure developed for making characters available on computers.

1 While an i-mode or Internet web site is displayed, press    .

- Each press of these keys switches the character encode in the following order: auto switch SJIS EUC JIS UTF8. If you repeat this operation 5 times, the original display reappears.
- When you display an i-mode or Internet web site, auto switch is set.

INFORMATION


Some characters may not be displayed correctly even if the above operation is repeated.

Changing the character encode when characters are displayed correctly may not display the characters correctly.

Registering websites and i-mode sites for quick browsing

Bookmark

If you frequently browse the same pages of sites, you can register them in Bookmark for convenient access later. You can quickly display the pages by only selecting bookmarks.

- Maximum number of bookmarks that can be registered  P39
- You cannot register URLs longer than 256 one-byte characters in Bookmark.
- Some sites may not be registered in Bookmark.



Registering in Bookmark

- Sites are registered in one of 20 bookmark folders.

1 Display the site to register and press   .

2 Select a folder to save the bookmark to.



INFORMATION

In the screen memo list, screen memo display, or URL history list, press  and select **Add bookmark**. You can also perform the same operation after displaying the URL history list by pressing  during site display and selecting **Go to location URL history**.


When the number of bookmarks exceeds the maximum number, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite registered bookmarks. To register, select the bookmark to overwrite.


If the same URL exists, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite. Select **Yes** to overwrite.

Displaying websites or i-mode sites from Bookmark

1 Press   on the stand-by display.

2 Select a folder.

 : No bookmark


 : Bookmark present

3 Select the bookmark to display.



Checking the URL



① Place the cursor at the bookmark to check and press .


INFORMATION

In the site screen, press  and select *Bookmark* *Display*.

Renaming bookmark folders



1 Press   on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the folder to rename and press  .


3 Enter a folder name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) and press .

Renaming bookmark titles

• This operation does not change the URL of registered bookmarks.

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the bookmark to rename and press .


3 Enter a title (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters) and press .

- If you save the bookmark without entering a title, the URL is displayed in the bookmark list.
- When the title or URL is longer than 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters, 19 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters followed by “...” are displayed in the bookmark list.



Connecting to sites using simple key sequence

i-mode Shortcut





When you register bookmarks as i-mode shortcut, you can quickly display i-mode or Internet web sites from the stand-by display.

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.




2 Place the cursor at the bookmark to register and press  .

- To cancel i-mode shortcut, place the cursor at the bookmark to cancel and press  .

3 Select the registration destination.




- The icon number ( - ) corresponds to the dial key ( to ) used to display the site.

INFORMATION


In the bookmark list, the icon changes from  to  -  when registered.

You can display the i-mode shortcut list by pressing   on the stand-by display. To cancel i-mode shortcut, place the cursor at a bookmark, press , and select *Yes*.

Displaying a site using i-mode shortcut key


- Press the dial key ( to ) for an i-mode shortcut number on the stand-by display and press .

Displaying a site from the i-mode shortcut list

- Press   on the stand-by display.
- Select a bookmark.

Deleting bookmarks


- Bookmark folders cannot be deleted.



- Press  on the stand-by display and select a folder.

Deleting all bookmarks






- Press  on the folder list and enter the terminal security code. Go to Step 3.

Deleting all bookmarks in folder

- Place the cursor at a folder, press , and enter the terminal security code. Go to Step 3.

- Place the cursor at the bookmark to delete and press  .

Deleting selected bookmarks

- Press   and select bookmarks.
 - Press  to select or cancel a bookmark and press  to select or cancel all.
- Press .

Deleting all bookmarks in folder

- Press   and enter the terminal security code.

- Select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

If you delete an i-mode shortcut bookmark, the i-mode shortcut registration is canceled.

Moving/copying bookmarks

Bookmarks can be moved to other folders or copied to the miniSD memory card.

- Press  on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the bookmark to move and press .

Moving selected bookmarks

① Press and select bookmarks.

- Press to select or cancel a bookmark and press to select or cancel all.

② Press .

Copying a bookmark to the miniSD memory card

① Press and select *Yes*.

Copying all bookmarks to the miniSD memory card (backup)

① Press .

② Enter the terminal security code and select *Yes*.

3 Select a folder to move the bookmark to.

Sorting bookmarks

Sort

The bookmark list is temporally sorted. All folders are the target of sorting.

- You can select from *By access date*, *By title*, *By URL*, or *By access frequency*.

1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Press and press to .

INFORMATION

Closing the Bookmark display returns the sorting order to *By access date*.

When *By title* is set, if one-byte, two-byte, alphabetic, and kanji characters and URL displays without title are mixed in titles, the result may not be in the order of the Japanese syllabary.

Saving site contents

Screen Memo

Saving screen memos

- Maximum number of screen memos that can be saved
- The maximum size of a screen memo that can be saved is 100 Kbytes including images etc.

1 Display the site to save as a screen memo and press .

- The site title is automatically saved. If a site has no title, the screen memo is saved as *No title*.

INFORMATION

When the memory for screen memos is not enough or the maximum number of screen memos is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite screen memos saved in FOMA terminal.

Follow the instructions on the screen and delete the screen memos in FOMA terminal until an available space required for saving is recovered. Protected screen memos are not overwritten.

Displaying screen memos

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select the screen memo to display.

: Ordinary screen memo

: Protected screen memo

- The available operations are the same as on site displays with a few exceptions. P184

INFORMATION

In the site screen, press and select *Screen memo Display*.

To play Flash movie again, press during screen memo display and select *Display Retry*.

Renaming screen memo titles

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the screen memo to rename and press .

3 Enter a title (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters) and press .

- When you save the screen memo without entering a title, *No title* is displayed in the screen memo list.

INFORMATION

In the screen memo screen, press and select *Rename title*.

Protecting screen memos

- Maximum number of screen memos that can be protected P39

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the screen memo to protect and press .

The screen memo is protected and the icon changes from to .

- To cancel protection, place the cursor at the screen memo to cancel and press .

Protecting selected screen memos

① Press and select screen memos.

- Press to select or cancel a screen memo and press to select or cancel all. You cannot select all screen memos when the maximum number of protected items is exceeded.

② Press .

Canceling protection of selected screen memos

① Press and select screen memos.


- Press to select or cancel a screen memo and press to select or cancel all.

② Press .

Canceling protection of all screen memos



① Press .




INFORMATION

All of the protected screen memos are deleted when Delete All Data is performed. ●P394
In the screen memo screen, press  and select *Protect* or *Release*.




Deleting screen memos



- Protected screen memos cannot be deleted. When you delete all screen memos, protected ones remain undeleted. Cancel protection first and then delete them.

1 Press   on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the screen memo to delete and press   .

Deleting selected screen memos

① Press    and select screen memos.

- Press  to select or cancel a screen memo and press  to select or cancel all.


② Press .

Deleting all screen memos

① Press    and enter the terminal security code.

3 Select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

In the screen memo screen, press  and select *Delete*.



Downloading images from sites and messages

Save Image

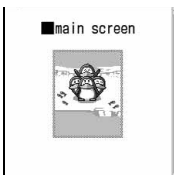
Images or frames can be downloaded and saved from sites, Message R/F or i- ppli. Saved images can be viewed from *Image* (My Picture) or set for the stand-by display.

- Maximum number of images that can be saved ●P39
- The maximum size of an image that can be saved is 100 Kbytes.
- Images in GIF, JPEG or Flash format can be saved.

Example Downloading an image from site



1 Display a site containing an image and press  .

2 Select the image.




- Image is surrounded with a frame.

3 Select each item to set.

- You cannot change file restriction for image files downloaded from sites.
- For an image that is prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal (*File restricted* is displayed), you can change the display name only.
- Display name can contain up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters.
- File name can contain up to 36 characters including one-byte alphanumerics, “.”, “-” and “_”. However, “.” cannot be used as the first character of file name.
- Comment can contain up to 100 one-byte or two-byte characters.
- To use the image as frame or stamp, select an item to set and press  or .

4 Press and select the folder to save the image to.

- Press  to display the menu list for setting images for the stand-by display etc. ●P307

INFORMATION

You can save an image with the same display name and file name as the saved image file.

Some items may not be available for setting depending on the image file.



Some images may not be displayed correctly.

When displaying a site containing an image wider than the display, the image will be reduced.

Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 in GIF format or 1224 x 1632 in JPEG format cannot be saved. Also, some JPEG images may not be saved.

Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 352 x 288 cannot be used as frame. Images with the sizes exceeding 240 x 320 cannot be used as stamp.

When the memory for images is not enough or the maximum number of images is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete images saved in FOMA terminal. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete the images in FOMA terminal until an available space required for saving is recovered.

- Before deletion, an image can be displayed by pressing  on the image list and detail information on the image can be displayed by pressing .

Downloading melodies from sites

i-melody

You can download melodies (compatible with i-melody) from sites and play and save them.

Saved melodies can be played from *Melody* or used as ring tone.

- Maximum number of melodies that can be saved ●P39
- The maximum size of a melody that can be saved is 100 Kbytes.
- Melodies in SMF or MFi format can be saved.

1 Display a site containing a melody and select the melody.

- Press  to stop downloading.

2 Select *Save*.

- To play the melody, select *Play*.
- To cancel saving, select *Back*. When a confirmation screen is displayed, select *No*.

3 Press .

The melody is saved in  *mode* folder of *Melody*. ●P326


- Display name can contain up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters.

INFORMATION

Some melodies may not play correctly.

In Silent Mode, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to play the melody. Select *Yes* to play at the ring volume for calls set in Ring Volume Setting.

When the memory for melodies is not enough or the maximum number of melodies is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete melodies saved in FOMA terminal. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete the melodies in FOMA terminal until an available space required for saving is recovered.

- Before deletion, you can play a melody by pressing  on the melody list and view detail information on the melody by pressing .

Useful functions of i-mode

Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To

When phone numbers, mail addresses, or URLs are displayed on a screen (site, screen memo, Message R/F, etc.), select them to make voice calls (Phone To) or video-phone calls (AV Phone To), compose i-mode Mail (Mail To), or connect to sites (Web To).

- Some functions may not be available on certain sites.


1 Display a site and select a phone number, mail address, or URL.

- Phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs can be selected only when the cursor can be placed over.

Phone To (AV Phone To)

The screen for setting Customized Call is displayed.

① **Select each item for Customized Call and set.**

② **Press  and select *Yes*.**

- Phone numbers of up to 26 digits (or 27 digits for the number beginning with "+") can be selected.

Mail To

The mail composition screen with the selected mail address set as the receiver is displayed.

① **Compose and send i-mode Mail.**

- SMS cannot be composed.
- When multiple addresses are listed with no space in between, the Mail To function may not be available.
- Mail addresses of up to 50 characters can be selected.

Web To

You are connected to the selected site.



- URLs of up to about 2,000 characters can be selected.

Copying the URL

Copy the URL of the site or screen memo currently displayed. Copied text can be pasted in entry fields in the mail composition screen, phonebook registration screen, etc.

- Copied text is recorded until FOMA terminal is turned off. You can paste it in other locations any number of times.
- Only one item can be saved. When you copy a new item, it overwrites the previously copied text.

Example Copying the URL of current site

1 Display the URL of a site and press  .

2 Select the start position of the copying range and select the end position.

- Press before specifying the start position to select all the text.
- Press to specify the start position again.
- Press or after specifying the start position to move the cursor to beginning or end of the text.

3 Display a character entry screen and paste the copied text.

INFORMATION

In the list of URL history, i-mode shortcut, or screen memo, press and select *Copy URL*. In the bookmark list, press and select *Enter URL/Copy URL* *Copy URL*. When you operate from any of these screens, the whole URL is copied.

To paste the URL of current site to mail, press during site display and select *Compose message*. The mail composition screen is displayed with the URL of the site pasted in the message text.

Registering phone numbers and mail addresses in phonebook

Add to Phonebook

When phone numbers or mail addresses are displayed on a screen (site, screen memo, Message R/F, etc.), you can register them in the phonebook. You can register a new entry or add data to an existing entry.

- You may be able to register the data other than displayed items on certain sites.
- The registered data may be changed when you update an existing entry. Confirm the data in the phonebook edit screen.

Example Registering a phone number or mail address displayed on site

1 Display a site containing a phone number or mail address.

- You can register only highlighted phone numbers or mail addresses.

2 Place the cursor at the phone number or mail address and press to register a new entry or to add to an existing entry.

3 Press to register in the FOMA terminal phonebook or to register in the UIM phonebook.

4 Enter the phonebook data.

New entry

The selected phone number or mail address is entered.

① Set the name etc. and save the entry.

- Registering entries in the phonebook ➡ P95, P99

Existing entry

① Select the phonebook entry to update.

② Confirm the data and save the entry.

- Registering entries in the phonebook ➡ P95, P99

INFORMATION

In the screen memo screen, press and select *Phonebook* *Add to phonebook* or *Update phonebook*, and in the Message R/F view screen, press and select *Record* *Add to phonebook* or *Update phonebook*.

To use the phonebook when Privacy Mode is active (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*), entry of the terminal security code is required.

Registering URLs in phonebook

Add URLs to the phonebook from the bookmark list or screen memo list. You can register a new entry or add data to an existing entry.

- The registered data may be changed when you update an existing entry. Confirm the data in the phonebook edit screen.

Example Registering a URL from the bookmark list

- 1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.
- 2 Place the cursor at a bookmark and press to register a new entry or to add to an existing entry.
- 3 Enter the phonebook data.

New entry

- ① Set the name etc. and save the entry.

- To check the URL, display *Other* screen by pressing .
- Registering entries in the phonebook P95

Existing entry

- ① Select the phonebook entry to update.

- ② Confirm the data and save the entry.

- To check the URL, display *Other* screen by pressing .
- Registering entries in the phonebook P95

INFORMATION

In the screen memo list, press and select *Phonebook Add to phonebook* or *Update phonebook*.

When displayed from a site screen, the URL cannot be saved.

To use the phonebook when Privacy Mode is active (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*), entry of the terminal security code is required.

Making i-mode settings

i-mode Setting

Menu 295

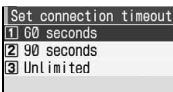
Setting the connection time out

Connection Timeout Setting

Set the timeout for connection to the i-mode Center. If a connection is not established correctly, it is automatically interrupted after the set period of time and you do not need to perform any key operation.

Default 60 seconds

- 1 Press on the stand-by display.
- 2 Press to .



INFORMATION

Even if you set the connection timeout to *Unlimited*, a connection with the i-mode Center may be interrupted due to poor signal conditions, etc.

Menu 296

Changing the i-mode host

ISP Connection Communication

You do not have to change the settings when using DoCoMo i-mode service.

Default  mode(FOMA Card)










About ISP connection communication

You can connect to various providers (ISP) by changing the host of i-mode terminal of DoCoMo. Packet communication fee is charged for the ISP connection communication.

- Please note that packet communication fee for connection to the ISP will not be included in the Pake-Houdai service.
- You do not need to additionally subscribe to DoCoMo.




About provider subscription

- You need to separately subscribe to a provider to use the ISP connection communication. Contact the provider for details on services (site, Internet connection, mail function, etc.) and subscription.
- Information fee may be charged for some services, but DoCoMo will never charge you for it.
- Your phone number may be notified to the provider for some sites you visit.
- Up to 10 hosts can be registered.
- You cannot make or change the host settings during communication.

- 1 Press    on the stand-by display.
- 2 Place the cursor at the user host to edit, press , and enter the terminal security code.
Restoring settings for using i-mode
 - ① Select  mode (FOMA Card) and go to Step 5.
Changing to the previously set host
 - ① Select the host and go to Step 5.
- 3 Select each item to set and press .
 - Host name can contain up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters.
 - Access point can contain up to 99 one-byte alphanumeric characters.
 - Host address and host address 2 can contain up to 30 one-byte alphanumeric characters. Host address 2 is the host of i-channel. 
 - You can delete all contents entered by pressing .
- 4 Select the edited host.
- 5 Press .

You can set image display, lighting and sound effects (when playing Flash movie) on a site, screen memo, Message R/F, etc.

Default Image: Display Animation: Display Use saved data: Yes Set lighting: Always on
Sound effect setting: ON


1 Press    on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.



- Image** : Specifies whether to display images.
- When *Not display* is set, *Animation* and *Use saved data* cannot be set.
- Animation** : Specifies whether to display animation.
- Use saved data** : Specifies whether to use the data saved in FOMA terminal for displaying Flash movie.
- Set lighting** : Sets how the display is illuminated.
- When *Terminal settings* is set, Display Light Setting (P128) applies.
 - When *Always on* is set, the display lights up while site screens, etc. are displayed.
- Sound effect setting** : Specifies whether to play Flash sounds.

3 Press .

INFORMATION

In the site screen, press  and select *Display Set image& effect*.

Images may not be displayed correctly even when you set *Display* for *Image*.

When *Not display* is set for *Image*, no image or Flash movie is displayed.  ( for Message R/F) is indicated in the position of the image.

When *Not display* is set for *Image*, the images attached to i-mode Mail using the Web To function are not displayed or saved.

When *Not display* is set for *Animation*, the first image of animation is displayed. However, Flash movie plays.

For Message R/F, the setting for *Image* applies to images inserted in the message. This setting does not apply to images attached as attachment. The setting for *Sound effect setting* does not have effect on Message R/F, either.


When *Yes* is set for *Use saved data*, information such as the battery level, received signal level, time, Ring Volume Setting, Select Language, and terminal model may be sent to IPs (Information service providers) via the Internet, which may give the information to third parties.


Setting colors on displayed sites

Display Color Setting

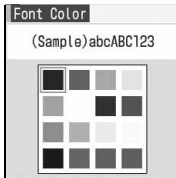
Default Font/BG color: Default Link color: Default

1 Press    on the stand-by display.

2 Select **Font/BG color** field and press .

- To choose not to specify the font/background color, press  and go to Step 5.
- Setting **Default** disables **Font color** and **Background color** settings.

3 Select **Font color** field and select a color.



- Sample is displayed in the selected color.
- The default setting for the font color is black. Select from 16 colors.

4 Select **Background color** field and select a color.

- The default setting for the background color is white. Select from 16 colors.

5 Follow Step 2 to 4 to set the link color.

- The default setting for the link color is blue for **Non-visited links**, red for **Visited link**, and white for **Cursor Over Item**.
- Setting **Default** disables **Non-visited links**, **Visited link**, and **Cursor Over Item** settings.

6 Press .

INFORMATION


The link color (for **Visited link**) is effective when the linked page is recorded. When the record is deleted, the link color (for **Non-visited links**) applies.

Depending on the set color, characters may become difficult or impossible to see on some sites. In that case, change the color setting.

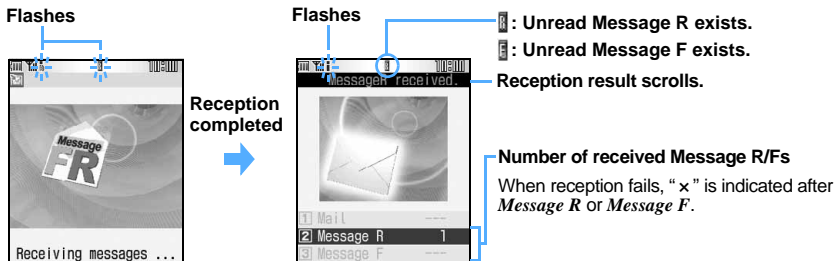
When Message R/F is received

Receive Message R/F

When Message R/F is received, you are informed by the screen display, ring alert, vibrator, and/or call indicator. The received Message R/F is saved in FOMA terminal.

- Maximum number of Message R/Fs that can be saved  P39

1 Receive a Message R/F.



Ⓜ and Ⓜ or Ⓜ flash and **Receiving messages...** is displayed.

The Message R/F ring alert sounds, the call indicator lights/flashes, and the reception result screen is displayed.

- Press **⏪** to stop the ring alert.
- Press **⏹** on the receiving screen to stop reception.
- When FOMA terminal is closed, the reception status appears on the sub-display.
- If you do not press any key for about 15 seconds after the reception result screen is displayed or until the ring alert stops, the screen displayed prior to reception automatically reappears. When Auto Display is set, the contents of received Message R/F are displayed before the display returns to the previously displayed screen.
- To return to the previous screen immediately, press **⏮/⏭**.

INFORMATION

The receiving screen or reception result screen may not be displayed depending on Display Priority. Incoming Message R/F is stored in the i-mode Center in the following cases. To retrieve the stored Message R/F, perform Check i-mode Message.

- When the power is off
- During a video-phone call
- In Self Mode
- When reception fails
- While being out of service area
- While receiving SMS
- During infrared communication
- While connecting to the FirstPass center
- When the storage is filled with unread Message R/F and protected Message R/F

When the incoming mail/message is set not to be displayed in Receive Display, the reception result is not scrolled.

When the indicator light is set to *ON* in Alert Lighting Setting, the call indicator flashes while unread Message R/F exists.

When FOMA terminal receives Message R/F, the Message R/F in the i-mode Center is deleted.

When there is not enough space available for Message R/F or the maximum number of Message R/Fs is exceeded, the oldest Message R/F is overwritten. However, unread Message R/F and protected Message R/F are not overwritten. Be sure to protect Message R/F you want to keep.

- If the message cannot be overwritten because storage is filled with unread Message R/F and protected Message R/F, Message R/F reception is stopped. Ⓜ (red) or Ⓜ (red) is indicated on the screen. ⓂP29

If there are unreceived Message R/Fs in the i-mode Center, Ⓜ, Ⓜ, or Ⓜ (ⓂP29) is indicated. However, the icon may not be displayed even when there are Message R/Fs in the i-mode Center. When the maximum number of Message R/Fs that can be stored in the i-mode Center is reached, the icon changes to Ⓜ, Ⓜ, or Ⓜ.

The number of messages stored in the i-mode Center ⓂP180

To retry receiving Message R/F that failed to be received in the process, perform Check i-mode Message for Message R/F. When the maximum number of Message R/Fs is exceeded, however, display unread Message R/F, delete unnecessary Message R/F or cancel protection before retrieval.

Displaying newly-received Message R/F

1 Press **2** か
ABC or **3** き
DEF on the reception result screen.



- The received Message R is saved in **Message R** and the received Message F is saved in **Message F**.

2 Select a Message R/F.

- When a melody is attached, it plays automatically. Auto play can be turned off. ◀P264
- Reading the Message R/F screen ◀P205

Menu 2731

Displaying Message R/F automatically

Auto Display

Message R/F contents can be displayed automatically upon reception.

You can set which message takes precedence over others when both Message R and Message F are received.

Default MessageR preferred

Example Displaying only Message R

1 Press **7** 7
P
Q,R,S **3** き
DEF **1** あ
./,0 on the stand-by display.

2 Press **1** あ
./,0.

- To display only Message F, press **2** か
ABC.
- To display Message R first, press **3** き
DEF.
- To display Message F first, press **4** た
GHI.
- To cancel auto display, press **5** な
JKL.

INFORMATION

When this function is set, the contents of received Message R/F are automatically displayed when the Message R/F reception result screen returns to the screen that was displayed prior to reception.

The contents of Message R/F are displayed for about 15 seconds. If you do not press any key during auto display, the Message R/F is saved as unread.

Auto display is available only from the stand-by display. When you display a mail or Message R/F from the reception result screen or when you receive a Message R/F using Check i-mode Message, auto display is not performed.

During Multitask, auto display is unavailable.

Menu 2734

Setting operations for incoming Message R/F

Incoming Msg. Alert

Default Select ring alert: Melody/ パターン 1(Pattern 1) Incoming msg. lighting: ON/Pattern 9
Set vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10

1 Press **7** 7
P
Q,R,S **3** き
DEF **4** た
GHI on the stand-by display.

2 Press **1** あ
./,0 for Message R or **2** か
ABC for Message F.

3 Select each item to set.

Select ring alert : Select *Melody* or *movie ringtone* and then select a melody or video/i-motion. To disable the ring alert, select *OFF*.

- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion ◀P114

Incoming msg. lighting

: Sets the lighting pattern and lighting color of the call indicator.

- When the lighting pattern is set to *Sync melody* or *OFF*, the lighting color cannot be set. When *Sync melody* is set, the lighting color and lighting/flashing pattern will change in synchronization with the melody.

Set vibrate alert : Sets the operation of vibrator.

Ring time (sec) : Sets the duration of ring alert (1 to 30 seconds).

4 Press .

INFORMATION



Even if you set *Sync melody* for *Incoming msg. lighting* or *Set vibrate alert*, synchronization may not occur depending on the melody.

Incoming Msg. Alert and Sound Setting are interlocked. When the ring alert is changed in Incoming Msg. Alert, Sound Setting is changed similarly.

Menu 271 / Menu 272






Displaying Message R/F in FOMA terminal

Message R/Message F

- If unread Message R/F exists,  or  is displayed on the stand-by display. When FOMA terminal is closed, **R** or **F** appears on the sub-display.


Example Displaying a Message R

1 Press (7 | 1 on the stand-by display.

- To display Message F, press  (7    | 2 .

2 Select the Message R to display.

INFORMATION

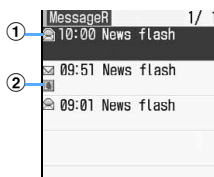
When *Auto play* is set in Message Attachment, displaying Message R/F with a melody attached plays the melody automatically at the ring volume for calls set in Ring Volume Setting. Press  to stop playback. When an image is inserted in the message, the image is displayed.

- The image can be downloaded and saved in FOMA terminal. The operation procedure is the same as for saving images from sites.
- If you could not receive the image, you can try again. ◀P205
- If you could not receive the image, an icon is displayed. The icon is the same as when you cannot display images on a site. ◀P182
- You cannot delete the image in the message.

Reading the Message R/F list/view screen

- Reading Message F is the same as that of Message R.

Reading the Message R/F list screen



Page number/total page count is displayed at the top of the Message R/F list screen. Reception date/time and subject are displayed in the message list field.

- ① : Unread : Read : Protected
- ② : Image attached : Image + melody attached
- : Melody attached : Attachment error

- In the reception date/time column, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.

Reading the Message R/F view screen



Status icon, attachment icon, and Message R/F number are displayed at the top of the Message R/F view screen.

- : Reception date and time : Subject

- You can display the previous/next Message R/F by pressing or .

INFORMATION

- When a file is attached, its icon, file name, file size, etc. are displayed on the Message R/F view screen.
- Handling of attachments is the same as for i-mode Mail.

Type	Icon	
Image (P241)	: Can be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal	: Image data error
	: Cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal	
Melody (P244)	: Can be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal	: Melody data error
	: Cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal	

You can select phone numbers or mail addresses on the Message R/F view screen to register in the phonebook. In addition, you can select URLs to register in Bookmark. P197, P189

You can make calls, send i-mode Mail, or display sites using the phone numbers, mail addresses, or URLs on the Message R/F view screen. P196

Reloading images in Message R/F

Reload

Unreceived images in the Message R/F text can be reloaded.

- When *Not display* is set for the image in Image & Effect Setting, images cannot be received by reload.
- Some images may not be displayed even if reload is attempted.

1 Display the Message R/F list.

2 Select a Message R/F.

- indicates unreceived image data.

3 Press .

The image is loaded.

- Maximum number of Message R/Fs that can be protected ●P39
- Unread Message R/F cannot be protected.

1 Display the Message R/F list.

2 Place the cursor at the Message R/F to protect and press .

The Message R/F is protected and the icon changes from to .

- To cancel protection, place the cursor at the Message R/F to cancel and press .

Protecting selected messages

① Press and select messages.

- Press to select or cancel a message and press to select or cancel all. Selecting all is not possible when the number of unprotected Message R/Fs being saved exceeds the maximum number of protected items.

② Press .

Canceling protection of selected messages

① Press and select messages.

- Press to select or cancel a message and press to select or cancel all.

② Press .

Canceling protection of all messages

① Press .

INFORMATION

All of the protected Message R/Fs are deleted when Delete All Data is performed.

In the Message R/F view screen, press and select *Protect* or *Release*.

Deleting Message R/F

Delete Message

- Protected Message R/F cannot be deleted. When you delete all Message R/Fs, protected messages remain undeleted. Cancel protection first and then delete them.

1 Display the Message R/F list.

2 Place the cursor at the Message R/F to delete and press .

Deleting only read messages

① Press .

Deleting selected messages

① Press and select messages.

- Press to select or cancel a message and press to select or cancel all.


② Press .

Deleting all messages

① Press and enter the terminal security code.

3 Select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

In the Message R/F view screen, press  and select *Delete*.

Selecting the type of Message R/F to display

Display by Type

- You can select from *Display all*, *Display unread only*, *Display read only*, or *Display protected*.

1 Display the Message R/F list.

2 Press  .

3 Press  to .

INFORMATION

Closing the Message R/F list returns the display type to *Display all*.

Protected Message R/F is not displayed when you select *Display read only*.

Operating certificates

Perform the operation of certificates required for the SSL communication.

Menu 297

Displaying certificates and setting certificate validity

Certificate Setting

 CA Certificate1 to 9 

Displaying a certificate

- User certificate is displayed after it has been downloaded.
- When the blue UIM is inserted in FOMA terminal, *DoCoMo Cert* or *User certificate* is not displayed.

1 Press    on the stand-by display.

2 Select the certificate to display from the list.

INFORMATION

CA certificate	... A certificate issued by the certifier. It is stored in FOMA terminal by default.
DoCoMo certificate	... A certificate required for connecting to the FirstPass center and FirstPass compatible sites, and saved on the green UIM in advance.
User certificate	... A certificate required for connecting to FirstPass compatible sites. You request the FirstPass center to issue the certificate and download. The downloaded certificate will be saved on the green UIM.

Certificate contents displayed

User

- CN= ... (Common Name) Server name, administrator name, or discrimination number
- O= ... (Organization) Company name etc.
- C= ... (Country) Country name

Issued by






- CN= ... (Common Name) Server name, administrator name, or discrimination number
- OU= ... (Organization Unit) Departments or other positions in the company
- O= ... (Organization) Company name etc.

Expiration date

Serial number

When a certificate has no information on the user, issuer and/or expiration date, only the item names are displayed.

Setting certificate validity

- 1 Press    on the stand-by display.
- 2 Place the cursor at the certificate to set and press .
 - Each press switches validity/invalidity of the certificate.
- 3 Press .
 - The checked certificate is set as valid.





Menu 298

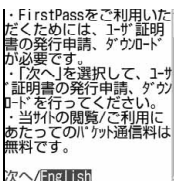
Setting FirstPass

Certificate Download

Connect to the FirstPass center to request and download user certificates.

- Unavailable with the blue UIM.
- Set the date and time before connecting to the FirstPass center.
- The screens and operations displayed by the FirstPass center are subject to change.
- Mail cannot be sent/received and Message R/F cannot be received while being connected to the FirstPass center.

- 1 Press    on the stand-by display.
- 2 Select *English* and select  *Request your certificate*.





・FirstPassをご利用いただくためには、ユーザ証明書の発行申請、ダウンロードが必要で、
・「次へ」を選択して、ユーザ証明書の発行申請、ダウンロードを行ってください。
・当サイトの閲覧/ご利用にあたってのバケット通信料は無料です。
次へ/English



FirstPass
1 Request your certificate
2 Download your certificate
3 Other settings
4 The usage regulation (Japanese only)

Invalidating the issued certificate

- ① Select *English* and select  *Other settings*.
- ② Select  *Revoke your certificate* and select *Yes*.
- ③ Enter the PIN2 code and select *Continue*.
- ④ Select *Continue*.
- ⑤ Select *Continue*.

- 3 Select *Continue*.

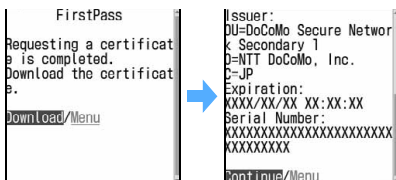


FirstPass
You have requested a certificate.
Refer to the usage regulation for more details.
Continue/Menu

4 Enter the PIN2 code.

- If the PIN2 code is not entered within 60 seconds, the request is canceled.

5 Select *Download* and select *Continue*.



- The downloaded user certificate is added to the certificate list. P207

INFORMATION

Packet communication fee is not charged for connection to the FirstPass center.

The user certificate certifies that you have subscribed to the FOMA service. Downloaded user certificate is saved on the green UIM and it can be used in FirstPass compatible sites.

If you install FirstPass PC software in the attached CD-ROM to your PC, you can connect FOMA terminal to the PC and perform communication using FirstPass. See "FirstPassManual" in the attached CD-ROM for details. To view "FirstPassManual" (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later is recommended) is required. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, you can download the latest version from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website (communication fee is required separately for downloading). See the Adobe Systems Incorporated website for details.

Using FirstPass

FirstPass is DoCoMo's electronic authentication service. Using FirstPass allows client authentication, in which a site and the FOMA terminal exchange and verify each other's certificate for authenticating each other.

FirstPass can be used for Internet communication using FOMA terminal and for Internet communication using the FOMA terminal that is connected to a PC. To use FirstPass with a PC, FirstPass PC software in the attached CD-ROM is needed.

When requesting a user certificate, be sure to read "FirstPass usage regulation" displayed on the screen and accept the terms and conditions.

Use of a user certificate requires entry of the PIN2 code.

All operations made after the entry of the PIN2 code are regarded as operations you made. Use abundance of caution not to let the UIM or PIN2 code used by any third party.

If the UIM is lost or stolen, you can have the user certificate nullified at a DoCoMo Shop.

In no circumstances shall DoCoMo have any obligation or held responsible for sites and information provided by FirstPass compatible sites. Any issue that arises must be settled between you and the FirstPass compatible site concerned.

Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier provides any guarantee for security etc. in use of FirstPass or SSL. Use the services on your own judgment and responsibility.







Changing the certificate host

Certificate Host

If you use services other than FirstPass, set the connection destination. If you change this setting, you cannot connect to the FirstPass center.

Usually, you do not need to change this setting.

Default DoCoMo

- 1 Press    on the stand-by display.
- 2 Select **HOST** field and press .
 - To restore settings for connecting to FirstPass, press  and go to Step 5.
- 3 Select **User host** field and enter the connection destination (up to 99 one-byte alphanumeric characters).
- 4 Select **User host URL** field and enter the URL (up to 100 one-byte alphanumeric characters).
- 5 Press .

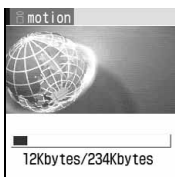
i-motion

Images and sounds can be downloaded from i-mode or Internet web site and played/stored. Images or sounds saved can be played as i-motion or can be set for Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion). The vocals of singers can be used for a ring alert as well as melodies. (Some i-motion may not be set for Movie ringtone.)

- Some types of i-motion may not be played or stored. You cannot change or select the data type when downloading.

Downloading i-motion from sites

- 1 Display the site containing i-motion and select the i-motion.



The message indicating the completion appears when downloading i-motion is finished.

- When streaming type i-motion that can be played while downloading but cannot be stored or i-motion exceeding 500 Kbytes in file size is selected, a message appears indicating that it cannot be played and i-motion is not played or stored.

i-motion replayed while the data is being downloaded



Amount of received data/total data

i-motion is replayed while the data is being downloaded. After finishing the replay, the operation is the same as the i-motion replayed after downloading data.

- During playback, the following operations are enabled:
 - ⏸ : Pause/replay
 - 🔊/🔇 : Adjust volume
 - ⏹ : Stop (Press ⏸ to play back the i-motion from the beginning.)
 - ☰ : Display detail information
- Even if you pause or stop playing, the data reception continues.
- When the operation is interrupted, a confirmation screen is displayed. Select **Yes** to interrupt.
- When **Auto replay setting** in i-motion Setting is set to **Auto Play OFF**, i-motion is not replayed automatically.

i-motion replayed after downloading data



i-motion is replayed automatically when downloading is completed.

- During playback, the following operations are enabled:
 - ⏸ : Pause/replay
 - 🔊/🔇 : Adjust volume
 - ⏩ : Play at fast speed
 - ⏹ : Stop (The message is displayed indicating the completion of downloading.)
 - ☰ : Display detail information
- When **Auto replay setting** in i-motion Setting is set to **Auto Play OFF**, i-motion is not replayed automatically.

2 Select **Save**.

- i-motion that cannot be stored is not saved.
- To replay i-motion again, select **Play**.
- To display detail information of i-motion, select **File property**.
- To cancel saving, select **Back**. When a confirmation screen appears, select **No**.

3 Enter a display name (up to 36 one- or two-byte characters) and press ⏹.

The downloaded i-motion is saved in **mode** folder of **i-motion**.

- The i-motion can be set as the stand-by display, ring alert or incoming image by pressing ☰.
- ➡P319

When a link is set within ticker stream of downloaded i-motion

If a link such as a phone number (Phone To, AV Phone To), a mail address (Mail To), or a site (Web To) is set in a ticker, a confirmation screen asking whether to connect to the linked item is displayed after playback is finished or interrupted. Select **Yes** to connect to the linked item.

- When the link type is Phone To (AV Phone To), pressing ⏹ allows you to add phone numbers to the phonebook. Selecting **Add to phonebook** allows you to add mail addresses to the phonebook when the link type is Mail To.
- When i-motion is not saved, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save i-motion before connecting to the linked screen.
- When there are multiple link items, only one will be effective. The item which is to become effective depends on i-motion data.

Setting as the stand-by display

① Press **Menu** **1** **あ** **お** and select **YES**.

- For video/i-motion that can be enlarged, same size or large size can be set.
- When the i-mode/i-motion stand-by display has been set, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to cancel it. When **YES** is selected, the i-mode/i-motion stand-by display is canceled and the selected video/i-motion is set as the stand-by display.

Setting as Movie ringtone

① Press **Menu** **2** **か** **ABC** and press **1** **あ** **お** to **6** **は** **MNC**.

Setting as memory ring alert (call, mail)

① Press **Menu** **2** **か** **ABC** and press **7** **ぱ** **SRS** or **8** **た** **TUV**.

② Select phonebook data to set.

③ Confirm the contents and press **☑**.

- When a ring alert has been set, it will be replaced by the selected video/i-motion.
- Entering phonebook No. ➡ Step 3 of “Editing saved phonebook entries” in P106

Setting as incoming image (voice call, video-phone call)

① Press **Menu** **3** **せ** **DEF** and press **1** **あ** **お** or **2** **か** **ABC**.

- When an incoming image has been set, it will be replaced by the selected video/i-motion.
- Restrictions for setting video/i-motion ➡ P319

INFORMATION

i-motion in ASF format cannot be downloaded and played. Only the i-motion in MP4 (Mobile MP4) format can be downloaded and played.

The play restrictions such as number of replayable times or expiration of playback may be set for i-motion files.

When i-motion is replayed while the data is being downloaded, replay may be temporarily stopped in wait for data reception. The replay is automatically resumed when data reception is restarted.

When i-motion is replayed while the data is being downloaded, i-motion may become unable to play and it may stop or be blurred depending on radio wave conditions. In such a case, the i-motion can be replayed after the completion of downloading if the data is normally received. However, some i-motion files may allow reception of data but may not be replayed correctly.

Even for the type of i-motion which is replayed while the data is being downloaded, it may not be played during downloading depending on the status of sites.

When i-motion data is improper, reception of i-motion may be canceled.

When you close FOMA terminal while i-motion plays, the play stops but downloading continues.

When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, follow the instructions on the screen and delete video/i-motion saved in FOMA terminal until an available capacity required for saving the item is recovered.

Setting auto play of i-motion

Default | Auto Play ON

1 Press **☉** **9** **わ** **XYZ** **4** **た** **GHI** on the stand-by display.

2 Select **Auto replay setting** field and press **1** **あ** **お** or **2** **か** **ABC**.

- Even when **Auto Play OFF** is set, i-motion can be played by selecting **Play** after downloading i-motion.

3 Press **☑**.

INFORMATION

In the site screen, press **Menu** and select **Display i-motion settings**.

Mail

FOMA terminal mail function	214
Displaying Mail menu	Mail Menu 220
Composing i-mode Mail/Deco-mail	
Composing and sending i-mode Mail	Compose Message 221
Composing and sending Deco-mail	Deco-mail 223
Attaching files	Attachment 229
Using mail templates	232
Saving i-mode Mail for sending later	Save Mail 234
Composing mail quickly	Quick Mail 235
Receiving and handling i-mode Mail	
Receiving i-mode Mail	Mail Auto Receive 236
Selecting i-mode Mail to receive	Receive Option 238
Checking for mail	Check i-mode Message 239
Replying to received i-mode Mail	Reply to Mail 239
Forwarding received i-mode Mail	Forward Mail 240
Displaying and saving attached still images	Display/Save Image 241
Playing and saving i-motion from i-motion Mail	243
Playing and saving attached melodies	Play/Save Melody 244
Deleting attachments	Delete Attachment 246
Using the mail box	
Displaying mail in Inbox/Outbox	Inbox/Outbox 246
Useful functions of mail	256
Setting mail	
Setting mail functions of FOMA terminal	Mail Setting 258
Using chat mail	
Composing and sending chat mail	Chat Mail 267
Using SMS (Short Message Service)	
Composing and sending SMS	Compose SMS 273
When SMS is received	Receive SMS 274
Checking for SMS	Check SMS 276
Making SMS settings	SMS Setting 276
Saving SMS to the UIM	Save SMS to UIM 277

FOMA terminal mail function

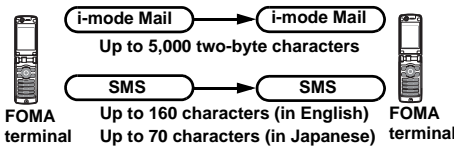
FOMA terminal provides 2 mail functions: i-mode Mail and SMS.

- To use i-mode Mail, an i-mode subscription is required.
- You can use SMS without an i-mode subscription.

Sending and receiving mail

FOMA terminal FOMA terminal

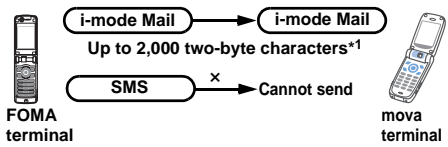
You can use both i-mode Mail and SMS.



FOMA terminal mova terminal

The i-mode Mail function is used for message transmission from FOMA terminal to mova terminal.

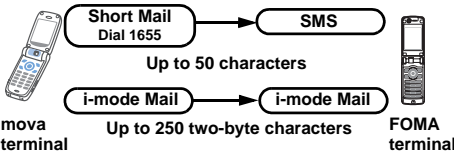
- SMS cannot be sent from FOMA terminal to mova terminal.



*1 The limit differs according to the settings of mova terminal.

mova terminal FOMA terminal

FOMA terminal can receive i-mode Mail and Short Mail sent from mova terminal. Short Mail is received as SMS.



- Short Mail Service allows the exchange of text messages between DoCoMo mobile phones.
- Short Mail cannot be sent from FOMA terminal. Even when you dial 1655, Short Mail cannot be sent.
- FOMA terminal receives Short Mail sent from mova terminal as SMS.

i-mode Mail

i-mode subscribers can send and receive mail to FOMA and from other i-mode terminals (including mova) or via Internet e-mail.

The mail address for i-mode subscribers is constructed as follows:

When you newly subscribe to i-mode

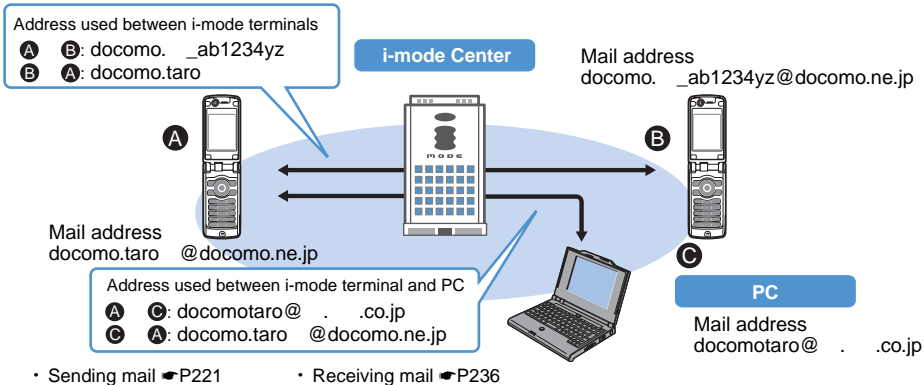
The part of the address preceding the @ symbol is a combination of random alphanumeric characters. Be sure to check your mail address after subscribing to i-mode.

Example: abc1234-789xyz@docomo.ne.jp

- How to check your mail address (See "i-mode User's Manual" you received when you subscribed to i-mode for details.)

iMenu ENGLISH 4]Options 1]Mail Settings Confirm Mail Address

- For mail exchange between i-mode terminals (including mova), mail can be sent also with the part preceding the @ symbol in the address.
- For receiving e-mail from a PC, the entire address including @docomo.ne.jp is used.



Receiving selected mail

You can check the subject of i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center and select the mail to receive or delete without receiving it. ▶P238

Setting mail

The following settings can be made for mail:

Setting procedure

iMenu ENGLISH [4]Options [1]Mail Settings 【Each settings below】

- For details, see “i-mode User’s Manual” you received when you subscribed to i-mode.

Changing the mail address [Change Mail Address]

You can change the part preceding the @ symbol to another address like “docomo._ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp”.

Registering a secret code [Mail Address (Other Settings) Register a Secret Code]

When you use the phone number address, a 4-digit secret code can be registered in addition to the mail address. Since mail with no secret code specified is not received, you can avoid receiving unnecessary mail.

Resetting the mail address [Mail Address (Other Settings) Reset Mail Address]

You can set your mail address to “mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp”.

Checking mail address [Confirm Mail Address]

You can check your current mail address.

Receiving/rejecting specified mail

You can restrict incoming mail by setting to receive/reject mail in one of the following method:

① Receiving mail from specified domains

[Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) Receive Mail from Selected Domains]

- You can receive only the mail through the specified carrier(s) out of au, Vodafone, TU-KA, and WILLCOM.
- Of the mail through carriers other than above, those from the specified domain(s) are received.
- Mail from NTT DoCoMo’s i-mode, i-shot, charge notice service, e-billing charges notification, and visualnet is all received.

② Receiving/rejecting mail from specified addresses

[Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) Receive Selected Mail, Reject Selected Mail]

- Of all received mail, you receive/reject only those from the specified address.

③ Receiving/rejecting only i-mode Mail

[Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) Receive only i-mode mail, Reject only i-mode mail]

- You receive (reject mail via the Internet)/reject mail only between i-mode terminals.

④ Rejecting mass i-mode Mail senders

[Receiving Mail (Other Settings) Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders]

- The 200th and later i-mode Mail messages sent from an i-mode terminal (including mova) in a single day are rejected. The initial setting is **Reject** and you do not need to make any settings to reject mail from large-volume senders.

⑤ Rejecting Unsolicited Ad Mail (mail with 未承諾広告)

[Receiving Mail (Other Settings) Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail]

- Unsolicited mail sent for the purpose of advertising and publicity without receiver's consent that is marked with “未承諾広告 ” at the beginning of the subject can be rejected. The initial setting is **Reject** and you do not need to make any settings to reject such mail. (The sender is required by law to add 未承諾広告 (6 two-byte characters) at the beginning of the subject.)

⑥ Rejecting SMS [Receiving Mail (Other Settings) Set/Confirm SMS Rejection Settings]

- You can set to reject all SMS or only SMS without caller ID, and confirm the current settings.

Only one of *Receive Mail from Selected Domains*, *Receive Selected Mail*, *Reject Selected Mail*, *Receive only i-mode mail*, and *Reject only i-mode mail* can be set at a time.

Checking current settings [Confirm Settings]

You can check the current settings for receiving/rejecting mail, etc.

Restricting mail size [Limit Mail Size]

You can restrict the i-mode Mail you receive to a specified size.

Suspending i-mode Mail function [Suspend Mail]

If you do not use the mail function, you can stop it in the i-mode Center.

Number of characters that can be sent/received

The number of characters that can be sent and received in i-mode Mail is as follows:

Item	One-byte characters (alphanumeric, katakana, etc.)	Two-byte characters (kanji, hiragana, pictograms, etc.)
Subject	30 characters	15 characters
Mail address	50 characters	-
Message	10,000 characters	5,000 characters

INFORMATION

The message of i-mode Mail can contain up to 5,000 two-byte characters (10,000 bytes) but the maximum number of characters may be smaller depending on the size of any attachments.

When the message exceeds the number of characters that can be received, “ / ” or “ // ” is inserted at the end and the remainder of the message is deleted automatically.

When you send i-mode Mail to a mova terminal, the message can contain up to 2,000 two-byte characters. Any attachments other than still images or videos sent as i-shot Mail or i-motion Mail containing a URL are deleted.

When the subject exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be received, the excessive characters are deleted.

Except for exchanges between i-mode terminals (including mova), do not use one-byte katakana characters or pictograms. They may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.

When you cannot receive mail

The i-mode Mail received by the i-mode Center is immediately sent to your i-mode terminal. However, when you cannot receive mail because the terminal is turned off or out of the service area, i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center.





When mail is stored in the i-mode Center, it is resent a maximum of 3 times at a certain interval. You can also select i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center and receive by using Receive Option.

INFORMATION

The maximum number of i-mode Mail items and the period they are stored at the i-mode Center are as follows:

Item	Maximum number of items	Maximum storage period
i-mode Mail	207 to 1,000 (up to approx. 2 MB)	720 hours

i-mode Mail is automatically deleted after the maximum storage period expires.

The maximum number of items that can be stored depends on the size of i-mode Mail. When the maximum number of items is exceeded, the i-mode Center no longer accepts i-mode Mail and returns it to the sender together with an error message. At this time,  or  is indicated on your i-mode terminal. When Receive Option Setting is on, however,  or  is not indicated even if the maximum number is exceeded.

You can use Check i-mode Message or Receive Option to receive i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center. In addition, if new mail arrives, you can receive it with other stored mail and Message R/F.

When the i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center is received by your i-mode terminal, the mail is deleted from the i-mode Center. The received mail is stored in your i-mode terminal.


Extremely large volume i-mode Mail may not be accepted by the i-mode Center.

Other convenient functions

Mail with attachments

• Attaching melodies to mail

You can send/receive melody files downloaded from i-mode or Internet web sites by attaching them to i-mode Mail (you cannot send melody files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal).

- Sending P229
- Receiving P244

• Attaching images to mail

You can send/receive still image files obtained from i-mode or Internet web sites, or external memory by attaching them to i-mode Mail (you cannot send still image files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal).

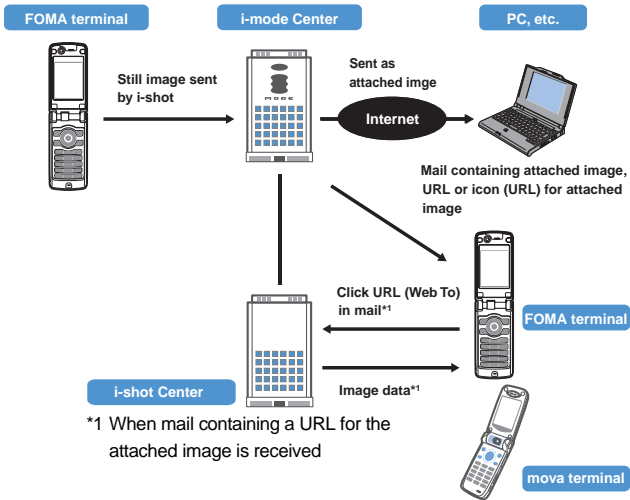
- Sending P229
- Receiving P241

i-shot

Still images shot by a terminal with the camera function can be attached to mail and sent/received to/from i-mode terminals (including mova), PCs, or other company's mobile phones. The still images are sent as attachments. Or mail containing a URL (or icon) for viewing the still image is sent with the storage period specified. Click the received URL to download the image.

The maximum number of characters that can be sent to a mova terminal is 184 two-byte characters (369 bytes). If you attach multiple files to mail to a mova terminal, the attachments are deleted from the mail and only the message text is notified.

- Sending P229
- Receiving P241



- The i-shot Center stores images for a maximum period of 10 days and deletes the images automatically after that period.
- i-mode terminals can send still image files of up to 500 Kbytes. When you send an image exceeding 20 Kbytes as mail attachment to an i-mode terminal, the image will be automatically reduced and downloaded to the receiver's terminal.

i-motion Mail

Videos recorded with an i-motion Mail compatible terminal or downloaded from sites can be sent/received to/from i-motion Mail compatible terminals, PCs, or other company's mobile phones (you cannot send video files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal).

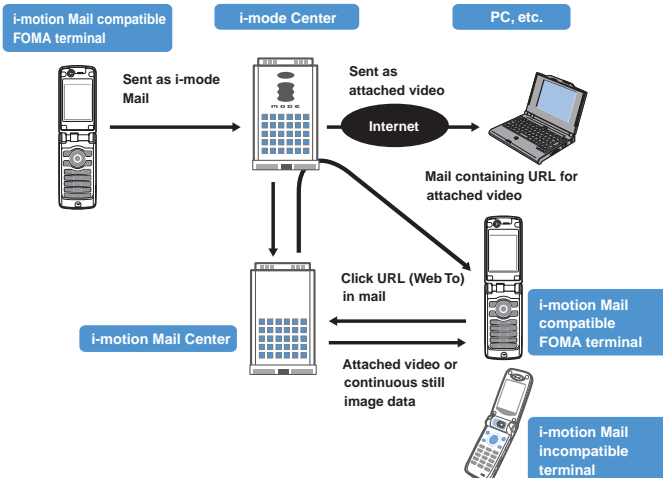
- Sending ◀P229
- Receiving ▶P243

• Service schematic

Video files attached to i-motion Mail are sent to the i-motion Mail Center and stored there (if the destination is a PC, the file is directly sent to the PC as an attachment).

When i-motion Mail is received by an i-motion Mail compatible terminal, the video can be downloaded by clicking the URL displayed in the message text.

When received by a non-compatible terminal, the video is converted to continuous still images and received as mail containing a URL. The receiver can download the continuous still images by clicking the displayed URL.



- The i-motion Mail Center stores images for a maximum period of 10 days and deletes the images automatically after that period.
- i-motion Mail compatible terminals can receive video files of up to 500 Kbytes. When attached videos are downloaded, the image sizes are automatically changed to fit the terminal screen.

Deco-mail

You can compose and send your original i-mode Mail messages by changing the character size and background color and by inserting images in the text, and enjoy receiving decorated mail (when decorated mail is received from a PC, operations may not be the same as on PC because some decorations are not supported by i-mode terminals).

When Deco-mail is sent to a non-compatible terminal, it is received as mail containing a URL. The receiver can view Deco-mail by clicking the displayed URL.

- Editing Deco-mail ◀P223
- Sending Deco-mail ▶P223
- Supporting models: Deco-mail can be used on Deco-mail compatible models. For details, see "i-mode User's Manual".

Sending mail to multiple addresses

You can send i-mode Mail to multiple addresses (up to 5) at one time. ▶P222

- The communication fee is the same as for sending one mail (however, the communication fee increases corresponding to the information volume for additional addresses).

Sending/receiving CC and BCC

When editing i-mode Mail, you can select the receiver type from TO, CC and BCC in the same way as on PCs. If there is no TO address, however, mail cannot be sent. ▶P222

Chat mail

Mail can be sent and received to/from multiple addresses like making conversation.

- The communication fee for chat mail to/from multiple addresses is the same as for sending mail to multiple addresses at one time.

SMS

Text messages can be exchanged between FOMA terminals.

- Sending ▶P273
- Receiving ▶P274
- Checking for SMS ▶P276

Address of SMS

The address of SMS is the "subscribing mobile phone number".

- You can exchange SMS via overseas carriers other than DoCoMo. For more information, please visit the DoCoMo website.

Number of characters that can be sent/received

The maximum number of characters is different depending on the font type setting (▶P276).

Item	English	Japanese
Address	20 characters (numbers only)	
Message	160 one-byte characters*1	70 characters regardless of one- or two-byte

*1 One-byte alphanumerics and symbols (except for ◦, 「, 」, ・, ° and °) can be sent.

When symbols (| ^ { } [] and ¥) are entered, the number of characters that can be sent is reduced.

INFORMATION

You cannot send a subject via SMS.

If you use one-byte katakana or pictograms in SMS, the receiver may not be able to display them correctly.

When you cannot receive SMS

SMS sent to your FOMA terminal is received by the SMS Center and sent to your FOMA terminal immediately. When you cannot receive messages because the terminal is turned off or outside the service area, the messages are stored in the SMS Center.

INFORMATION

The SMS Center stores messages for a maximum of 72 hours. The sender can specify the storage period.

☛P276

The messages are automatically deleted after the maximum storage period expires.

You can use Check SMS to receive the messages stored in the SMS Center. ☛P276

When FOMA terminal receives the messages stored in the SMS Center, the messages are deleted from the Center. Received SMS is stored in FOMA terminal.

Other convenient functions

Delivered report

You can receive a delivery report that informs whether the other party has received the sent SMS.

☛P276

Saving to the UIM

You can save received and sent SMS to the UIM. ☛P277


Menu 1

Displaying Mail menu

Mail Menu

Mail

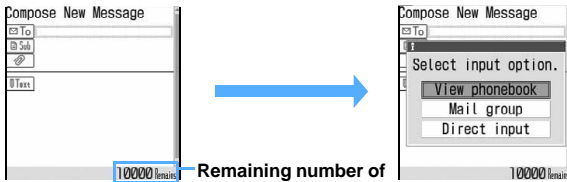
You can select various mail functions of FOMA terminal from Mail menu. Shortcut operations are available for some functions.

1 Press  on the stand-by display.



Menu	Description	Page
<i>Inbox</i>	Displays received mail.	P246
<i>Compose message</i>	Composes and sends new i-mode Mail.	P221
<i>Chat mail</i>	Mail can be exchanged as if having a conversation with friends.	P267
<i>Unsent messages</i>	Displays the mail saved without sending or that failed to be sent.	P246
<i>Outbox</i>	Displays sent mail.	P246
<i>Check new message</i>	Checks for mail or Message R/F at the i-mode Center or for SMS at the SMS Center. Also sets items of message retrieval from the i-mode Center and performs Receive Option.	P239, P276
<i>SMS</i>	Composes and sends new SMS, makes SMS settings and displays received/sent SMS in the UIM.	P273
<i>Read templates</i>	Displays templates and composes mail.	P233
<i>Mail setting</i>	Sets various mail functions.	P258



- 1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display and select  field.



Mail composition screen

Remaining number of one-byte characters that can be entered

- 2 Select **Direct input** and enter the address (up to 50 one-byte characters).


- When sending mail to an i-mode terminal, you may omit "@docomo.ne.jp" in the mail address.
- In 5-touch Input Method, press  in the alphabet input mode to enter symbols such as "@", ".", and "-" frequently used in addresses. In addition, ".co.jp", ".ne.jp", ".com", etc. can be entered by pressing  in the alphabet input mode.
- When the other party has registered a secret code, enter the other party's i-mode terminal phone number followed by the 4-digit secret code.


Searching the phonebook


- 1 Select **View phonebook**.
- 2 Search the phonebook and select a mail address.



Using a mail group

Mail addresses must be registered in a mail group in advance.




- 1 Select **Mail group**.
- 2 Select a mail group to enter mail addresses.
 - If the total of entered addresses exceeds 5, the mail group cannot be added.
 - Press  to check the mail group details.


- 3 Select  field and enter the subject (up to 30 one-byte or 15 two-byte characters).



- 4 Select  and enter the message (up to 10,000 one-byte or 5,000 two-byte characters).

- When a file is attached, the number of characters that can be entered is reduced.
- Line feeds can be inserted in the message. Press  to enter a line feed in 5-touch Input Method. A line feed is counted as a character in the message.
- A space is also counted as a character in the message.
- Text can be decorated. 


Inserting a signature

- 1 Press  .
 - Signature must be registered beforehand. 
 - The signature text is counted as characters in the message.

- 5 Press .

- Press  on the connection screen to stop connection. Press  on the sending screen to stop sending. Note that the i-mode Mail may be sent depending on the operation timing.

INFORMATION

You can also compose i-mode Mail by placing the cursor at the phonebook entry containing a mail address and pressing .

You can use fixed phrases to enter face marks, greetings and replies in the message.

When mail larger than 10,000 bytes is automatically saved due to conflict with other applications, part of the mail being composed may not be saved.

Depending on signal conditions, characters may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.

Even if i-mode Mail is sent correctly, *Transmission failed.* may be displayed depending on signal conditions.

When a fixed phrase including a line feed is inserted in the message text being composed, the line feed is replaced by a one-byte space.

Except for exchanges between i-mode terminals (including mova), do not use one-byte katakana characters or pictograms. They may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.


Depending on the model of the receiver's i-mode terminal, some pictograms may not be displayed correctly.


When transmission fails, an error message is displayed and the i-mode Mail is saved in Unsent messages. You can edit and send i-mode Mail from Unsent messages.

When transmission is completed correctly, the i-mode Mail is saved in Outbox. When there is not enough available storage space in Outbox, or the maximum number of sent mail is exceeded, the oldest sent mail is overwritten. However, protected mail is not overwritten. Be sure to protect sent mail you want to keep.

An error message for address unknown etc. may not be received when mail is sent to addresses other than DoCoMo.

To use the phonebook when Privacy Mode is active (*Authorized access set for Phonebook & Logs*), entry of the terminal security code is required.

When there is not enough available storage space in Unsent messages, or the maximum number of unsent mail is exceeded, i-mode Mail cannot be composed. Delete unnecessary i-mode Mail and/or SMS from Unsent messages. 

You can change TO, CC and BCC of the address. 








Mail can be composed quickly using templates. 

You can compose and send i-mode Mail easily to the parties saved to the phonebook No. 0 to 99 (Quick Mail).

Adding receivers

Add Address

You can send i-mode Mail to up to 5 addresses at one time (multi-address transmission).

- The receiver can be one of the 3 types:  (TO),  (CC) and  (BCC).
 - In  field, enter the main address.
 - In  field, enter the address to which you want to send a copy of the mail.
 - In  field, enter the address to which you want to send a copy of the mail but which you do not want to be known to other receivers.
- Mail with no address entered in  field cannot be sent.

1 Place the cursor at the address field on the mail composition screen and press .



Address field is added.




- Repeat operation until the number of fields you want is added.

Adding CC and BCC




- 1 Press  .

- ② Select an input method.
- ③ Select **CC** or **BCC** and enter a mail address.
 - Also **TO** can be selected.
 - When **Mail group** is selected, the registered mail address is displayed for **TO**, **CC** and **BCC**.

Changing **TO**, **CC** and **BCC**

- ① Place the cursor at the address to change and press   .
- ② Select a new address type.



Deleting the added address field


- ① Place the cursor at the address field to delete and press   .
- ② Select **Yes**.
 - Only the address is deleted when there is only one address field.

2 Enter the address in the added field and send the mail.

- Operation is the same as when there is only one address field.

INFORMATION

The mail address entered in  field and  field can be seen at the receiver side. However, it may not be displayed depending on the terminal, device, or mailing software.

When sending of mail to some addresses fails, an error message is displayed. Pressing  may display a list of mail addresses for which transmission failed.

Composing and sending Deco-mail

Deco-mail

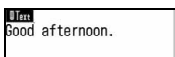
Mail

You can decorate the i-mode Mail message by changing font size, font color, or background color and inserting still images including the ones shot with the camera to compose Deco-mail.

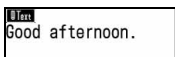
Deco-mail can be composed in 2 ways: entering characters after specifying decoration (P224) and setting decoration after selecting entered characters (P228). The composed Deco-mail can be viewed with the preview function.

Examples of decoration

① Changing font color



② Changing font size



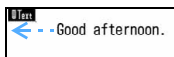
③ Inserting images



④ Blinking characters



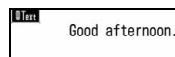
⑤ Setting ticker



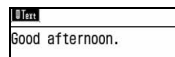
⑥ Swinging characters right and left



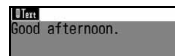
⑦ Changing word alignment



⑧ Inserting lines (ruled lines)



⑨ Changing background color






Flow of Deco-mail composition

Step 1 Display the message text entry screen



Start composing i-mode Mail and display the message text entry screen.

Step 2 Enter decorated characters and images

Press , select the decoration method and enter characters.

• Press   during editing to check the decoration.


Step 2 Enter characters and decorate

Press  at the start position of decoration range and press  at the end position. Select the decoration method.

Step 3 Confirm the decoration and send

Check the decoration on the mail composition screen.


INFORMATION


Even if you delete decorated characters, the decoration data remains and the number of characters to be entered may be fewer. Cancel the decoration first and delete characters. Holding down  for over a second deletes all the characters and decoration (except the background color).

The actions of decoration such as blink, ticker, swing, and animation in the mail composition screen or the preview screen stop automatically after a certain period of time.

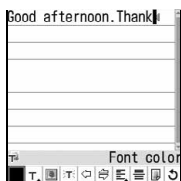
When a Deco-mail is sent to a non-compatible terminal, it will be received as mail containing a URL for viewing the Deco-mail. The Deco-mail cannot be viewed from the mail containing the URL that has been transferred or by entering the URL directly (it can be viewed only on the terminal of the original receiver). When mail is sent and received from other than Deco-mail compatible FOMA terminal such as PC, the decoration may not be correctly displayed.

Entering characters after specifying decoration method


1 Select  on the mail composition screen.


2 Press .



3 Select the decoration and enter characters.



Decoration selection screen

Place the cursor at an icon on the decoration selection screen and press  to select a decoration. You can set more than one decoration by selecting multiple icons. However, *Ticker*, *Swing* and *Word alignment* cannot be selected at the same time.

• To set more than one decoration continuously, place the cursor at an icon on the decoration selection screen and press .


• To cancel a selected decoration and enter characters, place the cursor at the character entry position, press  and press . Only *Font color*, *Font size*, *Blink*, *Ticker* (in blank line), *Swing* (in blank line) and *Word alignment* (in blank line) can be canceled.


 **Font color** : Changes the color of characters and lines (ruled lines) inserted.




   **Font size** : Changes the font size.




 **Insert image** : Inserts images.

 **Blink** : Displays characters that blink.

 **Ticker** : Displays characters in a ticker (ticker display).

 **Swing** : Displays characters that swing right and left.

   **Word alignment** : Changes the position of characters or images inserted.

-  **Insert line** : Inserts separating lines (ruled lines).
-  **Background color** : Changes the background color.
-  **Back to original** : Restores the previous condition.

4 Press and check the decoration.

You can check the set decoration and the accurate remaining number of bytes that can be entered.

5 After checking the decoration, press .

Changing the decoration

- ① Press   , move the cursor to the start position and press .

- Follow the procedure from Step 3 in “Decorating characters after specifying range”. ◀P228

Canceling all decorations


- ① Press   .

6 Press .

7 Press .

- You can save the mail as a template without sending. ◀P233


INFORMATION

You can also select decorations by pressing  on the message text entry screen and selecting *Decorate mail*.

Operations on the decoration selection screen

- The number in parentheses () indicates the example of decoration in P223.



Changing font color (example of decoration ①)

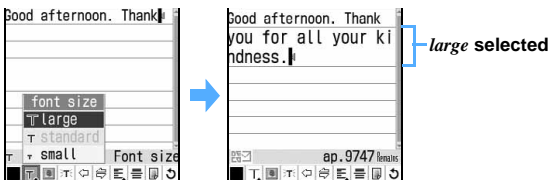
- ① Select .
- ② Select a color and enter characters.



- Select from 20 standard colors or 64 colors in *Other color*.
- The color of pictograms is also changed. To return to the original color, specify the range and select *Default*. ◀P228

Changing font size (example of decoration ②)



- ① Select  (or ).
- ② Select a size and enter characters.

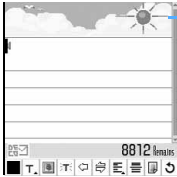





Inserting images (example of decoration ③)

① Select .

② Select **Phone memory**, and select a folder and then an image.

- To insert an image saved in the miniSD memory card, select *miniSD card*, press  or , and select a folder and then an image.
- To take and insert a still image, select *Use still camera* and shoot. The size of still image is automatically set to 96 x 72 (phonebook).




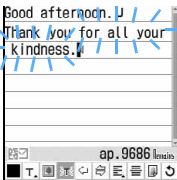
The image is inserted at the position specified with word alignment (, , ).

- You cannot select video/i-motion or an image larger than the attachable data size.

青空 (Blue sky) in Deco-Mail picture folder inserted

Making characters blink (example of decoration ④)

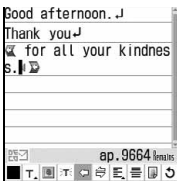
① Select  and enter characters.





The entered characters are blinking.


Making characters into ticker to run from right to left (example of decoration ⑤)

① Select  and enter characters.





- Enter characters between  and .




Making characters swing right and left (example of decoration ⑥)

① Select  and enter characters.

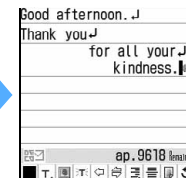
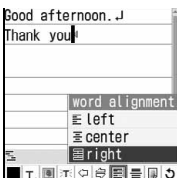


- Enter characters between  and .

Changing word alignment (example of decoration ⑦)

① Select  (or , .

② Select the display position of characters and enter characters.



- When characters are already entered and the cursor is placed between characters, a new blank line is started at the selected position.

right selected

Inserting lines (ruled lines) (example of decoration ⑧)


- ① Select .

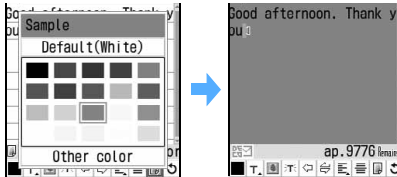


A line (ruled line) is inserted in the color specified with font color (■).

Line (ruled line)

Changing text background color (example of decoration ⑨)

- ① Select  and select a color.



- Select from 20 standard colors or 64 colors in *Other color*.

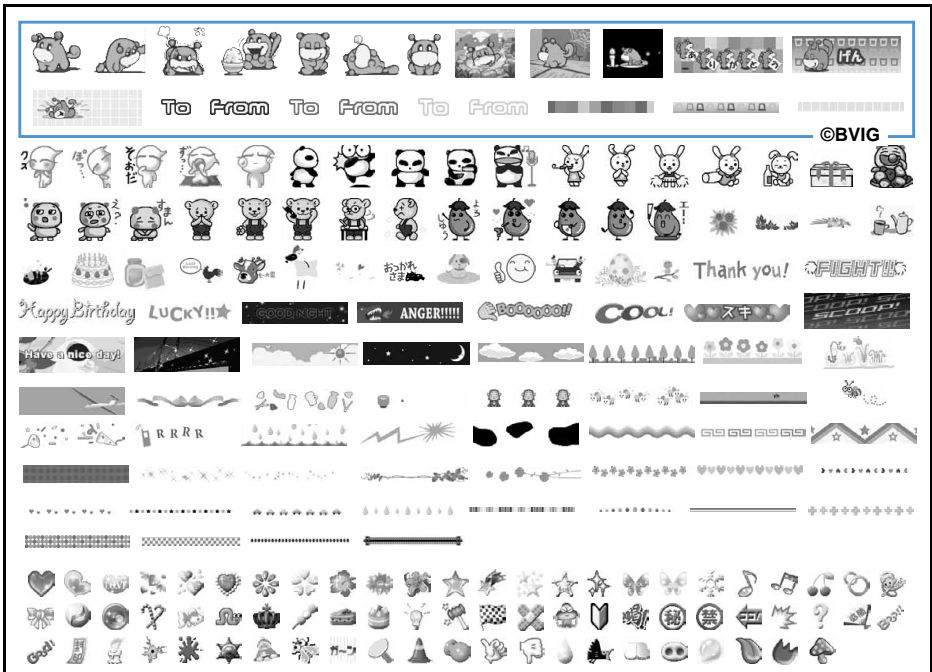
Restoring the previous condition

- ① Select .

Only the last decoration or characters entered are canceled.

Images in Deco-Mail picture folder

- The following images are saved in *Deco-Mail picture* folder by default. If preinstalled images are deleted, they can be downloaded from the i-mode site, "My D-Style". ◀P289

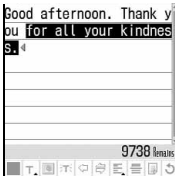


Decorating characters after specifying range

You can decorate characters or change the decoration of characters in the message text.

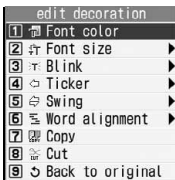
- The number in parentheses () in Step 4 indicates the example of decoration in P223.
- You cannot insert lines or images, or change the background color. Specify the decoration first.

- 1 Select **U Text** on the mail composition screen.
- 2 Place the cursor at the start position of character range to decorate and press **EA**.
- 3 Place the cursor at the end position of character range to decorate and press **Ⓢ**.



- To move the cursor to beginning of the text, press **Menu**.
- To move the cursor to end of the text, press **□**.
- To select all the text, press **☑**.

- 4 Select the decoration method.




- The procedure for confirming and canceling decorations are the same as when entering characters after specifying decoration. ➡P224
- To change the font color (example of decoration ①), press **1.abc** and select a color.
The color of lines (ruled lines) is also changed.
- To change the font size (example of decoration ②), press **2.abc** and press **1.abc** to **3.def**.
- To make characters blink (example of decoration ④), press **3.def** **1.abc**.
To cancel, press **3.def** **2.abc**.
- To make characters into ticker to run from right to left (example of decoration ⑤), press **4.ghi** **1.abc**.
To cancel, press **4.ghi** **2.abc**.
- To make characters swing right and left (example of decoration ⑥), press **5.jkl** **1.abc**.
To cancel, press **5.jkl** **2.abc**.
- To change the word alignment (example of decoration ⑦), press **6.mno** and press **1.abc** to **3.def**.
The display position of image is also changed.
- To copy characters, press **7.pqr**.
- To cut characters, press **8.tuv**.
- To restore the previous condition, press **9.wxyz**.
The last decoration or characters entered are canceled.
- To decorate characters continuously, press **Menu** and repeat Step 4.



- 5 Press **Ⓢ** to cancel the specified range and press **Ⓢ**.

- 6 Press **□**.

- You can save the mail as a template without sending. ➡P233

INFORMATION

In the message text entry screen, press  and select **Decorate mail** *Edit decoration*.

Press   on the message text entry screen to display the accurate remaining number of bytes that can be entered at the lower right of the screen.

Downloading mail templates

Mail templates can be downloaded from sites. There are 30 preinstalled templates on FOMA terminal.

- Maximum number of templates that can be saved 

1 Select a mail template to download during site display.


- Press  to stop downloading.

2 Select **Save**.

- To cancel saving, select **Back**. When a confirmation screen is displayed, select **No**.
- To check the template, select **Display**.

3 Press .

The mail template is saved in **Read templates**.

- You can overwrite a saved template except the preinstalled ones. Press  and select a template to overwrite.
- Display name can contain up to 20 one-byte or two-byte characters.
- File name can contain up to 36 one-byte characters including alphanumerics, “.”, “-” and “_”. However, “.” cannot be used as the first character of file name.

INFORMATION

Mail templates downloaded from sites can be edited on the mail composition screen.

When the memory for templates is not enough or the maximum number of templates is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete unnecessary templates. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete the templates in FOMA terminal until an available space required for saving is recovered.

Attaching files


Attachment

You can send i-mode Mail with still images and melodies attached. You can also send i-motion Mail with video recorded by FOMA terminal attached.

- Attachable files are as shown below:

Item	Melody	Still image of up to 10,000 bytes (JPEG, GIF)*1	Still image exceeding 10,000 bytes and up to 500 KB*1	Video/ i-motion of up to 500 KB*2
Maximum number of files attached to one mail	10*3		1	
Condition of attachment	Melodies (MFi) cannot be attached.	Create animation cannot be attached.	Only still image (JPEG) can be attached.	File with replay restriction set cannot be attached.*4

- *1 Depending on the receiver's device (terminal, PC, etc.), still images will be received as attachment to mail or mail containing a URL for the images will be received.
 - *2 Depending on the receiver's model, video may be degraded or displayed as continuous still images. Playing video/i-motion on PC ◀P472
 - *3 Up to 10 still images and melodies in total can be attached on condition that the total size including the message text is 10,000 bytes or smaller. The number of files that can be attached, however, may be reduced depending on the size of the attachment.
 - *4 Some files without replay restriction may not be attached.
- When the remaining data amount that can be entered in the message text (after melodies and still images are attached) is less than 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters (400 one-byte or 200 two-byte characters for Deco-mail), you cannot attach video/i-motion or still images exceeding 10,000 bytes.
 - Files prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal (except images with the file restriction set to **File restricted** on your terminal) and files with the UIM operation restriction set cannot be attached.
 - When i-mode Mail with a still image (one JPEG still image) is sent to a mova terminal, it is received as mail containing a URL (i-shot Mail).
 - A GIF still image exceeding 10,000 bytes cannot be attached to mail.
 - Recorded video of up to 500 Kbytes, except the text, can be attached to i-motion Mail. Video cannot be attached to mail regardless of the file size if the image size is other than 176 x 144 (QCIF) or 128 x 96 (Sub-QCIF).
 - The data recorded with Sound Recorder is saved as i-motion and can be attached to mail.
 - When sent to other than FOMA D701i, D901i, or D901iS, melodies may not play correctly at the receiver side.






1 Select  field on the mail composition screen.

2 Select the attachment type and select a file.


Attaching a still image

① **Select Image.**

② **Select Phone memory and select a folder.**

- To select from the miniSD memory card, select **miniSD card**, press  or , and select a folder.
- To take and attach a still image, select **Use still camera** and shoot. Go to Step 3. The size of still image is automatically set to 240 x 320 (stand-by).
- Place the cursor at a still image, and press  to display the still image or  to attach it. Press  to return to the list.
- Still images that cannot be attached are not displayed.

③ **Select a still image.**

File name of the selected still image is displayed in  field of the mail composition screen. Image size and file size of the selected still image are checked in this order.

- For JPEG still image with the image size exceeding 320 x 240 (QVGA), a confirmation screen appears asking whether to reduce it to the stand-by size (QVGA). When file size of the reduced image exceeds 10,000 bytes, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to save the image to Data Box.


When you do not save it to Data Box or a message saying that saving failed appears, the reduced image is not saved. An unsent mail is saved in Unsent messages with no image attached. Also, a sent mail is saved in Outbox with no image attached.

- For JPEG still image exceeding 500 Kbytes, it is automatically reduced to a size that can be attached to mail, and a confirmation screen appears asking whether to save the image to Data Box. This operation may take some time to complete.
- When you select a still image exceeding 10,000 bytes and up to 500 Kbytes from the miniSD memory card, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to copy the image to FOMA terminal.

Attaching video/i-motion (i-motion Mail)

① Select *i-motion*.

② Select *Phone memory* and select a folder.

- To select from the miniSD memory card, select *miniSD card* and select a folder.
- To record and attach video, select *Use video camera* and record. Go to Step 3. The size of video image is automatically set to 176 x 144 (QCIF).
- Place the cursor at video/i-motion and press  to play the video/i-motion.
- Video/i-motion that cannot be attached is not displayed.

③ Select a video/i-motion file.

File name of the selected video/i-motion is displayed in  field of the mail composition screen.




- When you select video/i-motion that cannot be attached from the miniSD memory card, a message saying that the file cannot be selected appears.
- When you select video/i-motion of up to 10,000 bytes from the miniSD memory card, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to copy the file to FOMA terminal.

Attaching a melody


① Select *Melody*.

- When a miniSD memory card is inserted, select *Melody* and then select *Phone memory* or *miniSD card*.

② Select a folder.

- Place the cursor at a melody, and press  to play the melody or  to attach it. Press  to return to the list.
- Melodies that cannot be attached are not displayed.

③ Select a melody.

File name of the selected melody is displayed in  field of the mail composition screen.

- When you select a melody that cannot be attached from the miniSD memory card, a message saying that the file cannot be selected appears.

3 Press .

INFORMATION

Still image exceeding 10,000 bytes can be reduced to 240 x 320 (QVGA). ◀P310

QVGA is the size of the stand-by display and is suited for sending to an i-mode terminal.

When you send mail with a JPEG still image exceeding 10,000 bytes attached to an i-mode terminal, the image is reduced in the i-shot Center to a size that can be sent to the i-mode terminal.

When you send mail with melody or GIF still image attached to a mova terminal, the attached file will be deleted and mail with no attachment will be delivered to the receiver.

When you try to play a melody in Silent Mode, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to play. Select *Yes* to play the melody at the volume set in Settings for melody.

Changing/removing attachments

Example Removing an attachment

1 Display the mail composition screen.

2 Place the cursor at field to remove and press .

Changing the attachment

① Place the cursor at  field to change and press .

② Attach a new file. ◀P229

3 Select *Yes*.

Using mail templates

You can register the contents of i-mode Mail in mail template for entering the same sentence at the beginning of messages or sending similar messages many times. You can easily compose i-mode Mail by using mail templates; adding and editing the contents. Deco-mail template is a template for Deco-mail that has the layout, decoration, etc. predefined and allows you to easily compose and send Deco-mail. Deco-mail template is read in the same way as a mail template.

- The following Deco-mail templates are registered by default:

					
ありがとう (Thank you) ©BVIG	げんき? (How are you?) ©BVIG	遊びにいこう (Let's go!) ©BVIG	ありがとう (Thank you)	おめでとう! (Congratulations!)	誕生日おめでとう (Happy birthday)
					
元気? (How are you?)	頑張って (Cheer up)	調子はどう? (How are you doing?)	おつかれさま (Good job today)	ラッキー! (Lucky!)	幸せ気分 (I'm happy)
					
好きです... (I love you)	お願い (Please!)	電話します (I'll call you)	お茶しよ~ (Let's have tea)	たまには (Once in a while...)	旅にでようよ (Let's take a trip)
					
歌いませんか (Feel like singing)	ドライブ (Let's go drive)	おはよ! (Good morning!)	いい一日を (Have a nice day)	おやすみ (Good night)	反省してます (Sorry)
					
さみしい (I miss you)	ちょっと怒ったよ (I'm angry)	忙しいよ (So busy)	モー大変 (It's tough)	飲みたい気分 (I want to drink)	つまない (Not funny)

- You can save created templates.
- You cannot use templates for SMS.

You can read templates while composing new i-mode Mail.

- Templates cannot be read while Keypad Dial Lock is set.

1 Press on the mail composition screen.

2 Select the template to read.

: Still image of up to 10,000 bytes

: Melody

: Still image of up to 10,000 bytes + melody

- When you read a template on the mail composition screen after entering any text, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite the mail contents. To continue, select **Read body only** or **Read all** and select a template. Press to stop reading. When **Read body only** is selected, only the message text is overwritten with the template. When **Read all** is selected, the address, subject, attachment, and message text are all overwritten.
- Multiple templates cannot be read for one mail.

3 Edit and send the mail.

Menu 18

Viewing templates and composing mail

Display a list of registered templates and check the contents to set on the mail composition screen.

- Templates cannot be read while Keypad Dial Lock is set. However, if the mail address entered in the address field of a template is registered in the phonebook, the template can be read.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select the template to display.

- Press on the template view screen to display the previous or next template.

3 Press .

The contents of the template are set on the mail composition screen.

4 Edit and send the mail.

INFORMATION

When **Auto play** is set in Message Attachment, displaying a template with a melody attached plays the melody automatically at the ring volume for calls set in Ring Volume Setting. Press to stop playing. During play you can adjust the volume by using .

To check or change the template detail information, press on the template list screen and select **Detail info** **View** or **Edit**. The detail information of preinstalled templates cannot be changed.

Saving mail as template

Save Template

Composed mail or received/sent mail can be saved as template.

- Maximum number of templates that can be saved
- You can edit and save preinstalled templates as new template.
- Video/i-motion or still images exceeding 10,000 bytes cannot be saved in templates.
- If any of address, subject, attachment or text is not entered, the template cannot be saved.

1 Press on the mail composition screen and select *Yes*.

2 Press .

- To overwrite a saved template, press , select a template, and select *Yes*. The preinstalled templates cannot be overwritten.
- Display name can contain up to 20 one-byte or two-byte characters.
- File name can contain up to 36 one-byte characters, including alphanumerics, “ . ”, “ - ” and “ _ ”. However, “ . ” cannot be used for the first character of file name.

INFORMATION

If you save a template containing an image that cannot be sent, the image may be deleted.

If the date and time are not set when saving a template, “-----” is set as file name. When the subject is not entered, “-----” is set as display name.

When the memory for templates is not enough or the maximum number of templates is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete unnecessary templates. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete the templates in FOMA terminal until an available space required for saving is recovered.

Deleting templates

- Preinstalled templates cannot be deleted.

Example Deleting a template

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the template to delete and press .

Deleting selected templates

① Press and select templates.

- Press to select or cancel a template and press to select or cancel all.

② Press .

Deleting all templates

① Press and enter the terminal security code.

3 Select *Yes*.

Saving i-mode Mail for sending later

Save Mail

Saving unsent i-mode Mail

- Maximum number of unsent mail that can be saved ●P39

1 Press on the mail composition screen.

i-mode Mail is saved in Unsent messages.

- If any of address, subject, attachment or text is not entered, the mail cannot be saved.

Editing and sending unsent/sent i-mode Mail

Example Editing unsent mail

- 1 Press 4 on the stand-by display and select a folder.
 - is displayed for SMS.
 - For sent mail, press 5 and select a folder.
- 2 Select the mail to edit.
 - To edit sent mail, place the cursor at the mail to edit and press .
- 3 Edit and send the mail.

INFORMATION

You can also edit mail by pressing on the sent mail view screen.

When *Auto play* is set in Message Attachment, displaying sent mail with a melody attached automatically plays the melody at the ring volume for calls set in Ring Volume Setting. Press to stop playing.

During play you can adjust the volume by using .

Composing mail quickly

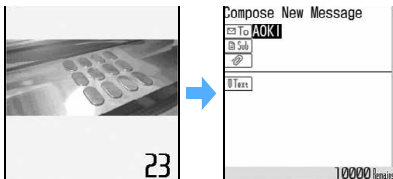
Quick Mail

You can compose i-mode Mail and SMS easily to the parties saved to the phonebook No. 0 to 99 in FOMA terminal.

- The first mail address registered in the phonebook entry for the party is set as the address of i-mode Mail and the first phone number as the address of SMS.

Example Sending i-mode Mail to the party of phonebook No. 23

- 1 Enter the phonebook No. (in this case) on the stand-by display and press .
- The first mail address registered in the phonebook entry is set as the address.



- Enter the phonebook No. without prefix 0. You cannot compose i-mode Mail if you add 0.
- Composing and sending i-mode Mail

Composing SMS

- 1 Enter the phonebook No. on the stand-by display and hold down for over a second.
 - The SMS composition screen is displayed. The first phone number registered in the phonebook entry is set as the address.
 - Composing and sending SMS

INFORMATION

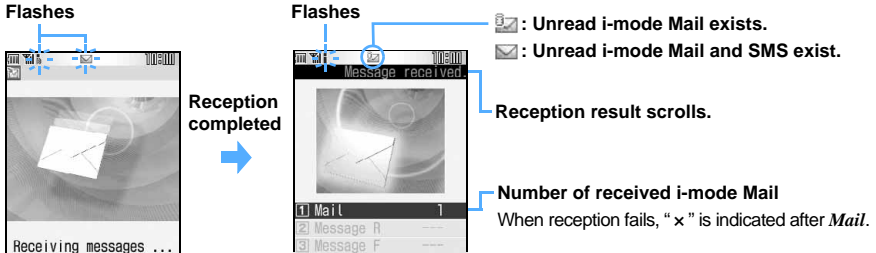
If no mail address (or phone number for SMS) is registered in the specified phonebook entry or no entry is registered in the phonebook, a message indicating that no applicable data exists is displayed. Pressing displays the mail (SMS) composition screen with no address set.

For the phonebook entry with the secret attribute set, activate Secret Mode before operation.

When there is incoming i-mode Mail, it is automatically received and you are informed by the screen display, ring tone, vibrator and/or call indicator. The received i-mode Mail is saved in Inbox.

- Maximum number of received mail that can be saved ◀P39

1 Receive i-mode Mail.



Ⓜ and ✉ flash and *Receiving messages...* is displayed.

The mail ring tone sounds, the call indicator lights/flashes, and the reception result screen is displayed.

- Press [END] to stop the ring tone.
- Press [STOP] while receiving to stop reception but depending on the receiving condition, the mail will be received.
- When FOMA terminal is closed, the reception status such as *Mail* appears on the sub-display. The sender's name or mail address of the last mail also appears. When *Hide caller's info* is set in Sub-display Info Setting, no name or address will appear.
- If you do not press any key for about 15 seconds after the reception result screen is displayed or until the ring tone stops, the screen displayed prior to reception automatically reappears. To return to the previous screen immediately, press [CH/2577].

INFORMATION

When Display Priority is set to *Continue operation*, the receiving screen or reception result screen will not be displayed for mail received during FOMA terminal operation. ◀P266

When Privacy Mode is active (*Hide secret fldrs* set for *Mail*), if automatically received mail is all saved in the folder with the privacy set to *ON* in the folder settings, the reception result screen is not displayed and the mail ring tone or call indicator is not activated. When Privacy Mode is active (*Authorized access* set for *Mail*), the reception result is scrolled but the sender and subject are not displayed.

When the incoming mail/message is set not to be displayed in Receive Display, the reception result is not scrolled.

When the indicator light is set to *ON* in Alert Lighting Setting, the call indicator flashes while unread i-mode Mail exists.

When Receive Option Setting is on, you can select and receive only the mail you want without automatically receiving all mail.

When new i-mode Mail is delivered, the i-mode Mail and chat mail stored in the i-mode Center are also received.

When i-mode Mail is received by FOMA terminal, it is deleted from the i-mode Center.

FOMA terminal shows which of TO, CC and BCC is specified for you when you receive mail from a party who can specify TO, CC and BCC. ◀P249

Extremely large i-mode Mail may not be accepted by the i-mode Center and be returned to the sender with an error message.

You can send/receive i-mode Mail with melody/still image attachments. The i-mode Center will delete attachments not compatible with i-mode Mail. If an attachment has been deleted, [添付ファイル削除] (Delete attachment) is inserted under the subject of the mail.

Attachments larger than the receivable data size (attachable data size) are deleted at the i-mode Center and cannot be received. Attachable data size ◀P229

If the data size of received mail (number of characters, attachment file size) exceeds the limit (maximum number of characters) set with **Limit Mail Size** in "Options", the attachments are deleted at the i-mode Center and cannot be received.




When i-mode Mail is received from a party with the incoming mail settings made in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the settings apply to the operation. Checking with the phonebook is performed as follows:







- When the mail address including the @ symbol and the following domain name matches with a mail address in the phonebook, the phonebook settings apply and the name registered in the phonebook is displayed. However, if the mail address is "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp", the phonebook settings apply and the name is displayed only when the phone number part matches with a mail address (registered without "@docomo.ne.jp") in the phonebook.
- When more than one i-mode Mail is received at the same time, the ring tone, vibrator and call indicator are activated according to the settings made for the party (sender) of the i-mode Mail received last.
- When the mail is from the party that is registered in the phonebook entry with the secret attribute set, the name is displayed only in Secret Mode. The ring tone, vibrator, etc. operate according to the settings in the phonebook.
- When Privacy Mode is active (**Authorized access set for Phonebook & Logs**), the name is not displayed and the ring tone, vibrator, etc. are not activated.

Incoming i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center in the following cases:

- When the power is off
- When reception fails
- When Receive Option Setting is on
- While connecting to the FirstPass center
- When the storage is filled with unread mail and protected mail
- During a video-phone call
- While being out of service area
- During infrared communication
- In Self Mode
- While receiving SMS

When there is not enough available storage space in Inbox, or the maximum number of received mail is exceeded, the oldest received mail is overwritten. However, unread mail and protected mail are not overwritten. Be sure to protect received mail you want to keep.


If the mail cannot be overwritten because storage is filled with unread mail and protected mail, reception of i-mode Mail is stopped.  or  is indicated on the screen. 

If there is unreceived i-mode Mail in the i-mode Center,  or  is indicated (). However, the icon may not be displayed even when there is i-mode Mail in the i-mode Center. When the maximum number of mail that can be stored in the i-mode Center () is reached, the icon changes to  or .

To receive i-mode Mail that you have failed to retrieve, perform Check i-mode Message or Receive Option. When the maximum number of received mail is reached, display unread mail, delete unnecessary mail or cancel mail protection before receiving new mail.

When you send i-mode Mail to your own mail address, the mail may not be received automatically soon after sending. Perform Check i-mode Message.



Displaying newly-received i-mode Mail

1 Press  on the reception result screen.



- The received i-mode Mail is saved in **Inbox** folder. Note that, when the received mail matches the criteria specified in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder.

2 Select a folder and select a mail.

- When a melody is attached, it plays automatically. Auto play can be turned off. 
- Displaying received mail 
- Selecting a Message i- ppli folder starts the corresponding i- ppli.

INFORMATION

To display the folder list when Privacy Mode is active (*Authorized access* set for *Mail*), entry of the terminal security code is required. Also, when Privacy Mode is active (*Authorized access* set for *i- ppli*), selecting a Message i- ppli folder requires entry of the terminal security code.

Selecting i-mode Mail to receive


Receive Option

You can select and receive i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center without receiving automatically.

When mail arrives



When Receive Option Setting is on, incoming i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center and the message shown on the left appears.

- Even if mail is received, the mail ring tone or vibrator is not activated.
- Press any key other than  to clear the message.

INFORMATION

During All Lock or PIM Lock, the notification message does not appear for mail stored to the i-mode Center. Even if Receive Option Setting is on, all i-mode Mail in the i-mode Center is received when Check i-mode Message is performed. If you do not want to receive unnecessary mail, unselect the mail in Message Retrieval Setting. [P261](#)

SMS and Message R/F are received automatically even if Receive Option Setting is on.

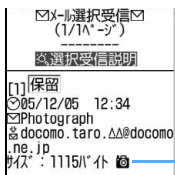
Menu 163

Selecting mail to receive

You can check the subjects of i-mode Mail stored at the i-mode Center and select only necessary mail to receive. You can also delete unnecessary i-mode Mail without receiving it.


- To select mails to receive, set Receive Option Setting to *ON* in advance.


1 Press    on the stand-by display.



You are connected to the i-mode Center and the list of i-mode Mail stored appears.

 : Still image file attached

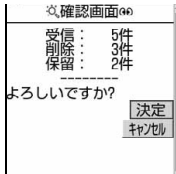
 : Melody file attached

 : i-motion file attached

2 Select 保留(Hold) for each mail and select 受信(Receive), 削除(Delete) or 保留.

- When 保留 is selected, the mail is stored at the i-mode Center. It can be received by using Check i-mode Message etc.
- To delete all mail stored at the i-mode Center, select 削除 for *i モードセンターから全てのメールを* (All mail from the i-mode Center).
- When the mail list has more than one page, select 前ページ(Previous page) and 次ページ(Next page) at the end of the list to view the previous and next pages.

3 Select 受信 / 削除(Receive/Delete) and select 決定(OK).



Menu 161 / Menu 26 / 受信 / 削除 / 保留 / 6

Checking for mail

Check i-mode Message


You can check whether i-mode Mail has been delivered to the i-mode Center while FOMA terminal was out of the service area or turned off.

Also checks for Message R/F at the same time if it is set so in Message Retrieval Setting.

- Depending on signal condition, you may not be able to perform Check i-mode Message.

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display.

Check i-mode Message is executed. If stored in the i-mode Center, i-mode Mail is received.

- When FOMA terminal is closed, you can perform Check i-mode Message by holding down  for over a second while not displaying the stand-by display. However, this operation is disabled during a call or infrared communication or while using the miniSD memory card.

INFORMATION

The operation on the reception result screen is the same as for auto receive. However, the screen does not return to the previous screen after about 15 seconds.

When FOMA terminal is closed, you will be informed by the indication on the sub-display when i-mode Mail arrives. ●P31

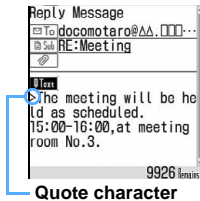
Replying to received i-mode Mail




Reply to Mail

- You may not be able to reply to some received mail.
- You cannot reply to received SMS for which *User unset*, *Payphone* or *Not support* is displayed as sender or to Short Mail sent from mova terminals (i-mode subscription).

1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the mail to reply and press .



The sender's mail address or phone number of the received mail is entered in  field, "RE:" followed by the subject of the received mail in  field (for only i-mode Mail), and ">" followed by the received message text in  field.



- You can use Mail Reply Format to set whether to quote the message in a reply and select the character to be inserted at the beginning of the quoted message.

Replying to all addresses of received mail

① Press   .

- You can reply to the sender and all the receivers except you.

3 Edit and send the mail.

- When the reply is sent, the icon for the received mail changes to  or  in the received mail list.


INFORMATION

In the received mail view screen, press .

The attachments to received mail are not attached to reply mail.

The data attached in the message text of received mail (links to start i- ppli or melodies displayed in the message) is not set for reply mail and it is not quoted as characters, either.

When received Deco-mail is quoted, the text is displayed with the decoration and inserted images quoted. However, if file restriction is set to the images, they are not quoted in reply mail.

When you reply to the mail that was sent to multiple addresses, the mail addresses displayed in  field differ depending on the screen. When you reply from the received mail list, the mail address of the sender is shown. When you reply from the received mail view screen, the mail addresses of the sender and all the receivers except you are displayed.

Forwarding received i-mode Mail



Forward Mail

- You can forward received SMS in the same way. i-mode Mail is forwarded as i-mode Mail and SMS is forwarded as SMS.

1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.



2 Place the cursor at the mail to forward and press .



"FW:" followed by the subject of the received mail is entered in  field (for only i-mode Mail) and the received message text in  field.

- When forwarding received mail with an attachment, the attachment is also set.

3 Edit and send the mail.

- When the forward mail is sent, the icon for the received mail changes to  or  in the received mail list.

INFORMATION

In the received mail view screen, press and select **Reply/Forward** **Forward**.

Regarding the attachments to received mail (still image and melody), files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal are not attached to forward mail.

Even if files are not prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal, some melody files may not be attached depending on the type.

The data attached in the message text of received mail (links to start i-ppli or melodies displayed in the message) is not set for forward mail and it is not quoted as characters, either.

When forwarding the mail with a still image exceeding 10,000 bytes before download attached, the image will not be attached.

When received Deco-mail is quoted, the text is displayed with the decoration and inserted images quoted. When the maximum data size that can be sent is exceeded, the message indicating the mail cannot be sent is displayed when is pressed.

Displaying and saving attached still images

Display/Save Image

Displaying still images

1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Select i-mode Mail with a still image attached.



The still image, file name and file size are displayed under the message.

- : Can be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal
- : Cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal
- : Attachment of still image exceeding 10,000 bytes/still image exceeding 10,000 bytes before download
- : Still image exceeding 10,000 bytes downloaded
- : Attachment of still image of which download failed
- : Still image data error

Switching between displaying and not displaying still image

① Select the file name.

Checking the title of still image

① Place the cursor at the file name of still image to check and press .

Displaying the URL for still image exceeding 10,000 bytes

① Place the cursor at the file name of still image to display the URL and press

.

- To display the URL before download, place the cursor at **保存期限** (Storage period) in the message and press .

INFORMATION


You can switch displaying and not displaying a still image on the view screen for sent mail, mail template, or mail in the miniSD memory card in the same way as above.

To check the image title on the view screen for sent mail, mail template, or mail in the miniSD memory card, place the cursor at the file name of a still image, press and select **Attachment** **Check title**.

Still images of up to 100 Kbytes in JPEG or GIF format can be downloaded.

When received mail with a still image attached is displayed, the attached still image is automatically displayed. Note that, the still image inserted in the message text of received Deco-mail is automatically displayed, but the still image attached to Deco-mail is not displayed automatically. Select the file name of still image to display the image.

The data name of still image inserted in Deco-mail is not displayed in the mail view screen.

A JPEG image exceeding 10,000 bytes attached to i-mode Mail will be automatically downloaded. The image automatically downloaded is saved in  mode folder of *Image* (My Picture). When the image cannot be automatically downloaded because mail reception is interrupted or there is not enough storage space available for images, you can download it by selecting *保存期限* in i-mode Mail.

When a still image is wider than the display, the reduced image is displayed.

Some still images may not be displayed correctly.


Saving still images

Saved still images can be viewed from *Image* (My Picture) of Data Box or set for the stand-by display. You can also save as frames or stamps to use for editing still images.

- Maximum number of still images that can be saved ●P39

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Select i-mode Mail with a still image attached.

3 Place the cursor at the file name of still image to save and press   .


- If the still image is prohibited from being attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal (*File restricted* is displayed), its information cannot be changed. Go to Step 5.

Saving an image displayed in Deco-mail

① Press    and select an image.

4 Select each item to set.

- Follow Step 3 in "Downloading images from sites and messages". ●P195

5 Press  and select the folder to save the image to.

- Saved still images can be set for the stand-by display. ●P307

INFORMATION

You can save still images attached to sent mail in the same way as above.



File name of the downloaded still image can contain up to 36 one-byte characters, including alphanumeric, ".", "-", and "_". However, "." cannot be used for the first character of file name.

Still images larger than 352 horizontal x 288 vertical view size cannot be used as frame.

Still images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 240 x 320 cannot be used as stamp.

Still images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 in GIF format and 1224 x 1632 in JPEG format cannot be saved. Also, some JPEG images may not be saved.


When the memory for images is not enough or the maximum number of images is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete images saved in FOMA terminal. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete the images in FOMA terminal until an available space required for saving is recovered.

- Before deletion, an image can be displayed by pressing  on the image list and detail information on the image can be shown by pressing .

Playing and saving i-motion from i-motion Mail

When video/i-motion is attached to mail and sent, it is stored at the i-motion Mail Center and mail containing a URL to view the i-motion is received. Select the URL to download and play or save the i-motion. Saved i-motion can be played from *i-motion* of Data Box or set for the stand-by display.

- Maximum number of i-motion files that can be saved ●P39
- i-motion of up to 500 Kbytes can be downloaded.
- The volume for playing i-motion follows Settings for i-motion.

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Select i-mode Mail containing a URL for i-motion.

3 Select the URL for i-motion and select *Yes*.

FOMA terminal is connected to the i-motion Mail Center and i-motion download/playback begins.



Inbox 1/ 25
05/12/05 10:00
docomo_taro.Δ@doco...
I took a video!
this is my dog's video.
http://www.docomo-came...
ra.ne.jp/XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
保存期限:2005/12/15
- END -



- Playback screen operating procedure ●P318

Storage period of i-motion at the i-motion Mail Center

URL for i-motion

Indicates that i-motion is attached.

4 When the playback ends, select *Save*.

- To play the i-motion, select *Play*.
- To display information on the i-motion, select *File property*.



5 Press .

The i-motion is saved in *i-mode* folder of *i-motion*.

- Display name can contain up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters.

Setting for the stand-by display

- Video/i-motion without image, i-motion with replay restrictions set and i-motion with the image size exceeding 320 x 240 cannot be set for the stand-by display.

① Press   and select *YES*.

- Video/i-motion that can be enlarged can be set to the same size or large size.
- If the i- ppli stand-by display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel it. If *YES* is selected, the i- ppli stand-by display is canceled and selected video/i-motion is set as the stand-by display.
- Operation of video/i-motion set for the stand-by display ●P121

6 Select *Back*.

INFORMATION

You can play video/i-motion attached to sent mail by selecting the file name. However, you cannot play the video/i-motion if it has been deleted from FOMA terminal.

When i-motion Mail is sent to an i-mode terminal, i-motion can be downloaded up to 50 times for each URL for viewing i-motion saved at the i-motion Mail Center. When 50 times have been exceeded, i-motion download will be disabled.

Playing i-motion attached to mail on a PC requires special software. P472

When displaying mail saved in the miniSD memory card, video/i-motion attached to the mail cannot be displayed.

When you try to play video/i-motion with sound in Silent Mode, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to play. Select **Yes** to play the sound at the volume set in Settings for i-motion.

Playing and saving attached melodies

Play/Save Melody

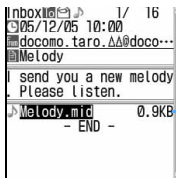
- If the sender uses a terminal other than FOMA D701i, D901i, or D901iS, the received melodies may not play correctly.

Playing melodies

1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.

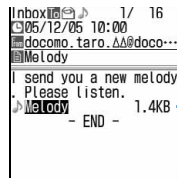
2 Select i-mode Mail with a melody attached.

- There are 2 types of display formats for attached melodies depending on the file type.



Displayed under message
(SMF format)

Melody icon, file
name and file size



Displayed in message
(MFI format)

Melody icon, title and
file size

- ♪ : Can be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal
- ♪^x : Melody data error
- ♪_o : Cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal

3 Select a melody to play.

The melody plays at the ring volume for calls set in Ring Volume Setting.

- In Silent Mode, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to play the melody. Select **Yes** to play.
- Press to stop playback.
- You can adjust the volume by using during play.

Checking the title




① Place the cursor at the melody and press .

- To check the title of melody displayed in the message, place the cursor at the melody and press .

Displaying data as text (data display)


① Place the cursor at the melody and press   .

- To return to the title display, place the cursor at the first row of the displayed data and press

  .

- This function is not available with melodies that appear under the message.

INFORMATION

To play and save the melody during data display, place the cursor at the first row of the displayed data, press , and select **Attachment Play** or **Save**.

When an attached melody in MFi format has no title, the mail reception date and time are displayed as the title.

When **Auto play** is set in Message Attachment, displaying received mail with a melody attached automatically plays the melody.

You can play melodies attached to sent mail, mail template, and mail in the miniSD memory card in the same way.




Saving melodies

Saved melodies can be played from **Melody** of Data Box or used as a ring tone.

- Maximum number of melodies that can be saved ●P39


1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Select i-mode Mail with a melody attached.


3 Place the cursor at the melody to save and press   .

- The set display name is displayed. Enter a name (up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters) on the save melody screen to set the display name.



4 Press .

The melody is saved in  mode folder of **Melody**.


INFORMATION

In the sent mail view screen, place the cursor at a melody, press  and select **Attachment Save**.









When the memory for melodies is not enough or the maximum number of melodies is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete melodies saved in FOMA terminal. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete the melodies in FOMA terminal.

- Before deletion, you can play a melody by pressing  on the melody list and view detail information on the melody by pressing .

You can delete still images and melodies attached to received mail.


- Melodies displayed in the message or links to start i- ppli cannot be deleted.
- Still images exceeding 10,000 bytes can be deleted only from  mode folder of *Image* (My Picture).

Example Deleting an attached still image

- 1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.
- 2 Select i-mode Mail with a still image attached.
- 3 Place the cursor at the file name of still image to delete and press   .
 - To delete all attachments, press   .
- 4 Select *Yes*.
 - The file name of the deleted attachment is displayed in a light color and cannot be selected.

INFORMATION

When you delete a still image exceeding 10,000 bytes attached to received mail, the still image cannot be selected in the mail displayed and the storage period will be dimmed.







In the sent mail view screen, place the cursor at a still image or melody, press , and select *Attachment Delete* or *Delete all*.

Displaying mail in Inbox/Outbox




You can check received/sent/unsent i-mode Mail and SMS. The received mail is saved in Inbox and the sent mail is saved in Outbox. Unsent messages contains the mail that was saved without sending or that failed to be sent.

- Maximum number of mail that can be saved P39

Example Displaying received mail


- 1 Press   on the stand-by display.
 - To display sent mail, press  .
 - To display unsent mail, press  .
- 2 Select a folder.

The received mail list is displayed.

 - Select a Message i- ppli folder to start the corresponding i- ppli. To display mail in a Message i- ppli folder without starting i- ppli, place the cursor at the folder and press  .
- 3 Select the mail to display.
 - You can make calls, send i-mode Mail, or display sites using phone numbers, mail addresses, or URLs. You can also register the phone numbers, mail addresses, or URLs in the phonebook and the URLs in Bookmark. In addition, you can copy text. P256


INFORMATION

When decorated mail is received from PCs, operations may not be the same as on PCs because some decorations are not supported by i-mode terminals.

When there is more than one data item attached in the message text (links to start i-ppli or melodies displayed in the message), the attached data becomes invalid. In this case,  is displayed for the attached data.

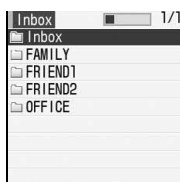
When viewing Deco-mail, URLs for downloading images or i-motion may not be visible depending on the background color of the mail.

When Privacy Mode is active, the operation differs according to Privacy Mode Setting.







- When *Authorized access* is set for *Mail*, displaying the folder list requires entry of the terminal security code.
- When *Hide secret fldrs* is set for *Mail*, the folders with the privacy set to *ON* in the folder settings are not displayed. You can cancel Privacy Mode temporarily and display the folders by holding down  for over a second on the folder list screen and entering the terminal security code.

Reading the folder list screen

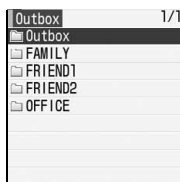
Reading the Inbox folder list screen



Page number/total page count and storage space status bar are displayed at the top of the Inbox folder list screen.

-  (in gray): No mail
-  (in yellow): No unread mail
- : No unread mail (Privacy on)
- : No unread mail (used for Message i-ppli)
- : Unread mail exists
- : Unread mail exists (Privacy on)
- : Unread mail exists (used for Message i-ppli)

Reading the Outbox/Unsent messages folder list screen



Page number/total page count is displayed at the top of the Outbox/Unsent messages folder list screen.

-  (in gray): No mail
-  (in yellow): Mail exists
- : Privacy on
- : Message i-ppli

INFORMATION

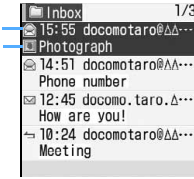
Received mail can be saved into *Inbox* folder and folders that you can add (up to 45 including 5 Message i-ppli folders). Newly received i-mode Mail and SMS are saved in *Inbox* folder by default. You can set FOMA terminal to automatically sort received mail to specific folders upon reception.

Sent/unsent mail can be saved into *Outbox* folder or *Unsent messages* folder, and folders that you can add respectively (up to 15 including 5 Message i-ppli folders). Newly sent i-mode Mail and SMS are saved in *Outbox* folder by default. You can set FOMA terminal to automatically sort sent mail to specific folders.

Even if Message i-ppli has been deleted, the mail can be displayed if the Message i-ppli folder is left undeleted.

Selecting a Message i-ppli folder starts the corresponding i-ppli.

Reading the received mail list screen



Folder name and page number/total page count are displayed at the top of the received mail list screen. Reception date/time, sender and subject (for SMS, beginning of message) are displayed in the mail list.

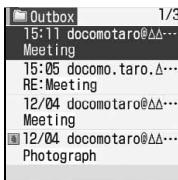
- ① : Unread : Unread (unable to reply) : Read : Read (unable to reply)
- : Read (replied) : Read (forwarded) : Protected : Protected (unable to reply)
- : Protected (replied) : Protected (forwarded)

• For replied/forwarded mail, icon indication priority is given to the last operation made.

- ② : Still image of up to 10,000 bytes : Melody
- : Still image of up to 10,000 bytes + melody : Still image exceeding 10,000 bytes
- : Attachment (in 1-row display only) : SMS
- : i- ppli To : Message i- ppli

- When a still image exceeding 10,000 bytes is attached, the icons for attached still images of up to 10,000 bytes or melodies are not displayed.
- When the sender is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed.
- In the reception date/time column, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.
- The subject may not be displayed depending on the received i-mode Mail.
- For SMS which contains an error, is indicated and the reception date/time becomes "--/--" (only on the reception day). The sender is not displayed.
- The mail list display style can be selected.

Reading the sent/unsent mail list screen



Folder name and page number/total page count are displayed at the top of the sent/unsent mail list screen. Sent date/time, receiver and subject (for SMS, beginning of message) are displayed in the mail list.

- No icon: Unprotected : Protected
- : Still image of up to 10,000 bytes : Melody
- : Still image of up to 10,000 bytes + melody : i-motion
- : Still image exceeding 10,000 bytes
- : Attachment (in 1-row display only) : SMS
- : Message i- ppli

- When an i-motion or still image exceeding 10,000 bytes is attached, the icons for attached still images of up to 10,000 bytes or melodies are not displayed.
- In the sent date/time column, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.
- To display the sent date and time, you need to set the date and time of FOMA terminal.
- When the receiver is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed.
- Selecting mail from the unsent mail list displays the mail composition screen.
- The mail list display style can be selected.

Reading the received mail view screen



Receiver icon*1, status icon, attachment icon, SMS icon, and mail number/count are displayed at the top of the received mail view screen.

*1 TO, CC or BCC is indicated (for i-mode Mail).

- : Reception date and time
- : Sender
- : Receiver (TO)
- : Receiver (CC) (only i-mode Mail)
- : Subject (*Received SMS, Delivered report* or *Notify missed call* for SMS)
- : Sender (unable to reply)
- : Receiver (To) (unable to reply) (only i-mode Mail)
- : Receiver (CC) (unable to reply) (only i-mode Mail)
- You can change the font size.
- For SMS which contains an error, is displayed.

Reading the sent mail view screen



Status icon, attachment icon, SMS icon, and mail number/count are displayed at the top of the sent mail view screen.

- : Sent date and time
- : Receiver (TO)
- : Receiver (CC) (only i-mode Mail)
- : Receiver (BCC) (only i-mode Mail)
- : Subject
- You can change the font size.

INFORMATION

For i-mode Mail, the mail address of sender or receiver is checked with the mail address field in the phonebook data. For SMS, the phone number of sender or receiver is checked with the phone number field in the phonebook data.











- When the mail address including the @ symbol and the following domain name matches a mail address in the phonebook, the name registered in the phonebook is displayed. However, if the mail address is “mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp”, the name is displayed only when the phone number part matches with a mail address (registered without “@docomo.ne.jp”) or a phone number in the phonebook.
- If the mail address or phone number is registered in the phonebook entry with the secret attribute set, the name is displayed only in Secret Mode.
- When Privacy Mode is active (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*), the name is not displayed.

The subject and sender of SMS, delivered report, and missed call notification are displayed as shown below:

Item	SMS	Delivered report	Missed call notification
Subject	Received SMS	Delivered report	Notify missed call
Sender	Phone number	SMS Center	DoCoMo SMS

- When the sender’s phone number is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed in the sender field in the received mail list.
- When the caller ID is not notified, the following characters are displayed in the sender field:
 - User unset* (message was sent by setting not to notify the caller ID)
 - Payphone* (message was sent from a payphone)
 - Not support* (message was sent using a procedure that does not provide the caller ID)

When there are attachments or links to start i- ppli, the icon, file name, etc. are displayed on the view screen.

Type	Icon	Page
Still image		: Can be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal
		: Cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal
		: Attachment of still image exceeding 10,000 bytes/still image exceeding 10,000 bytes before download
		: Still image exceeding 10,000 bytes downloaded
		: Attachment of still image of which download failed
		: Still image data error
Melody		: Can be attached to mail and output from FOMA terminal
		: Cannot be attached to mail or output from FOMA terminal
		: Melody data error
Link to start i- ppli		P294

You can change the mail status between read and unread. Place the cursor at a mail, and press

Menu **5** **5** **1** **1** **1** **1** to change unread mail to read or press **Menu** **5** **5** **1** **2** **2** to change read mail to unread.

- To change selected unread mails to read, press **Menu** **5** **5** **1** **3** **3**. To change selected read mails to unread, press **Menu** **5** **5** **1** **4** **4**. Then select mails to change the status, press **Enter** and select **Yes**.
- To change all unread mail in a folder to read, press **Menu** **5** **5** **1** **5** **5** and select **Yes**. To change all read mail in a folder to unread, press **Menu** **5** **5** **1** **6** **6** and select **Yes**.
- You cannot change the status of protected mail.

Adding and deleting folders

Adding folders

- In Inbox, you can add up to 40 folders other than **Inbox** folder and Message i- ppli folders.
- In Outbox or Unsent messages, you can add up to 10 folders other than **Outbox** folder or **Unsent messages** folder and Message i- ppli folders respectively.
- Folder settings for **Inbox**, **Outbox** and **Unsent messages** folders and Message i- ppli folders cannot be changed.

Example Adding a folder in Inbox

1 Press **Envelope** **1** **1** on the stand-by display.

- Outbox ◀P246
- Unsent messages ◀P246

2 Press **Menu** **1** **1**.

Changing folder settings

① Place the cursor at the folder to change and press **Menu** **3** **3**.

3 Select each item to set.

Folder name : Enter a folder name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters).

Privacy : When **ON** is set, the folder is not displayed when Privacy Mode is active (**Hide secret fldrs** set for **Mail**).

4 Press **Enter**.







INFORMATION

When Message i- ppli is downloaded, a folder for Message i- ppli is automatically created in each of Inbox, Outbox, and Unsent messages. The automatically created folder is named with the name of Message i- ppli downloaded, which cannot be changed.

Deleting folders

- *Inbox*, *Outbox* and *Unsent messages* folders registered by default cannot be deleted.
- Folders containing protected mail cannot be deleted. Cancel protection and then delete the folders.
- Message i- ppli folders cannot be deleted when the i- ppli for the folder exists.

Example Deleting a folder in Inbox







- 1 Press   on the stand-by display.
 - Outbox  • Unsent messages 
- 2 Place the cursor at the folder to delete and press  .
- 3 Enter the terminal security code and select *Yes*.

Checking number of mail items


Msgs. in Folder

You can check the number of received, sent or unsent mail saved in each folder.

Example Checking the number of received mail saved

- 1 Press   on the stand-by display.
 - Outbox  • Unsent messages 
- 2 Place the cursor at the folder to check and press  .




INFORMATION

In the mail list screen, press  and select *Display Check No. of items*.

Checking mail addresses

Display Address

You can view an entire mail address when the whole address is not displayed or the address is registered in the phonebook and only the name is displayed.

- 1 Display the mail view screen.
 - Inbox  • Outbox  • Mail templates 
- 2 Select a sender or receiver to display the address.

INFORMATION

To check multiple mail addresses at one time, press on the mail view screen and select **Display Display address**. In the received/sent/unsent mail list, place the cursor at the mail to display mail address, press and select **Display Display address**. All receivers' addresses are displayed for sent/unsent mail, and the addresses of sender and receivers (except you) for received mail (**TO:** and **CC:** are also displayed).

Moving received/sent mail to another folder

Move Mail

Saved mail can be moved or copied to other folders or the miniSD memory card.

Example Moving a received mail to another folder

1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.

- Outbox P246
- Unsent messages P246

2 Place the cursor at the received mail to move and press .

Moving selected mails

① Press and select mails.

- Press to select or cancel an item, and press to select or cancel all.

② Press .

Moving all mail in folder

① Press .

Copying a mail to the miniSD memory card

① Press and select **Yes**.

Copying all mail to the miniSD memory card (backup)

① Press .

② Enter the terminal security code and select **Yes**.

3 Press and select the destination folder.

4 Select **Yes**.

INFORMATION

If mail is received when multiple received mails are selected, **Unable to display message.** appears and the operation may be canceled.

Sorting received/sent mail

Sort

You can temporarily change the sorting order of the mail list for Inbox and Outbox.

- You can select from **By date**, **By sender** (**By address** for Outbox), or **By title**.
- You cannot change the order of mail for Unsent messages, received SMS and sent SMS in the UIM.

Default **By date**

Example Sorting the received mail list

1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.

- Outbox P246

2 Press .

Sorting the sent mail list

① Press .

3 Press to .

INFORMATION

Closing the received or sent mail list returns the sorting order to *By date*.

When *By sender* or *By address* is set, the mail will be sorted by mail address not by name in the phonebook even if the mail address is registered in the phonebook.

When *By title* is set, if the subject contains both one-byte and two-byte characters, the mail may not be properly sorted in the order of the Japanese syllabary.

When *By title* is set, the mail will not be properly sorted in the order of the Japanese syllabary if any SMS is saved in the same folder and beginning of the message is displayed as subject.

Making calls from received/sent mail

Phone Call

Calls can be made to the sender of received mail or the receiver of sent mail.

- The mail address (except “mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp”) and phone number must be registered in the phonebook.
- When mail addresses are registered in the phonebook entry with the secret attribute set, calls can be made only in Secret Mode.

Example Making a call from received mail

1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.

- Outbox P246

2 Place the cursor at the mail to make a call to and press .

- In the received/sent mail view screen, press .
- When there are multiple receivers, the mail address selection screen appears. Select the party to make a call to.

3 Select each item for Customized Call and set.

4 Press and select *Yes*.

Protecting received/sent mail

Protect Mail

You can protect received, sent and unsent mail to avoid accidental deletion or being overwritten when there is not enough storage space.

- Maximum number of mail that can be protected P39
- Unread mail cannot be protected.





Example Protecting a received mail


1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.




- Outbox P246
- Unsent messages P246

2 Place the cursor at the received mail to protect and press .

The mail is protected and the icon changes to one of the following:



Received mail :  (read)  (unable to reply)  (replied)  (forwarded)

Sent/unsent mail : 

- To cancel protection, place the cursor at the mail to cancel and press   .

Protecting selected mails

① Press and select mails.

- Press  to select or cancel an item, and press  to select or cancel all. Selecting all is not possible when the number of unprotected mail being saved exceeds the maximum number of protected items.



② Press .

Protecting all mail in folder

① Press .

Canceling protection of selected mails

① Press and select mails.

- Press  to select or cancel an item, and press  to select or cancel all.


② Press .



Canceling protection of all mail

① Press .

INFORMATION

All of the protected mail is deleted when Delete All Data is performed.

In the mail view screen, press  and select *Protect* or *Cancel protection*.

In the sent/unsent mail list, press  and select *Protect* *Protect*, *Protect selected* or *Protect all*. To cancel protection, press  and select *Protect* *Release*, *Cancel selected* or *Cancel all protect*.

If the maximum number of protected items is exceeded while protecting all mail, mail is protected in the chronological order, most recent first, until the limit is reached.

If mail is received when multiple received mails are selected, *Unable to display message.* appears and the operation may be canceled.

Deleting received/sent mail

Delete Mail

Unnecessary mail can be deleted from Inbox, Outbox and Unsent messages.

- Protected mail cannot be deleted. When you delete all mail at one time, protected mail remains undeleted even if it matches the specified criteria. Cancel protection first and then delete them.

Deleting received mail

: Available x : Unavailable

Deletion method	Mail deleted	Screen for starting operation		
		Folder list	Mail list	Mail view
<i>All messages</i>	All mail (including unread items)		x	x
<i>Read msgs. (folder)/ Read msgs. in folder</i>	Read mail in folder			x
<i>All (folder)/All (in folder)</i>	All mail in folder (including unread items)			x
<i>7days past (folder)</i>	All mail in folder that has been stored for longer than the specified number of days (including unread items)			x
<i>14days past (folder)</i>				x
<i>30days past (folder)</i>				x
<i>Selected item</i>	A selected mail item	x		
<i>Selected items</i>	Selected mail items	x		x

1 Press on the stand-by display.

Deleting all mail

① Press and enter the terminal security code. Go to Step 4.

2 Select a folder and press .

• To delete one item, place the cursor at the received mail to delete and press .

3 Press to .

Deleting selected mails

① Press and select mails.

• Press to select or cancel an item, and press to select or cancel all.

② Press .

Deleting all mail in folder

① Press and enter the terminal security code.

4 Select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

If mail is received when multiple received mails are selected, *Unable to display message*. appears and the operation may be canceled.

Deleting sent/unsent mail

Sent/unsent mail can be deleted in the following method:

: Available × : Unavailable

Deletion method	Mail deleted	Screen for starting operation		
		Folder list	Mail list	Mail view
<i>All messages</i>	All mail		×	×
<i>All (folder)/All (in folder)</i>	All mail in folder			×
<i>Selected item</i>	A selected mail item	×		(sent mail only)
<i>Selected items</i>	Selected mail items	×		×

Example Deleting a sent mail

1 Press on the stand-by display.

Deleting all mail

① Press and enter the terminal security code. Go to Step 4.

2 Select a folder.

3 Place the cursor at the sent mail to delete and press .

Deleting selected mails

① Press and select mails.

• Press to select or cancel an item, and press to select or cancel all.

② Press .

Deleting all mail in folder


① Press and enter the terminal security code.

4 Select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

Unsent mail can be deleted using the same operation.

In the folder list, press  and select *Delete message*.

In the mail view screen, press  and select *Delete*.

Useful functions of mail

When the message of i-mode Mail or SMS contains phone numbers, mail addresses or URLs, select them to make calls (Phone To/AV Phone To), compose i-mode Mail (Mail To), or connect to sites (Web To). You can also copy characters in the i-mode Mail or SMS and save phone numbers or mail addresses, etc. in the phonebook.

Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To

- The operation is the same as when performing the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, or Web To function from sites.
- When mail is received from a PC etc., the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, or Web To function may not be available.

Copying text

You can copy characters in the i-mode Mail, SMS, or mail template being displayed. Copied text can be pasted in entry fields on the mail composition screen or phonebook registration screen.

- For SMS stored in the UIM, you can copy the message text, receiver and sender.
- For Deco-mail, only the text can be copied.
- Copied text is recorded until FOMA terminal is turned off and it can be pasted into other locations any number of times.
- Only one item can be recorded. When you copy a new item, it overwrites the previously copied text.

Example Copying text on the received mail view screen

1 Display the mail containing an item to copy.

- Place the cursor at the item to copy when copying a selected item.

2 Press .

3 Select the copying method.

Copy text : Copies a specified range of the message text.


Copy title : Copies the subject.

Copy selected item : Copies an item at the cursor.

- For *Copy text*, specify the copy range. Follow Step 2 in "Copying the URL" 

4 Display a character entry screen and paste the copied text.





INFORMATION

In the view screen for sent mail, mail template, or SMS in the UIM, press  and select *Move/Copy* or *Copy*. When text in the Date To format is included in the message, it needs to be copied and pasted to Notepad before saving as schedule.


Registering phone numbers, addresses and URLs in phonebook

You can register mail addresses, phone numbers and URLs in the i-mode Mail or SMS being displayed in the phonebook. You can register the data as a new entry or add data to an existing entry.

Example Registering data on the received mail view screen

- 1 Display the mail containing an item to register.
- 2 Place the cursor at the item to register and press  .
- 3 Press  to register a new entry or  to add to an existing entry.
 - Follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Registering phone numbers and mail addresses in phonebook". ◀P197

INFORMATION

In the view screen for sent mail, SMS in the UIM, or mail in the miniSD memory card, press  and select *Save*.




If the cursor is not placed on a mail address, phone number or URL in the i-mode Mail or SMS displayed, the item cannot be registered. However, adding to the phonebook is possible by placing the cursor at the sender of received mail or the receiver of sent mail (receiver can be selected if there is more than one). Registration may not be made from Deco-mail.

When multiple addresses are listed with no space in the message text, you may not be able to register them.

Registering URLs in Bookmark

You can register URLs in the message text of the i-mode Mail or SMS being displayed in Bookmark.

Example Registering a bookmark on the received mail view screen

- 1 Display the mail containing a URL to register.
- 2 Place the cursor at the URL, press  , and press .
- 3 Select a folder to save the bookmark to.

INFORMATION

In the view screen for sent mail or SMS in the UIM, press  and select *Save*. Registration may not be made from Deco-mail.

The following functions can be set:

Function	Description	Page
Sort Criteria	Sorts received/sent mail automatically to designated folders.	P258
Signature	Sets the signature to be inserted in mail.	P261
Message Retrieval Setting	Sets the items to inquire to the i-mode Center.	P261
Receive Option Setting	Sets to receive selected mail without auto receive.	P262
Mail Group Setting	Registers multiple addresses in a group.	P262
Mail Reply Format	Specifies whether to quote received mail when replying.	P263
Mail List Setting	Sets the display format of received/sent mail list.	P264
Incoming Msg. Attach.	Specifies whether to receive attachments.	P264
Message Attachment	Specifies whether to play attached melodies automatically when mail is displayed.	P264
Display Type	Sets the type of mail to display in the received/sent mail list.	P265
Font Size	Sets the font size of mail displayed.	P265
Incoming Msg. Setting	Sets the FOMA terminal operation for incoming mail.	P266
Display Priority	Specifies whether to display the screen for receiving mail during FOMA terminal operation.	P266

Sorting mail automatically into designated folders

Received/sent i-mode Mail and SMS can be sorted into the specified folders automatically according to the set criteria.

- Up to 30 criteria can be registered for received mail and sent mail respectively.

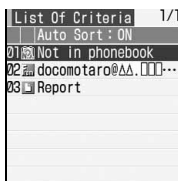
Setting sort criteria

- To activate the set criteria, set auto sort to *ON* for received mail and sent mail. It is set to *ON* by default.
 - P260
- The criteria are valid for the mail received/sent after setting the criteria. Previously received/sent mail is not resorted.
- You can sort normal mail to Message i- ppli folders. The sort criteria for Message i- ppli take precedence.

Example Sorting received mail

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press .

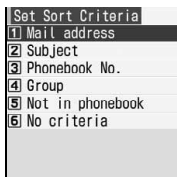


Auto sort on/off is displayed in the first row. From the second row, the registered sort criteria are listed in the order of priority.

- : Receiver mail address
- : Sender mail address
- : Phonebook No.
- : Not in phonebook
- : Subject
- : Group
- : No criteria

- To sort sent mail, press .





3 Press and set the sort criteria.





Sort criteria setting screen

Specifying a mail address



Sorts mail by sender/receiver mail address. Specify an entire address including characters following the @ symbol (up to 50 one-byte characters). You cannot sort mail by specifying part of the mail address. If you specify a phone number, you can sort SMS as well.

① Press   , enter the mail address, and press .

- To search for the phonebook, press  , select a phonebook entry, and select a mail address.

Specifying a subject

Sorts mail having a subject that includes the specified characters (up to 30 one-byte or 15 two-byte characters). You cannot sort SMS by subject.

① Press , enter the subject, and press .

Specifying a phonebook No.

Sorts mail that is to/from the mail address or phone number saved to the specified phonebook No. i-mode Mail is sorted by checking the mail address in the phonebook. SMS is sorted by checking the phone number in the phonebook.



① Press  and enter the phonebook No.

② Select the phonebook entry.

Specifying a group

Sorts mail that is to/from the mail address or phone number saved to the specified group.

① Press .

② Press  to search the FOMA terminal phonebook or  to search the UIM phonebook.

③ Select a group.

Specifying "Not in phonebook"

Sorts mail that is to/from the mail address or phone number not saved in the phonebook. i-mode Mail is sorted by checking the mail address in the phonebook. SMS is sorted by checking the phone number in the phonebook.

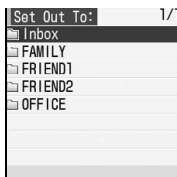
① Press .

Setting no criteria

Sorts all mail without setting criteria.

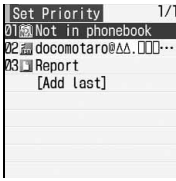
① Press .

4 Select the folder to sort mail to.



- When a Message i- ppli folder is selected, a message indicating that mail in the selected folder is used for i- ppli appears. To sort mail to the folder, select **Yes**.

5 Specify the priority.



The new criteria is added above the selected row.

- When setting the first criteria in the list, select **[Add last]**.
- To add the criteria to the end of the list, select **[Add last]**.
- Criteria are listed in the order of priority.
- When registered criteria are changed, **[Move to last]** is displayed instead of **[Add last]**.

INFORMATION

The criteria are checked in accordance with their priority. For example, when 2 criteria are set, mail is sorted as follows:

- ① Mail is checked to determine if it matches the criteria of first priority; if so, it is saved in the specified folder. If not, the procedure goes to ②.
- ② Mail is checked to determine if it matches the criteria of second priority; if so, it is saved in the specified folder. If not, it is saved in **Inbox** folder or **Outbox** folder.

To set sort criteria when Privacy Mode is active (**Authorized access** is set for **Phonebook & Logs** or **Authorized access** or **Hide secret fldrs** is set for **Mail**), entry of the terminal security code is required.

If the sender uses an i-mode terminal with its phone number set as the mail address, only the phone number is received as the address. Therefore, no sorting occurs when “mobile phone number @docomo.ne.jp” is specified in the criteria.

Checking and changing sort criteria

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press or .

3 Select the sort criteria to check.

- You can change or delete sort criteria while checking it.

Changing registered sort criteria

① Place the cursor at the sort criteria to change and press .

- Follow the procedure from Step 3 in “Setting sort criteria”. ●P259

② Select **Yes**.

Changing the priority

① Place the cursor at the sort criteria to change and press .

② Select the position to move.

- The criteria is moved to just above the selected row. To move to the end of the list, select **[Move to last]**.

Deleting criteria

① Place the cursor at the sort criteria to delete, press , and select **Yes**.

- To delete all criteria, press , enter the terminal security code, and select **Yes**.

Setting auto sort

- Even if **ON** is set, no sorting occurs when sort criteria are not set.

Default got mail criteria: **ON** sent mail criteria: **ON**

Example Sorting received mail automatically

1 Press on the stand-by display.

- 2 Press and press .
 - To sort sent mail automatically, press and press .
- 3 Press .
 - To cancel auto sort, press .

Registering signature for mail

You can register the signature to be inserted in the message of i-mode Mail or SMS. You can also set whether to automatically insert the signature when you compose mail.

- You can enter up to 100 one-byte or 50 two-byte characters.

Auto insert: Yes Signature: not set

- 1 Press on the stand-by display.
- 2 Select each item to set.
 - Auto insert** : Sets whether to insert signature automatically.
 - To cancel auto insert, select *No*.
 - Signature** : Enter the signature text.
- 3 Press .

INFORMATION

The signature text is counted as characters in the message.

When you cancel auto insert, you can use the submenu to insert the signature while composing mail.

When the registered signature includes phone number, mail address or URL and is sent to an i-mode terminal, the receiver can use the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, or Web To function.

The signature is not inserted when the font type is set to *English* in SMS Setting.

Setting items to inquire to i-mode Center

- *Mail*, *MessageR*, and *MessageF* are all selected as by default. If you do not want to check for any item, change it to .

selected (all)

- 1 Press on the stand-by display.
- 2 Select the item to inquire.
 - Press to select or cancel an item, and press to select or cancel all.
 - You cannot save the setting with no items selected.
- 3 Press .

Setting to select and receive only necessary mail

Receive Option Setting

Default OFF

- 1 Press on the stand-by display.
- 2 Press .
 - To cancel the setting, press .

Registering addresses in a mail group

Mail Group Setting

By registering multiple mail addresses in a mail group, multiple addresses can be set by a simple operation when composing i-mode Mail.

- Up to 20 mail groups can be registered. Up to 5 mail addresses can be saved in each mail group.

- 1 Press on the stand-by display.
- 2 Press .
 - Editing a group name**
 - ① Place the cursor at the mail group to edit and press .
 - Copying a mail group**
 - ① Place the cursor at the mail group to copy and press .
 - Deleting a mail group**
 - ① Place the cursor at the mail group to delete, press , and select *Yes*.
 - Deleting all mail groups**
 - ① Press .
 - ② Enter the terminal security code and select *Yes*.
- 3 Enter a mail group name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) and press .
 - Press to add another group.
- 4 Select a mail group to register mail addresses.
 - Editing a mail address**
 - ① Place the cursor at the mail address (or name) to edit and press .
 - ② Edit the mail address and press .
 - Deleting a mail address**
 - ① Place the cursor at the mail address (or name) to delete, press , and select *Yes*.
 - Displaying mail address details**
 - ① Press .
 - The name in the phonebook is not displayed when the mail address is not registered in the phonebook or when Privacy Mode is active (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*).
 - ② After checking the details, press .

5 Press and select each item to set.

Address Type : Sets TO, CC and BCC.

- TO is the main address.
- CC is the address to which you want to send a copy of the mail.
- BCC is the address to which you want to send a copy of the mail but which you do not want to be known to other receivers.

Address : Enter a mail address (up to 50 one-byte characters).

- To search the phonebook, press . P101

6 Press .

- When the mail address is registered in the phonebook, the name in the phonebook is displayed. When the mail address is not registered in the phonebook, the mail address is displayed.
- To add another mail address to the mail group, repeat from Step 5.


7 Press .

The mail addresses are registered in the mail group.

INFORMATION

When the same address is registered in both the phonebook and the mail group, changing the name in the phonebook changes the name registered in the mail group.

If there is no TO address entered, mail cannot be sent.

Using a mail group to enter addresses P221

Setting whether to quote the message when replying

You can set whether to quote the message text when you reply to i-mode Mail or SMS. In addition, you set the quote characters that are added to the quoted message.

Default Quote: Yes Quote characters: > (one-byte character)

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Quote : Sets whether to quote the message when replying to mail.

- To choose not to quote the message, select *No*. Go to Step 3.

Quote characters : Enter a quote character (up to 2 one-byte or 1 two-byte character).

- The quote characters are counted as characters in the message.
- If a character that cannot be sent is specified, the default character is used.

3 Press .

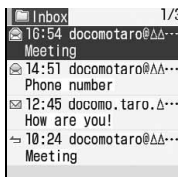
Setting the display style of the mail list

Mail List Setting

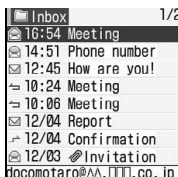
The display style of the mail list can be set for Inbox and Outbox.

- The 2-row display applies to Unsent messages, received SMS and sent SMS in the UIM regardless of this setting.

Default Display 2 rows



Display 2 rows



Display 1 row

Sender address of the received mail at cursor (first receiver address for sent mail)

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press or .

Setting whether to receive attachments

Incoming Msg. Attach.

You can set whether to receive still images and melodies attached to i-mode Mail.

Default Image: Receive Melody: Receive

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Image : Sets whether to receive images.

Melody : Sets whether to receive melodies.

3 Press .

INFORMATION

When *Not receive* is set for **Image**, images inserted in Deco-mail cannot be received.

Note that unreceived attachments are deleted in the i-mode Center and become unavailable.

Melodies in MFi format pasted in the message are received regardless of this setting.

Setting whether to play melodies automatically

Message Attachment

You can set whether melodies attached to i-mode Mail or Message R/F play automatically when the mail or message is displayed.

Default Auto play

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press or .

INFORMATION

When *Auto play* is set, a melody plays once when you display received mail, sent mail, mail template or Message R/F with melody attached. When more than one melody is attached, the melodies play one after another.

Selecting the type of mail to display

Display Type

Only mail of the specified type is displayed.

- For Inbox, you can select from *Display all items*, *Unread item only*, *Read item only*, or *Protected item only*.
- For Outbox, you can select *Display all* or *Display protected*.
- You cannot select the display type for Unsent messages, received SMS and sent SMS in the UIM.

Default Display all items/Display all

Example Selecting the display type for received mail

- 1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.
 - Outbox
- 2 Press .
- 3 Press to .

INFORMATION

Closing the received or sent mail list returns the setting to *Display all items/Display all*.
When *Read item only* is set, protected mail is not displayed.

Changing the mail font size

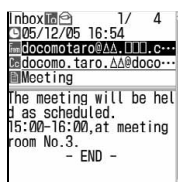
Font Size

- You can change the font size of the displayed message for received mail, sent mail, mail template, etc.
- The setting applies to all mail including received mail, sent mail, mail template, and mail in the miniSD memory card.
 - The font size cannot be changed while composing and editing mail.

Default Medium (standard)



Large: 24 dots



Medium (standard):
20 dots



Small: 16 dots

Example Changing on the received mail view screen

- 1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.
- 2 Select a mail and press .
- When a mail template is displayed, press .

3 Press to .

INFORMATION

In the view screen for received/sent/unsent mail in the miniSD memory card, press and select *Font size*.

The new font size is retained until it is changed.

Menu 191

Setting operations for incoming mail

Incoming Msg. Setting

You can set the operations that are performed when i-mode Mail or SMS is received.

Default Select mail ring tone: Melody/ パターン 1 (Pattern 1) Incoming msg. lighting: ON/Pattern 9
Set vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Select mail ring tone : Select *Melody* or *movie ringtone* and then select a melody or video/i-motion. To disable the ring tone, select *OFF*.

- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion

Incoming msg. lighting : Sets the lighting pattern and lighting color of the call indicator.

- When the lighting pattern is set to *Sync melody* or *OFF*, the lighting color cannot be set. When *Sync melody* is set, the lighting color and lighting/ flashing pattern will change in synchronization with the melody.

Set vibrate alert : Sets the operation of vibrator.

Ring time (sec) : Sets the duration of ring tone (1 to 30 seconds).

3 Press .

INFORMATION

When mail is received from a sender with the incoming mail settings made in the phonebook, the phonebook settings take precedence.

Even if you set *Sync melody* for *Incoming msg. lighting* or *Set vibrate alert*, synchronization may not occur depending on the melody.

Menu 1993

Setting mail reception notification

Display Priority

You can set whether or not to give priority to the display of receiving screen and reception result screen when i-mode Mail, SMS, or Message R/F is received during FOMA terminal operation.

Default Show message

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press or .

Continue operation : Displays neither the receiving screen nor reception result screen.

Show message : Displays the receiving screen and reception result screen.

INFORMATION

Even when *Show message* is set, the receiving screen or reception result screen is not displayed and the mail ring tone or call indicator is not activated during a voice call, data communication, camera use, i- ppli operation, or alarm sounding.

When *Continue operation* is set, the receiving screen or reception result screen is not displayed and the mail ring tone or call indicator is not activated in the following conditions:

- Not in stand-by (other function is running)
- During All Lock
- In Driving Mode
- During PIM Lock
- When Camera is activated
- During alarm sounding
- During Lock on Close (with FOMA terminal open)

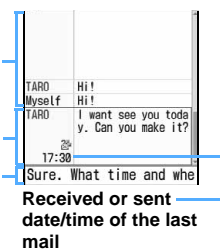
Composing and sending chat mail

Chat Mail

Mail can be sent and received to/from multiple addresses like making conversation. The sent and received mail can be read on the same screen.

- Mail addresses of the receivers must be registered in the member list in advance.
- Chat mail is not available when Receive Option Setting is on or there is no available storage space for received/sent mail.
- When chat mail is sent to a non-compatible terminal, it is delivered as i-mode Mail with the subject “チャットメール (Chat mail)” in one-byte or two-byte characters. When the receiver replies to this i-mode Mail, it will be received as chat mail by FOMA terminal.

Chat mail screen



① Sent/received log

Press \odot to scroll the log.

- When the sent/received log cannot be displayed on one screen, press Menu $\left[\begin{smallmatrix} 5 \\ \text{JKL} \end{smallmatrix} \right]$ $\left[\begin{smallmatrix} 1 \\ \text{*/\#} \end{smallmatrix} \right]$ to display the first row and press Menu $\left[\begin{smallmatrix} 5 \\ \text{JKL} \end{smallmatrix} \right]$ $\left[\begin{smallmatrix} 2 \\ \text{ABC} \end{smallmatrix} \right]$ to display the last row.

② Details field

Displays details of the latest chat mail or the chat mail at the cursor. Up to 500 one-byte or 250 two-byte characters can be displayed. When P is indicated at the lower right and left of the field, pages can be switched using \odot .

P : Broadcast address not registered in the member list

③ Text entry field

Menu 13

Adding chat members

Chat Member Setting

- Up to 5 chat members can be registered.

1 Press $\left[\begin{smallmatrix} \text{Envelope} \\ \text{3 DEF} \end{smallmatrix} \right]$ on the stand-by display.

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to add chat members.

- When a member is already registered, the chat mail screen is displayed. To add another member, press Menu $\left[\begin{smallmatrix} 7 \\ \text{PQRS} \end{smallmatrix} \right]$ and go to Step 3.

2 Select *Yes*.

3 Press .

4 Select *Address* field and enter a mail address (up to 50 one-byte characters).

- When registering a mail address of i-mode terminal, enter the address including “@docomo.ne.jp”. If the address is “mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp”, omit “@docomo.ne.jp”.
- When registering a mail address for which a secret code is set, register the mail address and set the secret code in the phonebook, and then register only the phone number for chat member.

Searching the phonebook

① Press .


② Search the phonebook and select a mail address.

5 Select *Nickname* field and enter a nickname (up to 8 one-byte or 4 two-byte characters).

- When no nickname is entered, the first 8 characters preceding the @ symbol in the mail address are displayed.

6 Select *Font color* field and select a color.

- The color not used for registered member is displayed in the following priority order: blue, red, green, orange, and black.
- The nickname is displayed in the selected color on the chat mail screen.

7 Press .

- To add another member, press  and repeat Step 4 to 7.

8 Press .

The member list is displayed.

INFORMATION



You cannot register the same mail address for multiple members.

To start chat mail when Privacy Mode is active (*Authorized access* or *Hide secret fldrs* set for *Mail*), entry of the terminal security code is required.

To use the phonebook when Privacy Mode is active (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*), entry of the terminal security code is required.

Composing and sending chat mail

- Chat mail is sent to all registered members by default. You can select members when sending, but the setting returns to default when you quit chat mail or change chat member information.
- The sent chat mail is saved in *Outbox* folder for i-mode Mail. However, when the sent chat mail matches the criteria set in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder.

1 Press   on the stand-by display.

- When a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to add members, select *Yes* and register.

2 Select the text entry field and enter a message (up to 500 one-byte or 250 two-byte characters).

Copying and pasting text from chat mail log

- ① Place the cursor at the chat mail to copy text, press **Menu** **6** **MNS**, and specify the range.
 - Specifying the range **➡**P448
- ② Select the text entry field, place the cursor at a paste location, and press **Menu** **3** **DEF**.

Replying to all broadcast addresses of received mail

- ① Press **Menu** **2** **ABC** **2** **ABC**.

Selecting members to send mail

- ① Press **Menu** **3** **DEF** and select addresses.
 - Press **☺** to select or cancel an address, and press **Menu** to select or cancel all.
- ② Press **☐**.

3 Press **☐**.

- When the chat mail is sent correctly, it is displayed on the chat mail screen.

INFORMATION

Chat mail can be displayed by the following operations:

- In the received mail list, place the cursor at a chat mail and press **Menu** **7** **QRS** **5** **JKL**.
- In the sent mail list, place the cursor at a chat mail and press **Menu** **7** **QRS** **4** **STU**.
- In the received/sent mail view screen, press **Menu** **3** **DEF** **3** **DEF**.

If chat mail fails to be sent or is unsent when quitting chat mail, it is saved in *Unsent messages* folder. In this folder, only one chat mail item can be saved. If sending of another chat mail fails, the chat mail saved in *Unsent messages* folder is overwritten. In addition, the chat mail saved in *Unsent messages* folder is displayed in the text entry field next time chat mail is started. To resend unsent chat mail, start operation from the chat mail screen.

While receiving i-mode Mail or Message R/F, chat mail cannot be sent. If you send chat mail while receiving i-mode Mail or Message R/F and fail, FOMA terminal will automatically resend it a maximum of 3 times.

To start chat mail when Privacy Mode is active (*Authorized access* or *Hide secret fldrs* set for *Mail*), entry of the terminal security code is required.

Receiving chat mail

Receive Chat Mail

When chat mail is received, you are informed of it by the screen display, ring tone, vibrator, or call indicator.

When chat mail has been started

When mail with the subject containing “チャットメール” in one-byte or two-byte characters is received from a registered chat member, a message indicating that the log is updated appears and the received chat mail is added on the chat mail screen.

- When chat mail is received from a sender not registered as a chat member, it is saved in *Inbox* folder. Display the mail on the chat mail screen following the procedure in “When chat mail has not been started” below.

When chat mail has not been started

Chat mail is saved in *Inbox* folder as i-mode Mail.

- When received chat mail matches the criteria set in Sort Criteria, it is saved in the specified folder.

1 Place the cursor at the mail to display as chat mail in the received mail list and press

Menu **7** **P Q R S** **5** **JKL**.

- In the received mail view screen, press **Menu** **3** **DFT** **3** **DFT**.
- If the sender address of the selected mail is not registered as a chat member, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to register the sender address. Select **Yes** and register.
 - ☛P267
- Deco-mail or HTML mail received from PCs cannot be displayed on the chat mail screen.

Receiving chat mail stored in i-mode Center

1 Press **Menu** **1** **あ** **お** on the chat mail screen.

If there is chat mail stored in the i-mode Center, a message indicating that the log is updated appears and the received chat mail is added on the chat mail screen.

INFORMATION

When the indicator light is set to *ON* in Alert Lighting Setting, the call indicator flashes while unread chat mail exists.

Chat mail received from a registered chat member while chat mail is not started will be displayed on the chat mail screen next time chat mail is started.

When chat mail is received using Check i-mode Message, i-mode Mail is also received at the same time. You can reply to chat mail as i-mode Mail using the same procedure as for i-mode Mail.

Even if the message on the chat mail screen contains phone number, mail address or URL, the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, or Web To function is not available. The i- ppli To function is also unavailable. No attachments are displayed. When you quit chat mail and display the chat mail from Inbox, these functions become available.

When you delete chat mail from Inbox, the nickname appears as "-----", date/time as "--/--" and text as *Deleted.* on the chat mail screen.

The chat mail displayed on the chat mail screen will be marked as read in Inbox.

When mail is sent or received from Message i- ppli, the mail is displayed on the chat mail screen when received as chat mail.

Displaying broadcast addresses

Broadcast addresses of received mail can be displayed.

1 Place the cursor at the mail to check broadcast addresses on the chat mail screen and press **Menu** **4** **〒** **GHI**.

- When a broadcast address is not registered as a chat member, *Not recorded* appears in the nickname field. When the mail address is registered in the phonebook, the registered name appears instead of the mail address. Press **Ⓢ** to display the mail address.

Adding unregistered broadcast address for chat member

① Press **☐**.

- Follow the procedure from Step 5 in "Adding chat members". ☛P268

Copying broadcast addresses

① Press **Menu** **2** **あ** **お**.

Deleting the chat mail log

All chat mail on the chat mail screen can be deleted.

- The chat mail in Inbox or Outbox is also deleted except for protected mail.

1 Press on the chat mail screen and select *Yes*.

Editing chat members

You can edit chat member information, add and delete members. The information on registered members can be checked and all registered members can be replaced.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

- When a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to add members, select *Yes* and register.
➡ P267

2 Press .

3 Place the cursor at the member to edit, press , and edit.

Deleting a member

- 1 Place the cursor at the member to delete and press .
- 2 Select *Yes*.

Displaying member details

- 1 Select the member to display details.
 - To check details of all members, press .
- 2 After checking the details, press .

Adding a member

- 1 Press .

Replacing all members by mail group

- 1 Press .
- 2 Select a mail group and select *Yes*.

All members are replaced by those registered in the selected mail group.

4 Press .

Setting personal information

You can set your nickname and text color displayed on the chat mail screen.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press .



3 Select *Nickname* field and enter a nickname (up to 8 one-byte or 4 two-byte characters).

- When no nickname is entered, *Myself* is displayed on the chat mail screen.

4 Select *Text color* field and select a color.

5 Press .

Quitting chat mail

1 Press  or  on the chat mail screen.

2 Select *No*.

Chat mail quits. The previous chat mail is displayed next time chat mail is started.

- When *Yes* is selected, all chat mail is deleted. In this case, the chat mail in Inbox or Outbox is also deleted except for protected mail.

INFORMATION

Unsent (draft) chat mail is saved in Unsent messages and will be displayed next time chat mail is started. However, such chat mail will not be saved when there is not enough storage space for mail.

Menu 192

Setting operations for incoming chat mail

Incoming Chat Mail Setting

Default Incoming setting: Same: Msg setting

1 Press    on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Incoming setting : Specifies whether to set the operations for incoming chat mail or follow Incoming Msg. Setting.

- When *Customize* is set, the following items can be set.

Ring tone : Select *Melody* or *movie ringtone* and then select a melody or video/i-motion. To disable the ring tone, select *OFF*.

- Playing and checking a melody or video/i-motion 

Lighting : Sets the lighting pattern and lighting color of the call indicator.

- When the lighting pattern is set to *Sync melody* or *OFF*, the lighting color cannot be set. When *Sync melody* is set, the lighting color and lighting/flashing pattern will change in synchronization with the melody.

Vibrate alert : Sets the operation of vibrator.

Ring time (sec) : Sets the duration of ring tone (1 to 30 seconds).

3 Press .

INFORMATION

When chat mail is activated with FOMA terminal open, the ring tone or vibrator does not operate if mail, SMS, or Message R/F is received. When FOMA terminal is closed, it operates.

When more than one mail is received at the same time, this function setting applies only when the last received mail is chat mail.

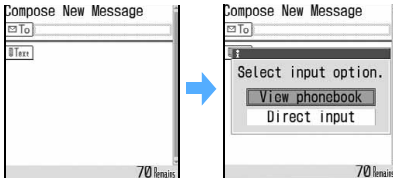
Even if you set *Sync melody* for *Incoming msg. lighting* or *Set vibrate alert*, synchronization may not occur depending on the melody.

Compose and send SMS messages. SMS can be saved without sending.

- Maximum number of sent/unsent messages that can be saved ●P39
- If you use one-byte katakana and pictograms, the receiver may not be able to display them correctly.
- SMS can be sent and received from the parties that use overseas carriers other than DoCoMo. Please visit the DoCoMo website for the countries where the service is provided and oversea carriers available.

Example Composing and sending an SMS message by entering address directly

- 1 Press on the stand-by display and select field.



- 2 Select **Direct input** and enter the address (party's phone number).

- When the address is registered in the phonebook, the registered name is displayed in field.
- To send to a party that uses an overseas carrier other than DoCoMo, enter "+" (by pressing for over a second) and the country code plus the party's mobile phone number. Omit the first 0 of the phone number.

Searching the phonebook

- 1 Select **View phonebook**.
- 2 Search the phonebook and select a phone number.

- 3 Select and enter the message.

- When the font type is set to **Japanese** in SMS Setting, up to 70 one-byte or two-byte characters can be entered. A space is counted as a character in the message.
- When the font type is set to **English** in SMS Setting, up to 160 one-byte characters can be entered including alphanumerics and symbols (except ` ` , ` ` , ` ` and ` `). A one-byte space is counted as a character in the message.
- Line feeds can be inserted in the message. Press to enter a line feed in 5-touch Input Method. A line feed is counted as a character in the message.

Inserting a signature

- 1 Press .
 - Signature must be registered beforehand.
 - The signature text is counted as characters in the message.

- 4 Press .

Saving without sending

- 1 Press .
 - If neither the address nor message is entered, the SMS cannot be saved.
 - You can edit and send the unsent SMS. ●P235

INFORMATION

You can use fixed phrases to enter face marks, greetings and replies in the message.

Characters cannot be decorated.

Depending on signal conditions, characters may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side

The font type and whether to receive the delivered report are set in SMS Setting beforehand. You can also change the settings for the delivered report and storage period in the SMS Center while composing SMS. When transmission fails, an error message is displayed and SMS is saved in Unsent messages. You can edit and send the SMS from Unsent messages. ●P235

When transmission is completed correctly, SMS is saved in Outbox. When there is not enough available storage space in Outbox, or the maximum number of sent mail is exceeded, the oldest sent mail is overwritten. However, protected sent mail is not overwritten. Be sure to protect sent mail you want to keep. When you set the delivered report to **Request** and send SMS, you will receive a delivered report that notifies you that the message has been received by the other party's FOMA terminal. The delivered report is saved in Inbox.

Even if **Not notify** is set in Caller ID Notification, the caller ID is sent to the receiver when SMS is sent.

When a fixed phrase including a line feed is inserted in the message being composed, the line feed is replaced by a one-byte space.

Some characters may not be sent depending on the font type. ●P219

The signature is not inserted when the font type is set to **English** in SMS Setting.

If you enter some symbols (| ^ { } [] and ¥) when the font type is English, the number of characters that can be sent is reduced. In this case, you may not be able to send the message even if the number of characters is less than the maximum number of characters. Reduce the number of characters and send it again.

To use the phonebook when Privacy Mode is active (**Authorized access** set for **Phonebook & Logs**), entry of the terminal security code is required.

When there is not enough available storage space in Unsent messages, or the maximum number of unsent mail is exceeded, SMS cannot be composed. Delete unnecessary i-mode Mail and/or SMS from Unsent messages. ●P255

You can compose and send SMS easily to the parties saved to the phonebook No. 0 to 99 (Quick Mail).

Reading the received/sent/unsent SMS list/view screen ●P248

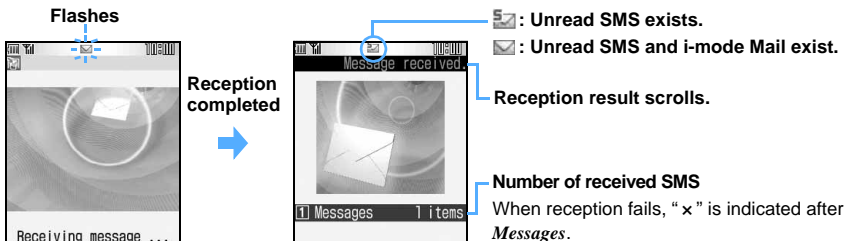
When SMS is received

Receive SMS

When there is incoming SMS, it is automatically received and you are informed by the screen display, ring tone, vibrator, and/or call indicator. The received SMS is saved in Inbox.

- Maximum number of received messages that can be saved ●P39



1 Receive an SMS message.



✉ flashes and **Receiving message...** is displayed.

The mail ring tone sounds, the call indicator lights/flashes, and the reception result screen is displayed.

- Press **[*F7]** to stop the ring tone.

- Press  while receiving the message to stop reception.
- When FOMA terminal is closed, the reception status such as *SMS received* appears on the sub-display. The sender's phone number or name of the last message also appears. When *Hide caller's info* is set in Sub-display Info Setting, no phone number or name will appear.
- If you do not press any key for about 15 seconds after the reception result screen is displayed or until the ring tone stops, the display returns to the screen displayed prior to reception. To return to the previous screen immediately, press .

Reading the received SMS immediately

① Press or on the reception result screen.

- You can reply to (☛P239) or forward (☛P240) the received SMS.
The operation is the same as for i-mode Mail. You cannot reply to the message for which *User unset*, *Payphone*, or *Not support* is displayed in the sender field.

INFORMATION

When Display Priority is set to *Continue operation*, the receiving screen or reception result screen may not be displayed.

When Privacy Mode is active (*Hide secret fldrs* set for *Mail*), if automatically received SMS is all saved in the folder with the privacy set to *ON* in the folder settings, the reception result screen is not displayed and the mail ring tone or call indicator is not activated. When Privacy Mode is active (*Authorized access* set for *Mail*), the reception result is scrolled but the sender is not displayed.

When the incoming mail/message is set not to be displayed in Receive Display, the reception result is not scrolled.

When the indicator light is set to *ON* in Alert Lighting Setting, the call indicator flashes while unread SMS exists.

When FOMA terminal receives the SMS stored in the SMS Center, the message is deleted from the Center. Short Mail sent from a mova terminal is received by FOMA terminal as SMS.





When SMS is received from a party with the incoming mail settings made in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the settings apply to the operation. Checking with the phonebook is performed as follows:

- When more than one SMS message is received at the same time, the ring tone, vibrator and call indicator operate according to the settings of the SMS received last.
- When the message is from the party that is registered in the phonebook entry with the secret attribute set, the name is displayed only in Secret Mode. The ring tone, vibrator, etc. operate according to the settings in the phonebook.
- When Privacy Mode is active (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*), the name registered in the phonebook is not displayed and the ring tone, vibrator, etc. are not activated.

While receiving i-mode Mail or Message R/F, SMS is not automatically received. Perform Check SMS.

If reception of SMS fails, you can use Check SMS to receive the message again. When the maximum number of received mail is exceeded, display unread mail (☛P246), delete unnecessary mail (☛P254) or cancel mail protection (☛P253) before receiving new messages.

When there is not enough available storage space in Inbox, or the maximum number of received mail is exceeded, the oldest received mail is overwritten. However, unread mail and protected mail are not overwritten. Be sure to protect received mail you want to keep.

- When the mail cannot be overwritten because storage is filled with unread mail and protected mail, reception of SMS is stopped.  or  is indicated on the screen. ☛P29
- When the UIM already contains 20 messages, SMS may not be received even though there is space available in Inbox.  or  is indicated on the screen (☛P29). Move to FOMA terminal or delete SMS from the UIM. ☛P278, P279

When the received SMS has been set to be saved directly to the UIM, it will be saved directly on the UIM.

Note that, when the number of messages in the UIM reaches 20, SMS cannot be received. Delete unnecessary messages and perform Check SMS again.

Checking for SMS

Check SMS

You can make inquiry for any SMS delivered while FOMA terminal was out of service area or turned off.

- Depending on signal condition, you may not be able to perform Check SMS.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

If the SMS Center stores any messages, they are received.

INFORMATION

It may take time to receive SMS with Check SMS.

Making SMS settings

SMS Setting

Usually, you do not need to change *SMSC*, *Address* and *Type of Number* settings.

Default | **Delivered report: Do not request** | **Other than the above: use UIM settings**


1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

- Font type** : Select Japanese or English language of messages to be sent. The maximum number of characters that can be sent differs depending on the font type.
- Delivered report** : Specifies whether to request a delivered report when you send SMS.
- Keep in SMS center** : Sets the storage period of sent SMS in the SMS Center in cases the receiver cannot receive the message.
- SMSC** : Sets SMSC when you use SMS services other than DoCoMo.
- When **Others** is set, select **Address** field and enter the address (up to 20 one-byte characters).
- Type of Number** : Select either **international** or **unknown**.
- When you set **Others** for **SMSC** and enter only numbers or numbers plus “*” or “#” in **Address** field, select **unknown**.

3 Press .

INFORMATION

In the SMS composition screen, press  and select **SMS settings**. In this case, only **Delivered report** and **Keep in SMS center** can be set. The settings are valid only for the SMS being composed.

You can set to reject all SMS or SMS without caller ID. ●P216

You can move or copy sent and received SMS from FOMA terminal to the UIM.







Moving/copying SMS to the UIM

- Maximum number of messages that can be saved in the UIM ◀P39
- SMS in Unsent messages cannot be saved to the UIM.
- When you move or copy sent SMS, any corresponding delivered reports are moved or copied to Inbox of the UIM together. You cannot move or copy only delivered reports.






Example Moving a received SMS message to the UIM



1 Press    on the stand-by display and select a folder.

- SMS in Outbox ◀P246

2 Place the cursor at the SMS message to move and press      .







Moving selected messages

① Press      and select messages.






- Press  to select or cancel a message, and press  to select or cancel all.



② Press .

Copying a message

① Place the cursor at the message to copy and press      .

Copying selected messages


① Press      and select messages.

- Press  to select or cancel a message, and press  to select or cancel all.

② Press .

3 Select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

In the received/sent mail view screen, press  and select *Move/Copy* *Move to UIM* or *Copy to UIM*.

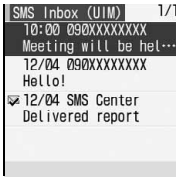
When the UIM already contains 20 messages, you cannot move or copy additional messages to the UIM.

Delete unnecessary messages from the UIM.

Displaying SMS in the UIM

Example Displaying received SMS

1 Press on the stand-by display.



Received SMS is displayed in 2 rows in the received SMS (UIM) list screen. The received date/time and the sender or receiver are displayed in the first row, and the beginning of the message or *Delivered report* is in the second row.

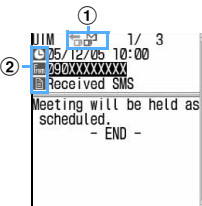
: Unread (able to reply) : Unread (unable to reply)

No icon: Read (able to reply) : Read (unable to reply)

: Delivered report

- The read/unread icon in the list indicates whether SMS in the UIM has been displayed. The status of unread/read before moving or copying is also carried over.
- In the reception date/time column, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.
- To display sent SMS, press .

2 Select an SMS message.



Message number/total message count is displayed at the top of the received SMS (UIM) view screen.

① : Received (able to reply) : Read (unable to reply)

: Sent

: Delivered report

: SMS in the UIM

② : Date and time

: Receiver

: Sender

: Sender (unable to reply)

: Subject (*Received SMS*, *Sent SMS*, or *Delivered report*)

- The receiver is displayed in the view screen of the delivered report. *SMS Center* is displayed as the sender.
- When sent SMS is moved or copied to the UIM, the sent date and time are cleared from the SMS in the UIM.

INFORMATION

From SMS in the UIM, you can also reply to or forward received messages, resend sent messages, change the font size, register in the phonebook, and perform other operations. The operation is the same as for received/sent SMS in FOMA terminal.

When you reply to/forward or resend SMS in the UIM, the sent SMS is saved in Outbox of FOMA terminal.

When Privacy Mode is active (*Authorized access* set for *Mail*), displaying received or sent SMS in the UIM requires entry of the terminal security code.

Moving/copying SMS from the UIM to FOMA terminal

Move or copy SMS saved on the UIM to Inbox or Outbox of FOMA terminal.

- When you move or copy sent SMS, any corresponding delivered reports are moved or copied to Inbox together. You cannot move or copy only delivered reports.

Example Moving a received SMS message to FOMA terminal

1 Press on the stand-by display.

- To move/copy sent SMS, press .

2 Place the cursor at the SMS message to move and press **Menu** **3** **DEF** **1** **あ**.

Moving selected messages

① Press **Menu** **3** **DEF** **2** **か** and select messages.

- Press **⏏** to select or cancel a message, and press **Menu** to select or cancel all.

② Press **☐**.

Copying a message

① Place the cursor at the message to copy and press **Menu** **3** **DEF** **3** **DEF**.

Copying selected messages

① Press **Menu** **3** **DEF** **4** **た** and select messages.

- Press **⏏** to select or cancel a message, and press **Menu** to select or cancel all.

② Press **☐**.

3 Press **⏏**.

4 Select a folder to move the message to and select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

In the received/sent SMS (UIM) view screen, press **Menu** and select *Move/Copy* *Move to phone* or *Copy to phone*.

When there is not enough available storage space for mail or the maximum number of mail is exceeded, you cannot move or copy SMS. Also, unprotected i-mode Mail and/or SMS are not overwritten. Delete unnecessary mail/messages.

Deleting SMS from the UIM

- When you delete sent SMS, any corresponding delivered reports are also deleted from the UIM.

Example Deleting a received SMS message from the UIM

1 Press **☐** **7** **PRS** **2** **か** on the stand-by display.

- To delete sent SMS, press **☐** **7** **PRS** **3** **DEF**.

2 Place the cursor at the SMS message to delete and press **Menu** **2** **か** **1** **あ**.

Deleting selected messages

① Press **Menu** **2** **か** **2** **か** and select messages.

- Press **⏏** to select or cancel a message, and press **Menu** to select or cancel all.

② Press **☐**.

Deleting all messages

① Press **Menu** **2** **か** **3** **DEF** and enter the terminal security code.

Deleting all delivered reports

① Press **Menu** **2** **か** **4** **た** and enter the terminal security code.

3 Select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

In the received/sent SMS (UIM) view screen, press **Menu** and select *Delete*.

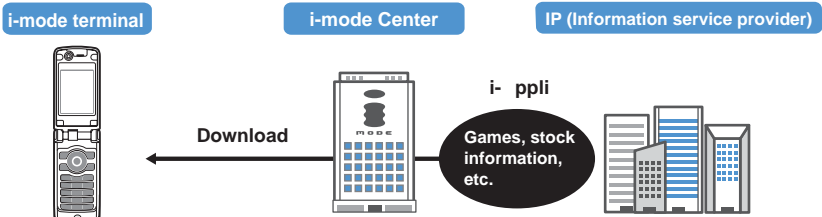
MEMO

i- ppli

i- ppli	282
Downloading i- ppli from sites	284
Starting i- ppli	286
Starting i- ppli with One-touch Button	One-touch Button 292
Starting i- ppli with i- ppli Shortcut	i- ppli Shortcut 292
Automatically starting i- ppli	293
Starting i- ppli from a site or mail	i- ppli To 294
Operating i- ppli Stand-by Display	i- ppli Stand-by Display 295
Managing i- ppli	296
Using various functions from i- ppli	300

i- ppli

Downloading i- ppli software from sites allows more convenient use of a FOMA terminal compatible with i-mode (hereinafter called as i-mode terminal). For example, various games can be downloaded to the i-mode terminal for amusement and i- ppli for stock price information can be downloaded for automatically checking stock prices at regular intervals. Map i- ppli downloads only necessary data and allows smooth scrolling. In addition, direct registration to the phonebook and schedule from i- ppli may be made and working with Data Box including saving and obtaining of image may be available with some i- ppli software.



- Downloading i- ppli ◀P284
- Automatically starting i- ppli ◀P293

- Starting i- ppli ◀P286

INFORMATION

Some i- ppli may use the mobile phone or UIM serial number of your i-mode terminal.


Some i- ppli may attempt to make connection when running. Such attempts can be disabled by presetting not to make connection. ◀P287

Using saved data

Some i- ppli allows viewing, registering and operating of the data (phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedules, images and icons) saved in your i-mode terminal. The following operations can be performed using saved data:

- Register Phonebook entries
- Add bookmarks
- Obtain images from Data Box
- Use icons
- Save schedules
- Save images in Data Box

INFORMATION

Any image saved by i- ppli is stored in the  mode or *Deco-Mail picture* folder of *Image* (My Picture) and/or the i- ppli respectively.

Some i- ppli software may not be used in Privacy Mode (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*, *My picture* or *Schedule*).

i- ppli DX

i- ppli DX is more convenient and enjoyable i- ppli. In conjunction with i-mode terminal information (such as mail, call log or phonebook data), i- ppli DX allows you to compose a message on your favorite character screen and inform you of a sender of incoming call by character's comments when a call is received. Also, i- ppli DX updates desired information on stock price, game in progress or other information further in real time in conjunction with mail.

Using saved data



Some i- ppli DX allows viewing, registering and operating of saved data such as messages, redials, received calls and ring alerts in addition to the saved data available with standard i- ppli (phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedules, images and icons). The following operations can be performed using saved data:

- Register Phonebook entries
- Add bookmarks
- Use mail composition screen
- View latest unread mail
- Obtain images from Data Box
- Save video in Data Box
- Change image settings (stand-by display, incoming/outgoing call, incoming/outgoing video-phone call, incoming/outgoing mail, Message R/F reception)
- View phonebook
- Save schedules
- View latest redial
- Change ring alert (phone, mail, Message R/F)
- Save images in Data Box
- Save ring alert in Data Box
- Use icons
- Use mail menu
- View latest received call

INFORMATION

With i- ppli DX, communication may be made to confirm the validity of i- ppli regardless of the NW transmission setting of i- ppli. The number of attempts to make communication and the timing depend on i- ppli.

Activating i- ppli DX requires the date and time setting of FOMA terminal.

Any image, video and ring alert saved by i- ppli DX is saved in the  mode or *Deco-Mail picture* folder of *Image* (My Picture),  mode folder of *i-motion/Melody* or the i- ppli DX respectively.

Some i- ppli DX can not be used in Privacy Mode (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs, Mail, My picture, i-motion* or *Schedule*).


Message i- ppli

Message i- ppli is a type of i- ppli DX that allows more convenient and enjoyable use of i- ppli by providing real-time update of desired information on stock prices, games in progress, etc. through exchanging information by i-mode Mail.

- Messages used in Message i- ppli may not be correctly displayed.


Other convenient functions

i- ppli stand-by display

On the i- ppli stand-by display, i- ppli can be used as the stand-by display screen, which also allows directly receiving messages and making phone calls. The function of the stand-by display screen can be enhanced by setting it to display news and weather forecast update or to use your favorite character to inform you of incoming messages and alarms, etc. 


- This function is available with i- ppli supporting the i- ppli stand-by display.

i- ppli auto start

i- ppli can be automatically started at the user-specified time, date, day of week, etc. Some i- ppli allows auto start at the time intervals preset with i- ppli. 

Shooting with camera

Images can be taken with the FOMA terminal camera from i- ppli.

- This function is available with i- ppli supporting shooting with camera. 

Infrared communication

The data can be exchanged with the devices that are provided with the infrared communication function from i- ppli. It allows enhanced use by interacting with devices provided with the infrared communication function. ●P300

- This function is available with i- ppli supporting infrared communication.
- Some types of data may not be exchanged depending on the other device, even if it is provided with the infrared communication function.

Infrared remote control

Various devices such as electrical appliances that support infrared remote control can be operated from i- ppli. ●P350

For example, the preinstalled Gガイド番組表リモコン allows using your terminal as an AV remote controller which works with TV programs. ●P289

- This function is available with i- ppli supporting infrared remote control. i- ppli that supports the other device is required.


Downloading i- ppli from sites

You can download your favorite i- ppli from sites and store it in FOMA terminal.

- The maximum number of software that can be saved. ●P39
- If i- ppli download has failed due to poor signal quality, etc., i- ppli will not be saved in FOMA terminal.

1 Display the site containing i- ppli and select i- ppli.

The selected i- ppli is downloaded.

- To cancel downloading, press  and select *Yes*.

When Software Info Display is on

i- ppli information is displayed. When you select *Yes*, i- ppli is downloaded.


- The detail information of i- ppli to be downloaded can be checked by pressing .

When the selected i- ppli is already downloaded with a different UIM

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite. When you select *Yes*, the downloaded i- ppli overwrites the existing i- ppli.

When downloading i- ppli that uses saved data or serial number of the mobile phone/UIM

A confirmation screen is displayed. When you select *Yes*, i- ppli is downloaded.


- When *Guide* is displayed in the guide row, the details of the data to be used by i- ppli can be checked by pressing .

When the selected i- ppli is already downloaded

Already downloaded is displayed. When the new version of i- ppli is released, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to upgrade. When you select *Yes*, i- ppli is downloaded to upgrade.

2 Select a folder where to save i- ppli.

3 Select each item to set.

Set  ppli display : For i- ppli which supports i- ppli stand-by display, sets whether to use it for i- ppli stand-by display.

Set NW transmission : Sets whether to allow the communication by i- ppli.

Use icons : Sets whether to allow i- ppli to use icons such as mail and battery level.

- Some items may not be available for setting or operation setting screens may not be displayed depending on i- ppli.

4 Press and select *Yes*.

- The downloaded i- ppli starts.
- Select *No* to return to the site screen.

INFORMATION


When downloading i- ppli while Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for i- ppli), entry of the terminal security code is required.

When the memory for i- ppli is not enough or the number of i- ppli exceeds the maximum number of saved items, follow the instructions on the screen and delete i- ppli saved in FOMA terminal until an free space required for saving i- ppli is recovered. Deleted i- ppli can not be restored even when i- ppli download has failed.

When *Use icons* is set to *No*, i- ppli may not operate.

Downloading Message i- ppli

When Message i- ppli is downloaded, folders for Message i- ppli is automatically created in the lists of *Outbox*, *Inbox* and *Unsent messages*. The automatically created folder is named with the name of Message i- ppli downloaded, which cannot be changed.

- Message i- ppli can be saved up to 5 applications (included in the 100 maximum number of i- ppli applications). If the maximum number of Message i- ppli is exceeded, Message i- ppli cannot be downloaded. In that case, delete Message i- ppli before downloading. P298
- If the folder for Message i- ppli exceeds five, downloading will be impossible.
- If Message i- ppli that uses the same mail folder has already been saved in FOMA terminal, the software cannot be downloaded. However, i- ppli can be updated if a new version is available.

INFORMATION

If you attempt to download or upgrade Message i- ppli, when Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *Mail*), entry of the terminal security code is required.

If a Message i- ppli application is tried to be downloaded again while only the relevant Message i- ppli folder remains, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to use the folder. When you select *Yes*, the Message i- ppli is downloaded. If you choose not to use the mail folder, delete the folder before downloading the Message i- ppli.

If a received mail that supports Message i- ppli to be downloaded has already been saved in FOMA terminal, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to move the received mail to the folder that was created at the time of downloading. When you select *Yes*, the received mail is sorted. However, when Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* or *Hide Secret fldrs* set for *Mail*), you cannot sort them.


Viewing i- ppli information when downloading

Software Info Display

You set whether to display i- ppli information when downloading.


Default OFF

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Press .

- Not to display i- ppli information, press .

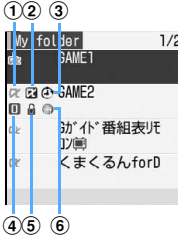
Starting i- ppli

1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display.

2 Select a folder.


: No i- ppli : i- ppli present


3 Select an i- ppli application to start.




①  : Normal i- ppli  : i- ppli DX



 : Message i- ppli


②  : i- ppli that can be set for i- ppli stand-by display


 : i- ppli that is set for i- ppli stand-by display


③  : i- ppli with Auto Start


 : i- ppli at stopped condition by IP (Information service provider)


④  to  : i- ppli registered as i-mode shortcut

⑤  : Protected i- ppli

 : i- ppli downloaded from SSL pages


 : Protected i- ppli which was downloaded from SSL pages

⑥  : i- ppli registered in One-touch Button

- To cancel starting i- ppli, press  and select **Ended**.

When i- ppli makes communication

When **Confirm every session** is set for NW transmission of i- ppli to be started, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to connect.

- Setting NW transmission  P287

Quitting i- ppli

Quit i- ppli in the procedure specified for each.

- You can also quit i- ppli by pressing  and selecting **Ended**.

INFORMATION

Because of the 3D polygon*1 engine loaded, 3 dimensional image can be displayed with i- ppli.

*1 By combining polygons (triangles and squares), 3 dimensional image with depth can be displayed.


Whether the Easy Selector Plus is effective for 4 or 8 directions depends on i- ppli.

The volume of the sound which sounds during i- ppli operation follows Volume Setting for the ring tone.

Note that when **Ascending** is set in Volume Setting, the volume is **Level4**.

While Driving Mode is on, the vibrator and sound during activating i- ppli do not operate.

When starting i- ppli while activating Privacy Mode (**Authorized access** set for i- ppli), entry of the terminal security code is required.

i- ppli is interrupted in the following cases. If you quit the function being used and run, i- ppli is restarted, but if you press  and select i- ppli, i- ppli can be restarted while the function in progress is continued.

Some i- ppli may not return to the state before it was interrupted.


- When there is an incoming call (except when the ringing time of Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service is set to 0 sec)
- When the time set in the schedule alarm or Alarm Clock has come
- When you switch to another function

When you are outside the service area or the saved data cannot be used, i- ppli may not start or not operate correctly.





Using i- ppli to start another specified i- ppli allows use of i- ppli without returning to the software list. If no i- ppli to be started is set, selection of i- ppli is required. If i- ppli to be started is set but not on the software list, it must be downloaded.

Images used on i- ppli or your entered data may automatically be sent to the server via Internet. Images used on i- ppli are images shot with the camera while i- ppli is activated, images obtained using the i- ppli infrared communication function, images downloaded by i- ppli from sites or Internet web pages, or images obtained by i- ppli from Data Box.

For some i- ppli, the IP (Information service provider) may access i- ppli saved in the mobile phone and may change into a use stop state directly. In this case, starting, setting for stand-by or upgrading, etc. of the i- ppli cannot be performed and only deleting and displaying the detailed information of software can be performed. To use again, please ask the IP (Information service provider) since it is necessary to receive communication of canceling to quit i- ppli.

For some i- ppli, the IP (Information service provider) may send data to i- ppli saved in the mobile phone. When the IP (Information service provider) requests to stop/restart i- ppli or send data to i- ppli, FOMA terminal communicates and  flashes. In this case, the communication charge is not required.

For i- ppli builders:





If i- ppli does not operate normally while building, trace display may help. Press     on the stand-by display to display the trace. Note that trace information cannot be displayed if i- ppli built to record trace information is not saved.

Displaying history when operation finishes without using saved data


Security Error History

When i- ppli ended because an error that i- ppli cannot use the saved data occurred, the name of i- ppli, date and time, cause of the security error is recorded.

- Latest 20 records of security error history are recorded.

1 Press     on the stand-by display.


Deleting all the history

- ① Press  and select *Yes*.

Displaying i- ppli detail information


Detail Info

Detail information such as the name and version of i- ppli can be checked.

1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor i- ppli to check and press .


3 Check detail information.

- The displayed items differ depending on i- ppli.
- If you press , the site certificate can be checked when i- ppli is downloaded from SSL pages.

Setting operating condition of i- ppli

Settings


- Only one i- ppli application can be set for i- ppli Stand-by Display.
- i- ppli Stand-by Display cannot be set while the stand-by ticker is displayed.


1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at i- ppli to set and press  .

3 Select each item to set.

- You cannot select the item not supported by the i- ppli.

Set  *ppli display* : Used to set whether to set i- ppli which supports the i- ppli stand-by display as your stand-by display.

Set NW transmission during  *ppli display* : Used to set whether to allow automatic communication while the i- ppli stand-by display is operating.

Set NW transmission : Used to set whether to allow automatic communication while i- ppli is operating. When *Confirm every session* is set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to communicate each time i- ppli is activated.

Use icons : Specifies whether to enable i- ppli to use icons for mail, Message R/F, remaining battery level, Silent Mode and reception level.

Start from browser : Used to set whether to start i- ppli from sites (i- ppli To).

Start from mailer : Used to set whether to start i- ppli from mail (i- ppli To).

Start from external : Used to set whether to start i- ppli from external devices (i- ppli To).


Allow ring tone/image changes by software^{*1} : Specifies whether to allow i- ppli to change the settings of ring tones or images on the screen such as the stand-by display. If *Yes* is set, the ring tone and image of the stand-by display are changed automatically.

Confirm every set-up^{*1} : Specifies whether to display a confirmation screen each time the settings of ring tones or images are changed.

Allow access to phonebook/dial record by software^{*1} : Specifies whether to allow i- ppli to refer to the phonebook or call log. If *Yes* is set, the phonebook or call log is referred automatically.

^{*1} This setting is available only for i- ppli DX.

4 Press .

- When **Set  *ppli display*** is set to *Yes*, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel the current stand-by display setting.

INFORMATION

i- ppli automatically makes connection to networks if a setting is made to allow communication. Note that connection to networks requires communication charges.

When i- ppli that connects to networks for communication is set as the i- ppli stand-by display, communication may automatically be carried out depending on i- ppli.

Depending on this setting, network communication from i- ppli and using icon information (unread mail, remaining battery level, etc.) may not be able to be used.

Note that if you set *No* for **Set NW transmission**, i- ppli may not be started and timely information such as stock prices or weather forecast may not be provided by i- ppli.

If *Yes* is set for **Use icons** for the i- ppli stand-by display, information of icons for unread mail, unread Message R/F, remaining battery level, Silent Mode, and icons within service area/outside service area may be sent to IPs (Information service providers) through the Internet, which may give the information to a third party.

While Privacy Mode is on (**Authorized access** set for *i- ppli*), the i- ppli stand-by display does not start even if it is set.

Setting display light

- The i- ppli stand-by display light operation depends on the settings in Display Light Setting for the display.
- While Driving Mode is on, the light while i- ppli is running does not operate even if *Use software setting* is set.

Default Use phone setting

1 Press **[Menu]** **[3 さい DEF]** **[2 か ABC]** **[4 た GHI]** on the stand-by display.

2 Press **[1 あ /お]** or **[2 か ABC]**.

Use phone setting : The light is turned on according to the settings in Display Light Setting for the display. ●P128

Use software setting : i- ppli controls the lighting on/off.

Setting vibrator

Allow the vibrator operation by i- ppli.

- While Driving Mode is on, the vibrator while i- ppli is running does not operate regardless of this setting.

Default ON

1 Press **[Menu]** **[3 さい DEF]** **[2 か ABC]** **[5 な JKLU]** on the stand-by display.

2 Press **[1 あ /お]**.

- Not to allow the vibrator operation, press **[2 か ABC]**.

Using pre-installed i- ppli

The following i- ppli applications are preinstalled by default:

Game software	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • くまくるん for D (Bear Puzzle for D) • スウィートクッキング (Sweets Cooking) • 珍さんと一緒 トランプ & 占い (Mr. Chin's Cards & Fortune-Telling)
Other i- ppli	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • G ガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller) • 珍さん計画 DX おこづかい帖プラス (Mr. Chin's Scheduled Cashbook)

Select each i- ppli application from the list to start.

- i- ppli names may be different from the displayed ones on the screen.
- 珍さん計画 DX おこづかい帖プラス can be set as the i- ppli stand-by display.
- If you delete i- ppli preloaded by default, you can download it from i-mode site "My D-style".
To access "My D-style", select **[3] メニューリスト** (Menu list) of the Japanese iMenu ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) (as of August 2005).

Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller)

This is a convenient application containing a TV program table and a TV remote controller.

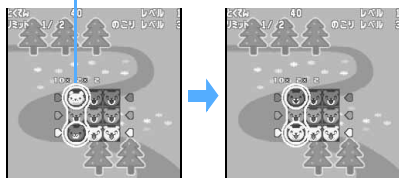
For details ●P351

くまくるん for D (Bear Puzzle for D)

This is a puzzle game in which you can enjoy the faces of cute bears. “Kuru-Kuma” bear balls, which are arranged randomly, should be rearranged so that their colors and numbers meet the specified patterns.

- You can view the game instructions by selecting *おしえてくるん* (Oshiete Kurun) show-me button on the menu screen.

Frame



Set the frame to cover the bear balls you want to rearrange.

Rotate the frame until you get balls with the same color.

You can use the following keys:

[2] か [4] た [6] ち [8] つ: Move the frame.

[3] る DEF: Rotate the frame

[1] あ [5] い KL: Exchange the bear balls.

[7] 戻 RES: Undo an operation (only the previous operation can be canceled).

[9] 上 ↑: Move a ball upward (only in *えいえんくるん* (Eien Kurun) mode)

音 INT: Turn on/off the sound.

[#] 振 VIB: Turn on/off the vibrator.

スウィートクッキング (Sweets Cooking)

Block that will fall next Message from the character who appears in the game



Block Hungry-meter (The meter is cleared if you are full)

This is a game in which you can enjoy rearranging and removing the blocks that are falling on the screen.

- These blocks indicate the five key ingredients of sweets: fruit, milk, eggs, flour, and beans. If you select and rearrange three (or more) blocks indicating the same ingredient, you can let the blocks disappear. Removing a set of blocks of different ingredients at one time lets you cook a variety of sweets through their combination.
- There are also special blocks called “Heart Blocks”. Each of these blocks will disappear and you will get bonus points if you remove the block adjacent to the block.

You can use the following keys:

: Move a block. : Turn a block clockwise.

: Turn a block counterclockwise. : Move down a block rapidly.

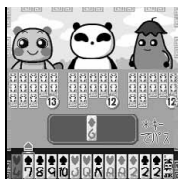
[Menu] メ: View the menu. : Return to an original position or end the game.

Game modes available

Mode name	Description
きまぐれ (Easygoing) mode	In this mode, you can set the Hungry-meter to its full range and attempt to clear the meter, whichever kind of sweets you select. Getting a high score makes you appear in the ranking list.
おねだり (Request) mode	In this mode, the character who appears in the game will request you to cook sweets they want to eat. If you answer the character’s request, the Hungry-meter will show a major increase in readout. You can also be given bits of knowledge about sweets in general (<i>Sweets Box</i> is displayed on the initial screen). In this mode, you will never be listed in the ranking.

Selecting *Fortune Cookie* on the initial screen lets you enjoy a fortunetelling game.

珍さんと一緒 トランプ&占い (Mr. Chin's Cards & Fortune-Telling)



This is a set of card games in which you can play with unique characters, such as “Chin-san” Panda. You can enjoy a fortunetelling game in addition to three card games: 大富豪 (The Rich and Poor), ページワン (Page One), and ポーカー (Poker).

You can use the following keys:

- ⊙ : Select a card.
- ✖ : Pass your turn (大富豪) or Display scores/return (poker).
- ⊙ : Hand out or withdraw a card. Menu : View the menu.
- ⊙ : Determine a card. □ : View the description of card rules.

珍さん計画DXおこづかい帖プラス(Mr. Chin's Scheduled Cashbook)

This i- ppli has Scheduler and Cashbook functions, which is compatible with i- ppli Stand-by Display.



Icon for the schedule

Money in hand

To change the display position or to turn off the display, press ⊙, select 所持金表示設定 (Display setting) and select 右下 (Right down) 左下 (Left down) and 非表示 (No display)

Scheduler function

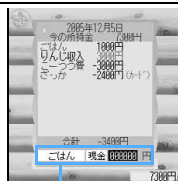
You can register a schedule. If you set the schedule for the i- ppli stand-by display, the icon is displayed on the specified date of registration.

Item	Operations
登録 (Register)	Press ⊙, select 予定設定 (Set schedule), set the contents of schedule and press □. • The number of the schedule entries which can be registered in a day is up to 3.
確認 (Check)	Press ⊙ and select 予定確認 (Check schedule). Press □ and select 修正 (Edit) or 削除 (Delete) to edit or delete the schedule.

Cashbook function


You can record monthly incomes and expenses. The interior of the room of Mr.Chin changes by the amount of money in hand.

Item	Operations
おこづかい設定 (Set pocket-money)	Press ⊙, select おこづかい設定 and set the income day, the present money in hand or the monthly amount. Press □ to register. • When the current day is set as the income day, it is not put in until the next month will come. Pay in from money in hand. • If this setting has not been activated for two months or more, pocket-money will be put in for only one month of the previous month.
毎月の支払い設定 (Set fixed payment)	Press ⊙ and select 毎月の支払い from the menu to set the amount of money paid every month such as house rent. Then, press □.
毎日の出費、臨時収入の入力 (Enter daily expense, casual income)	Press ⊙, select おこづかい帖 (Cashbook), select the detail of expenses and manner of payment from the write-in field and set the amount of money (in ¥ 100 unit). Then, press □. • Select りんじ収入 (Casual income) to add the set amount of money to the money in hand. • To display the previous おこづかい帖, place the cursor at the detail of expenses in the write-in field and press ⊙.



A write-in field

Help function

When you press  to select Help and then select Yes, FOMA terminal is connected to a site where a Help page can be displayed. For more detailed usages such as item selection, price input, etc., see the Help page.








- If your terminal has been connected to the site, i- ppli will be ended.

Starting i- ppli with One-touch Button


One-touch Button

Registering i- ppli to One-touch Button


- Only one i- ppli can be registered to One-touch Button.

- 1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display and select a folder.
- 2 Place the cursor at i- ppli to register and press   .
 - To cancel the setting, place the cursor at i- ppli to cancel and press   .

Starting i- ppli with One-touch Button

- 1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display.

INFORMATION












Which i- ppli registered to One-touch Button can be checked. P299

Starting i- ppli with i- ppli Shortcut




i- ppli Shortcut

Registering as i- ppli shortcuts

- Up to 10 i- ppli can be registered as i- ppli shortcuts.

- 1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display and select a folder.
- 2 Place the cursor at i- ppli to register and press   .
 - To cancel the setting, place the cursor at i- ppli to cancel and press   .
- 3 Select the registration destination.
 - Number  to  correspond to the dial key  to  used to start i- ppli.

Starting i- ppli with i- ppli Shortcut

- 1 Press the dial key ( to ) on the stand-by display and hold down  for over a second.

INFORMATION

Pressing     on the stand-by display displays the list of i- ppli registered as i- ppli shortcuts.

Automatically starting i- ppli

Collective setting for auto starting is made for all i- ppli which different conditions are set to.





- The date and time setting is required to start i- ppli automatically.

Specifying whether to start automatically

Auto Start

- When **OFF** is set, Auto Start is also disabled for i- ppli even if *User* of Auto Start Info Setting is set to **ON**.

Default ON

1 Press     on the stand-by display.


2 Press  or .

Setting the date and time of Auto Start

Auto Start Info Setting


Set Auto Start on/off or the start date and time for each i- ppli application and display the preset details.

- The conditions that can be set depend on i- ppli.
- Some i- ppli may not be started automatically.
- When Auto Start is set to **OFF**, this setting is not available.

1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display and select a folder.


2 Place the cursor at i- ppli to set and press  .

3 Select each item to set.


- User** : Select whether to set conditions of Auto Start.
- When **OFF** is set, the following items cannot be set.
- Time** : Enter the time to automatically start i- ppli.
- Repeat** : Set the condition for repeated automatic starting of i- ppli.
- When **OneTime** is set, set the date for auto starting in **Date** field.
 - When **Daily** is set, i- ppli starts automatically at the time set in **Time** field every day.
 - When **Weekly** is set, set the day of the week for auto starting in **Weekly** field.
- Weekly** : Set the day of the week for auto starting when **Weekly** is set for **Repeat**.
- Date** : Set the date for auto starting when **OneTime** is set for **Repeat**.
- Software** : Specify whether to automatically start at the intervals preset for i- ppli.
-  **ppli 1 to 4** : Depending on i- ppli DX, up to 4 conditions of Auto Start can be set while it is operated. Specify whether to enable the settings.

4 Press .

INFORMATION

Even when auto starting is set, i- ppli is not started if the time of activation arrives in one of the following situations. If i- ppli is not started for the following reasons (except for the ones marked with *1),  is indicated on the stand-by display and the name of i- ppli, the date and time and the reason for the start failure are recorded in Start Failure History.

- When FOMA terminal power is off.*1
- UIM operation is restricted (except for preinstalled i- ppli).
- When UIM cannot be detected (except for pre-installed i- ppli).
- When Auto Start is *OFF*.*1
- When the interval of auto start is too short.*1
- During a talk or communication
- When a screen other than the stand-by display is displayed or i- ppli stand-by display operation is in progress.
- When any other function is running (except when the My Picture list is displayed and a picture is being framed, when the i-motion list is displayed and a video is being played or edited, and when the melody list is displayed and a melody is being played).
- In All Lock or PIM Lock
- When Privacy Mode is on (while i- ppli is set to *Authorized access*).
- While an alarm or schedule alarm is sounding (including when the set time is the same as the setting for Auto Start).
- When i- ppli usage is stopped by IP (Information service provider).

Even if you wish to automatically start multiple i- ppli at the same time, only one i- ppli can be started. The failed i- ppli information is recorded in Start Failure History, but  is not displayed on the stand-by display.


In the user setting, you cannot set the same content as that of the user setting that has been set by other i- ppli.





If all of the start time is set before the date and time of FOMA terminal, auto starting will be disabled.

Displaying history when Auto Start of i- ppli fails


Start Failure History

When automatic start of i- ppli fails, name of i- ppli, date and time, causes are recorded.

- Up to 20 start failure histories are recorded. When there are more than 20 histories, 21st history is overwritten on the oldest history.
- When you display start failure histories or when the next automatic start is successful,  on the stand-by display disappears.

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

Deleting all the history

- ① Press  and select *Yes*.

Starting i- ppli from a site or mail

i- ppli To

i- ppli starts when link item to activate i- ppli contained in a site or i-mode Mail is selected (i- ppli To).

1 Select a link item enabled to start i- ppli from a site or i-mode Mail.

2 Select *Yes*.

The connection to site is terminated and i- ppli is started.

INFORMATION

If the i- ppli you attempt to start with i- ppli To is not saved in FOMA terminal, the message that there is no specified i- ppli is displayed and i- ppli cannot be started. Note that some i- ppli may start just after downloaded from sites even if it is not saved.

- For i- ppli that starts just after downloaded from sites, a confirmation screen may be displayed asking whether to make communication while it is activated.
- When ending i- ppli that started just after downloaded from sites, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save i- ppli. Note that some i- ppli may not be able to be saved in FOMA terminal. If the specified i- ppli is set not to start with i- ppli To, a message is displayed and i- ppli is not started.



◆P288

i- ppli can also be started by using the infrared communication and Bar Code Reader.

Operating i- ppli Stand-by Display

i- ppli Stand-by Display

When i- ppli is set for the stand-by display, you can start i- ppli from the stand-by display to operate.

 or  is indicated when the i- ppli stand-by display is set.

- It is necessary to set i- ppli for the stand-by display beforehand. ◆P122

INFORMATION

When FOMA terminal is turned on while setting i- ppli Stand-by Display, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to start the i- ppli stand-by display. When you select *Yes*, the i- ppli stand-by display starts. When you select *No*, the i- ppli stand-by display settings are canceled. If you operate nothing within about 5 seconds after the confirmation screen has appeared, the i- ppli stand-by display starts automatically. When the power is turned on by Auto Power ON, the i- ppli stand-by display automatically starts, without displaying the confirmation screen.

When you set i- ppli that performs communication, it may not operate correctly depending on radio wave conditions, etc.

i- ppli stand-by display does not operate while Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *i- ppli*).

If you activate All Lock or PIM Lock while the i- ppli stand-by display is set, the i- ppli stand-by display is temporarily canceled. When you cancel lock, the i- ppli stand-by display starts again.

If the use of i- ppli set to the i- ppli stand-by display is stopped by IP (Information service provider), the i- ppli standby display is canceled.

Even when i- ppli Stand-by Display is specified, if stand-by tickers are displayed due to signals from IP (Information service provider), the i- ppli Stand-by Display settings may be canceled.


While the i- ppli stand-by display is activated, if an error occurs that makes it difficult for the i- ppli stand-by display to continue to appear, a confirmation screen is displayed asking if you will cancel or not. When you select *Yes*, the i- ppli stand-by display settings are canceled. At this time, the name of i- ppli and end date/time are recorded in Abnormal Exit History.



You cannot connect to a site (Web To) from the i- ppli stand-by display.

Starting i- ppli of the i- ppli stand-by display

To start i- ppli set on the i- ppli stand-by display, switch the i- ppli stand-by display to the i- ppli screen.


- You cannot start i- ppli when Lock on Close is set to on.

1 Press  on the i- ppli stand-by display.





The screen is changed to the i- ppli screen and  or  flashes at the top of the screen.




2 Operate i- ppli.

Ending i- ppli to return to the i- ppli stand-by display



1 Press  during operating i- ppli.

2 Select *Ended*.

i- ppli is ended and the i- ppli stand-by display is activated. The icon at the top of the screen switches from  to , or from  to .

- The procedure to exit i- ppli and return to the i- ppli stand-by display depends on i- ppli. Some types of i- ppli return to the stand-by display by pressing .
- Even if *Ended* is selected, i- ppli Stand-by Display is not canceled. To cancel, select *Terminated*.  or  at the top of the screen disappears.
- To continue i- ppli, select *Cancel*.

INFORMATION





In addition, place the cursor at i- ppli set for the i- ppli stand-by display in the software list, press  and select  *ppli display* to cancel i- ppli.

Displaying the end history of i- ppli stand-by display


Abnormal Exit History

When an error that the i- ppli stand-by display cannot continue occurs, the name of i- ppli, date and time are recorded.

- Up to 20 abnormal exit histories are recorded. When there are more than 20 histories, the 21st history is overwritten on the oldest history.

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

Deleting all the history

- 1 Press  and select *Yes*.


Managing i- ppli

Upgrading i- ppli

Upgrade

When i- ppli has been updated, it can be upgraded.

- i- ppli whose usage is stopped by IP (Information service provider) cannot be upgraded.

1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Press   after placing the cursor at i- ppli to upgrade and select *Yes*.

- When upgrade is unnecessary, the message indicating that i- ppli is the newest is displayed.

INFORMATION

When you upgrade i- ppli, the data such as game scores stored by the i- ppli may be erased.

Some i- ppli may inquire the DoCoMo server about the availability depending on the length of time of use/ number of times of use. If the server gives a notice of i- ppli having been updated, it can be upgraded after confirming whether to upgrade it.


Some i- ppli may be upgraded automatically when activating i- ppli.

Creating/deleting folders

Folders can be created to sort out i- ppli by the category. Also, the order of folders can be changed.



Creating folders

- Up to 20 folders can be created.




1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display.

2 Press  .


Changing the folder name

① Place the cursor at the folder to change the name and press  .

Changing the order of the folder


① Place the cursor at the folder to change the order, press  and then press  or .




The order of the selected folder changes to one line up or down.

3 Enter a folder name and press  (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters).

Deleting folders

- Deleting a folder with i- ppli stored in it also deletes all i- ppli in that folder. Note that the folder cannot be deleted if it contains the protected i- ppli.

1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display.


2 Place the cursor at the folder to delete and press   .

- To delete a folder with any i- ppli stored in it, enter the terminal security code.

3 Select *Yes*.

- If there is any Message i- ppli in the folder to be deleted, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the automatically created mail folder at the same time. Select *Yes* to delete the mail folder and all messages stored in the folder. Select *No* to delete i- ppli only. However, if there is any protected message in the mail folder, you cannot delete i- ppli or the mail folder even when *Yes* is selected.


INFORMATION


When only i- ppli has been deleted and the mail folder used for Message i- ppli is left undeleted, the message can be displayed from the submenu of the mail list. 

When the mail folder for Message i- ppli to be deleted is being used (including displaying the list), i- ppli may not be deleted.

While Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *Mail*) and if you delete Message i- ppli, cancel Privacy Mode according to directions of the screen.




Protecting i- ppli

- The maximum number of i- ppli that can be protected 

1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display and select a folder.



2 Place the cursor at i- ppli to protect and press .

i- ppli is protected and  or  is indicated on the software list.

- To cancel, place the cursor at i- ppli to cancel the protection and press   .

Switching the protection of the selected items on/off

① Press and select i- ppli.


- Press  to switch selecting or canceling i- ppli; press  to select or cancel all.

② Press .

Switching the protection of all items in the folder on/off

① Press and enter the terminal security code.

INFORMATION

All of the protected i- ppli are also deleted when Delete All Data is performed. 



Deleting i- ppli

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at i- ppli to delete and press .

Deleting the selected items

① Press and select i- ppli.

- Press  to switch selecting or canceling i- ppli; press  to select or cancel all.

② Press .

Deleting all items in the folder

① Press .


② Enter the terminal security code and select *All* or *w/o protect*.


- All the i- ppli or all the unprotected i- ppli in the folder are deleted.

3 Select *Yes*.

- When you attempt to delete Message i- ppli, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to delete the automatically created mail folder at the same time. Select *Yes* to delete the mail folder and all messages stored in it. Select *No* to delete i- ppli only. However, if there is any protected message in the mail folder, you cannot delete i- ppli or the mail folder even when *Yes* is selected.


INFORMATION

When you delete all i- ppli in the folder from the folder list, place the cursor at the folder, press  and select *Delete Delete software*.














When only i- ppli has been deleted and the mail folder used for Message i- ppli is left undeleted, the message can be displayed from the submenu of the mail list. 

The protected i- ppli cannot be deleted by *One item* or *Selected items*. To delete the protected i- ppli, clear the protection beforehand. Alternatively, select *All items*, enter the terminal security code, and then delete i- ppli by selecting *All*.

If you attempt to delete Message i- ppli when Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *Mail*), entry of the terminal security code is required.

If you have deleted i- ppli preloaded by default, you can download it from i-mode site "My D-style". 
While Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *Mail*) and if you delete Message i- ppli, cancel Privacy Mode according to directions of the screen.







Moving i- ppli to another folder

- 1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display and select a folder.
- 2 Place the cursor at i- ppli to move and press   .
Moving the selected items
 - ① Press    and select i- ppli.
 - Press  to select or cancel i- ppli; press  to select or cancel all.
 - ② Press .**Moving all items in folder**
 - ① Press   .
- 3 Select the folder to move to and select *Yes*.

Sorting i- ppli






Software Sort

- 1 Press     on the stand-by display.
- 2 Press  to .
 - For *By download time* and *By access time*, i- ppli is sorted by the time set in Date and Time Setting of FOMA terminal.
 - For *By name*, it may not match the order of the Japanese syllabary if two-byte and one-byte characters/alphabetic characters are included in the name of i- ppli.
 - For *By access frequency*, it does not contain the number of starts as the i- ppli stand-by display. The number of access is carried over even when i- ppli version is upgraded.
 - For *By software size*, the total of the file size of i- ppli and scratchpad to be used is sorted from large to small.




Checking the number of i- ppli in folder

Software in Folder

- 1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display.
- 2 Place the cursor at the folder to check the number of i- ppli and press .
: Normal i- ppli : i- ppli DX : Message i- ppli

Checking the current settings of i- ppli

Software Information

- 1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display.
- 2 Press .
Storage : Total size of i- ppli saved is displayed with a bar and value.
Software count : Total number of i- ppli saved is displayed.
 **ppli display** : Name and storage folder of i- ppli set as the i- ppli stand-by display are displayed.
One-key shortcut : Name and storage folder of i- ppli set for One-touch Button are displayed.
Auto start : Name, storage folder and start time of i- ppli set for the next automatic start are displayed.

Using various functions from i- ppli

- Downloading i- ppli that supports individual function beforehand is required.

Making calls from i- ppli

1 Select setting items for Customized Call and set call conditions.

- Setting for Customized Call ●P58

2 Press and select *Yes*.

- A call is made by the settings. When you make a call, i- ppli is interrupted.
- Some i- ppli may need different operation or be unable to make calls.

Connecting to sites from i- ppli

1 Select *Yes* when a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to connect to sites.


- i- ppli is ended and the site is displayed.
- Connecting to a site is unavailable from the i- ppli stand-by display.
 - Some i- ppli may need different operation or be unable to connect to sites.

Using Camera from i- ppli

1 Operate i- ppli to use Camera.

- Some i- ppli activates Camera automatically.

INFORMATION

When Camera has been activated from i- ppli, shot images are not saved in *Camera* folder of *Image* (My Picture) or *i-motion* but saved in  mode folder, *Deco-Mail picture* folder or the i- ppli. Saved images may be automatically sent from i- ppli to the server by communication.

Some i- ppli can change the image size or shooting size or set the frame, etc.

Using Bar Code Reader from i- ppli

1 Operate i- ppli to scan bar codes.

- A message indicating that scan results are used and saved in the i- ppli is displayed.

Using infrared communication from i- ppli

- Infrared communication may not be made depending on the other device, even if it is provided with the infrared communication function.

1 Operate i- ppli to perform infrared communication.

- i- ppli can also be executed by receiving i- ppli starting data via infrared communication.
- If you perform infrared communication while your terminal is connected to a site or sending / receiving mail, the site connection or mail transmission is stopped.

i-channel

i-channel	302
Displaying i-channel..... Channel List	304
Changing i-channel settings..... Stand-by Telop Setting	304

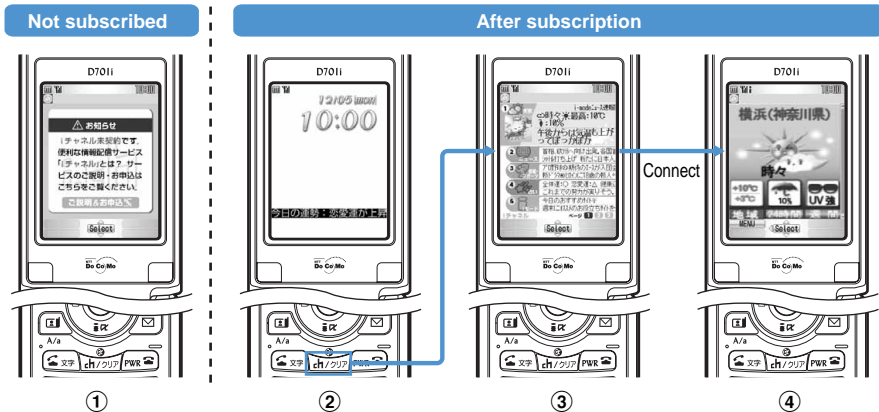
i-channel

i-channel is a service in which DoCoMo or IP (Information service provider) delivers graphical information such as news and weather information to i-channel-compatible terminals.

Users can receive information regularly, and read latest information as it appears on the stand-by display as tickers in the channel list by pressing **ch/チャンネル** (Displaying the channel list **P304**).

Additionally, users can obtain rich, detail information by selecting a desired channel in the channel list.

- For important notes on using i-channel and detail information about how to use i-channel, see “i-mode User’s Manual”.



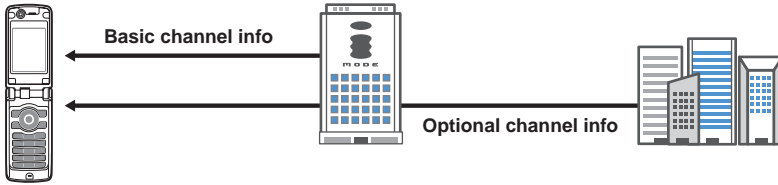
- ① When you are not signed up for i-channel.
- ② Once you sign up for i-channel, tickers automatically run on the stand-by display as information is received or as you display the channel list.
- ③ Pressing **ch/チャンネル** displays the channel list. Each channel contains various information in a list form including those that ran as tickers.
- ④ You can select each channel to view detail information.

- The screens shown above are for information purpose only and may differ from the actual screens.

There are 2 types of channels: “Basic channel” and “Optional channel”. Basic channel is pre-registered channels provided by DoCoMo and ready for use immediately after i-channel sign-up. Packet communication fee for automatic information update in relation to the basic channels is included in the i-channel service fee. Optional channel is provided by non-DoCoMo IPs (Information service providers) and users need to register their desired channels for viewing. Packet communication fee for automatic information update and other fees in relation to Optional channel are not included in the i-channel service fee.

Please note that only Basic channel information appears as tickers on the stand-by display.

- Information charge may be imposed to use Optional channel.
- Some Optional channel requires separate sign-up to the IPs (Information service providers) who provide the channels.
- Viewing detail information from the channel list, whether Basic channel or Optional channel information, causes separate packet communication fee that is not covered by the i-channel service fee.




i-channel is a pay service for which subscription is required. (You need i-mode sign-up when you use this service.)

- Operating i-channel ●P304
- Compatible device: 701i Series

Trial channel

With our free Trial channel, Basic channel is available over the fixed period of time for i-mode subscribers having an i-channel compatible terminal who have never signed up for i-channel for the subscriber line. However, packet communication fee caused by viewing detail information from the channel list is to be borne by the users.


- For important notes on using Trial channel and detail information about how to use the service, see "i-mode User's Manual."

In principle, the trial service automatically begins after a set amount of time once the UIM (FOMA card) is inserted and the i-channel compatible terminal goes into use. If the service does not start automatically, you can start it by pressing .


Trial channel is available only once per subscriber line.



Trial channel automatically stops after a certain period of time following the launch. For information about how to cancel the service, see "i-mode User's Manual".

INFORMATION

 blinks during reception of information.

Neither ring tone nor vibrator operates at the reception of information. Likewise, the call indicator does not light or flash.

You may not receive the information in the default status. In that case, if you press , the information automatically appears on the ticker of the stand-by display.





You can receive information and the ticker appears automatically on the stand-by display when you press  to select a displayed non-subscriber's channel if you cannot receive information because FOMA terminal is turned off or it is  (out of service area).


You can configure whether to run tickers of i-channel information on the stand-by display. You can also set their speed and color. ●P304

If you cancel i-channel or i-mode service subscription, tickers are no longer displayed.





Changing the i-channel host

You can change the i-channel host (although you usually do not need to change it).

- 1 Press         on the stand-by display.
- 2 Place the cursor at the user host to edit, press  and enter your terminal security code.
- 3 Select each item to set and press .
 - *Host address2* should be filled with the i-channel host name (up to 30 one-byte characters).
 - *Host address* is for the host for i-mode. ●P199
- 4 Select the host you have edited.
- 5 Press .

If you change *Host address2*, the i-channel information will no longer be displayed on the stand-by ticker or the sub-display. Sometimes, the information will not be updated automatically. When you press  on the stand-by display to view the channel list, the latest information is received and shown on the stand-by ticker and the sub-display.

1 Press on the stand-by display.


- Press    when video/i-motion or i-ppli is set as the stand-by display. (i-channel cannot be displayed even if  is pressed.)

2 Select the information to display.

3 Confirm the information.

- If the information contains melody, it is played at the volume specified in Ring Volume Setting for phone. You cannot adjust the volume.
- In Silent Mode, a confirmation screen appears asking you whether the melody is to be played. Select *Yes* to play the melody.
- Depending on the situation, information may be received when displaying the channel list.

You can set whether to run tickers of received i-channel information on the stand-by display.

- When you have changed *Host address2* by default or during UIM replacement, the i-channel information is automatically updated, or if you press  to display the i-channel list, the stand-by ticker is displayed and *Stand-by Telop Setting* can be made.

Default Display telop: Display Telop speed: Normal Telop color: Pattern 1

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Set each item to set.

Display telop : Select whether to display tickers or not.



Telop speed : Select from *Slow*, *Normal*, or *Fast*.

Telop color : Select a text color and a background color.

3 Press .

INFORMATION

When stand-by Telop Setting is set to *Display*, up to 10 tickers for the newest information are shown on the stand-by display each time the display appears (until the display goes out).

When FOMA terminal is closed, pressing  during the clock display displays i-channel information on the sub-display, regardless of the details of Stand-by Telop Setting. 

In the following cases, i-channel information cannot be displayed in the ticker.

- In All Lock
- In Driving Mode
- In PIM Lock
- When UIM not inserted

When *Display Telop* is set to *Display*, video/i-motion and i-ppli cannot be set as the stand-by display.

Displaying/Editing/ Managing Data

Making full use of image

Displaying images	My Picture	306
Editing still images		309
Setting the operating conditions of images	Settings	316

Making full use of video/i-motion

Playing video/i-motion	i-motion	316
Editing video/i-motion		320
Setting the operating conditions of video/i-motion	Settings	325

Making full use of melody

Playing melodies	Melody	326
Setting the operating conditions of melodies	Settings	327

Making full use of the miniSD memory card

Before using the miniSD memory card		328
Inserting/removing the miniSD memory card		331
Exchanging the data between FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card		332
Displaying data in the miniSD memory card		335
Managing the miniSD memory card		337

Managing various data

Using the album		339
Checking/editing detail information of the data	View/Edit Detail Info	342
Deleting data		344
Sorting data	Sort	344

Making full use of infrared communication

Infrared communication		345
Sending the data by infrared communication	Send Ir Data	346
Receiving data by infrared communication	Receive Ir Data	347
Activating infrared communication mode... Infrared Communication Mode		350
Using the infrared remote control function		350
Setting operations for data transfer	Data Transfer Setting	354

Making full use of Sound Recorder

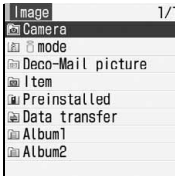
Recording sound with Sound Recorder	Sound Recorder	354
Changing the recording settings		357

Displaying images

Displays images saved in My Picture (*Image*) of *Data Box* in FOMA terminal.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select a folder.

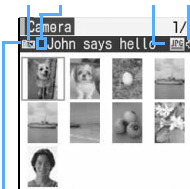


The following images are stored in each folder:

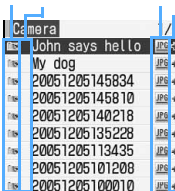
- Camera** : Images shot by Camera
- mode** : Images downloaded from a site, i-mode Mail or i- ppli
- Deco-Mail picture**
 - : Images preinstalled by default for Deco-mail or downloaded from sites or obtained by Bar Code Reader
- Item** : Frame images preinstalled by default or item images downloaded from sites
- Preinstalled** : Images preinstalled by default
- Data transfer** : Images obtained by Bar Code Reader, images moved/copied from the miniSD memory card or images received by data communication
- Album** : Images moved from another folder
 - Not displayed by default. To create P339
 - You can enter any name of album when creating it.

- Press and press or when switching to the folder list of the miniSD memory card. Operating procedure of the miniSD memory card P335

3 Place the cursor at the image to display.



Thumbnail display
Display name of image at the cursor position and icons



Title display
Image list

① **Origination**

- : Preinstalled
- : i-mode
- : Camera
- : Frame/Stamp
- : Data transfer

② **Type of image**

- No icon: Still image
- : Create animation
- : Animation/Flash

③ **File format**

- : GIF image
- : JPEG image
- : SWF (Flash movie)



④ **File restriction**


- (in blue): Attaching to mail or output from FOMA terminal available
- (in gray): Attaching to mail or output from FOMA terminal unavailable
- Each time you press , the image switches between thumbnail display and title display.
- Images with the UIM operation restriction function set are displayed with in thumbnail display.
- Display name and other items can be changed. P342

Sending the image via mail





① Place the cursor at the image to send and press .

The mail composition screen is displayed with the selected image attached.




- When the file size of still image is under 9,000 bytes, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to paste in the text field. Select *Yes* to paste the image to the mail text.
- Depending on the image size or file size of still image, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to convert the image to the stand-by size or save it to Data Box. P230
- Images that can be attached to mail P229


4 Press  to check the image.



- Press  to switch to the previous or next image.
- When *Scale down image* is set to *Yes* in Settings, a larger image than display area (240 x 240) is reduced.
- When an image is larger than display area, the image can be scrolled by pressing  and . In case an image is reduced, it is displayed at same magnification. Reduced display reappears by pressing .
- Animation, Create animation and Flash movies are replayed automatically when displaying.

During playback, the following operations are enabled:

 : Pause/replay   : Retry (play from the beginning)

 : Slow-down playback (only in stop for playing Create animation)

INFORMATION

When displaying an image in Privacy Mode (*Authorized access* set for *My picture*), entry of the terminal security code is required.

Thumbnail may not be displayed properly depending on the image.


Setting images to the stand-by display or phonebook data

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the image to set and press  .


3 Select each item to set.


Setting to the stand-by display

① Press  and select *YES*.

- Image that can be enlarged is set to the same size of image by selecting *YES (Same size)* and set to enlarged size in accordance with display area by selecting *YES (Large size)*.
- If the i- ppli stand-by display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel it. If *YES* is selected, i- ppli stand-by display is canceled.

Adding to the phonebook

① Press .




- Adding to the phonebook P95

Updating phonebook data saved

① Press  and select the phonebook data to update.

- If an image has already been set, the image is replaced by the selected image.

Setting as call image

① Press  and press  or .

Setting as video-phone call image, substitute image or on-hold image

① Press **5** (JKL) and press **1** (.) to **6** (MNO).

- Images whose size exceeds 176 x 144 and images unavailable for output from FOMA terminal cannot be set as substitute image, answer machine image, response hold image and on-hold image.

Setting as outgoing/incoming msg. image or retrieving image

① Press **6** (MNO) and press **1** (.) to **3** (DEF).

- The outgoing/incoming msg. image is also displayed even when Message R/F or SMS is sent or received.
- Flash movies cannot be set as retrieving image.

Setting to menu icons

① Press **7** (GHI) or **8** (TUV) and press **0** (OFF) to **9** (WXYZ).

- The selected image is set to a menu icon of *Custom1* or *Custom2* of icon design.
- Create animation, Flash movies and images in the *Item* folder cannot be set to the menu icon.

INFORMATION

In the image display screen, press **Menu** and select *Use image*.

If images set to the stand-by display or phonebook are deleted, each image returns to the default setting. Full images may not be displayed depending on the image size.

Creating animation

You can create animation by selecting still images (up to 6) in the same folder.

- Animation, Create animation, Flash movies and still images with a size of more than 640 x 480 size cannot be saved to Create animation.
- Still images saved in Create animation cannot be displayed or edited respectively.

1 Press **0** (.) **1** (.) and on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Press **Menu** **4** (GHI) **1** (.) .

Canceling

① Place the cursor at the Create animation to cancel and press **Menu** **4** (GHI) **2** (ABC).

3 Select images to save to Create animation.



The number of **1** to **6** is displayed on the image in selected order.

- To cancel all selection, press **Menu**.
- Each time you press **OK**, thumbnail display and title display are switched.

4 Press **OK**.

5 Enter a display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) and press **OK**.

In the image list, **OK** and the display name are displayed. The first cartoon appears in thumbnail display.

INFORMATION

In the image display screen, press **Menu** and select *Animation Create* or *Cancel*.

Editing still images

Edit still images saved in *Image* (My Picture). The editing items and contents are as follows:

Editing items	Description	Maximum image size editable (dots)*1
<i>Change size</i>	Changes the size.	1224 x 1632 (352 x 288 for zoom in/out)
<i>Clip</i>	Clips to any size.	1224 x 1632
<i>Brightness/Tone</i>	Changes brightness and tone.	352 x 288
<i>Effects</i>	Applies special effects.	240 x 320
<i>Reverse/Rotate</i>	Reverses/rotates.	480 x 640
<i>Frames</i>	Adds a frame.	352 x 288
<i>Paste stamp</i>	Pastes stamps.	352 x 288
<i>Paste text</i>	Pastes text.	352 x 288
<i>Cut</i>	Cuts any section.	240 x 320
<i>Size limitation</i>	Limits the file size for saving.	1224 x 1632
<i>Adjust</i>	Adjusts brightness and color balance.	352 x 288

*1 If the image cannot be edited because the size of it is too large, it can be reduced to the editable size by *Change size*.

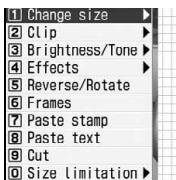
- The following images cannot be edited:
 - Animation, Create animation, Flash movies, images in *Item* folder and images in *Preinstalled* folder
 - Still images not permitted to attach to mail or to output from FOMA terminal (excluding still images with file restriction set with your terminal)
 - Still images with a size of more than 1224 x 1632, still images of which either the vertical or horizontal size is under 8 dots.
- Areas in an image which are transparent edited on FOMA terminal are displayed as white when viewed on a PC.

1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the still image to edit and press and .

- To adjust

3 Select items to edit and edit still images.



Edit menu screen

: *Change size*

: *Clip*

: *Brightness/Tone*

: *Effects*

: *Reverse/Rotate*

: *Frames*

: *Paste stamp*

: *Paste text*

: *Cut*

: *Size limitation*

4 Press and select *Save* after editing.

Edited still image is saved as a new still image in the same folder.

- Select *As frame/stamp* to save as images for frame or stamp.
Images that can be available as frame/stamp

INFORMATION

Even when *Scale down image* is set to *Yes* in Settings, the image is displayed at same magnification in case of *Paste stamp*, *Paste text*, *Cut* or *Change size*.

The result of editing depends on the still image type or method of editing.


Repetitive editing and saving may deteriorate the image quality.

After editing, the file size of still images may become larger.

When there is not enough available storage space to save the still image, or you have exceeded the maximum allowable number of images, you cannot save it. Delete unnecessary images and save it again.



Changing the image size



- Changing the size of still image may deteriorate the image quality.

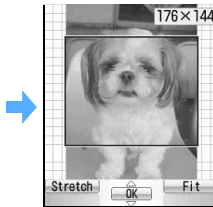
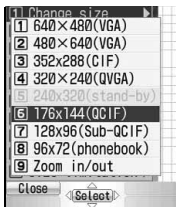
1 Press  on the edit menu screen.



2 Change the image size.

Changing into the specified size

① Press  to .

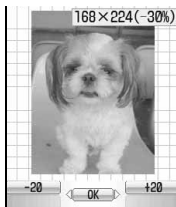
If the horizontal to vertical ratio of specified size and still image is same, the size is changed and the still image edit screen reappears. If the horizontal to vertical ratio differs, a size frame is displayed. By pressing , adjust the position of size frame and press . The area framed by size frame is changed into the specified size.





- Press  to put the whole still image in the specified size, ignoring the aspect ratio.
- Press  to put the whole still image in the specified size, holding the aspect ratio.

Zooming in/out

① Press  and press  to zoom in/out.



You can zoom in/out by 5% with horizontal and vertical ratio held. The current image size and the rate of zoom in/out are displayed on the upper right of the screen.

- Press  to zoom out by 20% and press  to zoom in by 20%.
- The portrait image can be zoomed in up to 288 x 352 and the landscape image can be zoomed in up to 352 x 288 (up to the limit of the either).
- Images can be reduced up to 8 dots in either size of horizontal or vertical.


② Press .

The still image edit screen reappears.

Clipping images to any size

You can clip a part of the still image by specifying the size or range.

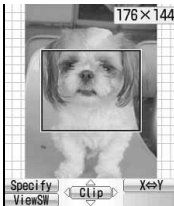
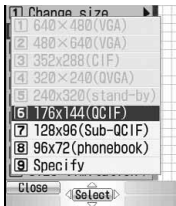
- When the size of image is less than 16 x 16, clipping is unavailable.

1 Press  on the edit menu screen.

2 Clip the image.

Clipping to the specified size

- 1 Press **[1]** to **[8]** and press **[↻]** to adjust the clipping frame position.



- Each time you press **[↔]**, horizontal and vertical size of the clipping frame are switched.
- Each time you press **[↕]**, clipping size is switched.
- To specify clipping range, press **[Menu]**.

- 2 Press **[↻]**.

The still image is clipped into the selected size and the still image edit screen reappears.

Specifying the range and clipping

- 1 Press **[9]**.

A frame specifying the range is displayed in dotted line, **[+]** is displayed on the upper left of the frame.

- 2 Press **[↻]** to adjust the position of **[+]** and press **[↻]**.



The position of upper left of the range specification frame is set and **[+]** is displayed on lower right of the frame.

- 3 Press **[↻]** to adjust the position of **[+]** and press **[↔]**.

The clipping range is set and the range specification frame is displayed in solid line.

- Press **[↻]** instead of **[↔]** to change the position of upper left again.
- Press **[↻]** after pressing **[↔]** to move the frame specifying range.

- 4 Press **[↻]**.

The still image is clipped into the specified range and the still image edit screen reappears.

Changing brightness or tone

- 1 Press **[3]** on the edit menu screen.

2 Change brightness or tone.

Adjusting brightness

- 1 Press **[1]** to adjust brightness.



- Press **[↻]** to increase or decrease by 1 level.
- Press **[↔]** to maximize and press **[Menu]** to minimize.

- 2 Press **[↻]**.

The still image edit screen reappears.

Changing tone to monotone or sepia

- 1 Press **[2 P ABC]** or **[3 DEF]**.

The tone is modified and the still image edit screen reappears.

Applying special effects

- 1 Press **[4 HIJ]** on the edit menu screen.

- 2 Select the type of effect.

The effect is applied to the still image and the still image edit screen reappears.

Soften : Softens the image.

Spherical : Swells the still image spherically from the center.

Emboss : Turns leaden color and emphasizes concavity and convexity.

Spiral : Makes the still image look as if it is spiraling out from the center.

Shiny : Attaches a mark as glistening.

Mosaic : Attaches a mosaic.

Reversing/rotating

- 1 Press **[5 JK L]** on the edit menu screen.

- 2 Reverse/rotate a still image.

• The following operations are available:

[↕] : Reverse up and down

[↔] : Reverse left and right

[Menu] : Rotate 90 degrees to the left

[⌂] : Rotate 90 degrees to the right

- 3 Press **[↕]**.

The still image edit screen reappears.

Overlaying a frame

- 1 Press **[6 MNO]** on the edit menu screen.

The same size frames as the still image being edited are listed.

• Images set as frame option in Edit Detail Info are displayed even if their size differs from that of the still image edited.

- 2 Select a frame.

- 3 Check the image with frame and press **[↕]**.



The still image edit screen reappears.

• Press **[↕]** to switch frames.

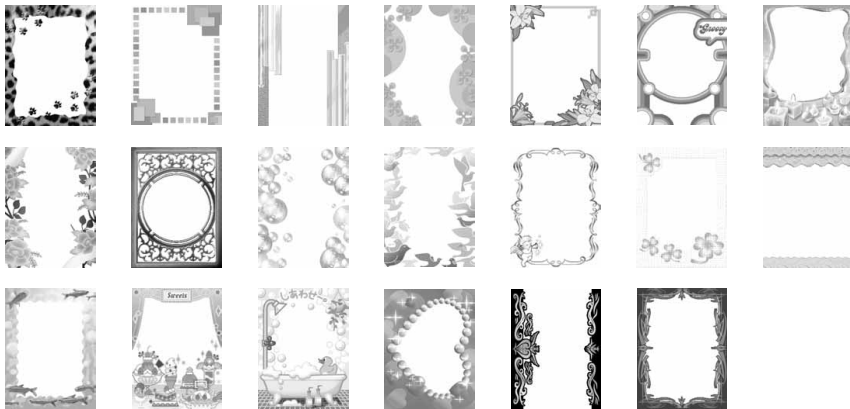
• Press **[Menu]** to rotate frame 180 degrees.

Frames set by default

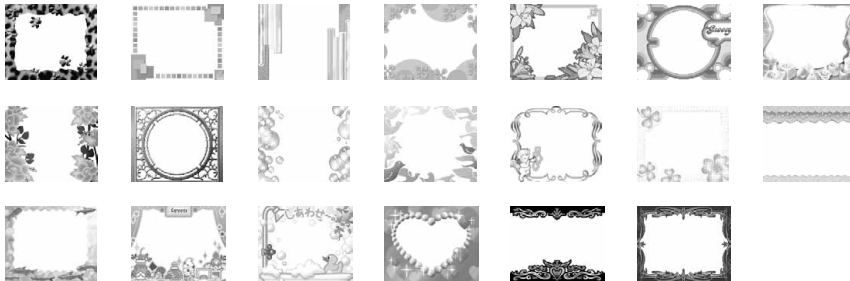
- If a frame registered by default is deleted, it can be downloaded from the i-mode site, "My D-style".

☛P289


Size for stand-by (240 x 320)



QCIF size (176 x 144)



Pasting stamps



- 1 Press **7**  **OK** on the edit menu screen.

The smaller size stamps than the still image being edited are listed.

- Images set as stamp option in Edit Detail Info are displayed even if their size is larger than that of still image edited.

- 2 Select a stamp.


The selected stamp is displayed in the center of the screen.

- 3 Press  to adjust the position to paste the stamp and press .



A beep sound is heard and the stamp is pasted.

- You can paste in another location continuously.
- Press **Menu** to delete all the pasted stamps.
- The volume of a beep sound depends on Volume Setting.


- 4 Press .
The still image edit screen reappears.

Stamps set by default




Pasting characters



Paste Text

- 1 Press  on the edit menu screen.



- 2 Select each item to set.


- Text** : Enters the text (up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters).
- Font type** : Sets the text type.
- Font size** : Sets the text size.
- Font color** : Sets the text color.
- Font border color** : Sets the text bordering color.
- Background color** : Sets the text background color.
- Paste method** : If *By block* is set, text is pasted at the same time.
If *By character* is set, text can be pasted on a different position by character.

- 3 Press .
The text (in case of *By character* set for *Paste method*, the first character) is displayed in the center of the screen.

- 4 Press  to adjust the position to paste characters and press .








- A beep sound is heard and text is pasted.
- You can paste text in another location continuously.
- Press  to delete all the pasted text.
- When you set *By character* for the paste method, the characters are pasted one at a time each you press . When the last character is pasted, the first character appears.
- The volume of a beep sound depends on Volume Setting.

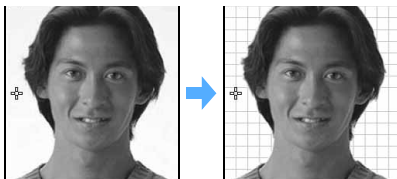
- 5 Press .
The still image edit screen reappears.


Cutting any section out

Cut the section of the close color to the selected color.

- 1 Press  on the edit menu screen.
 is displayed in the center of the screen.

2 Press  to place  at the color to cut and press .



The section with the close color to the position of  is cut out.

- You can cut another area continuously.

3 Press .

The still image edit screen reappears.

Limiting file size for saving

Limit the file size to a size below 9,000 bytes, 100 Kbytes or 500 Kbytes for saving.

1 Press  on the edit menu screen and select the size.


The still image will be saved as a new still image with a size that is equal to or smaller than the set file size in the same folder.

- Still images more than the size of 352 x 288 cannot be set to **9000 Byte**. Also still images more than the size of 480 x 640 cannot be set to **100 Kbyte**.


Adjusting brightness and color balance

- Adjusting may not have much effect depending on the still image.

1 Press  on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the still image to adjust and press  twice.




The image adjustment mode is activated and the current adjustment mode is indicated in the upper right of the screen.

3 Press  to switch the adjustment mode.






Level


- Close-up** : Makes appropriate adjustment for images such as still objects and plants.
- Near view** : Makes appropriate adjustment for the background.
- Distant view** : Gives vivid brightness and contrast to a landscape image.
- Beautiful skin** : Gives an effect to make the skin look white and smooth on a portrait image.
- Tanned** : Gives an effect to make the skin look tanned on a portrait image.
- Pale** : Gives an effect to make the skin look pale on a portrait image.
- Drunk** : Gives an effect to make the skin look ruddy on a portrait image.

- The adjustment mode can also be selected by pressing  and  to .

4 Adjust the level of the effect and press .

- Press  to increase or decrease by 1 level.
- Press  to maximize and press  to minimize.

5 Press and select *Save*.

- Adjusted still image is saved in the same folder as a new still image.
- Select *As frame/stamp* to save as images for frame or stamp.
Images that can be available as frames/stamps 

Setting the operating conditions of images

Settings

Default View format: Display 12 icons Display title: Yes Display number: Yes Display comments: Yes
Scale up image: No Scale down image: Yes Sound effect: Yes

1 Press on the stand-by display.


2 Press .

3 Select each item to set.

- View format** : The image list is set to 12 thumbnail display by *Display 12 icons* or title display by *List view*.
- Display title** : Sets whether to show a display name on the image display screen.
- Display number** : Sets whether to display the number of images on the image display screen.
- Display comments** : Sets whether to display comments on the image display screen.
- Scale up image** : When smaller images than display area are displayed, sets whether to enlarge up to full display area with horizontal and vertical ratio of the image held.
- Scale down image** : When larger images than display area are displayed, sets whether to reduce to fit on the display area with horizontal and vertical ratio of the image held.
- Sound effect** : Sets whether to play effect sounds set for images when an image is displayed.

4 Press .

INFORMATION

In the image list or image display screen, press  and select *Settings*.

Menu 52

Playing video/i-motion

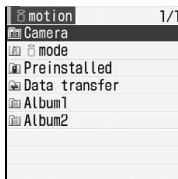
i-motion

You can play video/i-motion saved in *i-motion* of *Data Box* in FOMA terminal.

- You can play video/i-motion of the image size of 48 x 48 to 320 x 240 (MP4 file, ASF file).

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select a folder.

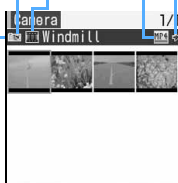


The following video/i-motion files are saved in each folder:

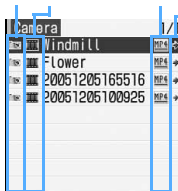
- Camera** : Videos recorded with Movie Camera or the sounds recorded with Sound Recorder
- mode** : i-motion downloaded from sites or i-motion Mail
- Preinstalled** : Videos preinstalled by default
- Data transfer** : Video/i-motion moved/copied from the miniSD memory card or received by data communication
- Album** : Video/i-motion moved from another folder
 - Not displayed by default. To create P339
 - You can enter any name of album when creating it.

- Press when switching to the folder list in the miniSD memory card.
- Operating procedure of the miniSD memory card P335

3 Place the cursor at the video/i-motion to play.



Thumbnail display
Display name of video/i-motion at the cursor position and icons



Title display
Video/i-motion list

① Origination

: Preinstalled : i-mode : Camera : Data transfer

② Restriction

: No restriction : Restriction on the number of times
 : Restriction on expiration : Restriction on period

③ File types

: MP4 : MP4 with bookmark
 : ASF*1 : ASF with bookmark*1

*1 Only the file saved in the miniSD memory card can be replayed.

④ File restriction

(in blue) : Attaching to mail or output from FOMA terminal available
 (in gray) : Attaching to mail or output from FOMA terminal unavailable

- Each time you press , thumbnail display and title display are switched.
- Sounds recorded with Sound Recorder, video/i-motion only with sound (without image such as singer's vocals) and video/i-motion with the UIM operation restriction function set are displayed as in thumbnail display.
- Display name and other items can be changed. P342

Sending the video/i-motion via mail (i-motion Mail)

① Place the cursor at the video/i-motion to send and press .

Mail composition screen with selected video/i-motion attached is displayed.




- Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail P229

4 Press and replay video/i-motion.










① **Play volume:** Indicates current volume.

② **Playing status**

 : in play  : in stop  : in pause

③ **File types**

 : only sound  : sound + image  : only text
 : image + text  : only image  : sound + image + text
 : sound + text

④ **Enlargement/reduction**

 : enlarged  : reduced

No icon: in same size

- Whether to enlarge or not can be set in Settings.

⑤ **Playing duration:** Indicates the current playing time/full duration in values and a bar.

- In case of video/i-motion with bookmark set, a confirmation screen asking whether to play from the bookmark position is displayed. If you select *Yes*, video/i-motion is played from the bookmark position and if you select *No*, video/i-motion is played from the beginning.



• The following operations are available while playing video/i-motion:

 : Pause/replay  : Stop
 : Play at fast speed  (in stop) : Play from the beginning
 /  : Adjust volume  : Return to the list screen

- When closing FOMA terminal during playback, playback is paused.

Setting a bookmark

① Press  and select *Yes* at the position to set bookmark during play.


- If a bookmark is already set, it is discarded and the new bookmark is set in the new position.
- Press  to replay continuously.
- Stop play and press  to cancel bookmark.
- You cannot set from i-motion whose replay restriction is set or when replaying from the phonebook registration screen, mail composition screen, setting screen of sound or display and i- ppli etc.


Switching horizontal and vertical size of images

① Press .

- Each time you press, horizontal and vertical size of images are switched.
- For video/i-motion with the ticker, switching is unavailable.

INFORMATION

When saving video/i-motion, acquisition of thumbnail images may not be available due to the effect of other functions. Such video/i-motion is displayed as  in thumbnail display.

While playing video/i-motion, if other functions such as incoming call/mail and schedule alarm are activated, play is paused. If you end the other functions and press , a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to replay from the interrupted position. If you select *Yes*, video/i-motion is played from the interrupted position and if you select *No*, video/i-motion is played from the beginning.

When video/i-motion is played in i- ppli, incoming mail or received messageR/F may cause incorrect playback.


When video/i-motion with sound is played during Silent Mode, a confirmation screen appears. If you select *Yes*, it is replayed in accordance with the volume in Settings of i-motion.

During privacy mode (*Authorized access* set for *i-motion*), entry of the terminal security code is required to play video/i-motion.

During a voice call, you can display the video/i-motion list, but cannot play video/i-motion.

When replay restrictions for i-motion are set

A confirmation screen is displayed before playback starts. Replay restriction types and contents to check are as follows:


Restriction	Status	Description
Restriction on the number of times	Playback counts remain	<i>Available to play x (x/all) time(s). Play?</i> is displayed. To play, select <i>Yes</i> ; to stop, select <i>No</i> .
	Max. number of playbacks reached	<i>This data can no longer be replayed. Delete?</i> is displayed. To delete, select <i>Yes</i> ; to cancel, select <i>No</i> .
Restriction on expiration	Within expiration	<i>Available to play until year/month/date hour: minutes. Play?</i> is displayed. To play, select <i>Yes</i> ; to stop, select <i>No</i> .
	After expiration	<i>Replay period has expired. Delete?</i> is displayed. To delete, select <i>Yes</i> ; to cancel, select <i>No</i> .
Restriction on period	Within period	<i>Available to play From year/month/date hour: minutes to year/month/date hour/minutes. Play?</i> is displayed. To play, select <i>Yes</i> ; to stop, select <i>No</i> .
	Before period	<i>Replay period has not yet started.</i> is displayed. Press  to return to the video/i-motion list.
	After period	<i>Replay period has expired. Delete?</i> is displayed. To delete, select <i>Yes</i> ; to cancel, select <i>No</i> .

- You can check remaining playback counts, replay expiration and replay period in View Detail Info.
- Even if you change the date and time, expiration time and period of restriction cannot be changed.
- The date and time information may be reset if the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal for an extended period of time. If this happens, i-motion with replay restriction on expiration or period cannot be played.

Setting video/i-motion to the stand-by display or phonebook data


- Video/i-motion without an image, i-motion whose replay restriction is set and i-motion whose image size is beyond 320 x 240 cannot be set as the stand-by display.
- Video/i-motion can be set for the phonebook, Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion) or incoming image when the image size is Sub-QCIF (128 x 96) or QCIF (176 x 144). However, only the video/i-motion with only image can be set for the phonebook or incoming image.
- Only the video/i-motion for which *Available* is set for ring tone and incoming image settings in detail information can be set as Movie ringtone and incoming image.


1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the video/i-motion to set and press  .


3 Select the item to set.


Setting as the stand-by display

① Press  and select *YES*.

- Video/i-motion that can be enlarged is set to the same size of image by selecting *YES (Same size)* and set to enlarged size in accordance with display area by selecting *YES (Large size)*.
- If the i- ppli stand-by display has already been set, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to cancel it. If *YES* is selected, the i- ppli stand-by display is canceled.
- Setting is unavailable while the stand-by ticker is displayed.
- To replay video/i-motion set for the stand-by display 

Adding to the phonebook

① Press .

- Registering entries to the phonebook 

Updating phonebook data saved already

① Press **[3 DEF]** and select **phonebook data to update**.

- If video/i-motion has already been set, it is replaced by the selected video/i-motion.

Setting as Movie ringtone

① Press **[4 GHI]** and press **[1 *]** to **[6 MNC]**.

Setting as memory ring alert (call, mail)

① Press **[4 GHI]** and press **[7 PRS]** or **[8 TUV]**.

② Select **phonebook data to set**.

③ Check the contents and press **[OK]**.

- If any tone has already been set, it is replaced by the selected video/i-motion.
- Entering phonebook No. ➔ Step 3 of “Editing saved phonebook entries” in P106

Setting as incoming images (voice call/video-phone call)

① Press **[5 RLT]** and press **[1 *]** or **[2 PRS]**.

- If an incoming image has already been set, it is replaced by the selected video/i-motion.

INFORMATION

The following video/i-motion files cannot be set as Movie ringtone or incoming image:

- Video/i-motion files sent back to your FOMA terminal after transferred to a PC or other FOMA terminal using infrared communication or the data link software
 - Video/i-motion files copied/moved to FOMA terminal from the miniSD memory card (including the case where files are copied/moved to your FOMA terminal again after saved in the miniSD memory card)
- Some video/i-motion files cannot be set to the stand-by display, etc.

Editing video/i-motion

You can edit video/i-motion saved in *i-motion*.

- The following video/i-motion can be edited:
 - The video shot with your terminal
 - The video/i-motion without file restriction or replay restriction except the video shot with your terminal
- Video/i-motion files registered by default cannot be edited. Besides, some video/i-motion such as the video in ASF format cannot be edited depending on the file format.
- Icon definitions and key operations when playing video/i-motion during editing ➔ P318

Clipping the still image

Capture

You can specify any position while playing video/i-motion and clip as a still image (Capture).

- Tickers are not displayed in the captured still image.

1 Press **[OK]** **[2 ABC]** on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Select video/i-motion to capture.

The selected video/i-motion is played back.

- 3 Press **Menu** **3 DEF** at any position during playback.
- To redo the operation of clipping, press **Menu** and select *Yes*.

- 4 Check the image and press **□**.



The still image is captured and saved in *Camera* folder of My Picture (*Image*).

- To capture continuously, press **⏮**, resume a play and repeat Step 3 to 4.

Sending the captured still image via mail

- ① Press **✉**.

Captured still image is saved in *Camera* folder of *Image* (My Picture) and the mail composition screen with still image attached is displayed.

- If the file size of still image is below 9,000 bytes, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to paste in the text field. Select *Yes* to paste in the mail message.
- Depending on the size of video, it cannot be attached to mail.

INFORMATION

You can capture even during a pause or after a play is finished.

A still image captured is received as mail with URL (i-shot Mail) at the mova terminals.

Clipping the video

Custom Edit

You can clip a part of video/i-motion from the beginning to the desired position.

- 1 Press **⏮** **2** **か ABC** on the stand-by display and select a folder.

- 2 Place the cursor at the video/i-motion to clip and press **Menu** **4 た GHI** **1** **あ @**.

The custom edit mode is activated and **■** is displayed under the playing duration.

- When tickers are inserted in video/i-motion, a screen indicating that tickers may be deleted is displayed. Select *Yes* to activate the custom edit mode. In this case, tickers may be deleted depending on the clipping position.

- 3 Press **⏮** (start position), adjust the clipping end position and press **⏭** (end position).



- Press **↶** to retry the operation or press **Menu** to stop clipping after pressing **⏮** (start position).

- If you have played until the end without pressing **⏭** (end position), clipping is terminated automatically. End position is set before the end of file by approximately 1,000 bytes.

Current file size/
Maximum file size

Setting the limit of clipping size

- Setting is available only when the original file size exceeds 290 Kbytes.

① Press in the screen before pressing (start position).

② Select *Msg attach: Small (290 Kbytes)*, *Msg attach: Large (490 Kbytes)* or *No settings (original file size)*.

- When video/i-motion file size during clipping has reached the set clipping size, clipping ends automatically.
- When the original size of video/i-motion file exceeds 490 Kbytes, *No settings* is unavailable.

4 Enter a display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) and press .

The clipped video/i-motion is saved as new data in the same folder as the original video/i-motion.

Playing video/i-motion

① Press .

Sending the video/i-motion via mail

① Press .

The clipped video/i-motion is saved and the mail composition screen with video/i-motion attached is displayed.

- Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail ➡ P229

INFORMATION

More than one video clip can be clipped out of the same video/i-motion file.

Clipping video/i-motion specifying the file size

Edit by Size

You can clip a part of video/i-motion from the beginning up to the specified file size.

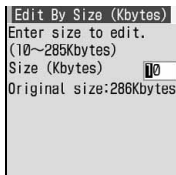
- File size which you can specify is 10 to 490 Kbytes. However, the maximum size varies depending on the video/i-motion to clip.

1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the video/i-motion to clip and press .

- When tickers are inserted in video/i-motion, a screen indicating that tickers may be deleted is displayed. Select *Yes* to activate the edit by size mode. In this case, tickers may be deleted depending on the clipping position.

3 Enter the size to clip.



Settings to the size that can be attached to mail

- Setting is available only when the original file size exceeds 290 Kbytes.

① Press .


② Select *Msg attach: Small (290 Kbytes)* or *Msg attach: Large (490 Kbytes)*.

- When *Msg attach: Small* is selected, 290 is automatically set and when *Msg attach: Large* is selected, 490 is set to the clipping size.

4 Enter a display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) and press .

The clipped video/i-motion is saved as new data in the same folder as the original video/i-motion.


Playing video/i-motion

① Press .

Sending the video/i-motion via mail

① Press .

The clipped video/i-motion is saved and the mail composition screen with video/i-motion attached is displayed.

- Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail 

INFORMATION





- More than one video clip can be clipped out of the same video/i-motion.
- Clipped video/i-motion may be smaller than the specified file size.

Inserting the ticker

Edit Ticker

- The number of tickers inserted differs depending on video/i-motion (up to 10).
- The contents of tickers already inserted cannot be changed. In case of inserting a new ticker, tickers already inserted are all deleted.

1 Press   on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the video/i-motion to insert tickers and press    .

- If tickers are already inserted, a confirmation screen asking whether to delete and edit tickers is displayed. If *Yes* is selected, all tickers inserted already are deleted.

Deleting tickers

① Press     and select *Yes*.


All tickers inserted are deleted. Go to Step 9.


3 Select each item to set.

Time interval to show : Sets how to arrange tickers.

- Set to *User specified* to specify any position to insert the ticker.
- Specify the number of tickers when setting to **Regular interval**. Tickers of the number specified are inserted at regular intervals within video/i-motion replay duration.


Tickers : Enters the number of tickers (1 to 10) when setting **Time interval to show** to **Regular interval**.




4 Press .

- When **Time interval to show** is set to *User specified*, a confirmation message appears and  is displayed under the playing duration. Go to Step 5.
- If **Regular interval** has been set for **Time interval to show**, go to Step 7.

5 Press to start playing and press on the ticker inserting position.

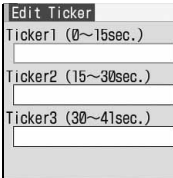


Playing is not interrupted. Each time you press , the inserting position of tickers is set.

- When replay is started, the first inserting position is set at the beginning.
- Press  to end the setting. Go to Step 6.
- When you have set up to 9 tickers or playback of a video/i-motion file ends, the settings are automatically ended. Go to Step 6.
- To display 1 ticker from the beginning to the end, press  to start playing and press .

6 Select *Yes*.

7 Select *Ticker* field and enter characters (up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters).



Decorating tickers

① Place the cursor at the ticker to decorate and press .

② Select each item to set.

Ticker1 to 10 : Displays characters entered on the ticker edit screen. Enter characters.

Font color : Sets the text color. If it is set to *Default*, White is set.

- The setting of *Font color* has no effect on pictograms.

Background color : Sets the background color of tickers. If it is set to *Default*, Black is set.

Scroll : Sets a text scrolling.

- Setting *Scroll in* gradually brings into view characters that are not visible at first.
- Setting *Scroll out* gradually sends characters out of view that are visible at first.
- Setting *Scroll in & out* brings into view characters that are not visible at first and sends them out of view.
- When setting to *None*, characters cannot be scrolled.

Scroll direction : Sets the scroll direction when set to other than *None*.

Word alignment : Sets the display position of characters.


Font size : Sets the size of characters.

Under line : Sets to underline the characters.

Blink : Sets to flash the characters.

③ Press .

8 Press .

- In case that the file size of video/i-motion without ticker is 300 Kbytes or less, if the file size of video/i-motion with ticker exceeds 300 Kbytes, a message appears meaning that the mail attachment (small) size is exceeded. Press  to insert the ticker.

9 Enter a display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) and press .

The video/i-motion with tickers is saved as new data in the same folder as the original video/i-motion.

Playing video/i-motion

① Press .

Sending the video/i-motion via mail

① Press .



The video/i-motion with tickers is saved and the mail composition screen with video/i-motion attached is displayed.

- Video/i-motion that can be attached to mail 

Setting the operating conditions of video/i-motion

Settings

Default View thumbnails: Yes Size adjustment: Normal Repeat play: ON Display light: Always on
Volume: Level4

1 Press   on the stand-by display.

2 Press  .

3 Select each item to set.

View thumbnails


: Video/i-motion list is set to 12 thumbnail display (*Yes*) or title display (*No*).

Size adjustment

: If *Zoom* is set, video/i-motion is enlarged/reduced and displayed with horizontal and vertical ratio of the image held in accordance with display area when the display area and the size of video/i-motion to play are unsuitable.

Setting *Normal* does not zoom in/out. However, when larger video/i-motion than display area is played, it is reduced with horizontal and vertical ratio of the image held in accordance with display area.

Repeat play : Specifies whether to repeat play while playing an album.

Display light : If *Always on* is set, the lighting on the display stays on while video/i-motion list is displayed or replaying. If you set *Terminal settings*, it depends on Display Light Setting .

Volume : Specifies the sound volume during video/i-motion play.

4 Press .

INFORMATION

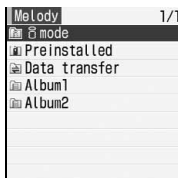
In the video/i-motion list, press  and select *Settings*.

Playing melodies

Play melodies saved in *Melody* of *Data Box* in FOMA terminal.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select a folder.

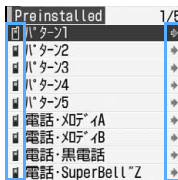


The following melodies are saved in each folder:

- mode** : Melodies downloaded from sites or i-mode Mail
- Preinstalled** : Melodies preinstalled by default
- Data transfer** : Melodies obtained by Bar Code Reader, melodies moved/copied from the miniSD memory card or melodies received via data communication
- Album** : Melodies moved from another folder
 - Not displayed by default. To create
 - You can enter any name of album when creating it.

- Press to switch to the miniSD memory card folder list. Operating procedure of the miniSD memory card

3 Place the cursor at the melody to play.



① **Origination**

: i-mode : Data transfer : Preinstalled

② **File restriction**

- ➔ (in blue): Attaching to mail or output from FOMA terminal available
- ➔ (in gray): Attaching to mail or output from FOMA terminal unavailable
- Display name and other items can be changed.

Sending the melody via mail

① **Place the cursor at the melody to send and press** .

- If the receiver is other than FOMA D701i, D901i or D901iS, received melody may not be correctly played.
- Melodies that can be attached to mail

4 Press to play melody.



① **Play bar**: Indicates the current play position.

② **Play volume**: Indicates the current volume.

• The following operations are available while playing a melody:

- : Adjust volume : Play the previous/next melody
- : Stop

INFORMATION

When trying to play melody in Silent Mode, a confirmation screen appears. When you select *Yes*, melody is played in the volume of *Settings* of the melody.

During a voice call, you can display the melody list, but cannot play melody.

Setting melodies for ring tone/on-hold tone

- 1 Press **3 DEF** on the stand-by display and select a folder.
- 2 Place the cursor at the melody to set and press **2 ㊦ ARC**.
- 3 Select the type of sound to set.

Setting as ring tone for voice call, mail, chat mail, Message R/F or video-phone call, or on hold-tone

- ① Press **1 ㊦** to **7 ㊦**.

Setting as memory ring alert (call, mail)

- ① Press **8 ㊦** or **9 ㊦**.
- ② Select phonebook data to set.
- ③ Check the contents and press .

- If a ring tone has already been set, the ring tone is replaced by the selected melody.
- Entering phonebook No. ➔ Step 3 of "Editing saved phonebook entries" in P106

INFORMATION

In the melody play screen, press and select *Use melody*.

Setting the operating conditions of melodies

Settings

Default Volume: Level4 Lighting pattern: Sync melody Lighting color: unselectable Vibrate alert: OFF
Play position: play all Play background: Standard

- 1 Press **3 DEF** on the stand-by display.
- 2 Press **5 ㊦**.
- 3 Select each item to set.

Volume : Sets the volume in playing melodies.

Lighting pattern

: Sets whether to light/flash the call indicator in playing melodies.

- When setting to *Sync melody* or *OFF*, the lighting color cannot be set.
- When *Sync melody* is set, the lighting color and lighting/flashing pattern will change in synchronization with the melody.

Lighting color : Sets the color and lighting/flashing pattern of the call indicator in playing melodies.




Vibrate alert : Sets the vibrator pattern in playing melody.

Play position : Specifies whether to play the whole (*play all*) or part of the melody (*Play partial*) in playing melody.

Play background


: Sets the image to be displayed on the screen for playing melody.

Selecting the background image from *Image* (My Picture)

- ① Select *Play background field* and press .
- ② Select the *select image field*.
- ③ Select a folder and select an image to be set as background.
 - Place the cursor at the image and press  to display it. Press  to set.

4 Press .

INFORMATION

In the melody list and melody play screen, press  and select *Settings*.

Even if *Sync melody* is set for *Lighting pattern* or *Vibrate alert*, it may not be synchronized for some melodies.



Even if *Play partial* is set for *Play position*, partial playing may not be performed for some melodies.

Before using the miniSD memory card

You can save data such as shot still images, videos or melodies in the miniSD memory card or make backup of the phonebook entries, schedules, etc. In addition, video files or music data created with external devices (PC, etc.) can be saved in the miniSD memory card for playing with FOMA terminal (P471, P472) or the data of the miniSD memory card can be operated from a PC (P412).

- The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle. If you have no miniSD memory card, you can purchase it at electric appliance stores.
- Unformatted miniSD memory cards must be formatted with FOMA terminal before they can be used. The operation of the miniSD memory card whose format is stopped is not guaranteed. P337
- The miniSD memory card formatted by such as a PC may not operate in FOMA terminal correctly (Formatting may be unavailable).
- Still images in the miniSD memory card cannot be set as an icon, background image or the stand-by display. Set after moving/copying to FOMA terminal.
- FOMA terminals support commercial miniSD memory cards of up to 128 Mbytes (as of August, 2005). Perform the following procedure to see the updated information:
 - From FOMA terminal: *iMenu* メニューリスト (Menu List) ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) *My D-style D701i* クイックマニュアル (D701i Quick Reference Manual)
 - From PC: Mitsubishi Electric Corporation's web site at http://www.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp/d701i/FAQ_miniSDメモリーカード (memory card)
- To connect a PC with FOMA terminal, the FOMA USB connection cable (optional) is required.

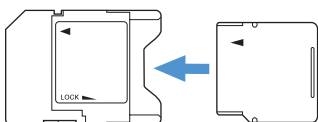
Usage precautions of the miniSD memory card

- Do not remove the miniSD memory card, switch off or apply impact while saving or deleting data, checking usage status or formatting. The data may be corrupted.
- Subjecting FOMA terminal to strong impact such as dropping when the miniSD memory card is attached may cause the miniSD memory card to pop out.
- Do not attach labels or stickers on the miniSD memory card.
- Do not attach the miniSD memory card to FOMA terminal if the card is damaged, soiled on the surface or deformed. It may cause failure.
-  is indicated at the upper part of the screen and the terminal is in the data transfer mode (same condition as out of service area) while data is being copied, moved or deleted, the miniSD memory card is being formatted or information is being updated, so FOMA terminal is not available for phone calls, i-mode connection or data communication. Also, you cannot switch to other functions by pressing .

- The miniSD memory card cannot be used while All Lock, PIM Lock or Lock on Close is on.
- In the miniSD memory card in which the data has been written and protected with other devices such as a PC, the data cannot be saved, deleted and formatted.
- Data saved from other devices into the miniSD memory card may not be displayed or played on FOMA terminal. Also, the data saved in the miniSD memory card from FOMA terminal may not be displayed or played on other devices.
- Depending on the miniSD memory card you are using, the saved video may be distorted.
- It is recommended that the data saved in the miniSD memory card be separately backed up for storage. DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for accidentally erased or changed data.

Using with devices supporting the SD memory card

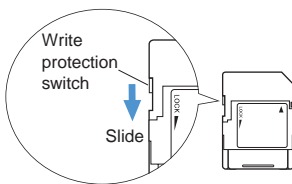
The miniSD memory card adapter allows you to use miniSD memory cards with devices which support the SD memory card.



Insert a miniSD memory card into a miniSD memory card adapter.

- To remove the card, pull it out.

Preventing erroneous deletion



When you use the miniSD memory card with a miniSD memory card adapter, the write protection switch on the adapter will allow you to prevent erroneous deletion of data on the card.

- Slide the write protection switch to the "LOCK" side.
- Use something with a fine tip to slide the switch.
- Be careful not to give damage to the miniSD memory card.

miniSD memory card folder structure

Displaying on FOMA terminal

The folder structure is as shown below:

(Different types of data are saved into different destinations.)

Item	Saved data	Maximum*2	
Data Box	<i>My picture</i>	Still images shot with the camera, JPEG, GIF of DCF*1 standard	9,999 items
	<i>Other image</i>	JPEG, animation GIF of DCF*1 non-standard	
	<i>Movie</i>	Video/i-motion recorded with the camera	
	<i>Melody</i>	Melodies	
PIM	<i>Phonebook</i>	Phonebook data, phonebook backup data	9,999 items in total
	<i>Schedule</i>	Schedule data, schedule backup data	
	<i>Received message</i>	Received mail data, backup data of received mail	
	<i>Unsent message</i>	Unsent mail data, backup data of unsent mail	
	<i>Sent message</i>	Sent mail data, backup data of sent mail	
	<i>Note</i>	Note data, backup data of notes	
	<i>Bookmark</i>	Bookmark data, backup data of bookmarks	

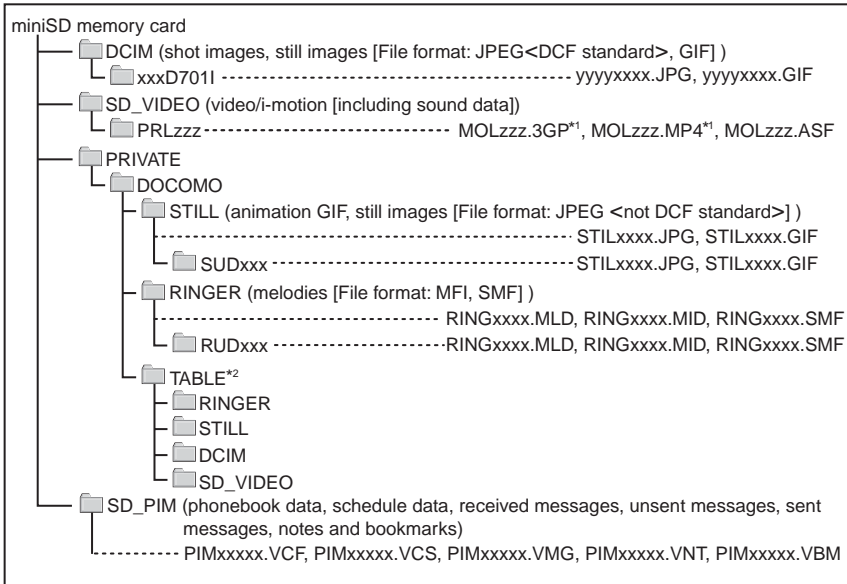
*1 DCF is an abbreviation of Design rule for Camera File system and it is a standard for file systems.

*2 Maximum data items which can be saved in the miniSD memory card from FOMA terminal regardless of the capacity of the miniSD memory card.

Inserting to and displaying on a PC

When data is moved/copied to the miniSD memory card from FOMA terminal or still images or videos shot with the camera are saved directly to the miniSD memory card, the folder compatible with the file is automatically created in the miniSD memory card. When the contents of the miniSD memory card are displayed on a PC, etc., the structure of the folders and files is as follows:

When saving data in the miniSD memory card from a PC, etc., save in the specified folder with the following file format and file name. If data is saved in the wrong folder or different file format, the data cannot be recognized on FOMA terminal.



*1 Files with extension of “3GP” or “MP4” are treated as MP4 format.

*2 Folders for data management. Never delete or rename a file in this folder. FOMA terminal cannot correctly display data.

- The rule of folder name and file name is as follows (Characters are all one-byte.):
 - 100 to 999 are placed in xxx of “xxxD7011”.
 - Any one-byte alphanumeric characters in yyyy of “yyyyxxxx” and 0001 to 9999 in xxxx.
 - A hexadecimal value 001 to FFF in zzz of “PRLzzz” and “MOLzzz” (In hexadecimal notation, one digit is represented with one of 16 alphanumeric characters 0 to 9 and A to F.)
 - 0001 to 9999 in xxx of “STILxxxx” and “RINGxxxx”
 - 001 to 999 in xxx of “SUDxxx” and “RUDxxx”
 - 00001 to 65535 in xxx of “PIMxxxxx”

INFORMATION

To use data copied to the miniSD memory card with a PC, etc. with FOMA terminal, updating the miniSD memory card is required on FOMA terminal.

If you change or delete the folder name in the miniSD memory card on a PC, etc., FOMA terminal cannot correctly display data.

Even if a still image larger than 1224 x 1632 in horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) size is saved in the miniSD memory card, it cannot be displayed on FOMA terminal.

Data of still images/videos/melodies available in the miniSD memory card

File format \ Operation	Operation	Copy/move to miniSD memory card	Copy/move to FOMA terminal	Attach to mail*1	Display contents
Still image in JPEG format	File size	Unlimited	500 KB	500 KB	1.5 MB
	Image size	Unlimited	1224 x 1632	Unlimited	1224 x 1632
Still image in GIF format	File size	Unlimited	500 KB	10,000 bytes	1.5 MB
	Image size	Unlimited	480 x 640	Unlimited	480 x 640
Video/i-motion in MP4, 3GP format (including sound data)	File size	Unlimited	500 KB	500 KB	Unlimited
	Image size	Unlimited	Unlimited	176 x 144, 128 x 96	48 x 48 to 320 x 240*2
Video/i-motion in ASF format	File size	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported	Unlimited
	Image size	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported	176 x 144, 320 x 240
Melody in MLD format	File size	Unlimited	100 KB	Not supported	100 KB
Melody in MID, SMF format	File size	Unlimited	100 KB	10,000 bytes	100 KB

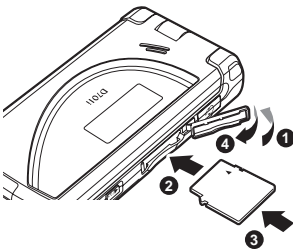
*1 For details on mail attachment, refer to "Attaching files" P229.

*2 Even if video/i-motion data exceed the playable image size, in case the sound format is playable or a ticker that can be displayed exists in the data, the sound or ticker is replayed.

Inserting/removing the miniSD memory card

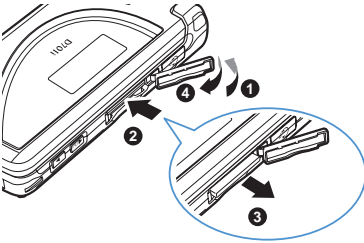
- Turn the power off before inserting/removing the miniSD memory card.
- In the miniSD memory card slot, do not insert anything other than the miniSD memory card.
- Do not touch metal contacts with your finger when you insert or remove the miniSD memory card.
- Insert the miniSD memory card correctly into FOMA terminal. You cannot perform operation such as copying data or making backup if you have not the miniSD memory card inserted correctly.
- Note that the miniSD memory card may pop out of the slot occasionally when you insert/remove it.
- Do not attach the miniSD memory card to FOMA terminal if the card is damaged or soiled on the surface or deformed. It may cause failure.

Attaching the miniSD memory card



- 1 Open the miniSD memory card slot cover.
- 2 Insert slowly the miniSD memory card properly with its printed surface upward.
- 3 Insert the miniSD memory card further until it clicks.
- 4 Close the miniSD memory card slot cover.

Removing the miniSD memory card



- ❶ Open the miniSD memory card slot cover.
- ❷ Push the miniSD memory card lightly, and leave your finger.
The miniSD memory card pops out a little.
- ❸ Remove the miniSD memory card slowly.
Pull it straight out.
- ❹ Close the miniSD memory card slot cover.

Exchanging the data between FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card

You can copy/move data between the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card and back up FOMA terminal data into the miniSD memory card.

Data type and operation contents exchangeable are as follows:

Data type		Operation
Data Box data (Still image, Video/i-motion, Melody)		One item, Selected items, All items (copy) One item, Selected items, All items (move)
PIM data	Phonebook, Schedule, Mail (received/unsent/sent), Bookmark	One item (copy), Backup, Recovery
	Note	Backup, Recovery

- The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle. If you have no miniSD memory card, you can purchase it at electric appliance stores.

Checking free space of the miniSD memory card

Check free space of the miniSD memory card before copying or marking backup of data.

- 1 Press **Menu** **6** **6** **6** on the stand-by display.

miniSD Card	
1	Data Box
2	PIM
Memory status	
█	
Used	: 848 KB
Free	: 13,656 KB
Total	: 14,504 KB

- Memory status** : The rate of used area to full capacity is indicated in bar.
- Used** : The current used area is indicated in numeric.
- Free** : The current free area is indicated in numeric.
- Total** : Full capacity of the miniSD memory card attached to FOMA terminal is indicated in numeric.

INFORMATION

If the used area is not 0 KB with no data saved, format the miniSD memory card.

The miniSD memory card capacity actually available is smaller than the capacity specified on the miniSD memory card.

If free capacity of the miniSD memory card is insufficient, data may not be saved. Save data after deleting unnecessary data or attaching another miniSD memory card.

Copying/moving data from FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card

- The data prohibited from outputting from FOMA terminal cannot be copied/moved (except for the data with file restriction set to *File restricted* on FOMA terminal or the data in the *Data transfer* folder).
- Create animation cannot be copied/moved.
- PIM data cannot be moved.
- UIM phonebook cannot be copied.

Example When copying/moving still images to the miniSD memory card

- 1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder in which still image to copy/move is saved.
 - 2 Place the cursor at the still image to copy/move, press and press or .
 - 3 Press to .
- Copying/moving selected items**
- ① **Select still images.**
 - Press to select or cancel an item and press to select or cancel all.
 - Each time you press , thumbnail display and title display are switched.
 - ② Press .
- 4 **Select Yes.**
 - Press to stop copying/moving.

INFORMATION

In the video/i-motion list or melody list, press and select *Move/Copy* *Move to miniSD* or *Copy to miniSD* *One item, Selected items* or *All items*.

In the phonebook list, press and select *IrDA/miniSD/UIM* *Copy to miniSD card*

In the schedule day view screen, press and select *IrDA/miniSD* *Copy to miniSD card*.

In the received mail list, sent mail list or unsent mail list, press and select *Move/Copy* *Copy to miniSD* *One item*.

In the Bookmark list, press and select *Move/Copy* *Copy to miniSD* *Copy one item*.

When copying/moving the data of *Image* (My Picture), *i-motion* or *Melody* in *Data Box* of FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card, the file name is changed automatically to the name for management.

If still images are copied/moved to the miniSD memory card from FOMA terminal, data size may increase.

If the images are copied/moved from the miniSD memory card to FOMA terminal, the data size remains the same.

When the phonebook data is copied, still images saved in the phonebook data are also copied. However, in case of displaying the phonebook data in the miniSD memory card, the still images are not displayed.

When returning the data to FOMA terminal, the still images are displayed.

Even if the phonebook data is copied/moved, the saved videos are not copied.

In case attached files (except video/i-motion) and the message text contained in mail exceed 10,000 bytes, the attached files are not copied.

Even when sent mail or unsent mail is copied, the attached video/i-motion file is not copied.

The member list or image (still image) saved in the schedule is not copied.

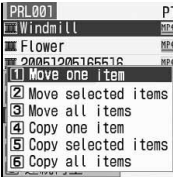
When the data set to the stand-by display or incoming ring alert are moved to the miniSD memory card, the stand-by display or incoming ring alert returns to default settings.

Copying/moving data from the miniSD memory card to FOMA terminal

- The maximum number of saved items in FOMA terminal ◀P39

Copying/moving data in Data Box to FOMA terminal

- 1 Press **Menu** **6** **6** **1** on the stand-by display and press **1** to **4**.
- 2 Select a folder.
- 3 Place the cursor at the data to copy/move and press **Menu** **3**.
- 4 Press **1** to **6**.



Copying/moving selected items

① Select data items.

- Press **0** to select or cancel an item and press **Menu** to select or cancel all.
- Up to 9 data items can be selected in the displayed page. Selection is available for single page.

② Press **0**.

5 Select *Yes*.

Data is copied/moved to each *Data transfer* folder in *Image* (My Picture), *i-motion* or *Melody*.

- Press **0** to stop copying/moving.

INFORMATION

If you search the data and display the list screen, copying/moving all items cannot be performed.

Copying PIM data into FOMA terminal

- Backup data (data with , , , ,) cannot be copied. Restore the data to FOMA terminal.

- 1 Press **Menu** **6** **6** **2** on the stand-by display and press **1** to **7**.
- 2 Place the cursor at the data to copy, press **Menu** **1** **1** and select *Yes*.

Backing up data saved in FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card

Make a backup of each PIM data in FOMA terminal into the miniSD memory card at once.

- 1 Press **Menu** **6** **6** **2** on the stand-by display and press **1** to **7**.
- 2 Press **Menu** **1** **4**.
- 3 Enter the terminal security code and select *Yes*.

The selected PIM data is backed up to the miniSD memory card as one data item integrated.

- Press **0** to stop backup. If terminated, the backup data will be discarded.

INFORMATION

Operation is available from the phonebook list, schedule list, mail list or Bookmark list as well.

- In the phonebook list, press and select **IrDA/miniSD/UIM Backup to miniSD**.
- In the schedule day view screen, press and select **IrDA/miniSD Backup to SD card**.
- In received mail list, sent mail list or unsent mail list, press and select **Move/Copy Copy to miniSD All items**.
- In Bookmark list, press and select **Move/Copy Copy to miniSD Backup**.

Restoring backup data of the miniSD memory card

- There are 2 ways of the recovery by adding and the overwritten recovery. Note that when overwritten and restored, each PIM data in FOMA terminal is overwritten and original data is deleted.

1 Press on the stand-by display and press to .

2 Place the cursor at the backup data, press and press or .

: Phonebook : Schedule : Received message/Unsent message/Sent message

: Note : Bookmark

- If recovery by adding is performed, the data will be saved as another data that is not data saved in FOMA terminal.
- If overwritten recovery is performed, data saved in FOMA terminal will be overwritten.

3 Enter the terminal security code and select **Yes**.

- Press to stop recovery. Backup data processed until the stopped point are restored in FOMA terminal.

Displaying data in the miniSD memory card

- If data in the miniSD memory card is changed or deleted by PCs, etc., the data in the miniSD memory card is not displayed properly on FOMA terminal. In such a case, update the miniSD memory card information.

Displaying data in Data Box

1 Press on the stand-by display and press to .

2 Select a folder.

Switching to the folder list of FOMA terminal

① Press .

3 Place the cursor at the data to check.

- Each time you press , thumbnail display and title display are switched (except for melody data).
- The image that exceeds the maximum size that can be displayed appears as in thumbnail display.

Sending the data via mail

① Place the cursor at the data to send and press .

Displaying detail information

- 1 Place the cursor at the data to display detail information and press .

Deleting one item

- 1 Place the cursor at the data to delete and press .
- 2 Select *Yes*.

Deleting multiple items

- 1 Press and select data.
 - Press to select or cancel an item and press to select or cancel all.
 - Up to 9 data items can be selected in the displayed page. Selection is available for single page.
- 2 Press and select *Yes*.

Deleting all

- 1 Press .
- 2 Enter the terminal security code and select *Yes*.

Jumping to the specified pages

- 1 Press and enter the number of page to jump.
 - When no page is entered, the first page is displayed.

Searching for data in the miniSD memory card

- 1 Press .
- 2 Enter the date and press .
- 3 Select the data to display.

Continuously playing video/i-motion (only video/i-motion)

- 1 Press .
- Video/i-motion in a folder is replayed continuously. After replaying the last video/i-motion, replay returns to the first video/i-motion.
- You can make the following operations during continuous play:
 - : Pause/replay / : Adjust volume
 - : Stop / / for over a second : Play the previous/next video/i-motion
 - When closing FOMA terminal, a display name of video/i-motion being played is displayed on the sub-display and playback is continued.
 - The following operations are available when FOMA terminal is closed:
 - : Adjust volume
 - for over a second : Play the previous/next video/i-motion
 - Each time video/i-motion is switched, it is displayed on the sub-display for about 15 seconds. Press to display again when extinguished.

4 Press to check the contents of data.

- Refer to the following pages for operating procedure of video/i-motion or melody:
 - Video/i-motion ◀ P318 • Melodies ◀ P326
- The following operations are available while the still image is displayed:
 - : Display detail information : Switch display/hide the file name : Compose mail

Displaying the PIM data

- 1 Press on the stand-by display.

- 2 Press to .

3 Place the cursor at the data to check.

Deleting one item

- 1 Place the cursor at the data to delete and press .
- 2 Select *Yes*.

Deleting multiple items

- 1 Press and select data.
 - Press to select or cancel an item and press to select or cancel all.
 - Up to 9 data items can be selected in the displayed page. Selection is available for single page.
- 2 Press and select *Yes*.

Deleting all

- 1 Press .
- 2 Enter the terminal security code and select *Yes*.

Jumping to the specified pages

- 1 Press and enter the number of page to jump.
 - When no page is entered, the first page is displayed.

Searching for data in the miniSD memory card

- 1 Press .
- 2 Enter the date and press .
- 3 Select the data to display.

4 Press to check the contents of data.

- For the display, refer to the following pages:
 - Phonebook P105
 - Schedule P373
 - Mail P248
 - Bookmark P190
- When selecting one PIM data item, detail of the selected data is displayed.
- When selecting backup data, all the data contained in backup data are listed as title.

INFORMATION

You cannot make a call or send mail from the detail screen of the phonebook or schedule saved in the miniSD memory card. And in the mail detail screen, replying, forwarding, editing and protecting cannot be executed.

The still images saved in the phonebook data are not displayed.

Schedules saved in the miniSD memory card do not sound an alarm for the set date and time.

Place the cursor at the mail address in the mail detail screen and press to register the mail address to the phonebook or press to register it to the phonebook by overwriting. Also, place the cursor at the image or melody attached and press to display/play and press to check the title. However, still images or i-motion beyond 10,000 bytes and the number of items cannot be displayed.

Managing the miniSD memory card

Formatting the miniSD memory card

Format

Format it when you delete all the data saved in the miniSD memory card or when a new miniSD memory card is used in FOMA terminal.

1 Press on the stand-by display and press .

2 Select the format method.

Quick format : Only the data management area in the miniSD memory card is formatted. Performing the minimum necessary processing is a method to shorten the format period. The saved data are all deleted. Use this method only when the miniSD memory card has been formatted and has no problem.

Regular format : Both the data management and data areas in the miniSD memory card are formatted. This method is used to format a new miniSD memory card.

3 Enter the terminal security code and select *Yes*.

- Press to stop formatting.

Updating the miniSD memory card information

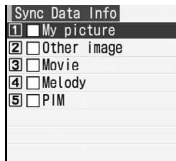
Sync Data Info

If the data is no longer correctly displayed on FOMA terminal because data in the miniSD memory card are changed, added or deleted using the other devices, update information in the miniSD memory card.

- If information update is performed, the display name of data is changed as follows:
 - In case of the data in *My picture* or *Other image*, it is changed to the file name.
 - In case of the data in *Movie* or *Melody*, it is changed to the title name. When the data has no title, it is changed to the file name.

1 Press on the stand-by display and press .

2 Select the item to update information.



- Press to select or cancel an item and press to select or cancel all.

3 Press and select *Yes*.

- Press to stop updating.

INFORMATION

When there are many data items saved on the miniSD memory card, updating information will take some time.

If available capacity becomes less than required for creating management information in FOMA terminal when data is saved in a miniSD memory card with other devices, data saved in the miniSD memory card may be no longer correctly displayed on FOMA terminal.

Checking the miniSD memory card

Scan Card

You can check the data saved in the miniSD memory card and restore it if there is any problem.

- The data may not be restored depending on the condition of the miniSD memory card.

1 Press on the stand-by display and press .

2 Select *Yes*.

Using the album




You can create albums (folders) in *Image* (My Picture), *i-motion* or *Melody* of *Data Box* in FOMA terminal and sort out the data. The album data in *i-motion* and *Melody* can be replayed at one time.

- Names of the fixed folder registered by default cannot be changed or deleted.

Creating albums

- Up to 100 albums in *Image* (My Picture) and up to 10 albums respectively in *i-motion* or *Melody* can be created.
- No album is set by default.

Example Creating the album in *Image*

1 Press    on the stand-by display.

2 Press   .

Changing the album name


① Place the cursor at the album to change and press   .

Deleting albums


① Place the cursor at the album to delete and press   .

- When data is saved in the album to delete, enter the terminal security code.

② Select *Yes*.

3 Enter the album name (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters) and press .

INFORMATION

In the folder list of *i-motion/Melody*, press  and select *Create album*.

An album with the same name as an existing one can be created.

If an album in which data set to the stand-by screen or ring alert is saved is deleted, each setting returns to the default. When data set to the phonebook is deleted, the operation follows the settings of Sound Setting or Mail/Call Image Setting.

Moving/copying data to the album

Moving data to the album

You can move data in the fixed folder to an album or move it from album to album.

- Data can be moved between *Deco-Mail picture* in *Image* (My Picture) and other folders as well.
- Data saved in *Preinstalled* folder cannot be moved.




Example Moving data in *Image* (My Picture)

1 Press    on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the data to move and press .

Moving selected items

① Press and select data.

- Press  to select or cancel an item and press  to select or cancel all.
- Each time you press , thumbnail display and title display are switched.


② Press .


Moving all the data in folder

① Press .

3 Select the destination album and select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

In the video/i-motion list, press  and select *Move/Copy* *Move to album* *One item, Selected items* or *All items*.

In the melody list, press  and select *Move/Copy* *Move to album* *Move one item, Move selected items* or *Move all items*.

In the image display screen, press  and select *Move/Copy* *Move to album*.

In the melody play screen, press  and select *Move/Copy* *Move to album* *Move one item* or *Move all items*.

Returning album data to the original fixed folder




Example Returning album data in *Image* (My Picture) to the original fixed folder

1 Press on the stand-by display and select an album.

2 Place the cursor at the data to return and press .

Returning selected items

① Press and select data.

- Press  to select or cancel an item and press  to select or cancel all.
- Each time you press , thumbnail display and title display are switched.


② Press .


Returning all the data in album


① Press .

3 Select *Yes*.


INFORMATION

In the video/i-motion list, press  and select *Move/Copy* *Return to folder* *One item, Selected items* or *All items*.

In the melody list, press  and select *Move/Copy* *Restore to folder* *One item, Selected items* or *All items*

In the image display screen, press  and select *Move/Copy* *Return to folder*.

In the melody play screen, press  and select *Move/Copy* *Restore to folder* *One item* or *All items*.

In *Deco-Mail picture* folder, preinstalled images are moved to  mode folder by returning data to the original fixed folder.

Copying data

- The following data cannot be copied:
 - Create animation, images in *Item* folder, images in *Preinstalled* folder of *Image* (My Picture)
 - i-motion whose replay restriction is set
 - Melody
 - File restricted data

Example Copying data in *Image* (My Picture)

- 1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.
- 2 Place the cursor at the data to copy and press .
The copied data are saved in the same folder as the original data.

INFORMATION

In the video/i-motion list or image display screen, press and select *Move/Copy* *Copy*.
If data copied in the album is returned to the fixed folder, it moves to the same fixed folder as the original data.

Playing the entire album data

You can play i-motion or melody data in an album continuously.

- The fixed folder data registered by default cannot be played.
- i-motion whose replay restriction is set is not played.

- 1 Press on the stand-by display for i-motion, and press for melody.
- 2 Place the cursor at the album to play and press .
 - Icon definitions in the album playback screen

When the video/i-motion album is played



- The following operations are available:
 - : Pause/replay
 - : Adjust volume
 - : Stop
 - for over a second : Playing the previous/next data
- When album repeat play in Settings is set to *ON*, is displayed and the album is played repeatedly.

When the melody album is played



- The following operations are available:
 - : Adjust volume
 - : Stop
 - for over a second : Play the previous/next melody

When closing FOMA terminal during playing an album

The display name of the data being played appears on the sub-display and the playback is continued.

- The following operations are available when FOMA terminal is closed:
 - : Adjust volume
 - for over a second: Play the previous/next data
- Each time data is switched, it is displayed on the sub-display for about 15 seconds.
Press to display again when extinguished.

INFORMATION

If you try to play album during Silent Mode, a confirmation screen is displayed. If you select *Yes*, it is replayed according to Settings of i-motion operation for the video/i-motion, or Settings of melody ring volume for the melody.

Check detail information. The contents of some information can be changed.

Checking detail information

Example Displaying the image detail information

- 1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.
- 2 Place the cursor at the images to check detail information and press .
 - Press to change a part of detail information.

INFORMATION

In the image display screen, video/i-motion list, melody list or melody play screen, press and select **Detail Info View**.

In the video/i-motion play screen, press and select **Detail information**.

Changing detail information

Example Changing the image detail information

- 1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.
- 2 Place the cursor at the image to change detail information and press .
- 3 Select each item to set and press .

INFORMATION

In the image display screen, video/i-motion list, melody list or melody play screen, press and select **Detail Info Edit**.

For video/i-motion and melody, selecting **Back to original** returns the display name to the original title preset.

Displayed items and their availability

- Depending on the data, some items cannot be changed even when shown as “Changeable” in the list.
 - : Changeable
 - : Unchangeable
 - : No display

Displayed item	Image	Video/i-motion	Melody	Description of display/change
Display name				Title displayed on FOMA terminal (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte except for melody; up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters for melody)
Title (Original)	-			Original title preset in data
File name				File name displayed when attaching data to mail (up to 36 one-byte alphanumeric characters, “.”, “-”, or “_”) • “.” cannot be used for the first character of the file name.
Type		-	-	Type of image

Displayed item	Image	Video/i-motion	Melody	Description of display/change
<i>File restriction</i>				When you send data to the other mobile phone via mail attachment, you can set whether to restrict sending data to the other mobile phone from the received party's mobile phone. • i-motion/melodies downloaded from sites, etc. cannot be changed.
<i>Creator</i>	-		-	Creator's name (up to 256 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) • The name registered in Own Number appears in <i>Creator</i> when you have recorded video using your FOMA terminal. If the name is not registered in Own Number, <i>Creator</i> is not set.
<i>Copyright</i>	-		-	The name of the author and the release date of the production (up to 256 characters regardless of one- or two-byte)
<i>Description</i>	-		-	Description of video/i-motion (up to 256 characters regardless of one- or two-byte)
<i>Format/File format</i>				File type ("---" for Flash movie)
<i>Sound</i>	-		-	Sound data type
<i>Display size</i>			-	Display size (not displayed for Flash movie)
<i>File size</i>				File size
<i>Duration/Playing time</i>	-			Playing time
<i>Saved date & time</i>				Saved date & time
<i>Use as frame</i>		-	-	Whether or not to set the image to be able to paste as frame image • Images more than the size of 352 x 288 and images composed with item image cannot be set.
<i>Use as stamp</i>		-	-	Whether or not to set the image to be able to paste as stamp image • Images more than the size of 240 x 320 and images composed with item image cannot be set.
<i>Comment</i>		-	-	Description of data (up to 100 characters regardless of one- or two-byte)
<i>Ring tone</i>	-		-	Whether the video/i-motion can be set to ring tone
<i>Receive display</i>	-		-	Whether the video/i-motion can be set to incoming image
<i>Restriction</i>	-		-	Replay restriction of video/i-motion
<i>Originated</i>				Origination of data
<i>Transfer for repair</i>		-		When your FOMA terminal is repaired, whether your data can be moved at a repair office designated by DoCoMo*1

*1 If your data cannot be moved or should be lost/modified, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of data.

INFORMATION

Even if *Yes* is set for *Use as frame* or *Use as stamp*, images are saved in the original folder and are not displayed in *Item* folder.

Still images/videos recorded with FOMA terminal, the image or video/i-motion and melody obtained via data transfer or the miniSD memory card can be attached to mail or sent by data transfer, regardless of the setting of *File restriction*.

Ring tone is always set to *available* for the video/sound recorded with the recording type of *Video + Voice* or *Voice only* set with your FOMA terminal, or the video/sound clipped from the video/sound. However, for the video of which the display size is 320 x 240, *Ring tone* is set to *unavailable*.

Detail information stored in the miniSD memory card may differ from the information displayed on FOMA terminal.

Deleting data

- Data saved in *Preinstalled* folder of *Image* (My Picture), *i-motion* or *Melody* cannot be deleted.

Example Deleting data of *Image* (My Picture)

1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Place the cursor at the data to delete and press .

Deleting selected items

① Press and select data.

- Press to select or cancel an item and press to select or cancel all.
- Each time you press , thumbnail display and title display are switched.

② Press .

Deleting all the data in folder

① Press and enter the terminal security code.

3 Select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

In the video/i-motion list or melody list, press and select *Delete* *One item*, *Selected items* or *All items*.

In the image display screen, press and select *Delete*.

In the melody play screen, press and select *Delete* *One item* or *All items*.

If data set for the stand-by display or ring alert are deleted, each setting returns to the default. When data set to the phonebook are deleted, the operation follows the settings of Sound Setting or Mail/Call Image Setting.

If you delete Create animation, the images composing Create animation are also deleted.

Sorting data

Sort

You can change the order of data of the list screen.

Sort Criteria: *Saved date & time* Order: *Descending*

Example Sorting data of *Image* (My Picture)

1 Press on the stand-by display and select a folder.

2 Press .

3 Select each item to set and press .

Sort criteria : Sets the sorting method.

Order : Sets ascending or descending order.



INFORMATION

In the video/i-motion list or melody list, press and select *Sort*.

If one-byte and two-byte character are mixed in *Display name*, the Japanese syllables may not match the sort result.

Infrared communication

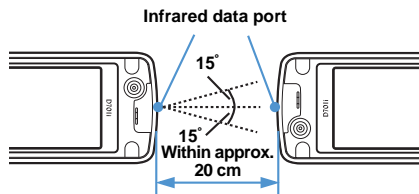
You can send and receive data to/from other FOMA terminals, mobile phones or PCs with an infrared communication function. Also, by using the i-ppli compatible with infrared communication, you can link to devices having an infrared communication function.

- Infrared communication is disabled while All Lock, PIM Lock, Lock on Close or Self Mode is set.
- Infrared communication and USB connection cannot be performed at the same time.
- Data prohibited from outputting from FOMA terminal cannot be sent/received. Note that the data whose file restriction is set to *File restricted* with the same terminal and data in *Data transfer* folder are excluded.
- During infrared communication,  is indicated at the upper part of the screen and the terminal is in data transfer mode (same status as outside the service area), so phone calls, i-mode connection and data communication are disabled. Also, you cannot switch to other functions by pressing .
- The infrared communication function of this terminal conforms to IrMC 1.1.
- Even if the terminal of the other party conforms to IrMC 1.1, some data may not be sent/received depending on the data type.
- The data including pictograms may not be displayed correctly when sent to other than i-mode terminal. Even when sending to i-mode terminal, the data including pictogram 2 may not be displayed correctly depending on the receiver's terminal.

Using infrared communication

The maximum communication range is approximately 20 cm and the angle is within 15 degrees from the center. Keep the FOMA terminal pointing at the remote device's infrared data port and do not move it until all the data have been sent or received.

- Infrared communication may not be performed properly in areas of direct sunlight or directly under fluorescent lights.



Notes in receiving the data from the other FOMA terminal via infrared communication

- The folder name that was set by the other terminal may not be taken over even if you receive all items of mail.
- If you receive mail, usual mail may be stored in the folder for the Message i-ppli in Inbox, Outbox or Unsent messages.
- Upon reception of all items of bookmark data, the data you will receive covers the entire of the folder created by the other terminal.
- When you receive bookmarks from any terminal other than D701i, the data may be stored in the top folder.
- If you receive images, video/i-motion or melodies from other than D701i, the data may be saved as notes.

Notes in sending the data of D701i to the other FOMA terminal via infrared communication

- The receiver may not save a large size file of images, video/i-motion or melodies because of the difference in the file size limit.

You can send data by selecting each item to send one at a time or by sending all items of the specified function data at once. The following data are available for sending:

Data type	Remarks
Phonebook*1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A phonebook entry for which Secret Attribute is set can be sent by sending one item only when Secret Mode is on. Own Number data is also sent when sending all is performed. Phonebook data cannot be sent when Keypad Dial Lock is on. When <i>Ph.book image sending</i> is <i>ON</i> for Data Transfer Setting, still images saved in the phonebook data can be sent together. However, the images may not be sent depending on the receiver's model.
Schedule*1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A schedule for which Secret Attribute is set can be sent by sending one item only when Secret Mode is on. The date and time setting is required.
Received mail*1/ Sent mail*1/ Unsent mail*1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Attached data in the text (a link item that activates i- ppli) are deleted.
Note*1	
Bookmark*1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Folder settings may not be reflected depending on the model of the other party. When sending all, bookmarks are sent from the end of the list.
Image	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A title of up to 18 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters can be sent. Characters that exceed the maximum number will be deleted. Data of over 500 KB cannot be sent.
Video/ i-motion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A title of up to 18 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters can be sent. Characters that exceed the maximum number will be deleted.
Melody	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A title of up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters can be sent.
Own Number	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Images may not be sent depending on the model of the other party.

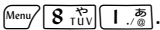
*1 Sending all is enabled.

- When data is communicated with terminals other than D701i or with infrared communication devices, some data may not be sent/received correctly. Items that cannot be saved by the receiver are discarded.

Sending single data item

Example Sending a phonebook entry

- 1 Make your party's FOMA terminal ready to receive.
- 2 Search the phonebook, place the cursor at the phonebook data to send and press



- 3 Select *Yes*.
 - Press to stop infrared sending.

INFORMATION

In the sent mail list, unsent mail list or received mail list, press and select *Send Ir data* Selected item.

In the Image list, video/i-motion list or melody list, press and select *Send Ir data*.

In the schedule day view screen, press and select *IrDA/miniSD* Send Ir data.






In the Own Number detail screen, press and select *Send own number*.

In the bookmark list or list of notes, press and select *Send Ir data* Send.


Sending all data items


You can send all the data of phonebook, schedule, mail, notes and bookmark via infrared communication.


- If you send all the data, the same authentication password between sender and receiver must be entered. Decide a 4-digit authentication password among 0000 to 9999 in advance.


- 1 Make your party's FOMA terminal ready to receive.
- 2 Press     on the stand-by display.
- 3 Select the type of data to send and enter the terminal security code.
- 4 Enter the 4-digit authentication password.
The entered authentication password is masked with "*" .
- 5 Select *Yes*.
 - Press  to stop infrared sending.

INFORMATION

In the bookmark list, sent mail list, unsent mail list, received mail list or list of notes, press  and select *Send Ir data* *Send all*.

In the folder list of bookmark, sent mail, unsent mail or received mail, press  and select *Send all Ir data*.

In the phonebook list, press  and select *IrDA/miniSD/UIM* *Send all Ir data*.

In the calendar for schedule, press  and select *IrDA/miniSD* *Send all Ir data*.

When all the data items are sent, order of the data may change in the receiver's data folder.

Receiving data by infrared communication

Receive Ir Data

You can receive data by selecting each item to receive one at a time or by receiving all items of the specified function data at once. Received data are saved directly in FOMA terminal or is saved in FOMA terminal after received data are saved temporarily in *INBOX* and checked.

The following data are available for receiving:

Data type	Storage after receiving	Order of saving data
Phonebook *1	Phonebook <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If you receive all phonebook items, Own Number data except your phone number is overwritten.• Receiving cannot be executed when Keypad Dial Lock is set.	Smallest free phonebook No.
Schedule *1	Scheduler <ul style="list-style-type: none">• You need to make date and time settings.	Order by date & time
Received mail *1	Inbox	Order by received date & time
Sent mail *1	Outbox	Order by sent date & time
Unsent mail *1	Unsent messages	Order by saved date & time
Note *1	Notepad	Order of reception
Bookmark *1	Bookmark	Top of the list
Image	<i>Data transfer</i> folder of <i>Image</i> (My Picture)	Top of the list

Data type	Storage after receiving	Order of saving data
Video/i-motion	Data transfer folder of <i>i-motion</i>	Top of the list
Melody	Data transfer folder of <i>Melody</i>	Top of the list
Own Number	Phonebook	Smallest free phonebook No.

*1 Receiving all is enabled.

- When invalid characters and so on are included in the received data, they are replaced by space or cut.

Receiving single data item

- You cannot receive data that exceed 500 Kbytes.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

The receive method selection screen is displayed.

2 Press or .

Confirm & save : Received data is saved temporarily in *INBOX*. After receiving is finished, the *INBOX* data list appears.

Save : Received data is saved in FOMA terminal. After receiving is finished, The receive method selection screen reappears without displaying *INBOX*.

3 Select *Yes*.

Receiving stand-by condition is activated.

4 Send single data item on the sender side.

- Press to stop infrared receiving.

- When selecting *Confirm & save* in Step 2, *INBOX* screen appears after receiving is finished.

Operation to save the data → Step 2 and the following steps of “Saving received data” in P349

When selecting *Save*, the receive method selection screen reappears after receiving is finished.

Receiving all data items

You can receive all the data of phonebook, schedule, mail, notes and bookmark via infrared communication.

- If you receive all the data, the same authentication password between receiver and sender must be entered. Decide a 4-digit authentication password among 0000 to 9999 in advance.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

The all receive method selection screen is displayed.

2 Press or .

Confirm & overwrite : Received data is saved temporarily in *INBOX*. After receiving is finished, *INBOX* data list appears. *Add* or *overwrite* can be selected when saving from *INBOX*.

Overwrite : Received data is overwritten and saved in FOMA terminal. After receiving is finished, the all receive method selection screen reappears without displaying *INBOX*.

- Note that the original data in FOMA terminal are all deleted by overwriting and replaced by new data.

- If you select *Confirm & overwrite*, go to Step 4.

3 Select *Yes* and enter the terminal security code.

4 Enter the 4-digit authentication password.

- The entered authentication password is masked with “*”.

5 Select *Yes*.

Receiving stand-by condition is activated.

6 Send all the data on the sender side.

- Press to stop infrared receiving.
- When selecting *Confirm & overwrite* in Step 2, *INBOX* screen appears after receiving is finished. Operation to save the data ◀Step 2 and the following steps of “Saving received data” in P349
- When selecting *Overwrite*, the all receive method selection screen reappears after receiving is finished.

INFORMATION

Receiving time differs depending on the type or number of received data. If you receive the data of large capacity or many numbers, receiving may take some time.

For precautions of saving data, refer to INFORMATION in “Saving received data”. ◀P350

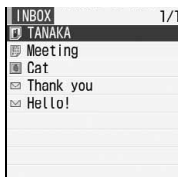
Saving received data

You can save data stored in *INBOX* temporarily to FOMA terminal.

- If *Confirm & save* is selected when receiving one data item, *Confirm & overwrite* is selected when receiving all the data items, *INBOX* screen is displayed automatically after infrared communication is finished.
- The data saved in FOMA terminal is deleted from *INBOX*.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select the data to save.



- / : single item/multiple items of phonebook data
- / : single item/multiple items of bookmark data
- / : single item/multiple items of mail data
- / : single item/multiple items of schedule data
- / : single item/multiple items of notes
- : image data
- : video/i-motion data
- : melody data

Deleting single item

- 1 Place the cursor at the data to delete and press .

Deleting all

- 1 Press and enter the terminal security code.

3 Select *Yes*.

Selecting multiple items



① Enter the terminal security code.

② Select *Add* to add or select *Overwrite* to overwrite.

- Note that the original data in FOMA terminal are all deleted by selecting *Overwrite* and replaced by new data.

INFORMATION

Depending on the size of data to save, the maximum number of items that can be received and saved in FOMA terminal may be fewer.

Mail data received from the equipment that allows to save by folder may be saved in the Message i- ppli folder. Place the cursor at the Message i- ppli folder and press   to check saved mail data.

ToDo (list function to manage business) data cannot be saved on D701i. When receiving all items of ToDo data and schedule data at once from the models other than D701i, only the schedule data is saved. Note that in case all items of only ToDo data are received, when overwriting, all the schedule data registered in D701i will be deleted.

When the data of receiving all items are saved by overwriting, the protected data in FOMA terminal are deleted.

Activating infrared communication mode

Infrared Communication Mode

Activate i- ppli by receiving the data to start i- ppli via infrared communication device having the function of starting i- ppli.


- It is necessary to download the specified software from sites, etc. beforehand.
- In case i- ppli is set not to start with i- ppli To function via an external device, i- ppli cannot be activated.

1 Press on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.

Receiving stand-by condition is activated.

2 Receive the data to start i- ppli via infrared communication device.

i- ppli is activated.

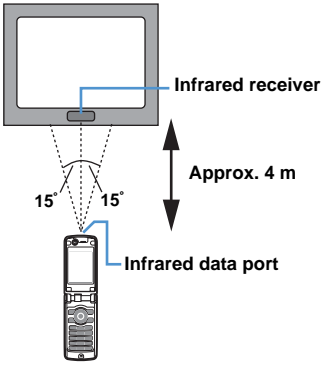
- Press  to quit receiving.

Using the infrared remote control function

FOMA terminal can be used as an infrared remote controller by downloading the i- ppli for infrared remote control.

- Download the i- ppli suited for the individual device.
- This function is unavailable when Self Mode is on, or during infrared communication.
- Communication may be influenced by the model of the supported device used and ambient luminance.
- Some equipment cannot be operated even if it is compatible with infrared remote control.

Remote control operation



Perform remote control operation with the infrared data port of FOMA terminal pointed at the infrared receiver of the supported device used (operating procedure differs depending on i- ppli). Angle for remote control is 15 degrees from the center and the distance is approximately 4 m at the maximum. However, the range depends on the operated device or ambient luminance.

INFORMATION

If preset i- ppli G ガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller) is activated, FOMA terminal can be used as an infrared remote controller for TV, etc.

Using G ガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller)


G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller is a useful application containing a TV program table and TV remote controller.

TV program information you want can be obtained easily at any place and any time. You will be informed of the program title, contents, starting and ending times and G-Code[®], etc of the station depending on the region where you live. You can inform soon your friends of the program title, broadcasting schedule, etc. via mail by the function of おすすめメール (Recommendation mail) when you find an interesting program.

Also, remote control operation is possible for your TV (Not compatible depending on some models).

- G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller can be used without monthly fee. Packet communication fee is charged separately.
- For details, refer to "i-mode User's Manual".

Activating G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller

- 1 Press  for over a second on the stand-by display and select a folder.
- 2 Select *G ガイド番組表リモコン* and select *Yes*.

G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller is activated. The initial setting screen appears when starting first. The main screen is displayed from the second time.

Making the initial setting

Make the initial setting according to the following procedures:

1 Register the basic information.

このメニューは「設定」メニュー表示時にのみ利用可能です。このメニューは初期設定が必要です。

▼視聴地域の郵便番号(7桁)
[] (7桁)

▼生まれた年
[] 年
[] 年

▼性別
● 男性
○ 女性

▼リモコン設定
[] (登録) 未設定

- 1 **Make the setting of 視聴地域の郵便番号(7桁)(a postal code number of the region; 7 digits), 生まれた年 (the birth year) and 性別 (the distinction of sex).**
- 2 **Select TV 登録 (TV registration).**

2 Making the setting of the remote controller.

リモコン登録

お持ちのテレビを選択し、設定して下さい。
[] を押すと赤外線を手動で送信
電源ON/OFFします。

未設定

- 1 **Press and select a manufacturer.**
- 2 **Point the infrared data port of FOMA terminal at TV and press .**
 - Confirm that the TV power on/off is available.
- 3 **Press .**

3 Press and then press .

4 Confirm the agreement.

ご利用前に必ず利用規約をお読みください。
利用規約に同意しますか？

はい いいえ

利用規約の概要

このテレビの送信機は、おおよそ初期設定で
です。(設定するチャンネル等で送信電力が
異なります。)
電波は、おおよそ100m以内の範囲で電波
が伝わることを確認してください。

- 1 **Select 利用規約を読む (Read the agreement), read it and press .**
- 2 **Select はい (Yes) if you consent to the agreement.**

5 Select channels to display program table.

画面表に表示するチャンネルを選択してください。
チャンネルは7つまで選択できます。

M-HK総合
 M-HK教育
 日テレ
 B-T-S
 クジテレビ
 アレ七
 テレビ東京

- 1 **Press to select channels.**
 - Press to select or cancel.
 - Up to 7 channels can be selected.
- 2 **Press and then press .**

6 Set the channel number to assign for each channel and press .

各チャンネルに当てるチャンネル番号を設定してください。

▼チャンネル設定

M-HK総合 [1]

M-HK教育 [2]

日テレ [3]

B-T-S [4]

クジテレビ [5]

アレ七 [6]

テレビ東京 [7]

Reading the main screen and operation

Current time — 12:44

Program table — Press **⏪** to select a channel.

Advertisement — Information is displayed by placing the cursor. Pressing **⏪** may allow to connect to the related sites via Web to function or use the functions of Mail to, Phone to.

Date/Time slot — Press **⏪** to change.

Next program exists. — Displayed in case multiple programs exist in the time slot displayed. Press **⏪** to switch programs.

Continued to the previous or next time slot — Slanted line appears in case the program is continued to the previous or the next time slot.

- The screen above is an information purpose only and may differ from the actual screen. The channel display depends on your region.

Performing the remote control operation

Item	Operation
Power ON/OFF	1
Select a channel	Placing the cursor at the program by ⏪ and ⏩
Switch the previous/next channel	Previous channel: 2 Next channel: 8
Adjust volume	Up: 6 Down: 4 Silent: 7
Switch the input mode	3

• Pressing **Menu** on the main screen allows to confirm each key function.

Operating the menu

Press **Menu** on the main screen to display the menu. Select the item from the menu and perform the following operations:

Item	Description
番組詳細 (Details of the program)	Detailed information of the program placed with a cursor is displayed by obtaining via communication.
おすすめメール (Recommendation mail)	i-mode mail can be composed with the program information entered in the text field.
HELP	How to use G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller is displayed.
最新に更新 (Updating to the latest)	Update the program table to the latest.
バージョン情報 (Version data)	Version of G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller is displayed. The version can be updated.
視聴チャンネル (Channel)	Register the channels.
リモコン登録 (Registration for remote control)	Make the setting of the manufacturer of the equipment for operating the remote control.
初期化 (Initialization)	Initialize the setting of G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller.
リモコンチャンネル設定 (Channel setting for remote control)	Make the setting of the channel.

Set operations for data transfer by infrared communication and USB connection.

Default End alert: OFF Auto Authentication: OFF Ph. book image sending: ON

1 Press **Menu** **6** **5** **3** on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

End alert : Specifies whether to enable communication end tone at the end of communication.
 • The communication end tone is disabled if Keypad Sound is set to **OFF** even if **End alert** is set to **ON**.

Auto Authentication : Specifies whether to automatically exchange authentication codes with the other party while connecting to USB.
 • To set **ON**, enter the terminal security code, enter 4 to 8-digit **Auth code: terminal** (FOMA terminal) and **Auth code: PC** (the other party) and press **OK**.

Ph.book image sending : Specifies whether to send images along with the all phonebook data.

3 Press **OK**.

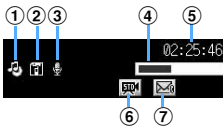
Recording sound with Sound Recorder

You can record sound with Sound Recorder. Recorded sound can be saved in the miniSD memory card as well as playing on FOMA terminal and can be attached to i-mode Mail to send.

- Recorded sound is saved as video/i-motion without video.
- The miniSD memory card is not included in the bundle. If you have no miniSD memory card, you can purchase it at electric appliance stores.

Recording screen and sound files

Reading the recording screen



- ① **Recording mode** : Indicates recording mode for sound.
- ② **Save to** : Indicates the memory to save. **P166**
FOMA: FOMA terminal **miniSD**: miniSD memory card
- ③ **Recording Type** : Indicates recording of sound.
- ④ **Indicator: During stand-by for recording**
 Indicates the usage rate of the memory to save.
 - The miniSD memory card storage area usage rate may not become 0 even when no recorded sounds have been saved.**During recording/pause**
 Indicates the rate of the recorded sound size to the file size (the savable size for *None*) set in *Size restrictions*.

- ⑤ **Counter** : **During stand-by for recording**
 Indicates the approximate maximum time of sounds that can be saved in FOMA terminal or the miniSD memory card at this time.
During recording/pause
 Indicates the approximate elapsed/remaining time (duration to the recording stop).
- ⑥ **Quality** : Indicates the quality of the sound to be saved. ●P357
- ⑦ **Size restrictions**
 : Indicates the size restrictions on the file to be saved. ●P358

Sound files

Item	Contents
File format	MP4 (MobileMP4)
Encoding method	AMR
Extension	3gp
File name/display name/title	Recorded date/time is automatically set. (Example) In case of 12:34:56 on Dec.5, 2005. 20051205123456.3gp • The file name and the display name can be changed after recording sound. ●P342 • When the date and time is not set in FOMA terminal, the file name, display name and title become "-----".
Mail attachment/output	Sounds can be attached to mail to send and also be output to PCs and other terminals using the miniSD memory card and dedicated data link software.

Recording time of sound

The sound recording time varies depending on the setting of quality and size restrictions.

- Quality and size restrictions can be set in *Recording Settings*. ●P165

Recording time of sounds that can be stored in FOMA terminal (estimates)

Item	Quality	File size restrictions	
		Message attachment (S) (290 KB)	Msg attachment (L) (490 KB)
Recording time for one operation	<i>STD</i>	Approx. 279 seconds	Approx. 473 seconds
	<i>HQ</i>	Approx. 183 seconds	Approx. 311 seconds
Maximum recording time in FOMA terminal	<i>STD</i>	Approx. 158 minutes	Approx. 159 minutes
	<i>HQ</i>	Approx. 104 minutes	Approx. 104 minutes

Recording time of sounds that can be stored in the miniSD memory card (estimates)

Capacity	Quality	File size restrictions		
		Message attachment (S) (290 KB)	Msg attachment (L) (490 KB)	None
16 MB	<i>STD</i>	Approx. 226 minutes	Approx. 226 minutes	Approx. 213 minutes
	<i>HQ</i>	Approx. 148 minutes	Approx. 149 minutes	Approx. 140 minutes
32 MB	<i>STD</i>	Approx. 471 minutes	Approx. 473 minutes	Approx. 462 minutes
	<i>HQ</i>	Approx. 309 minutes	Approx. 311 minutes	Approx. 303 minutes

Recording the sound

- Record the sound in as quiet place as possible where environmental noise is little.
- Even when *Silent* is set for Ring Volume or Silent Mode is active, the recording confirmation sound (shutter sound) is heard.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

The call indicator lights in blue, Sound Recorder is activated and sound recording mode is started.

2 Press or .

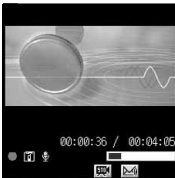


The shutter sound is heard, compact light flashes in red, call indicator flashes at 2-second intervals in blue and recording is started. switches to .

- The sound is recorded from the microphone.
- Press to pause recording. The compact light is turned on in red, the call indicator is turned on in green and switches to . Press or to restart recording.
- The following cases, recording is terminated and a confirmation screen appears. Go to Step 4.
 - When the sound file size exceeds the value set for size restrictions while recording.
 - When FOMA terminal is closed (When FOMA terminal is opened, a confirmation screen appears).

If *Auto save* for Recording Setting is set to *Yes*, recorded sound is saved and the recording screen reappears. Operations for confirming and saving are not required.

3 Press or .



The shutter sound is heard and recording is finished. A confirmation screen is displayed.

- When *Auto save* for Recording Setting is set to *Yes*, recorded sound is saved and the recording screen reappears. Operations for confirming and saving are not required.
- If is pressed to end the recording during in pause, the sound recorded up to that point can be saved.

4 Confirm the recorded sound.

- Go to Step 5 to save the sound immediately.
- Press to record again without saving.
- Press to replay the sound. When *Auto Play* in Recording Setting is set to *Yes*, the recorded sound is played automatically.

Sending the recorded sound via mail

① Press .

A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save the recorded sound.

Select *Yes* to save the recorded sound in FOMA terminal, and the mail composition screen is displayed.

- Even when the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, the recorded sound is saved in FOMA terminal.
- If the file size of the recorded sound exceeds 500 Kbytes, the sound cannot be attached.

Changing the title

- 1 Press **Menu** **3** **DEF** **1** **./@** and enter the title (up to 31 characters regardless of one- or two-byte) and press **□**.

- Changed title is valid after saving the sound.

Inserting a ticker

- 1 Press **Menu** **3** **DEF** **2** **ABC** and select **Yes**.

The recorded sound is saved in FOMA terminal and the ticker setting screen is displayed.

Follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Inserting the ticker". ●P323

- When the memory to save is set to the miniSD memory card, tickers cannot be inserted.

Switching memory to save between FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card

- 1 Press **Menu** **5** **JKL**.

- If the file size of the recorded sound exceeds 490 Kbytes, the destination to save cannot be switched.

Displaying the list of stored sounds

- 1 Press **Menu** **6** **MNO** and press **1** **./@** or **2** **ABC**.

- 5 Press **⏪** or **⏩**.

The recorded sound is saved in *Camera* folder of *i-motion*.

- When the miniSD memory card is selected as the memory to save, the sound is saved in *Movie* folder of the miniSD memory card.
- To confirm the saved sound immediately, press **□** and select the sound to confirm.

INFORMATION

Sound Recorder is activated by pressing **Menu** on the still image shooting screen or video recording screen and selecting **Switch modes** **Sound recorder** as well. Also you can switch by setting the recording type for Recording Setting to **Voice only** during stand-by for recording with Movie Camera.

For the usage precaution for Sound Recorder, refer to INFORMATION in "Recording videos with Movie Camera" ●P164.

For the procedure of playing the recorded sound, refer to "Playing video/i-motion" ●P316.

Changing the recording settings

Setting the sound quality

- 1 Press **⊕** on the recording screen and place the cursor at the quality icon.



- You can also press **6** **MNO** to select the icon of quality.

Icon of quality

- 2 Press **⊕** to switch the icon and press **⊙**.

SD **Standard** : Standard quality

HQ **High Quality** : The sound will be better, but the recordable time is shorter.

- You can also set by pressing **6** **MNO** to switch the icon and pressing **⊙**.

Restricting the file size

- 1 Press on the recording screen and place the cursor at the size restriction icon.



- You can also press to select the icon of size restrictions.

Icon of size restrictions

- 2 Press to switch the icon and press .

Msg attachment (S)

: Restricts the file size to 290 Kbytes. Data of this file size can be sent to the terminal unsupporting large capacity messages being attached to i-mode Mail.

Msg attachment (L)

: Restricts the file size to 490 Kbytes. Data of this file size can be sent to the terminal which supports large capacity message.

None


: No restriction for the file size. When the destination to save sound is set to *Phone* in Recording Setting, selection cannot be made.

- You can also set by pressing to switch the icon and pressing .

Other Convenient Functions

Multiaccess	Multiaccess	360
Multitask	Multitask	362
Setting to turn power on/off automatically at specified time	Auto Power ON/OFF	364
Ringling alarms at the set time	Alarm Clock	365
Setting to turn power ON automatically at the time specified for the alarm	Alarm Auto Power ON	367
Managing schedules	Scheduler	367
Registering often-used functions	Custom Menu	377
Recording your own name and mail address	Own Number	381
Recording other party's or your voice	Talking/Stand-by Voice Memo	382
Checking the call duration and the call cost	Call Duration/Call Cost	384
Reset the call cost automatically	Reset Call Cost	385
Setting to notify the limit of call cost	Call Cost Limit	386
Using Calculator	Calculator	387
Composing notes	Notepad	387
Using the earphone/microphone set with switch	Earphone/Microphone Set with Switch	389
Determining a service provider	NW Search Method	392
Checking current settings of functions	Confirm Settings	393
Resetting functions	Reset	393
Deleting registered data collectively	Delete All Data	394

Multiaccess is a function that three functions (voice call, packet communication and SMS) can be used at the same time.

- The icon for the function in progress is indicated on the task bar.
- While executing the function, press  to display *New Task* menu or *Switch Task* menu, and you can activate a new function or switch and the screen.
- The following functions can be used simultaneously:
 - Voice call: 1 line
 - i-mode, i- ppli, i-mode Mail or packet communication with PC connected: 1 line
 - SMS: 1 line

INFORMATION

Multiaccess combinations ●P466

During Multiaccess, you are charged separately for each communication.

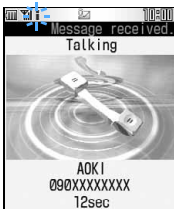
If many functions are executed at once, for example, receiving mail automatically while video or animation is playing or Camera is operated, the movements displayed on the screen may not appear smoothly or the sound may be disrupted during play.





Operations available during Multiaccess


Receiving i-mode Mail, SMS or a voice call during communication

Example Receiving i-mode Mail during a voice call

1 An i-mode Mail is received during a voice call.



During receiving mail,  and  blink at the top of the display and when receiving is finished,  blinks and  is indicated.

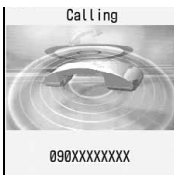
- Blink of  stops automatically.

Example Receiving a voice call during i-mode/packet communication

Receive an incoming voice call while displaying a site.



- Similarly, you can receive a voice call during packet communication with a PC connected.

1 A voice call is received during i-mode/packet communication.



- The screen displayed when a voice call is received depends on Priority Comm Mode.

2 Press .

- The talking screen and the site screen can be switched during operation. ●P363
- To end site display, press  on the site screen and select *Yes*.
- To end the call, press  on the talking screen.

Performing other communication during communication



Another communication can be performed at the same time without interrupting the communication under connection.

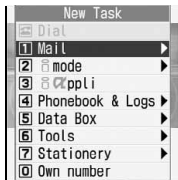
Example Connecting to i-mode during a voice call

1 Press  during a voice call.

New Task menu appears.




- If you switch the call to use the speakerphone function on the talking screen, the site screen can be viewed while talking.

2 Press  .



New Task menu



- The voice call remains connected, so you can continue talking without interruption.
- The talking screen and the site screen can be switched during operation. 
- To end site display, press  on the site screen and select *Yes*.
- To end the call, press  on the talking screen.

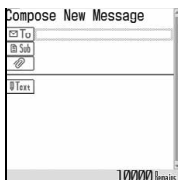
Example Sending i-mode Mail during a voice call

1 Press  during a voice call.




New Task menu appears.

- If you switch the call to use the speakerphone function on the talking screen, you can compose mail while talking.

2 Press  .




When sending the i-mode Mail has finished, the talking screen reappears.

- The voice call remains connected, so you can continue talking without interruption.
- The talking screen and the mail composition screen can be switched during operation. 
- To end message composition, press  on the mail composition screen.
- To end the call, press  on the talking screen.

Example Performing packet communication during a voice call

1 Send data from a PC during a voice call.

This action starts packet communication.

- The screen displayed during packet communication depends on Priority Comm Mode.
- The voice call remains connected, so you can continue talking without interruption.
- To end the call, press  on the talking screen.

Example Making a voice call during i-mode/packet communication

Make a voice call while displaying a site.

- Similarly, you can make a voice call during packet communication with a PC connected.

1 Press  during i-mode/packet communication.



New Task menu appears.

2 Press .



- Select **Phonebook & Logs** from **New Task** menu to call from the phonebook, received call history or redial data.


3 Enter the phone number and press .

- To end site display, press  in the site screen and select **Yes**.
- To end the call, press  on the talking screen.

Multitask

Multitask

Multitask allows you to execute several functions at the same time and perform operations by switching the screen.

- The icon for the function in progress is indicated on the task bar.
- While executing the function, **New Task** menu or **Switch Task** menu can be displayed to start a new function or switch the screen by pressing .
- The number of functions that can be performed simultaneously is up to 2. However, the function of keypad dialing or Own Number display can be activated even when other 2 functions are being performed.

Executing a new function

- Some functions may be restricted or unable to start simultaneously with one another.
Multitask combinations ◀P468

Example Displaying/registering a schedule during talking

1 Press during a call.

New Task menu appears.

- If you switch the call to use the speakerphone function on the talking screen, the schedule screen can be viewed while talking.

2 Press .



2005/12						
Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat
27	28	29	30	1	2	3
4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17
18	19	20	21	22	23	24
25	26	27	28	29	30	31
1	2	3	4	5	6	7

- The call remains connected, so you can continue talking without interruption.

3 View/register a schedule.


- To quit the schedule, press  on the schedule screen.
- To end the call, press  on the talking screen.

INFORMATION

The function available using Multitask may be restricted depending on the status of activating or lock setting. During a video-phone call, infrared communication, updating software/pattern data (Virus Scan Function), operation by Multitask is invalid.


If many functions are executed at once, for example, message arrives while video or animation is playing or Camera is operated, the movement displayed on the screen may not appear smooth or the sound may be disrupted during play.

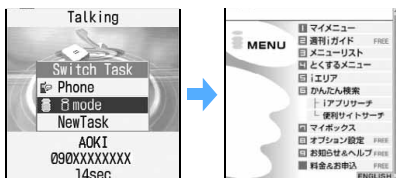
Switching functions to operate

Press  when multiple functions are executed to display *Switch Task* menu. Select from *Switch Task* menu to go to the desired screen and perform the required operation.




Example Switching from the talking screen to the site screens

1 Press  during a voice call.
Switch Task menu appears.




2 Select  mode.



Switch Task menu

- To bring back the talking screen, press  again and select *Phone* from *Switch Task* menu.
- You can start a new function by pressing  in *Switch Task* menu to display *New Task* menu. Press  again to return to *Switch Task* menu.

Item names displayed on the screen switching menu

<i>Phone</i>	<i>Video-phone</i>	<i>64K data comm.</i>	<i>AV comm.*1</i>
<i>Dial input</i>	<i>Mail</i>	<i>Compose message</i>	<i>Chat mail</i>
<i>Message R/F</i>	<i>Check new message*2</i>	 <i>mode</i>	 <i>ppli</i>
<i>PPP data comm.*3</i>	<i>Image</i>	 <i>motion</i>	<i>Melody</i>
<i>Camera</i>	<i>Movie Camera</i>	<i>Sound recorder</i>	<i>Bar code reader</i>
<i>miniSD card</i>	<i>i-Channel list</i>	<i>Phonebook</i>	<i>Received calls</i>
<i>Redial</i>	<i>Notepad</i>	<i>Scheduler</i>	<i>Calculator</i>
<i>Software update</i>	<i>Update definition</i>	<i>Receive SMS</i>	<i>Receive message*4</i>
<i>Notify (Alarm clock)*5</i>	<i>Notify (Scheduler)*6</i>	<i>Own number</i>	<i>Recorded messages</i>
<i>Voice memos</i>			

*1 Video-phone using the external device

*2 Checking new message and SMS

*3 Packet communication performed when connected to a PC


*4 Reception screen for i-mode Mail and Message R/F

*5 The alarm screen displayed at the time set in Alarm Clock

*6 The alarm screen displayed at the scheduled date/time

INFORMATION

The item names displayed in *Switch Task* menu may differ from the menu item names.

Screens cannot be switched for "cannot be selected" in Multitask combinations.  P468

Exiting all running operations

All functions are ended in Multitask at a time.

- 1 Press   during Multitask and select *Yes*.





Setting to turn power on/off automatically at specified time

Auto Power ON/OFF

- The date and time setting is required.
- Auto Power ON cannot be set to operate at the same time as Auto Power OFF.

Default Auto power ON: OFF Auto power OFF: OFF

Example Setting Auto Power ON

- 1 Press     on the stand-by display.

Setting Auto Power OFF

- ① Press     on the stand-by display.

- 2 Select each item to set.

Auto power ON

: Sets/cancels Auto Power ON.

- When set to **OFF**, **Time** or **Repeat** cannot be selected.

Time : Sets the time to automatically turn the power on.

- Enter the time in the 24-hour clock. For single-digit hours or minutes, precede the digit with 0.

Repeat : Sets Auto Power ON to repeat.

- When set to **OFF**, FOMA terminal is turned on only once at the set time and Auto Power ON is canceled.

- 3 Press .

INFORMATION

When *ON* is set for Alarm Auto Power ON, if Alarm Clock, the set time for schedule and Auto Power ON is the same, an operation set in the schedule or Alarm Clock takes place after the power turns on automatically.

When *ON* is set for PIN1 Code ON/OFF, enter the PIN1 code after the power is turned on at the set time by Auto Power ON.

When Reset Call Cost is set to *ON*, enter the PIN2 code after the power is turned on at the set time by Auto Power ON.

If the set time for the schedule, Alarm Clock and Auto Power OFF is the same, Auto Power OFF is made after finishing operating the schedule or Alarm Clock. If a snooze operation is performed after the alarm sounds, Auto Power OFF takes place after releasing the snooze operation.

Even if Auto power OFF is set to *ON*, when the specified time arrives while FOMA terminal is in any mode except stand-by, the power is not turned OFF. The power is turned off after exiting each function. However, if the specified time arrives while the terminal security code entry screen is displayed following the stand-by display or the PIN code entry screen is displayed when FOMA terminal is turned on, the power is turned off.

Cancel Auto Power ON not only turn FOMA terminal off in areas where mobile phone use is prohibited, such as in hospitals, medical facilities and airplanes.

This function announces the set time with an alarm or vibration.

- The date and time setting is required.
- When Alarm Clock is on, defaults of settings are as follows; *Time: 00:00, Repeat: None, Alarm sound: アラーム・アナログ時計 (Alarm/Analog clock), Volume: Level4, Vibrate alert: OFF, Lighting pattern: Terminal settings, Lighting color: Terminal settings.*

Default not set

Setting the alarm time and the sound

1 Press **Menu** **7** **3** on the stand-by display.

2 Press **1** to **9**.

- Up to 9 alarms can be registered. The input title is displayed for the registered alarm.

Canceling

- 1 Place the cursor at the alarm title to cancel in the alarm list and press **Menu**.
 - To set the canceled alarm again, press **Menu**.

Editing

- 1 Select the alarm title to edit in the alarm list.
- 2 Edit the alarm setting.

3 Select each item to set.



Time : Enter the time to set an alarm.

- Enter the time in the 24-hour clock. For single-digit hours or minutes, precede the digit with 0.

Repeat : Press **1** to **3** to select for repeating an alarm.

- If *None* is set, the alarm is activated only once.
- If *Every day* is set, the alarm is activated everyday.
- If *Day of week* is set, select *Day/Week* field to select the days of the week and press **Enter**.

Title : Enter a title (up to 14 one-byte or 7 two-byte characters).

- アラーム1 (Alarm 1) to アラーム9 (Alarm 9) is set by default.
- If the title field is blank, the alarm cannot be set.

4 Press **↻** to switch to *Set sound* screen and select each item to set.



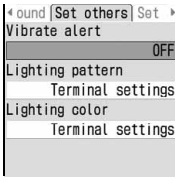
Alarm sound : Select **motion** or *Melody* and select a video/i-motion file or melody as an alarm.

- A video/i-motion file with telop cannot be selected.

Volume : Select the alarm volume.

- Adjusting the volume **◀▶**P68

5 Press to switch to *Set others* screen select each items to set.



Vibrate alert : Sets the vibration used at the alarm time.

Lighting pattern

: Sets the lighting pattern of the call indicator for the alarm time.

- When *Sync melody* or *OFF* is set, **Lighting color** cannot be set.

Lighting color : Sets the color of the call indicator shown at the alarm time.

6 Press .

or (when a schedule alarm is also set) is indicated in the stand-by display. When FOMA terminal is closed, press or to display or (when a schedule alarm is also set) on the sub-display.

When the set time arrives

The alarm screen appears and the alarm sounds. The screen as shown below or the set video/i-motion appears on the display and the alarm sounds at the volume set. If lighting or vibrator is set, it operates according to its setting.

When FOMA terminal is closed, a message *Alarm* and time appear on the sub-display.



- Pressing while the alarm is sounding stops the alarm sound and the display before sounding reappears.
- If the terminal is left unoperated for about 1 minute or a key other than or is pressed, the alarm sound stops. After that the terminal rings for 1 minute followed by a 4-minute silent period repeatedly for 30 minutes (snooze operation). In case of setting video/i-motion, the first image is displayed. Likewise, in case of an incoming voice call or video-phone call during the alarm, the snooze operation is activated.

- If some operation such as call is going on at the set time, the terminal operates as follows:
 - During a call, the warning sound but the alarm occurs and the alarm screen appears. In addition, the vibrator does not operate even if FOMA terminal has been set to notify a call by vibration. During On-hold, the above operation is available after canceling On-hold.
 - When power is off, neither the power is turned on nor the alarm sounds. If you want to let the alarm sound, set Alarm Auto Power ON to *ON*.
 - When the set time arrives during data transmission/reception (except packet communications), during an incoming or outgoing call or while clearing a call, the alarm operates after those operation ends.

INFORMATION

While Silent Mode is active, the alarm does not usually sound and the vibrator set for Alarm Clock is activated and the call indicator lights/flashes. However, the alarm setting applies when *ON* is set for Vibrator and Alarm/Schedule sound of Customize Silent Mode.

When FOMA terminal is closed, press or to stop the alarm. However, the alarm sound does not stop even though you press or locked with the side keys.

When multiple alarms are set for the same time, the alarm set for the smallest item number in the alarm list is activated.

When alarm and schedule alarm are set for the same time, the screen that notifies alarm appears at first, but followed by the snooze operation and then schedule alarm is notified. Even if the schedule alarm screen is finished, the snooze operation of alarm is continued.

When All Lock or PIM Lock is activated, Alarm does not sound.

Set to automatically turn the power on and an alarm or an alarm sound if the power is off when the date and time specified by the schedule or Alarm Clock arrives.

Default OFF

- 1 Press **[Menu]** **[8]** **[5]** **[5]** on the stand-by display.
- 2 Press **[1]**.
 - To set not to turn the power on automatically, press **[2]**.

INFORMATION

If PIN1 Code ON/OFF is set to ON, enter the PIN1 code after the power is turned on and the alarm operates at the time specified by Alarm Clock or the schedule.

In this case, the alarm sounds according to the default setting (アラーム・アナログ時計 for Alarm Clock, アラーム・女性ボイス for Schedule) even if downloaded melody or i-motion is set for the alarm.

When Reset Call Cost is set to ON, enter the PIN2 code after the power is turned on and the alarm operates at the time specified by Alarm Clock or the schedule.

Cancel Alarm Auto Power ON not only turn FOMA terminal off in areas where mobile phone use is prohibited, such as in hospitals, medical facilities and airplanes.

Managing schedules

If various schedules are saved, you will be notified of it with the display and/or alarm sound at the set time.

Displaying the calendar

The calendar screen allows displaying schedules.

- 1 Hold down **[1]** for over a second on the stand-by display.

Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat
27	28	29	30	1	2	3
4	5	6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15	16	17
18	19	20	21	22	23	24
25	26	27	28	29	30	31

Item icon
Cursor

Current day is displayed in pink, Saturday in blue, and day-off and national holiday in red.

- For a day with multiple schedules set, the item icon for the plan schedule planned for the earliest hour is indicated. Even if the time of the schedule saved at the earliest hour elapses, the next item icon saved in the schedule is not displayed.

A date with the repeat schedule setting is marked with **[▶]** to the upper right. A date with the long-term schedule setting is marked with **[⏏]** to the upper right.

- Press **[←]** to move the date. The day view screen is displayed by pressing **[1]**.
- Press **[⏪]** to display the previous month and **[⏩]** to display the next month.
- The calendar is displayed according to the last setting you set.

Specifying a particular day to display

① Press **Menu** **4** **カ** **2** **カ** on the calendar screen.

② Enter the year, month and day.

The cursor is moved to the specified date.

- Press **Menu** **4** **カ** **1** **カ** to restore the current date display.
- On **Day View** screen, press **Menu** **5** **カ** **2** **カ**. Press **Menu** **5** **カ** **1** **カ** to restore the current date display.

INFORMATION

The calendar can display dates between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2060.

The displayed color depends on the setting of Color Scheme.

Days off on the calendar is based on the Law Concerning National Holidays and a law that revises part of the Old Age People's Welfare Law (law no. 59, June 22 in 2001) (as of August 2005).

However, the Vernal Equinox and Autumnal Equinox may have to be changed because the correct date is announced by an official gazette on February 1 of the previous year. The above law was in force on January in 2003. So, keep in mind that Marine day and Respect for the Aged day are not displayed on the date as before they are revised.

Days off or national holidays can be set. ●P368, P369

Setting display style for the calendar

Calendar View Mode

Default Scroll mode: Monthly mode Display mode: Normal mode

1 Hold down **□** for over a second on the stand-by display.

2 Press **Menu** **6** **は** **1** **あ**.

3 Select each item to set.

Scroll mode : Sets the calendar display mode.

- Set **Monthly mode** to switch the display every month.
- Set **Slide mode** to scroll the display by week.

Display mode : Sets the beginning day of the week (leftmost position).

- Set **Normal mode** to be Sunday.
- Set **Business mode** to be Monday.

4 Press **□**.

Setting days off

Day Off Setting

You can set days off from the office or school. They can be set by specifying dates or days of the week.

- When setting days off by specifying dates, up to 30 items can be registered.

Example Setting days off by specifying dates

1 Hold down **□** for over a second on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the date to set as a day off and press **Menu** **6** **は** **2** **カ** **1** **あ**.

- The color of the date specified as a day off changes.
- To set a day off to be repeated yearly, press **Menu** **6** **は** **2** **カ** **2** **カ**.

Canceling

- ① Place the cursor at the day off to cancel and press .
 - Press to cancel all days off.

Setting days off by specifying the day of the week

- ① Press .
 - ② Press to to select a day of the week to set as a day off.
 - *Reset* is indicated in the guide row when a day of the week other than Sunday is selected or the selection of Sunday is canceled. Press to restore the default setting.
 - ③ Press .
- If you register the calendar display without selecting any day of the week, Sunday is automatically set as the day off.

Setting national holidays

Holiday Setting

Holidays can be changed and up to 5 new entries can be registered.

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display.

2 Press .

Changing the holiday

- ① Select the holiday to change and go to Step 4.

Deleting the holiday

- ① Place the cursor at the holiday to delete, press and select *Yes*.
 - You cannot delete holidays set by default.

3 Press .

4 Select each item to set.

Holiday : Enter a holiday name (up to 22 one-byte or 11 two-byte characters).

- You cannot change the holiday names set by default.

Mark on calendar

: Specify whether to display the set holiday.

- When *OFF* is set, the holiday is not displayed and *Date* cannot be set.

Date : Enter a date to set as holiday.

- To change the date of holiday set by default, select *Change* and enter the date.

5 Press .

Saving schedules

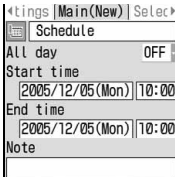
- Up to 300 items can be registered. You can save multiple schedules for the same day.
- The date and time setting is required.

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the day to save the schedule and press .

- On the day view screen, press as well.

3 Select each item to set.





(Item icon)

- : Select an icon.
 - The selected icon is indicated on the schedule heading.

Schedule (contents field)

- : The description equivalent for the selected icon is displayed. Change the description as required (up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters).
 - The entered description is not changed even if you change the icon after changing the description.

All day

- : To set the schedule to *All day* without specifying the time, press .
 - Press  when not setting to *All day*.
 - If *All day* is set, the time display of the schedule is marked with *AllDay* on the day view screen. If *All day* is set for the long-term schedule, the date display is followed by *AllDay*.

Start time

- : Enter a start date and time for the schedule.
 - Enter the last 2 digits of the year. For single-digit months and days, precede the digit with 0.
 - Enter the time in the 24-hour clock. For single-digit hours and minutes, precede the digit with 0.
 - You can set dates up to December 31, 2060.
 - You cannot set the data and time if you set *All day*.

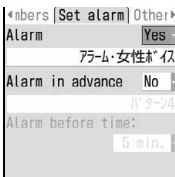
End time

- : Enter an end date and time for the schedule.




Note

- : Enter schedule details (up to 600 one-byte or 300 two-byte characters).


4 Press to switch to *Set alarm* screen and select each item to set.





Alarm

- : Press  to set an alarm.
 - Select  *motion* or *Melody* from *Alarm* field and select a video/i-motion file or a melody for the alarm.
 - To disable an alarm, press .
 - A video/i-motion file with telop cannot be selected.

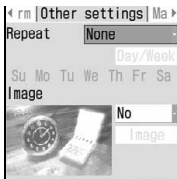
Alarm in advance

- : Press  to enable an alarm before the start time of the schedule.
 - The selection method is the same as for *Alarm*.

Alarm before time

- : Set to sound an alarm how many minutes before the schedule by pressing  to .

5 Press to switch to *Other settings* screen and select each items to set.



Repeat : Press to to select the repeat setting for a schedule.

- When you set a 31st day or February 29 in a leap year as the schedule starting date and *Every month* or *Every year* is selected in the repeat setting, the schedule repeating date becomes the last day of the same year/month without the specified date (that is, 30th or February 28).
- If *None* is selected, the schedule alarm is activated only once.
- If *Day of week* is selected, select *Day/Week* field. And select a day of the week when the alarm is sounded, then press .

Image : Press and select a still image from *Image* field to display the image in the schedule alarm screen.

- Flash movies cannot be set for images.

6 Press to switch to *Select members* screen.

7 Select <*Select member list*> and select members to register.

- Up to 5 members can be registered. Such a list allows you to make calls and send mail.
- Press to switch between the FOMA terminal phonebook and the UIM phonebook.
- The first phone number, mail address, URL in the phonebook data is registered.

Deleting a member

- 1 Place the cursor at the member to delete and press .

8 Press .

- When a schedule set with an alarm or advance alarm is saved, or (when Alarm Clock is also set) is indicated in the stand-by display.
When FOMA terminal is closed, press , or to display or (when a schedule alarm is also set) on the sub-display.

Registering a schedule by simple key operation from the stand-by display

1 Enter the date and time (8 digits) to register schedule on the stand-by display and press .

Example: For December 5 3 p.m., enter "12051500"

- When entering the time on the day, enter 4 digits with 2 digits for hour and for minute respectively.

2 Save the schedule.

INFORMATION

When Privacy Mode is active (*Authorized access* set for *Schedule*), entry of the terminal security code is required. When selecting the member list while activating Privacy Mode (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*), entry of the terminal security code is required.

It is recommended that you keep a separate written record of the contents of Scheduler.

Schedules can be saved using the miniSD memory card P332. Use the data link software and the FOMA USB cable (optional) to send the data to the PC.





To change the schedule alarm screen, you can select a video/i-motion for *Alarm* or *Alarm in advance* in the *Set alarm* screen or select an image for *Image* in *Other settings* screen. When you have set voiced video/i-motion as an alarm and later set an image, the alarm sound becomes the standard melody. If you set voiced video/i-motion after the image as an alarm, the image setting becomes *No*.

When the set date and time arrives

When the set time arrives, the schedule alarm screen appears and the alarm sounds. The date/time, schedule description and set image or video/i-motion appears on the schedule alarm screen. The alarm sounds at the ring alert volume set in Ring Volume setting. When Alert Lighting Setting is set, it operates according to the setting.

When FOMA terminal is closed, a message *Schedule*, schedule description, and alarm activation time appear on the sub-display.








- An alarm in advance, when set, sounds before the schedule start time.
- Pressing  while the alarm is sounding stops the alarm sound and the previous display reappears. If the terminal is left unoperated for about 1 minute or a key other than  or  is pressed, the alarm sound stops with the display as is when an image is set for the alarm. In case of setting video/i-motion, the first image is displayed and the alarm sound stops. Press  and the screen as shown on the left disappears. If some operation such as call is going on at the set day and time, the terminal operates as follows:
 - During a call, the warning sound but the set alarm sound occurs and the schedule alarm screen appears. During On-hold, the above operation is available after canceling On-hold.
 - When the power is off, neither the power is turned on nor the alarm sounds. To sound the alarm, set Alarm Auto Power ON to *ON*.
 - When the set time arrives during data transmission/reception (except packet communications), during an incoming or outgoing call or while clearing a call, the alarm operates after finishing the operation ends. However, if the schedule data is received by data communication, it does not operate.

INFORMATION

While Silent Mode is active, the alarm does not usually sound and the vibrator operates in *Pattern A*. When Customize Silent Mode is set, the settings for *Vibrator*, *Alarm/Schedule sound* and *Ring alert volume* are applied. When Privacy Mode is active (*Authorized access* set for *Schedule*), a schedule alarm or an alarm in advance is not activated.

If a Create animation is set, the first image is displayed.

When FOMA terminal is closed, press  or  to stop the alarm. However, the alarm sound does not stop even though you press  or  locked with the side keys.

When multiple schedules are set at the same date/time, after stopping the alarm sound, press  to confirm the data of other schedules set at the same time.


When a schedule alarm and an alarm are set for the same time, the screen that notifies the alarm appears at first, followed by the snooze operation and then the schedule alarm is notified. Even if the schedule alarm screen is finished, the snooze operation of the alarm is continued.

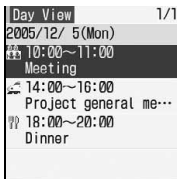
If you set a schedule alarm for the "all-day setting," when the time of 0:00 for the preset date is reached, the schedule alarm screen appears and an alarm is sounded.

When All Lock or PIM Lock is activated, the schedule alarm does not sound.

Checking the recorded schedule data

You can add, change and delete the schedule data from the displayed schedule screen.





- 1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display and select the recorded schedule day to check.












Day View screen

- Press  to switch dates on the day view screen.

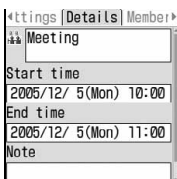
Displaying only schedules for the specific item

- ① Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display.
- ② Press   .

 - Press    to show all items.
 - When operating on the day view screen, press   . Press    to restore the all items display.





- ③ Select an item icon.

- 2 Select a schedule to check.



Details screen

Changing the schedule data

- ① Press  on the schedule details screen.
 - When operating on the day view screen, press  .
- ② Change the schedule data and press .
- ③ Select Yes.

INFORMATION


A schedule for which Secret Attribute is set can only be viewed in Secret Mode.




If the displayed schedule contains phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions can be used.


Copying/pasting schedules



You can copy a schedule and paste it elsewhere to use it as a schedule for another day.

- When a long-term schedule is copied and pasted, the entire schedule is pasted in all the corresponding date.
- The copied schedule is memorized until Scheduler is ended and can be pasted on another day any number of times. However, only 1 item can be memorized and copying new schedule overwrites the retained item.

- 1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display and select the recorded schedule day to copy.

- 2 Place the cursor at the schedule to copy and press   .

- 3 Press  to display the calendar screen.

- 4 Place the cursor at the day to paste the schedule and press  .

- When operating on the day view screen, press   .

Composing mail from schedules

Schedules can be sent as an i-mode Mail message.

- The number of schedule items that can be sent depends on the screen operated.


: Available x : Unavailable




Screen operated Sending type	Calendar screen	Day view screen	Details screen
Send selected item	x		
Send selected day/Send all*1			x


*1 Sends all recorded schedules (including the past schedules).

- Schedules are written to a mail message in the Date To format. P389
- If a schedule exceeds the mail message capacity, the excessive part will be deleted.
- When schedules are displayed by item, only the displayed items are sent with mail.
- To send schedules for which Secret Attribute is set, set Secret Mode on.







Example Sending a schedule by mail from the day view screen

1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display and select the registration day of the schedule to send by mail.

- When operating on the calendar screen, press  and select *Compose message* *Send selected day* or *Send all*.
- When operating on *Details* screen for the schedule, press  and select *Compose message*. Pressing  composes i-mode Mail as well.

2 Place the cursor at the schedule to send by mail and press .



- Press    to send all of the schedule registered for the selected day by mail.
- Press    to send all of the schedule registered by mail at once.
- Composing/sending i-mode Mail P221

Deleting schedules


You can delete 1 entry or multiple entries.


: Available x : Unavailable

Screen operated Deleting type	Calendar screen	Day view screen	Details screen
Selected item	x		
One day/Before date/Delete all			x

- To delete schedules with repeat setting, select *Delete all* from the calendar screen, *Selected item* or *Delete all* from the day view screen or *Delete entry* from the details screen for schedule.

Example Deleting the schedule from the day view screen

1 Hold down  for over a second on the stand-by display and select the registration day of the schedule to delete.

- When operating on the calendar screen or the details screen for schedule, press  and select *Delete*. Go to Step 3 for the calendar screen, or go to Step 4 for the details screen for schedule.

2 Press .

3 Press to .

- To delete all schedules, press and enter the terminal security code. However, even if deleted without setting Secret Mode on, schedules with Secret Attribute set are not deleted.
- To delete the long-term schedule including the selected day, press or and select *Delete long term*. Note that, even when *Before date* is selected for the long-term schedule including the day before the selected day, the entire schedule including the day after the selected day is deleted.

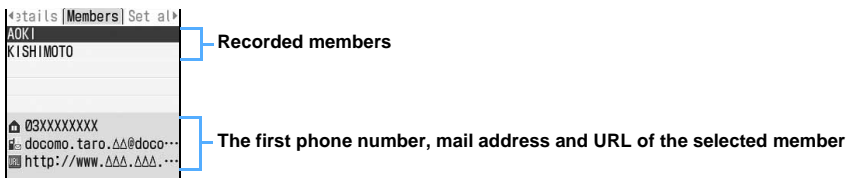
4 Select *Yes*.

Using member lists

Make calls or compose i-mode Mail by selecting a member list recorded in a schedule. Site display is also available from the registered URL in the phonebook data of the member list.

1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display and select the registration day of the schedule to use.

2 Select a schedule to use and press to display the member list screen.



- For members with Secret Attribute set, the name and detail information are masked with “ * ” unless Secret Mode is set. When Privacy Mode is activated (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*), the names and detail information of all members are also masked with “ * ”.

3 Use the phonebook data.

Making a voice/video-phone call

① Place the cursor at a member and press for a voice call or press for a video-phone call.

A voice/video-phone call is made to the displayed phone number.

- When selecting to show/hide the caller ID or specifying the communication speed, press and select *Customized call*.
- Place the cursor at a member and hold down or for over a second to make a call using the speakerphone function.

Sending i-mode Mail

① Place the cursor at a member and press .

The selected mail address of the member is set for the receiver and the schedule is saved in the message in the Date To format.

- Press to send i-mode Mail to all the members. The mail addresses of all members are set for the receivers and the schedule is saved in the message in the Date To format.

② Edit and send i-mode Mail.

- Composing/sending i-mode Mail

Displaying a site

- 1 Place the cursor at a member and press .

INFORMATION

To use the second or subsequent phone number or mail address registered in the phonebook data, select a member from the member list screen to display the phonebook details screen (*Phone/Mail*). You can make a voice/video-phone call or compose i-mode Mail by placing the cursor at the phone number or mail address (P105). Note that, if i-mode Mail is composed from the phonebook details screen, the schedule is not set in the message and the Date To function cannot be used.

Pressing on the member list screen displays *Select members* screen and members can be added or deleted.

When *No setting* is set in Caller ID Setting for the phonebook data, voice/video-phone calls are made according to the setting of Caller ID Notification.

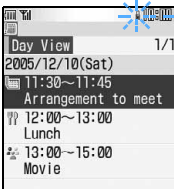
Protecting secret schedules

Secret Attribute

Set Secret Attribute to the schedule data so that the data cannot be used without entry of the terminal security code.

- Secret Attribute cannot be set/canceled when Secret Mode is not set.

- 1 Activate Secret Mode.
- 2 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display and select the registration day of the schedule to use.
- 3 Place the cursor at the schedule to set and press .



blinks when Secret Attribute is set for the selected schedule.

- To cancel, place the cursor at the schedule with Secret Attribute set and press .

INFORMATION

A schedule for which Secret Attribute is set can only be viewed in Secret Mode. A schedule alarm or an alarm in advance is also deactivated.

Secret Attribute is automatically set for schedules made while Secret Mode is on.

Checking the number of registered schedule items

Check No. of Items

You can check the number of registered schedules and days off set in the schedule.

- 1 Hold down for over a second on the stand-by display and press .
- Press to return to the calendar screen.

Create your original menu (custom menu) by registering the functions you often use or the phonebook data of the other party you frequently reach in addition to the menu that is previously registered (normal menu) to execute the function quickly or make a call easily.

Reading a template

- The 4 types of preset templates are provided.
- When a template is read, all the registered items in the custom menu are overwritten.
- You can also create a custom menu by reading templates and adding or deleting menu items.

Default Standard

1 Press on the stand-by display.

- When *Custom* is set for *Default MENU* of Menu Setting, press  on the stand-by display.

2 Press and press to .

Standard : Alarm Clock, Calculator, Sound Recorder, Receive Display, Alert Lighting Setting, Open Answer, i-Channel list, Change Security Code, the setting for Caller ID Notification

Security/Lock

: All Lock, PIM Lock, Remote Lock, Lock on Close, Secret Mode, Privacy Mode Setting

User-data related

: Bookmark, Screen Memo, Phonebook Search, Scheduler, Alarm Clock, Notepad, Save Word, Save Phrase, miniSD card

Message : Compose Message, Chat Mail, Mail Group, Read Template, Inbox

3 Enter the terminal security code.



A template is read and set in the custom menu.

- When the custom menu is already created, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to make it the new custom menu. Selecting *Yes* sets the selected template for the custom menu.

Creating your custom menu

Use the template to create your custom menu.

- Up to 9 icons can be registered in a level of the custom menu.

1 Read a template sample.

- When you newly register all the items, reset the custom menu. ◀P380

2 Register the item.

- 9 icons have been already registered for *Standard* and *User-data related* of the template. If any of these templates is selected, the unnecessary menu items are overwritten.

Registering persons

- If Secret Attribute is set for the phonebook data, it is not displayed unless Secret Mode is set.
- When the phonebook data that contains a Flash movie or video/i-motion is registered in the custom menu, a pre-registered character icon is displayed on the menu screen instead of the Flash movie or video/i-motion.

① Press **Menu** **1** **1** **1**.

- To retry to search by another method, press **Menu**.

② Select the party to register.



Registering functions

① Press **Menu** **1** **2** **ABC**.



- The screen for selecting functions is displayed in the format of the normal menu set in Menu Setting (the sample screen is in the tile display format).

② Place the cursor at the menu item to register and press **Enter**.



- A menu item without the submenus can be registered by selecting the item or by a shortcut operation.

When Alert Lighting is registered

Registering groups

① Press **Menu** **1** **3** **DEF** and enter a group name (up to 18 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters).

② Press **Enter**.

Registering in a group

When the 3rd level is displayed, only functions or persons can be registered.

① Select a group.

The items in the group are displayed.

- When an empty group is selected, the item selection screen is displayed. When the second level is displayed, only functions or persons can be stored.

② Add or overwrite the item.

Overwriting the registered item

① Place the cursor at the item to overwrite and press **Menu** **2** **ABC**.

② Press **1** **1** to **3** **DEF** and select an item to register.

- When you overwrite the items in the group, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite all the items in the group after pressing **1** **1** to **3** **DEF**. If you select **Yes**, all the items in the group are deleted.

INFORMATION

You can change the order of the registered items or icons. ●P380

Using the custom menu

You can execute functions registered in the custom menu, and also make a call to a person registered in it.

- Shortcut operations are also available while the custom menu is displayed. The method of selecting numbers for shortcut operations can be selected between the same method as for the normal menu and the method that uses dial keys corresponding to the positions of custom menu items.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

- When *Custom* is set for *Default MENU* of Menu Setting, press  on the stand-by display.

2 Select items.



- When you select a function or person from a group, select the group to display it.

Function

Group

Person (Making a customized call or checking detail information is available.)

Executing functions



① Select a function.

- When a menu item that has submenus is selected, the menu items are displayed.

Making a call

① Place the cursor at a person.



② Press for a voice call or press for a video-phone call.

- When 2 or more phone numbers have been registered, select a phone number. When only one phone number has been registered, hold down  or  for over a second. The caller's voice can be heard through the speaker.

Sending i-mode Mail

① Place the cursor at a person.



② Press .

- When 2 or more mail addresses have been registered, place the cursor at a mail address and press  or . When no mail address has been registered, the receiver field is left blank.



Sending SMS

① Place the cursor at a person.


② Hold down for over a second.


- When 2 or more phone numbers have been registered, place the cursor at a phone number and press  or . When no phone number has been registered, the receiver field is left blank.

To execute registered functions quickly

The functions registered in the custom menu can be started by pressing the corresponding dial key ( to ) for over a second on the stand-by display. However, when the menu item is a person or group or a menu that has submenus, the function is not activated.

INFORMATION

If Secret Attribute is set for a person in the phonebook data, the name of the person is displayed as " * * * " unless Secret Mode is set.  is indicated.


Persons cannot be selected when PIM Lock or Privacy Mode is on (*Authorized access* set for *Phonebook & Logs*). The icon changes to  and the name of the person is displayed as " * * * ".

When both Secret Attribute and PIM Lock are set, the icons and operations during PIM Lock are applied.

Editing the custom menu

Change the order of items, icon design and group names displayed on the custom menu and delete items in the custom menu.



1 Press on the stand-by display.

- When *Custom* is set for *Default MENU* of Menu Setting, press  on the stand-by display.

2 Place the cursor at the item to edit and perform each operation.

- When editing items in a group, select a group and display the screen to edit items in the group.


Replacing items

① Press  .

② Select the destination item and select *Yes*.


Changing icons

① Press   to select an icon.



- Press  to reset the icon.

Changing group names

① Press  .

② Enter a group name and press .

Deleting items

① Press   and select *Yes*.

- When the group is deleted, items in the group are also deleted.

Resetting the custom menu


Delete all the menu items in the custom menu. This operation is performed to create a new custom menu.

1 Press on the stand-by display.



- When *Custom* is set for *Default MENU* of Menu Setting, press  on the stand-by display.

2 Press .

3 Enter the terminal security code and select *Yes*.

- Press  to display the item selection screen. When an item is selected, you can register persons, functions or groups. ➤P377

Default UIM settings

1 Press   on the stand-by display.

Own number
Name
My phone number
090XXXXXXXX
Mail address


- As Own Number, the phone number of the UIM inserted into FOMA terminal is displayed.

2 Press .

3 Enter the terminal security code and set the name and mail address.

43r [Edit own number] 01*
[Name]
[Reading]
<Image>
090XXXXXXXX
[Phone number]
[Mail address]


- The setting procedure for each item is the same way as Step 3 to 4 of “Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook” ●P96. Note that groups cannot be set.
- If any item has already been set, the content of the item is displayed.
- The subscribing terminal phone number (Own Number) is displayed in the first phone number location. It cannot be changed.

4 Press  to set other information.

- The setting procedure for each item is the same way as Step 5 of “Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook” ●P97.
- None of these are set by default.
- If any item has already been set, the content of the item is displayed.



5 Press .

INFORMATION

Your own number is registered in the UIM. If you enter other items, they will be recorded in FOMA terminal. Items other than your own number can be registered or changed even if  (out of service area) is indicated.


Changing the mail address in *Own number* does not change your i-mode Mail address. Similarly, changing your i-mode Mail address does not change the mail address in *Own number*. For details on how to check and change an i-mode Mail address, refer to “i-mode User’s Manual”.

Displaying Own Number details



1 Press   on the stand-by display.

2 Press and enter the terminal security code.



- The content that has already been set is displayed.
- When the data is long, only a part of it is displayed. Press  to display the name, reading, the first phone number and the first mail address.

Editing your own number






- 1 Press   and edit your own number.

Resetting the recorded data

- 1 Press   and select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

You can use the information recorded in *Own number* to perform various operations.

- Customized call P58
- Composing i-mode Mail/SMS or displaying sites P101
- Editing entries P105
- Forwarding your own number (Infrared sending) P346
- Setting various functions P109

Recording other party's or your voice

Talking/Stand-by Voice Memo

Your voice is recorded in stand-by as talking note (Stand-by Voice Memo) or other party's voice is recorded during a voice call (Talking Voice Memo).

- Talking/Stand-by Voice Memo can be recorded up to 30 seconds long for each message and up to 4 messages in total.
- The recording for Talking Voice Memo may be disrupted if the signal conditions are poor. Guidance messages such as out-of-service area notice or number change information cannot be recorded.

Recording the other party's voice while talking

Talking Voice Memo records only the voice of the other party.





1 Hold down for over a second during a call.

Recording starts.



An indication of the allowable recording time

Voice memo during voice calls

- When the remaining time becomes about 5 seconds, rapid beeps are heard to warn that the end of recording is approaching. A beep is also heard at the end of the recording (this sound is not heard at the beginning of the recording). However, the sound to announce that the end of the recording is approaching and the sound to announce the end of the recording are not recorded.
- To cancel recording, hold down  for over a second.
- Pressing    during a call does not record voice memos.
- You cannot use Voice Memo for recording during a video-phone call.

Recording your own voice in stand-by

1 Press **3** on the stand-by display.

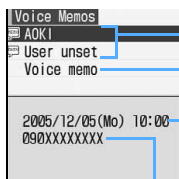
After about 3 seconds, a beep is heard and recording starts.

- When the remaining time becomes about 5 seconds, rapid beeps are heard to warn that the end of recording is approaching. A beep is also heard at the end of the recording. However, the ending sound of the recording is not recorded.
- To cancel recording, press either , or .

Playing voice memos

1 Press **4** on the stand-by display.

The voice memo list shows both talking and stand-by voice memos.



Talking voice memo

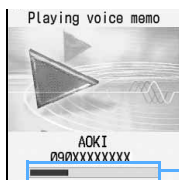
- The phone number, the name (When the other party's phone number is saved in the phonebook) or the reason for no caller ID

Stand-by voice memo

- Date and time of recording (If the date and time have not been set, no date and time are recorded.)

- Phone number of the other party (Voice memo is displayed for a stand-by voice memo.)

2 Select a voice memo to replay.



The voice memo is played.

- Press to stop playback.
- Press or to adjust the volume.
- You can hear a voice memo from the speaker by pressing during playback. By pressing again, you can hear it from the earpiece.

An indication of the playing time

3 Select whether to delete the played voice memo.

- Select *Yes* to delete the voice memo.




Deleting voice memos from the voice memo list

- 1 Place the cursor at a voice memo to delete, press **2** **1** and select *Yes*.
 - Press **2** **2** and select *Yes* to delete all.

Registering phone numbers in the phonebook from the voice memo list

- 1 Place the cursor at a talking voice memo to register and press **4** .
 - When adding entries in the registered phonebook data, press **5** .
- 2 Press **1** or **2** to register a name and mail address. **P95, P99**
 - When adding entries in the registered phonebook data, press **1** or **2** and select the phonebook data of registration destination. **P105**

INFORMATION





For Talking Voice Memo, placing the cursor at a party in the list followed by pressing  or  makes a voice call or video-phone call respectively. From the submenu, Customized Call can be used to make voice or video-phone calls by specifying to show/hide the caller ID or to make video-phone calls by specifying data rate. Information about the operation when FOMA terminal is closed while recording a talking voice memo.  P65 Maintain the contents of voice memos in some other form (e.g. written a notebook). Recorded data may be lost due to failure, repair, change to new model or other handlings of FOMA terminal. If the data should be erased, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.

Checking the call duration and the call cost

Call Duration/Call Cost

- The call duration and the call cost of the last and total of voice/video-phone call can be checked.
- The duration includes the voice call, video-phone call and 64K data communication, and the both of incoming and outgoing are counted for each.
 - The call cost data is counted only for outgoing. However, when calling the toll-free party or the directory assistance service (104), "0 YEN" or "*****" is displayed.
 - The call cost is stored in the UIM, so stored total cost is displayed (starting from December in 2004) when using the current UIM to FOMA terminal you newly purchased.
 - In FOMA terminals released before 901i series, the call cost data is stored in the UIM, but cannot be displayed.
 - The displayed call duration and call cost can be reset.
 - The displayed call duration and call cost are estimates and may be different from the actual. Note that the call cost does not include consumption tax.



Checking the call duration

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

- Last call** : The duration of the last voice/video-phone call or of the last data communication
- Total voice calls** : The total duration of voice calls made
- Total video-phone calls** : The total duration of video-phone calls made
- Total data sessions** : The total duration of data communication established

- If the total duration of calls was reset in the past, the duration of the total calls made up to the present after the reset is displayed.

Resetting the total calls duration

- 1 Press  and enter the terminal security code.
- 2 Select the call duration to reset and select *Yes*.
 - To reset the total duration of all, select *All calls/data reset*.
 - Press  to return to the call duration screen.

Checking the call cost

1 Press      on the stand-by display.

- Last call cost: Voice** : The cost of the last voice call
- Last call cost: VP** : The cost of the last video-phone call

Last call cost: Data : The cost of the last data communication

Total calls cost : The total cost of voice/video-phone calls and data communication

- If the total calls cost was reset in the past, the total calls cost made up to the present after the reset is displayed.

Reset: day & time : The date and time of the last reset

Resetting the total calls cost

- ① Press , enter the PIN2 code and select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

No last charge information appears as “***** YEN”.

When you switch from the voice call to the video-phone during a call, the last call cost shows the each total amount of them. During the operation to switch, no call cost is required.

When the last and total duration of voice/video-phone call or 64K data communication exceed 9,999 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds, counting is restarted from 0 second.

When FOMA terminal is turned off, the last call duration is stored, but the last call cost is displayed as “*** ** YEN”.

The duration of receiving a call and ringing time cannot be counted.

The call duration and call cost are not counted for i-mode/packet communication. For details of usage fees, see “i-mode User’s Manual” you received when you subscribed to i-mode.

Reset the call cost automatically


Reset Call Cost

The total call cost is reset automatically at 0:00 a.m. on the first day of each month.

Default OFF

1 Press      on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code and press .

- To cancel the setting, press .

3 Enter the PIN2 code.

INFORMATION

When the setting is *ON*, the call cost is also reset if you change the date and time to the next month in Date and Time Setting.

When the setting is *ON*, if 0 o'clock the first day of the month comes, while the power is off or during a call, the call cost is reset when you turn the power on or end the call.

Even if Reset Call Cost is set to *ON*, the setting is canceled when the UIM different from the one used during setting it is inserted and then turn the power on. It doesn't return to the previous setting even if the UIM used when setting it is inserted again.

Set the maximum limit of call cost and, when the total call cost exceeds the set amount, it is notified with an alarm or icon.

- The amount shown in Call Cost Limit is only an estimate and should not be regarded as the actual amount for billing.

Default OFF

1 Press **8** **4** **4** **2** on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code and select each item to set.

Alert : Set whether to notify when the total call cost exceeds the set amount.

- If **OFF** is set, the items below cannot be set.

Limit : Set the maximum amount of call cost (10 - 100,000 yen. 10 yen unit).

Alert method : Select the alarm with icon, or the icon only.

Alert sound : Select an alarm sound from the melody list. Available when **Sound + icon display** is selected in **Alert method**.

Alert time : Specify how many seconds alarm sound should ring (1 - 60 sec.). Available when **Sound + icon display** is selected in **Alert method**.

3 Press .

INFORMATION

If the call cost exceeds the maximum limit while talking or during communication, is displayed. When FOMA terminal is closed, pressing , or after talking or communication displays on the sub-display.

When **Sound + icon display** is set for **Alert method**, the alarm sounds and message informing that the call cost exceeds the maximum limit is displayed on the stand-by display after a call/communication.

The alert sounds at the ring alert volume set in Ring Volume Setting.

In Silent Mode, a message appears but the alarm does not sound if **Sound + icon display** is set for **Alert method**. In Customize Silent Mode, however, the alarm sounds according to the ring alert volume set for Customize Silent Mode.

Even if **Sound + icon display** is set for **Alert method**, neither the alarm sounds nor the message appears if:

- In Driving Mode
- When Lock on Close is active.
- The call cost exceeds the limit while talking or during communication at 0 o'clock the first day of the month when Reset Call Cost is set to **ON**.

If any key is pressed or FOMA terminal is closed while an alarm is sounding, the alarm sound stops. Also, in case other functions are activated, the alarm sound stops.

Even if the UIM is replaced after Call Cost Limit is set to **ON**, the setting is retained.

Removing the icon for the call cost

Remove Call Cost Icon

1 Press **8** **4** **4** **3** on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code and select **Yes**.

You can perform addition, subtraction, multiplication and division (+ , - , × , ÷) on your FOMA terminal.

- Up to 8 digits can be entered.
- You can use the calculator from the entry fields for schedules and notes, and paste the result of a calculation into the entry field of the original screen. ●P447

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Make a calculation.



Calculate using the dial keys (to) and (+ , - , × , ÷).

- To delete the last digit entered, press .
- To enter a decimal point, press .
- To switch the displayed value between the positive and negative, press .

3 Press .

The calculation result is displayed.

- Press to delete the calculation result.

INFORMATION

Press to copy displayed numbers. Press to paste the copied number.

Copied numbers are stored until FOMA terminal is turned off and you can paste them in the entry fields of notes, mail composition screen, etc. any number of times. Note that only 1 numbers can be stored and copying new numbers overwrite the stored numbers.

An error is generated and "E" is displayed when the integral part of the calculation result exceeds 8 digits.

Press to clear. When the number including a decimal point exceeds 8 digits, any decimals that do not fit in the display are rounded up or rounded down.

You can copy up to the first 8-digit one-byte numbers from the entry field of notes, mail composition screen, etc. and paste them on the calculator screen. The part that exceeded 8 digits is not pasted.

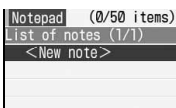
You cannot enter additional numbers following the pasted numbers on the calculator screen. Also, you cannot paste two-byte numbers or a character other than a number.

Composing notes

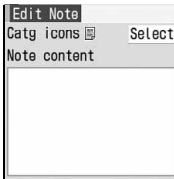
- Notes can be recorded up to 50 items.

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select <New note>.



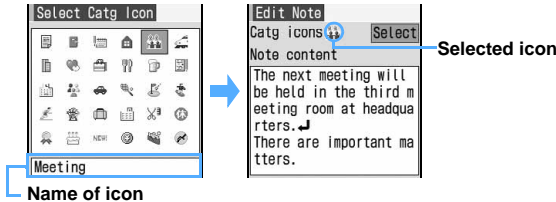
3 Enter the note data in *Note content* field (up to 600 one-byte or 300 two-byte characters).



Inputting values calculated with Calculator

- ① Press **Menu** **8** **2** on the character entry screen.
- ② Make a calculation and press **Ⓜ**.

4 Select *Select* in *Catg icons* field and select an icon.



Name of icon

5 Press **⏏**.

- Notes without any content cannot be recorded.

INFORMATION

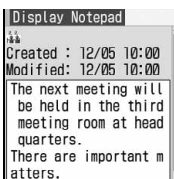
Maintain the contents of Notepad in some other form (e.g. written). Data link software and the FOMA USB cable (optional) can be used to send and save the data to the PC.

Checking notes

1 Press **Menu** **7** **2** on the stand-by display.

The notepad list screen appears.

2 Select a note to check.



- If the note data contains phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions can be used.
- Press **⏏** to edit notes.
- The date and time when the note has been composed automatically are registered for the composing date and time. The date and time when the note has been automatically are corrected for the updating date and time. However, if the date or time is not set, the composing or updating date and time will not be registered.

Deleting a note

- ① Press **Menu** **1**.
- ② Select **Yes**.

Creating mail from a note

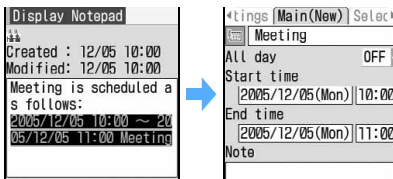
- ① Press **Menu** **2**.

INFORMATION

When deleting single note from the notepad list screen, place the cursor at the note to delete, press **Menu** and select **Delete note**. To delete all items, press **Menu**, select **Delete all** and enter the terminal security code. To compose mail from the notepad list, place the cursor at the note to use for message text, press **Menu** and select **Compose message**.

- When the message text contains schedule description in the Date To format, copying the text to Notepad allows saving it as schedule.

- 1 Press **Menu** **7** **7** **か** **2** **か** on the stand-by display.
- 2 Select the note written in Date To format.
- 3 Select the description written in Date To format, and save it as schedule.



Date To format

Date To is effective when the entry of note has a string in the format below (All items are requisite):

Example 2005/12/05 10:00 ~ 2005/12/05 11:00 Meeting↵

Start date
Start time
~
End date
End time
Description
A line feed is regarded as an entry

- represents half-sized space. It is not actually displayed.
- Only one-byte characters can be used for the date and time.
- Separate the start date, start time, “ ~ ”, end date, end time and description with half-sized spaces.
- The description can contain up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters. Any character exceeding the maximum number is deleted.
- The year is based on the Christian era and the time is in the 24-hour format. If there is only 1 digit for month, day, hour or minute, the preceding 0 can be skipped.

Using the earphone/microphone set with switch

By connecting the optional flat type earphone/microphone set with switch (including the stereo earphone set with flat switch) to the earphone/microphone jack, it is possible to make or receive calls simply by pressing the switch.

- It is not possible to make a video-phone call by pressing the switch of the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch.
- Use the earphone jack converter adapter P001 (optional) for the existing earphone/microphone.

Connecting the earphone/microphone set with switch

To connect the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch to FOMA terminal, open the cover of the earphone/microphone jack and insert the connection plug of the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch. ●P27

- Do not wrap the cord of the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch around FOMA terminal. Reception level of radio waves may deteriorate.

- When the cord of the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch nears the antenna, a noise may be emitted.
- Insert the plug firmly. If it is not inserted completely, there may be audio disruption.

Making calls by pressing the switch

By registering a phone number to the phonebook No. assigned by Headset Quick Dial, it is possible to make a voice call to that number only by pressing the switch on the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch.

- To make a call using a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch, the Handset Quick Dial must be set to *ON*.

1 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear 2 short beeps.

A voice call will be made to the first registered phone number of the phonebook No. assigned by Headset Quick Dial.

- If more than one phone number have been registered, the first phone number is dialed.

2 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear a short beep to end a call.

INFORMATION

If Secret Attribute has been set for the phonebook No. assigned by Headset Quick Dial, Secret Mode must be activated before operating.

Even if Call Waiting Service is subscribed and activated, you cannot make another call during a call by entering the number of a third party and pressing the switch. Be aware that pressing the switch will terminate the first call.

While transferring or copying data between FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card, you cannot make calls by pressing the switch.

Receiving calls by pressing the switch

1 When an incoming call is received, hold down the switch for over a second until you hear 2 short beeps.

- The ring tone is emitted from the point set by Headset Switch.

2 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear a short beep to end a call.

INFORMATION

If Auto Answer is set, you can receive an incoming call automatically.

Operations when FOMA terminal is closed while a call made by connecting a flat type earphone/microphone with switch ➤P65

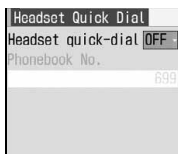
When Call Waiting Service is subscribed and activated, you can receive a voice call during a call by holding down the switch for over a second.

Set the receiver to make a call using a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch by assigning the phonebook No.

Default OFF

1 Press **8** **6** **4** **3** on the stand-by display.

2 Select *Headset quick-dial* field and press .



• To cancel the setting, press and go to Step 5.

3 Select *Phonebook No.* field.

• To search again by specifying search method, press .

4 Select the party to register.

5 Press .

INFORMATION

When the phonebook data of *Phonebook No.* set by this function is deleted or overwritten in other data, or *Phonebook No.* is changed, Headset Quick Dial is canceled.

Answering calls automatically with the earphone/microphone connected

When using a flat type earphone/microphone with switch, you can receive an incoming call automatically. When a voice or video-phone call is received, the voice of the other party is heard from the connected earphone/microphone set with switch.

- This function is not available for incoming calls while talking.
- This function is not available in Driving Mode.

Default OFF

1 Press **8** **6** **4** **2** on the stand-by display.

2 Select *Auto answering* field and press .

• To cancel the setting, press and go to Step 4.

3 Select *Delayed time(Sec)* field and enter the time (0 - 120 sec.).

4 Press .

INFORMATION

The same time period cannot be set for both the delayed time for Auto Answer and the response time for Answer Machine.

When a video-phone call has been answered by Auto Answer, the substitute image set in Image Setting is sent and a video-phone call is automatically started.

When this function and Answer Machine, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service are set simultaneously, the set ringing time determines which function will be used.

If an incoming call is received from the specified phone number when the Reject/Accept Call or Reject non-Reg. Caller is set, this function is not activated.

Hearing the ring tone only through the earphone

Headset Switch

When connecting a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch, you can set to hear the ring tone only through the earphone.

Default Headset + speaker

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Press .

- To hear the ring tone both through the earphone and the speaker, press .

INFORMATION

When a flat type earphone/microphone set with switch is not connected, the ring tone sounds through the speaker regardless of this setting.

Even when you set to **Headset only**, you will hear the ring tone through the speaker when 20 seconds pass without answering a call.

Usually even if the flat type earphone/microphone set with switch is connected, the ring alert does not hear from the earphone or speaker in Silent Mode. However, you can hear it according to Customize Silent Mode in the personalized silent mode.

Determining a service provider

NW Search Method

This function allows you to select a FOMA service provider. Select whether to set the service provider manually or using automatic search. Determine a service provider when you select **Manual select**.

Usually, you do not need to change this setting.

Default Auto select NW

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Search method : Sets how to retrieve a network.

- If you select *Auto select NW*, you cannot set *Manual select*.

Manual select : Selects a service provider.





- A service provider other than DoCoMo cannot be selected for manual selection (as of August 2005).
- A service provider other than DoCoMo cannot use the Pake-Houdai service.

3 Press .


Checking current settings of functions

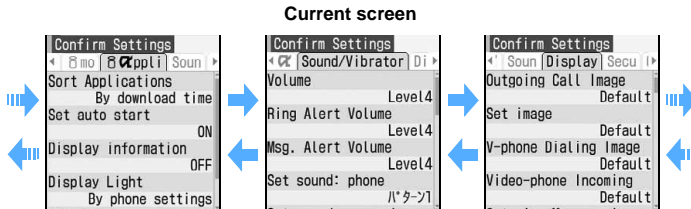
Confirm Settings

- While PIM Lock is on, the specific setting of the item being locked is displayed as “---”.

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

The settings in *Sound/Vibrator* menu are displayed.

2 Press  to check the current settings.







Resetting functions

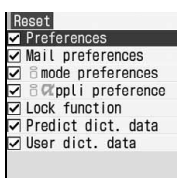
Reset

This function resets functions to their default settings.

- For the functions to be returned to the default settings by resetting, see “Menu list”.
- The following functions, though not mentioned in “Menu list”, are reset to the default settings:
 - Silent Mode (to be reset when *Preferences* is selected)
 - Driving Mode (to be reset when *Preferences* is selected)
 - Predict dictionary data
 - User dictionary data (Data recorded using Save Word are deleted)

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code and select the item to reset.




- Press  to switch selecting/canceling. Press  to select all/cancel all.

3 Press and select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

Menu Setting is not reset by this function, but if *Custom1* or *Custom2* of the type of icons is changed, they return to the default status.





In case of resetting i-Mode Setting, the information of i-channel is not displayed on the stand-by ticker and sub-display. Then, when the information is automatically updated or  is pressed to display the i-channel list, the latest information is received and it becomes to be displayed on the stand-by ticker or sub-display.

Deleting registered data collectively

Delete All Data

Deletes the saved data and return the settings of the functions to the default.

- Protected data are also deleted.
- Deleting data collectively should be done with battery fully charged. If the battery power is not enough, the data may not be deleted collectively.
- The following data preinstalled by default are deleted:
 - i- ppli
 - Images in *Deco-Mail picture* and *Item* folders of *Image* (My Picture) in Data Box
- The following data saved or registered are deleted:
 - Message R/F
 - i-mode Mail
 - Chat mail (including the chat member setting)
 - SMS
 - Mail template
 - Mail group
 - Bookmark
 - Entered URL
 - URL history
 - Screen memo
 - Last Visited URL
 - i-channel (Received information)
 - i- ppli
 - i- ppli display history
 - Phonebook data
 - Received call history
 - Redial data
 - Recorded message (including the greeting)
 - Voice memo
 - The data of *Image* (My Picture)/*i-motion*/*Melody* in Data Box (except for *Preinstalled* folder)
 - Data read by Bar Code Reader
 - Schedule (including holidays registered or changed)
 - Notepad
 - Alarm
 - Call duration
 - Save words/fixed phrase
 - Registering USSD
 - Recorded reply message
 - Own Number (except for your phone number)
 - Folder/Album created
 - Updating software (Reserved update)
- The functions listed in Reset function, the following functions return to the default:
 - Sort Criteria
 - i-mode Shortcut for bookmark
 - i- ppli (functions set from software list)
 - Stand-by Telop Setting
 - Answer Machine
 - *Image* (My Picture)/*i-motion*
 - Operation settings of *Melody*
 - Camera
 - Movie Camera
 - Sound Recorder
 - Data exchange settings by infrared communication
 - PIM Lock
 - Terminal security code
 - Privacy Mode Setting
 - Data and Time Setting
 - External Device setting
 - NW search method
 - Arrival Call Act
 - Menu Setting
 - Changed folder name
 - Custom Menu

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code and select *Yes*.

Data are deleted collectively during restart.

INFORMATION


The following data are not deleted and cannot be reset to the default:

- The data saved, registered or set in the UIM or the miniSD memory card
- Data communication setting set via a PC

To restore the default setting for each function, execute Reset.

If there are the data of large capacity, about 1 minute may be required to restart. Be careful not to turn off the power before completing the operation.

If the data or i- ppli preinstalled by default are deleted, they can be downloaded from i-mode site "My D-style" (☛P289). Packet communication fee is required separately to download.

If the data is deleted collectively, the information of i-channel is not displayed on the stand-by ticker and sub-display. Then, when the information is automatically updated or  is pressed to display the i-channel list, the latest information is received and it becomes to be displayed on the stand-by ticker or sub-display.

MEMO

Network Services

Network services available using FOMA terminal	Network Service	398
Using Voice Mail Service	Voice Mail	398
Using Call Waiting Service	Call Waiting	400
Using Call Forwarding Service	Call Forwarding	401
Using Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Nuisance Call Blocking	403
Using Caller ID Request Service	Caller ID Request	404
Using Dual Network Service	Dual Network	405
Switching languages for the guidance	English Guidance	405
Using Service Dialing Number	Service Dialing Number	406
Setting Arrival Call Act	Arrival Call Act	406
Setting Remote Control	Remote Control	407
Using Multi Number	Multi Number (Service not available)	407
Registering new network services	Added Service (Register USSD)	407

This manual shows an overview of each network service. For details of operation or usage precaution, see “Network Services User’s Guide”.

Service	Application	Monthly fee	Page
Voice Mail Service	Required	Charged	P398
Call Waiting Service	Required	Charged	P400
Call Forwarding Service	Required	Free	P401
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Required	Free	P403
Caller ID Request Service	Not required	Free	P404
Dual Network Service	Required	Charged	P405
English Guidance Service	Not required	Free	P405

- When new network services are provided by DoCoMo, you can register them on the menu list. ●P407
- For further information or subscription, contact “General Inquiries” on the back of this manual listed.
- Network service cannot be started and stopped from a location outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach. Operate FOMA terminal in locations with better radio wave condition.

INFORMATION

You can stop Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting Service and Call Forwarding Service from your FOMA terminal after these services are started. Stopping a service does not cancel the contract itself.

Voice Mail Service stores voice messages when FOMA terminal is turned off or in a location where radio waves are hard to reach, or when you cannot answer a call.

You can access your voice messages from anywhere in Japan.

- Unanswered calls are transferred to the Voice Mail Service Center, which stores voice messages. An icon indicated on the stand-by display and the received call history alert you that one or more calls have been transferred.

- Up to 20 voice messages, each 3 minutes long can be recorded and they are stored up to 72 hours.
- Includes a function that only announces that you are unable to answer the call.
- When Voice Mail Service is active, you are still able to make and receive calls.
- Note that, though you can subscribe to both Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service, 2 services cannot be used simultaneously. When you enable Call Forwarding Service, Voice Mail Service is automatically disabled. (After that, if you turn Call Forwarding Service off, Voice Mail Service is not automatically activated.)
- When there is a call if Voice Mail Service is active, the ring tone sounds (for 10 sec. during sign-up). You can make a call while the ring tone sounds. The time when the ring tone is sounding (calling time) can be changed. However, if the ringing time is set to 0 seconds, the received call history will not be registered.
- You can forward incoming calls to the Voice Mail Service Center (●P63). You can also forward incoming calls to the Voice Mail Service Center while on the phone. ●P406
- Voice Mail Service can be accessed from touch-tone general subscriber phones or payphones using the network security code. Set Remote Control beforehand.
- When a *User unset* call is received while Caller ID Request Service is on, a guidance is played requesting to notify the caller ID. No voice message is recorded.
- When there is a video-phone call even though Voice Mail Service is active, the call is not connected to the Voice Mail Service Center, but it will be disconnected after elapsing the time set to the calling time in Voice Mail Service.

Basic flow of Voice Mail Service

Step 1 Activate the service

Step 2 The caller leaves a voice message*1

Step 3 Play back the voice message

*1 Callers can press **#xx** on their telephone to skip hearing the answering message and proceed directly to recording mode.

About Voice Mail Service fees

Use of Voice Mail Service requires the call charge for hearing voice messages, in addition to the monthly charge.

Activating Voice Mail Service

1 Press **Menu** **9** **W** **X** **Y** **Z** **1** **あ** **1** **あ** **3** **DEF** on the stand-by display.

2 Select **Yes**.

3 Select **Yes**.

- Select **No** to activate Voice Mail Service by the set time (the default: 10 seconds) without the ringing time setting.

4 Enter the ringing time (between 0 and 120 seconds).

Voice Mail Service is activated.

- You can increase or decrease the entered values by pressing **⬇**.

Deactivating Voice Mail Service

1 Press **Menu** **9** **W** **X** **Y** **Z** **1** **あ** **1** **あ** **3** **DEF** on the stand-by display and select **Yes**.

Checking current settings

1 Press **Menu** **9** **W** **X** **Y** **Z** **1** **あ** **1** **あ** **4** **た** on the stand-by display and select **Yes**.

INFORMATION

From the screen for checking current settings, you can change the setting by the submenu.

Menu **1** **あ**: Activate Voice Mail Service

Menu **2** **か** **ABC**: Deactivate Voice Mail Service

Menu **3** **DEF**: Set ringing time of Voice Mail Service

You can set only the ringing time by pressing

Menu **9** **W** **X** **Y** **Z** **1** **あ** **1** **あ** **2** **か** on the stand-by display.

When a new call arrives while you are talking (or using packet communication), you can choose to transfer the call to the Voice Mail Service Center. Forwarding the incoming call manually **☛**P63
The ringing time setting is still retained even after you deactivate Voice Mail Service.

Using voice prompts to set up Voice Mail Service

1 Press **Menu** **9** **W** **X** **Y** **Z** **1** **あ** **1** **あ** **6** **は** on the stand-by display.

2 Select **Yes** and follow the voice prompts.

- To check if there is a new voice message or listen to a voice message, hang up the phone first.

Hearing voice messages

When there is a new voice message, **☎** **1** with the number of messages is displayed.

1 Press **Menu** **9** **W** **X** **Y** **Z** **1** **あ** **1** **あ** **5** **な** on the stand-by display.

2 Select **Yes** and follow the voice prompts.

INFORMATION

New voice messages can be also played quickly from the stand-by display. **☛**P38

When FOMA terminal is closed, pressing **⏏**, **⏏** or **⏏** displays **☎** on the sub-display.

The number displayed shows the number of new voice messages provided by guidance when the messages are played, which does not include saved voice messages.

Checking for new voice messages

Check Messages

1 Press **Menu** **9** **W** **X** **Y** **Z** **1** **あ** **1** **あ** **7** **ま** on the stand-by display.

2 Select **Yes**.

When a new voice message arrives, **☎** **1** with the number of messages are displayed on the stand-by display.

- If Notification is on, the notification melody will sound and the vibrator will be activated according to Vibrator Setting when a new voice message arrives.

Setting ring tone to sound when new voice messages arrive Notification

You can set an alert tone to sound when the caller left a new voice message, or when the number of voice messages has increased at the time you perform Check Messages.

- If any message is found as a result of Check Messages, the vibrator is activated according to Vibrator Setting.
- While turning Silent Mode on, even if Vibrator Setting is off, the vibrator is activated according to Vibrator Setting.
- For voice messages left just after performing Check Messages, the alert tone may not sound.
- When All Lock, PIM Lock, Lock on Close, Driving Mode or an alarm sound is active, the alert tone does not sound and the vibrator is not activated.

Default Voicemail alert: ON
Notification melody: パターン 1 (Pattern1)

- 1 Press **Menu** **9** **W** **X** **Y** **Z** **1** **あ** **お** **2** **か** **ARC** on the stand-by display.
- 2 Select **Voicemail alert** field and press **1** **あ** **お**.
 - Press **2** **か** and go to Step 5 to disable the alert tone.
- 3 Select **Notification melody** field.
- 4 Select a folder and select a melody.

The melody is set and the setting screen for Notification reappears.

 - Selecting, playing and checking the melody
▶P114
- 5 Press **□**.

Erasing voice mail icon Remove Voicemail Count

- 1 Press **Menu** **9** **W** **X** **Y** **Z** **1** **あ** **お** **4** **た** **CHI** on the stand-by display.
- 2 Select **Yes**.

An icon that indicates the number of voice messages is erased.

Notifying incoming calls received while you were out of service area Missed Call Notice

When FOMA terminal is turned on or within the service area, this function notifies you of calls received with your FOMA terminal turned off or outside the service area using SMS.

- Up to 5 incoming calls are notified per SMS.

- Notification is made despite the settings of all rejection of SMS.
- It does not cost you for the settings and notification (SMS reception).

Activating Missed Call Notice

- 1 Press **Menu** **9** **W** **X** **Y** **Z** **1** **あ** **お** **3** **さ** **DEF** **1** **あ** **お** on the stand-by display.
- 2 Select **Yes**.
- 3 Select **Yes or No**.
 - Select **Yes** to notify incoming calls of which caller ID is notified.
 - Select **No** to notify all incoming calls.

Deactivating Missed Call Notice

- 1 Press **Menu** **9** **W** **X** **Y** **Z** **1** **あ** **お** **3** **さ** **DEF** **2** **か** **ARC** on the stand-by display and select **Yes**.

Checking current settings

- 1 Press **Menu** **9** **W** **X** **Y** **Z** **1** **あ** **お** **3** **さ** **DEF** **3** **せ** on the stand-by display and select **Yes**.

Using Call Waiting Service Call Waiting

When a third party calls you while you are on the phone, this service notifies you with the call waiting ring tone. This allows you to place your current call on hold and then answer the other call.

- You can also place the current call on hold and call another party.
- When a **User unset** call is received while Caller ID Request Service is activated, a guidance is played requesting to notify the caller ID and Call Waiting Service cannot be used.
- Call Waiting Service does not operate under the following conditions:
 - When you make a call to 104, 110, 117*1, 118 and 119
 - *1 When calling 117, you may hear beeps indicating another incoming call, but you cannot answer it. The missed call is recorded on the received call history.
 - When you are dialing or calling another party
 - While you are connected to the Voice Mail Service Center as a user of the service, e.g. for replaying voice messages

- When you make a call to 4-digit phone number for setting the network services, including 1411 (activating Voice Mail Service) and 1420 (deactivating Call Forwarding Service)
- During a video-phone call (the call is recorded as missed call on the received call history)
- When a video-phone call is received during a voice call (the call is recorded as missed call on the received call history)
- The caller is charged for calls on hold.
- You cannot make a video-phone call during a call.

Activating Call Waiting Service

- 1 Press **Menu** **9** **W** **X** **Y** **Z** **2** **か** **A** **B** **C** **1** **あ** **あ** **あ** on the stand-by display.
- 2 Select **Yes**.

Deactivating Call Waiting Service

- 1 Press **Menu** **9** **W** **X** **Y** **Z** **2** **か** **A** **B** **C** **2** **あ** **あ** **あ** on the stand-by display and select **Yes**.

Checking current settings

- 1 Press **Menu** **9** **W** **X** **Y** **Z** **2** **か** **A** **B** **C** **3** **D** **E** **F** on the stand-by display and select **Yes**.

INFORMATION

To use Call Waiting Service, set Arrival Call Act to **Answer**. Call Waiting Service is available regardless of whether you activate or deactivate Arrival Call Act.

If Arrival Call Act is set to other than **Answer**, an incoming call cannot be received even when you activate Call Waiting Service.

Other operations

Putting the current call on hold to answer an incoming call

- 1 Press **☎** during a call.

The current call is put on hold and the second call can be answered.

- **Multi connecting** appears on the screen.
- Press **☎** to switch the other parties.
- When **Hold** is displayed in the guide row, you can put your current call on hold by pressing **☎**. Press **☎** again to release on hold.
- To finish a call on hold, Press **Menu** **1** **あ** **あ** while Call Waiting is active (during multi-connection).

- 2 Press **☎** when you finish talking to the other party.

This ends the call and the ring tone sounds.

- Press **☎** to switch back to the other party on hold.

Answering an incoming call after finishing the current call

- 1 Press **☎** during a call.

A ring tone sounds to indicate there is an incoming call.

- 2 Press **☎**.

You are connected to the new party.

Holding the current call and making another call

- 1 Press **Menu** **8** **あ** **あ** **あ** during a call and enter the phone number.

- Press **Menu** **2** **あ** **あ** **あ** to call back from the received call history or press **Menu** **3** **あ** **あ** **あ** to make a call from Redial. When calling the party registered in the phonebook, press **☎** and place the cursor at the other party to make a call to.

- 2 Press **☎**.

Your current call is automatically put on hold and you can begin talking to the other party you called.

- **Multi connecting** appears on the screen.
- Press **☎** to switch the other parties.
- When **Hold** is displayed in the guide row, you can put your current call on hold by pressing **☎**. Press **☎** again to release on hold.
- To finish a call on hold, Press **Menu** **1** **あ** **あ** while Call Waiting is active (during multi-connection).

- 3 Press **☎** when you finish talking to the other party.

The call ends.

- Press **☎** to switch back to the other party on hold.

INFORMATION

During multi-connection, you cannot receive incoming calls. Unanswered calls are recorded as missed ones on the received call history.

Using Call Forwarding Service Call Forwarding

Call Forwarding Service automatically forwards calls to your home or office when FOMA terminal is outside the service area, is turned off or you cannot answer the call.

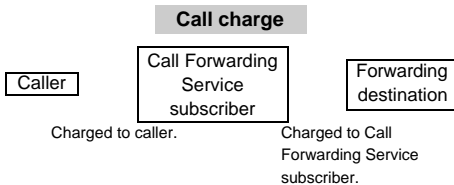
- The service is available anywhere within the FOMA service area nationwide.

- Only 1 forwarding destination can be set.
- When Call Forwarding Service is on, you are still able to make and receive calls.
- When there is a call if Forwarding Phone Number Service is active, the ring tone sounds (for 7 sec. during sign-up). You can make a call while the ring tone sounds. The time when the ring tone is sounding (calling time) can be changed. However, if the ringing time is set to 0 seconds, the received call history will not be registered.
- You can forward incoming calls (☛P63). You can also forward incoming calls while you are on the phone. ☛P406
- Note that though you can subscribe to both Call Forwarding Service and Voice Mail Service, 2 services cannot be used simultaneously. When you enable Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service is automatically disabled. (After that, if you turn Voice Mail Service off, Call Forwarding Service is not automatically activated.)
- When a *User unset* call is received while Caller ID Request Service is on, a guidance is played requesting to notify the caller ID. The call is not forwarded to the forwarding destination.
- Call Forwarding Service can be operated from touch-tone general subscriber phones or payphones using the network security code. Set Remote Control beforehand.
- You cannot forward incoming video-phone calls to the forwarding destination incompatible with the 3G-324M standard even if Call Forwarding Service is activated. Check the specifications of the destination when making the forward settings.
- Some cost plans are not applicable.

Basic flow of Call Forwarding Service

- Step 1** Set the forwarding destination phone number
- Step 2** Activate Call Forwarding Service
- Step 3** Calls come in to your FOMA terminal
- Step 4** Unanswered calls are automatically forwarded to the previously specified destination

About Call Forwarding Service fees



- There is no call charge for setting the forwarding destination, activating and deactivating the service, and setting the ringing time.

Activating Call Forwarding Service

- 1 Press **Menu** **9** **W** **X** **Y** **Z** **3** **D** **E** **F** **1** **A** **B** on the stand-by display.
- 2 Select *Yes*.
- 3 Select *Yes*.
- 4 Enter the forwarding destination phone number (up to 26 digits).

- The 3-digit numbers such as 110, quick, and toll-free numbers cannot be specified as a forwarding destination.

Setting forwarding destination phone numbers from the phonebook

- ① Press **Menu** while **☰** is indicated in the guide row.
 - Press **Menu** to search again by changing the search method.
 - When a phonebook entry including several phone numbers is selected, select a phone number where you want to forward to.
- ② Select the forwarding destination phone number.

- 5 Press **☐**.
- 6 Select *Yes*.
 - Select *No* to activate Call Forwarding Service by the set time (the default ringing time is 7 seconds) without the ringing time setting.
- 7 Enter the ringing time (between 0 and 120 seconds).
 - You can also increase or decrease the entered values by pressing **⬆**.

INFORMATION

When FOMA terminal is outside the service area or is turned off, calls are automatically transferred without the ring tone sounding. Also in this case, Call Forwarding Service subscriber is charged for the call from the forwarding source to destination. Transfer may be suspended when the forwarding destination requests to stop the service and DoCoMo determines this to be necessary.

Note that specifying a PBX, beeper* or facsimile machine as the forwarding destination may cause misunderstanding by callers.

When a new call arrives while you are talking (or using packet communication), you can choose to forward the call to the forwarding phone number. Forwarding the incoming call manually P63 Ringing time setting is still retained even after you change the forwarding phone number or deactivate Call Forwarding Service.

Deactivating Call Forwarding Service

- 1 Press on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.

Checking current settings

You check service activation/deactivation and the forwarding destination phone number.

- 1 Press on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.

Changing forwarding destination

- 1 Press on the stand-by display.
- 2 Enter a phone number and press .
- 3 Select *Yes*.

Setting forwarding guidance on/off

- 1 Press on the stand-by display and follow the voice prompts.

Setting Voice Mail Service to handle calls when forwarding destination is busy

- A subscription for Voice Mail Services is required.

- 1 Press on the stand-by display.

- 2 Select *Yes*.
 - To cancel the handling by Voice Mail, select *No*.

Using Nuisance Call Blocking Service

Nuisance Call Blocking

You can set FOMA terminal to automatically reject nuisance calls. After registering a phone number of the nuisance caller, subsequent calls from the registered phone number are rejected, letting the caller hear the guidance informing it.

- Up to 30 phone numbers can be registered.

Registering the phone number of last received call as nuisance caller

- 1 Press on the stand-by display after disconnecting a nuisance call.
- 2 Select *Yes*.

The phone number of the latest received call is registered in the nuisance call list and is rejected in future. The phone numbers you did not answer such as missed calls, etc. cannot be registered.

When 30 phone numbers have already been registered

A screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite the oldest phone number on the list. Select *Yes* to delete the oldest phone number from the list and allow you to register a new phone number.

Registering the specified phone number as nuisance caller

- 1 Press on the stand-by display and follow the voice prompts.

* From January 2001, the DoCoMo display beeper name has changed to "QUICKCAST".

The following table lists the relationships between incoming calls received with Nuisance Call Blocking Service activated and other services.

Service	Handling of incoming calls to be rejected
Voice Mail Service	The call rejection guidance is played. No voice message is recorded.
Call Forwarding Service	The call rejection guidance is played. The call is not forwarded to the forwarding destination.
Call Waiting Service	The call rejection guidance is played.
Caller ID Request Service	The call rejection guidance is played. The guidance which requests to notify the caller ID is not played.
Driving Mode	The call rejection guidance is played. The Driving Mode guidance is not played.

You can register a *User unset* call on the nuisance call list.

You cannot check for or inquire about phone numbers registered on the nuisance call list. It is recommended that you make a note of the phone numbers registered as nuisance callers. International phone calls may not be registered on the nuisance call list.

When there is a voice call from the number registered in the nuisance call list, neither the ring tone sounds nor the call is recorded in the received call history. When receiving a video-phone call from the number registered in the nuisance call list, a message indicating that a connection could not be made is displayed without playing the guidance

Deleting phone numbers from nuisance caller list

You can delete phone numbers one-by-one, beginning with the most recently registered. You can also delete all phone numbers at once.

1 Press **Menu** **9** **W** **X** **Y** **Z** **4** **た** **GHI** **3** **さ** **DEF** on the stand-by display.

- Press **Menu** **9** **W** **X** **Y** **Z** **4** **た** **GHI** **2** **か** **ABC** to delete all phone numbers.

2 Select **Yes**.

The most recent registered phone number is deleted.

Using Caller ID Request Service Caller ID Request

For an incoming call without the caller ID, this service plays a guidance requesting the caller to notify the caller ID information. This helps you avoid problems caused by nuisance calls, etc.

- Caller ID Request Service operates when no caller ID is notified because of *User unset*. This service does not operate when no caller ID is notified because of *Not support* or *Payphone*.
- The caller is charged for calls while the guidance requesting the caller ID information plays.

Activating Caller ID Request Service

1 Press **Menu** **9** **W** **X** **Y** **Z** **6** **ほ** **MNO** **1** **あ** **AB** on the stand-by display.

2 Select **Yes**.

Deactivating Caller ID Request Service

1 Press **Menu** **9** **W** **X** **Y** **Z** **6** **ほ** **MNO** **2** **か** **ABC** on the stand-by display and select **Yes**.

Checking current settings

1 Press **Menu** **9** **W** **X** **Y** **Z** **6** **ほ** **MNO** **3** **さ** **DEF** on the stand-by display and select **Yes**.

INFORMATION

The following table lists the relationships between incoming calls received with Caller ID Request Service activated and other services.

Service	Handling of incoming calls with caller ID unset
Voice Mail Service	The guidance which requests to notify the caller ID is played. No voice message is recorded.
Call Forwarding Service	The guidance which requests to notify the caller ID is played. The call is not forwarded to the forwarding destination.
Call Waiting Service	The guidance which requests to notify the caller ID is played.
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	If the call originates from a number on the nuisance caller list, the call rejection guidance is played. The guidance which requests to notify the caller ID is not played.
Driving Mode	The guidance which requests to notify the caller ID is played. The Driving Mode guidance is not played.

When a *User unsent* voice call is received while Caller ID Request Service is activated, no ring tone sounds and the call is not recorded on the received call history. When receiving a video-phone call without the caller ID, the guidance will not be played to request the caller ID. The message which notices caller disconnection will be displayed on the screen. Caller ID Request Service can be activated/deactivated only with FOMA terminal with your own UIM attached. Remote Control is not available. Operation for activating/deactivating the service does not require call charge. If Anonymous Caller of FOMA terminal is set as well as this service, this service is given priority.

Using Dual Network Service

Dual Network

Allows you to use the mova terminal with the phone number of FOMA terminal. With this function, even in a location outside the FOMA service area, you can make or receive voice calls using the mova terminal if you are inside the mova service area.

- FOMA and mova cannot be used simultaneously.
- Perform operation to switch Dual Network Service from FOMA terminal or mova terminal which is not in service.

Activating mova terminal

- 1 Dial "1540" on the mova terminal.
- 2 Follow the voice prompts.

Activating FOMA terminal

The following procedure explains the method of switching Dual Network Service that is used by the mova terminal to FOMA terminal.

- 1 Press **[Menu]** **[9 W X Y Z]** **[9 W X Y Z]** **[5 JK L]** **[1 . / @]** on the stand-by display of FOMA terminal.
- 2 Select *Yes*.
- 3 Enter the network security code.

Checking current settings

- 1 Press **[Menu]** **[9 W X Y Z]** **[9 W X Y Z]** **[5 JK L]** **[2 か ABC]** on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

The mova terminal is available for the current FOMA i-mode service with some exceptions. Moreover, when using i-mode or various network services, FOMA and mova terminals are subject to their respective restrictions and precautions. For details, see "Network Services User's Guide".

Switching languages for the guidance

English Guidance

This service allows you and other parties to hear the guidance in English when using various network services as well as when making and receiving calls.

- Guidance in Japanese and English is provided.
- While the caller is using this service, the caller's settings will take priority over the receiver's.

- 1 Press **[Menu]** **[9 W X Y Z]** **[9 W X Y Z]** **[4 次 GH I]** **[1 . / @]** on the stand-by display.

- 2 Select *Yes*.

- 3 Press **[1 . / @]** or **[2 か ABC]**.

Japanese: Sets the guidance for you to hear at the time of calling to Japanese.

English: Sets the guidance for you to hear at the time of calling to English.

- 4 Select *Yes*.

- 5 Press **[1 . / @]** to **[3 DEF]**.

Japanese: Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to Japanese.

Japanese+English

: Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to Japanese followed by English.

English+Japanese

: Sets the guidance for the other party to hear at the time of receiving to English followed by Japanese.

Checking current settings

- 1 Press **[Menu]** **[9 W X Y Z]** **[9 W X Y Z]** **[4 次 GH I]** **[2 か ABC]** on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.

Using Service Dialing Number Service Dialing Number

Calls are made to DoCoMo for Repairs or DoCoMo for General Inquiries.

- The item numbers for the DoCoMo for Repairs and DoCoMo for General Inquiries may differ depending on the UIM types. ●P41

Calling DoCoMo for Repairs

1 Press **Menu** **9** **9** **6** **1** on the stand-by display.

2 Select **Yes**.

Call is made to DoCoMo for Repairs.

Calling DoCoMo for General Inquiries

1 Press **Menu** **9** **9** **6** **2** on the stand-by display.

2 Select **Yes**.

Call is made to DoCoMo Information Center.

Setting Arrival Call Act Arrival Call Act

During a voice call or 64K data communication you can use Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, etc. to handle an incoming call.

- Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service are optional subscriber services.
- 64K data communication or a video-phone call received during a call, and 64K data communication or a video-phone call received during 64K data communication are rejected (handled according to *Call Rejection*).

Selecting how incoming calls are handled while talking

Default **Answer**

1 Press **Menu** **9** **8** on the stand-by display.

2 Press **1** to **4**.

Answer : You can make a call during a talk or 64K data communication, and also you can forward the call to the destination registered in Voice Mail Service or Forwarding Phone Number Service.

Voice Mail : Incoming calls received during a call or 64K data communication are handled by Voice Mail Service.

Call Forwarding

: The second call received during a call or 64K data communication is forwarded.

Call Rejection

: The second call received during a call or 64K data communication is rejected and recorded on the received call history.

INFORMATION

To enable Arrival Call Act you selected, turn Arrival Act Setting on. However, when Call Waiting Service is subscribed and activated, Arrival Call Act is enabled regardless of Arrival Act Setting. If you set this function to **Voice Mail** or **Call Forwarding** and turn Arrival Act Setting on, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is automatically available even while either of them is deactivated.

Enabling Arrival Call Act Arrival Act Setting

You activate or deactivate the response method selected by Arrival Call Act.

- The act selected in Arrival Call Act is performed with Call Waiting Service subscribed and activated regardless of settings of this function.

1 Press **Menu** **9** **7** **1** on the stand-by display.

2 Select **Yes**.

Disabling Arrival Call Act

1 Press **Menu** **9** **7** **2** on the stand-by display and select **Yes**.

Checking current settings

1 Press **Menu** **9** **7** **3** on the stand-by display and select **Yes**.

Setting Remote Control

Remote Control

You can access such services as Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service from touch-tone general subscriber phones or payphones.

Activating Remote Control

- 1 Press **Menu** **9** **9** **3** **1** on the stand-by display.
- 2 Select *Yes*.

Deactivating Remote Control

- 1 Press **Menu** **9** **9** **3** **2** on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.

Checking current settings

- 1 Press **Menu** **9** **9** **3** on the stand-by display and select *Yes*.

Using Multi Number

Multi Number

- Multi Number has not been started as of August 2005.

Registering new network services

Added Service (Register USSD)

When a new network service is provided by DoCoMo, you use the service by registering it in the menu.

- Up to 10 services can be registered.

Registering network services

- 1 Press **Menu** **9** **9** **1** on the stand-by display.

- 2 Place the cursor at the number to record and press **□**.

Register USSD	1/2
1	[Not recorded]
2	[Not recorded]
3	[Not recorded]
4	[Not recorded]
5	[Not recorded]
6	[Not recorded]
7	[Not recorded]
8	[Not recorded]

- Press **↔** to switch to the next or previous page.

Changing registered contents

- ① Place the cursor at a number that is already in use and press **□**.
- 3 Select *USSD code* field, enter the USSD code.
 - Enter the service code provided by DoCoMo in *USSD code* field. Service code is the code used to make settings for the network service. It is registered as the USSD code on FOMA terminal.
- 4 Select *Name* field and enter the service name (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters).
- 5 Press **□**.

Using registered network services

- 1 Press **Menu** **9** **9** **1** on the stand-by display.
- 2 Press **1** to **8**.

The registered code is transmitted to the service center.

Register USSD	1/2
1	△△△△
2	□□□□
3	[Not recorded]
4	[Not recorded]
5	[Not recorded]
6	[Not recorded]
7	[Not recorded]
8	[Not recorded]
XXXXXXX	

- Press **↔** to switch to the next or previous page.

Service code is displayed.

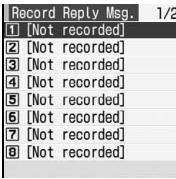
Registering reply messages

You can register messages corresponding to a code returned from the service center when an added service is executed. The reply message is displayed when the recorded code is returned as a reply.

- Up to 10 messages can be registered.

- 1 Press **Menu** **9** **9** **2** on the stand-by display.

2 Press **1** to **8** .



• Press to switch to the next or previous page.

Changing registered contents

① Select a number that is already in use.

- 3 Select *USSD code* field and enter the USSD code provided by DoCoMo.
- 4 Select *Reply message* field and enter the message (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters).
- 5 Press .

Deleting registered services

- 1 Press **Menu** **1** on the stand-by display.
 - Press **Menu** **2** to delete the reply message.
 - 2 Place the cursor at the service to delete and press **Menu** .
 - Press **Menu** to delete all services.
 - Press to switch to the next or previous page.
- 3 Select *Yes*.

Data Communication

Data communication	410
Flow of setup for data communication	411
Connecting PC to FOMA terminal	412
Installation of the communication configuration file (driver)	413
Communicating using FOMA PC configuration software	414
Communicating without using FOMA PC configuration software	423
AT command	432

Data communication

The data communication and connection modes available from FOMA terminal and hints on use are explained.

- FOMA terminal does not support fax communication.
- When connecting FOMA terminal to DoCoMo's PDA "sigmarion" or "musea" for data communication, make sure to update "sigmarion" or "musea". For details on update such as method, visit the DoCoMo website.

Supported communication modes

FOMA terminal supports 3 communication systems: packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer.

These communications become available by installing the related software on a PC from the attached CD-ROM, connecting FOMA terminal to a PC and making required settings.

Packet communication

Packet communication charges are based on the amount of data sent and received, which make it suitable for high-speed exchange of relatively small amounts of data such as sending and receiving mail. No communication charges are required when no data are exchanged even if you are connected to the network. Therefore, sending/receiving data as needed while remaining connected to the network is possible. High-speed packet communication provides a maximum reception speed of 384 kbps and a maximum transmission speed of 64 kbps by using access points that support packet communication on FOMA, such as mopera U / mopera, DoCoMo's Internet connection service. These are offered by Best-effort connection which allows transmission speed to vary with the environment and the rate of congestion. Note that communications of large-size data such as for viewing and downloading websites containing images will require high charges.

64K data communication

The 64K data communications allow data transmission/reception at stabled communication rate of 64 kbps. Communication charges are based on the duration of the connection to the network regardless of the volume of data, which make it suitable for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data as in downloading multi-media contents. Use access points that support FOMA 64K data communication services such as mopera U / mopera, DoCoMo's Internet connection service or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps access points.

Data transfer

It is a form of non-charged communication in which data are transferred/exchanged via FOMA USB cable (optional). Various data including the phonebook, incoming/outgoing mail and bookmarks are sent/received.

Usage precautions

Internet service provider usage charges

When using the Internet from PC, usage charge to your Internet service provider (herein after called as provider) is generally required. This charge is paid directly to the provider, and is separate from the FOMA service charge. For more information on usage charges, contact your provider.

- DoCoMo provides 2 Internet connection services: mopera U and mopera. The mopera U service allows you to use broadband Internet connection and international roaming services. It requires subscription and a monthly fee. There is also a plan that requires a monthly fee only when you use the service. The mopera service, however, allows you to access the Internet without subscription and monthly fee. You can make a connection with Internet immediately. For the detailed usage fee, see the DoCoMo website.

Setting dialup connection (provider, etc.)

Different dialup connections are required for packet communication and 64K data communication. When performing packet communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA packet communication. When performing 64K data communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps data communication.

- You cannot connect to access points of DoPa.
- You cannot connect to access points of PHS64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS.

User authentication during network access

Some dialup connections require user authentication (ID and password) before a connection can be established. If user authentication is required, you must use your communication software or dialup network to enter your ID and password before connection. Your ID and password will be assigned by the dialup connection's provider or network administrator. For more information, contact your provider or network administrator.

Access authentication during using PC browser

To authenticate FirstPass (user certificate), you must install FirstPass PC software from the attached CD-ROM and configure it. See "FirstPassManual" in CD-ROM for details.

To view "FirstPassManual" (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If Adobe Reader is not installed in your PC, you can download the latest version from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website. (Communication fee are separately required for downloading.) See the Adobe Systems Incorporated website for details.

Operating environment for the FirstPass PC software

Item	Requirements
PC	PC/AT compatible computer
OS	The Japanese version of Windows 98SE, Me, 2000, XP
Memory requirements*1	Windows 98SE, Me, 2000: 32MB or more Windows XP: 128MB or more
Hard Disk Capacity*1	10 MB or more free disk space
Browser	Microsoft® Internet Explorer 5.5 and later version For Windows XP, Microsoft® Internet Explorer 6.0 and later version

*1 May vary with the PC system configurations.

Conditions of packet communication and 64K data communication

To perform data communication from FOMA terminal, the following conditions must be satisfied.

- The PCs which support a FOMA USB cable (optional).
- You must be within the FOMA service area.
- Packet communication requires an access point that supports FOMA packet communications.
- 64K data communication requires a dialup connection that supports FOMA 64K data communications or ISDN synchronized 64 kbps.

However, even when the above requirements are satisfied, you may not be able to perform data communication if base station traffic is heavy, or the signal quality is poor.

Glossary of Data communication

APN (Access Point Name)

String to identify a provider or in-house LAN to connect with by packet communication. The APN for mopera U is "mopera.net" and mopera is "mopera.ne.jp". cid (Context Identifier)

A number corresponding to a dialup connection (APN) of packet communication and registration number assigned to APN that is registered in FOMA terminal. 10 numbers from 1 to 10 are available for FOMA terminal.

"mopera.ne.jp" is registered in cid1, and "mopera.net" for cid3 by default.

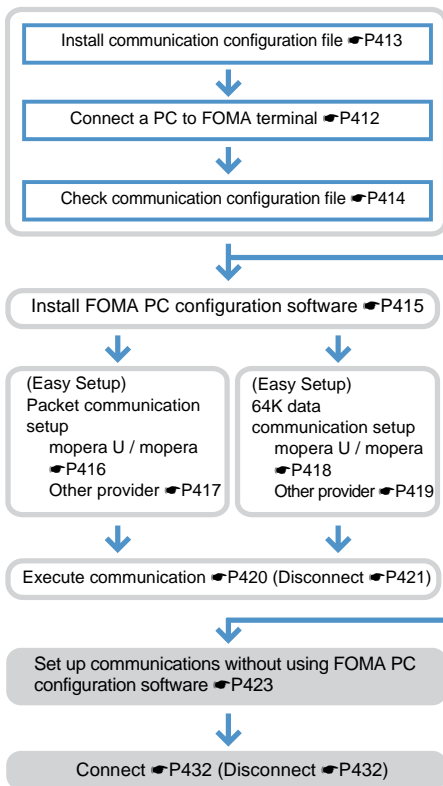
W-TCP

A TCP parameter designed to fully utilize TCP/IP transmission capacity during packet communications in a FOMA network. This communication setting is essential to enable full use of FOMA terminal capability. Administrator privilege

A user level that provides complete access to all OS functions in Windows XP and 2000. There must be at least 1 user that has administrator privileges for each PC. A user that has no administrator privileges is not normally allowed to install/uninstall drivers and software.

Flow of setup for data communication

The setup work needed to connect FOMA terminal to a PC to perform packet or 64K data communication is as follows:



Communication configuration file (driver)

Install the communication configuration file on a PC from attached CD-ROM, before connecting FOMA terminal to a PC to perform data communication in the communication mode.

FOMA PC configuration software

When the FOMA PC configuration software (found on the CD-ROM) is installed on a PC, a number of settings required for data communication via connection between FOMA terminal and PC can be made from the PC by simple operation.

Checking operating environment

Use the communication configuration file and the FOMA PC configuration software in the following operating environments:

- Note that utilization may not be possible in certain operating environments. Furthermore, operation will not be guaranteed in an environment other than that described below and DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for pertaining to operation under such conditions.
- The operation procedure for Windows XP is mainly explained here. The screen display may differ under other OS. Also, Windows 98 and Windows 98SE are collectively shown as Windows 98.

Item	Requirements
PC*1	PC/AT compatible computer
OS	The Japanese version of Windows 98, Me, 2000, XP
Memory requirements	Windows 98, Me: 32MB or more Windows 2000: 64MB or more Windows XP: 128MB or more
Hard disk capacity	5 MB or more free disk space

*1 PC with a USB port (conform to USB specification 1.1/2.0) is required in case of USB connection.

Before installation/uninstallation

- Installing and uninstalling the communication configuration file or FOMA PC configuration software under Windows XP or 2000 can only be performed by a user with administrator privileges. Attempting by others user produces an error. For details on PC administrator privileges, refer to the instruction of the PC or contact your PC manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation.
- Before starting operation, make sure that no other program is running. If there is any active program, save and exit the program before operation.

Connecting PC to FOMA terminal

The connection should be made with the PC and FOMA terminal both switched on.

- Be sure to install the communication configuration file (driver) before connecting with a PC in the communication mode for the first time. ●P413
- When FOMA terminal is connected with a PC in the miniSD mode for the first time, the OS installs the driver automatically. Installation of the communication configuration file on a PC is not required beforehand. However, the OS which support the miniSD mode are Windows XP and 2000 only.

Selecting PC operation during USB connection

USB Mode Setting

Specify whether to perform data communication via PC or operate the data of the miniSD memory card attached to FOMA terminal from a PC at the time of connection of PC and FOMA terminal.

Default Communication mode

1 Press **Menu** **6** (MNO) **5** (JKL) **4** (GHI) on the stand-by display.

2 Press **1** (.) or **2** (ABC).

Communication mode

: In this mode, data communication is performed from a PC.

miniSD mode

: In this mode, the miniSD memory card attached to FOMA terminal is operated from a PC.

3 Select **Yes**.


INFORMATION

Even when FOMA terminal is connected with PC, this function setting can be changed.

miniSD mode may not be set if the PC is set to start data communication automatically when FOMA terminal is connected.

When the miniSD memory card is being operated from a PC, the mode cannot be set to **Communication mode**. Also, **miniSD mode** cannot be set during a call or i-mode.

When **miniSD mode** is set


- If you format the miniSD memory card attached to FOMA terminal from a PC, FOMA terminal may not be disabled. It is advisable to format the miniSD memory card on FOMA terminal. ●P337
- USB Mode Setting is switched automatically to **communication mode** in about 90 seconds after the last access to the miniSD memory card without connecting FOMA terminal to a PC.
- Communication such as phone call or i-mode can not be used.
- The call indicator flashes.
- Click  on the task tray and click **USB 大容量記憶装置デバイス - ドライブ (E:) を安全に取り外します** (Release safely the USB large memory device-Drive E: *2) to quit operation of the miniSD memory card.

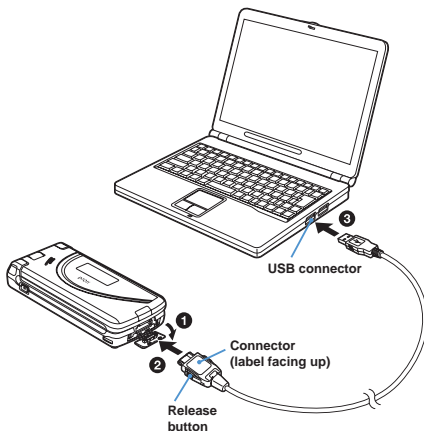
*2 The character to be assigned to a drive varies with the system of PC.

The miniSD memory card folder structure during operation from a PC. ●P330

Connecting using the FOMA USB cable

Connect by using the FOMA USB cable (optional).

- 1 Open the cap on the FOMA terminal's external connection terminal.
- 2 Insert one end of the FOMA USB cable into the FOMA terminal's external connection terminal until it clicks.
- 3 Insert the other end of the FOMA USB cable into the PC USB connector.
 - When a PC and FOMA terminal are connected in the communication mode,  appears on the display of FOMA terminal.
 - If you connect FOMA terminal to a PC in the communication mode before installing the communication configuration file, Windows may automatically detect that a FOMA USB cable has been inserted, request to install a driver, and the wizard screen will be displayed. In that case, remove FOMA terminal and click キャンセル (Cancel) to exit the wizard.



Removing FOMA USB cable

Press release buttons on both sides of the connector for FOMA terminal and pull it out. Pull the connector for PC out from the PC.

Connecting while charging

FOMA terminal can be connected using a data communication adapter D01 (optional) during the charging. However, charging time becomes longer.

INFORMATION


Do not remove the USB cable during data communication.

Installation of the communication configuration file (driver)

Install the communication configuration file on a PC before connecting FOMA terminal to a PC to perform communication in the communication mode.

- When FOMA terminal is connected with PC in the miniSD mode, installation of the communication configuration file is not required.

Installing the communication configuration file

- Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation"  P412

Example For Windows XP

- 1 Insert the attached CD-ROM into a PC.
 - Make sure to connect FOMA terminal to a PC after performing Steps 1 to 3.
- 2 Click スタート(Start) and ファイル名を指定して実行 (Run). Enter "<CD-ROM drive letter>:\\$USBDRIVE\\$D701iin.exe" in 名前 (Name) and click OK.
- 3 Click はい (Yes).

A screen requesting to connect FOMA D701i to a PC is displayed.
- 4 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC.

A progress screen for installation is displayed and automatically completed.

 - Connect FOMA terminal while the power is on.
 - Check type and name of the device installed.

INFORMATION

Installation may take a few minutes.

When Windows rebooting is prompted on the screen, follow the instruction and reboot.

If the PC and FOMA terminal are connected before the communication configuration file is installed, another driver may be automatically installed. When this happens, performing the operation in Step 2 displays a message saying that the installed driver must be uninstalled. In this case, uninstall the driver following instruction shown on the display and install the communication configuration file.

If PC cannot detect FOMA terminal for some reason, uninstall and reinstall the communication configuration file.

Checking the communication configuration file

- When the PC does not detect FOMA terminal correctly, settings and communication cannot be performed.

Example For Windows XP

- Click **スタート**, **コントロールパネル** (Control Panel), **パフォーマンスとメンテナンス** (Performance and maintenance) icon and **システム** (System) icon.

システムのプロパティ (System properties) screen is displayed.

For Windows 2000, Me, 98

- Click **スタート**, **設定** (Setting) and **コントロールパネル**. Then **double-click** **システム** icon.

- Click **ハードウェア** (Hardware) tab and **デバイスマネージャ** (Device manager).

デバイスマネージャ screen appears.

For Windows Me, 98

- Click **デバイスマネージャ** tab.

- Click each device to check the name of the installed device.

Check that the name of all devices installed are shown.

Device type	Device name
Port (COM/LPT) or (COM and LPT)	• FOMA D701i Command Port (COMx)*1 • FOMA D701i OBEX Port (COMx)*1
Modem	FOMA D701i
Universal Serial Bus Controller or USB (Universal Serial Bus) Controller	• FOMA D701i • FOMA D701i Command*2 • FOMA D701i Modem*2 • FOMA D701i OBEX*2

*1 COMx varies with PC to be used.

*2 Displayed only under Windows Me and 98.

Uninstalling the communication configuration file

- Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation" ●P412
- Before uninstalling, make sure that FOMA terminal is removed from the PC.

Example For Windows XP

- Click **スタート**, **コントロールパネル** and **プログラムの追加と削除** (Add/delete Programs) icon.

プログラムの追加と削除 screen is displayed.

For Windows 2000, Me, 98

- Click **スタート**, **設定** and **コントロールパネル**. Then **double-click** the **アプリケーションの追加と削除** (Add/delete applications) icon.

- Select **FOMA D701i USB** and click **変更と削除** (Update/delete).

- Check that you have selected the correct program for removal, and click **はい**.

The uninstall process of the configuration software starts.

- Click **OK**.

INFORMATION

When the installation fails or **FOMA D701i USB** is not displayed on the screen of Step 2, click **スタート**, and **ファイル名を指定して実行** after inserting the attached CD-ROM into the PC.

Then enter <CD-ROM drive letter>:\\$USBDRIVE \¥D701i.in.exe and click **OK** to execute directly and uninstall the communication configuration file.

When the communication configuration file is uninstalled and immediately reinstalled under Windows Me or 98, data communication may not be successful depending on the environment such as PC configuration. In this case, the FOMA USB cable (optional) should be removed and reinserted before re-attempting data communication.

Communicating using FOMA PC configuration software

A number of settings are required when FOMA terminal is connected to a PC to perform packet communication or 64K data communication. The FOMA PC configuration software allows you to easily perform the following settings:

Easy setup

Creating a dialup connection for FOMA data communication and W-TCP setup can be performed by following the instructions in the guide.

W-TCP setup

This function optimizes the settings in the PC required for FOMA packet communication. Optimization of the communication settings using W-TCP setup is required to enable full use of communication performance.

Dialup connection (APN) setup

This function performs dialup connection (APN) setup required for packet communication. Unlike 64K data communication, phone numbers cannot be used as a dialup connection for FOMA packet communication. Set a dialup connection name called APN in FOMA terminal for each dialup connection in advance, and enter the registration number (cid) in the phone number field of dialup connection. "mopera.ne.jp" (APN) is registered in cid 1 by default to connect to "mopera", and "mopera.net" (APN) for cid 3 to connect to "mopera U", by default, but the APN for connections to other providers and in-house LAN must be set.

Installing FOMA PC configuration software

- Uninstall an old version of the FOMA PC configuration software (version 1.00), if already installed, before installing FOMA PC configuration software (version 2.00) from attached CD-ROM. You can display the version from メニュー (Menu) /バージョン情報 (Version information) of FOMA PC configuration software.
- If "W-TCP environment configuration software" (herein after referred to as old "W-TCP configuration software") and "FOMA data communication configuration software" (herein after referred to as old "FOMA data communication configuration software") supplied with FOMA terminal released before this model are installed on your PC, you need to uninstall the software beforehand.
- Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation" ●P412

Example For Windows XP

- 1 Insert the attached CD-ROM into the PC.
- 2 Click **スタート** and **ファイル名を指定して実行**. Enter "<CD-ROM drive letter>:\FOMA_PCSET\SETUP.EXE" in **名前** and click **OK**.
- 3 Click **次へ** (Next).
FOMA PC configuration software license agreement appears.
- 4 Read the content of the screen and click **はい** if you agree to the agreement.
- 5 Check that **タスクトレイに常駐する** (Reside in task tray) is selected and click **次へ**.

W-TCP 設定 (W-TCP setup) resides in the task tray after the setup. ●P421

- Residing in task tray is the recommended setting for optimum control of "W-TCP communication" setting and cancellation.
- You can change the setting of resident software after the installation.



6 Check the installation path and click **次へ**.

7 Check the name of the program folder and click **次へ**.



8 Click **完了** (Done).

The "FOMA PC configuration software" is started up.

- Settings can be started from this screen.

INFORMATION

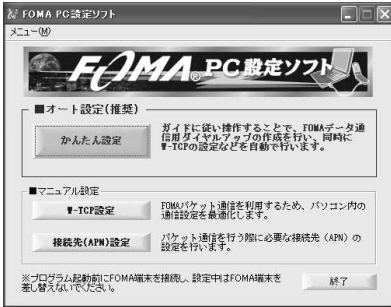
If "FOMA PC configuration software", old "W-TCP configuration software", and old "FOMA data communication configuration software" are already installed, the screen to cancel the installation appears. Click **OK** to uninstall these softwares and then install "FOMA PC configuration software".

When **キャンセル** (No) is clicked during installation, follow the instruction shown on the screen and click **はい** or **いいえ**.

Example For Windows XP

- Click **スタート, すべてのプログラム (All programs) (プログラム (Programs) for other than Windows XP), FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC configuration software) and FOMA PC設定ソフト.**

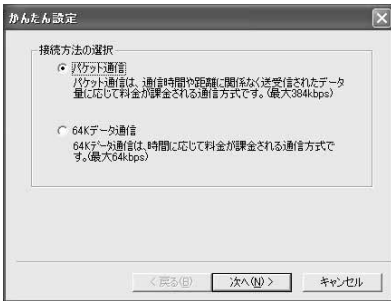
The FOMA PC configuration software is started up.



Using moper a U / moper a

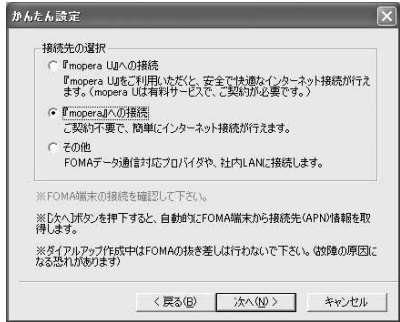
- Using other providers. ●P417

- Start the FOMA PC configuration software and click **かんたん設定 (Easy setup).**
- Select **パケット通信 (Packet communication) and click 次へ.**



- Select 『**moper a U**』への接続 (moper a U connection) or 『**moper a**』への接続 (moper a connection) and click **次へ.**

- Moper a U is an optional service to be charged requiring subscription. When moper a U is selected, a confirmation message to agreement is displayed.



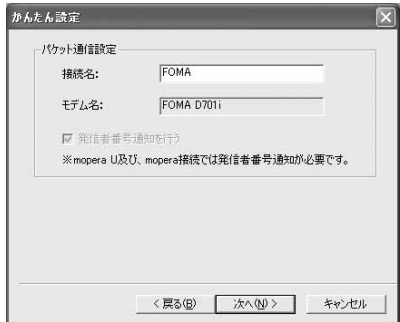
- Click **OK on FOMA 端末設定取得 (Get FOMA terminal settings) screen.**

接続先 (APN) 情報 (Dialup connection (APN) information) is obtained from FOMA terminal. Please wait.

- Enter any connection name and click **次へ.**

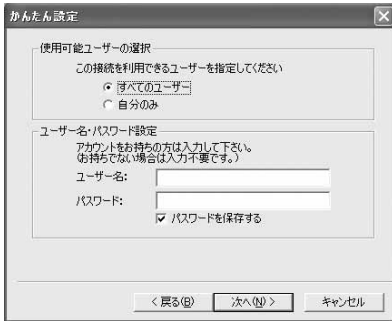
- The following characters (one-byte) cannot be entered:

¥ / : * ? ! < > | < " >



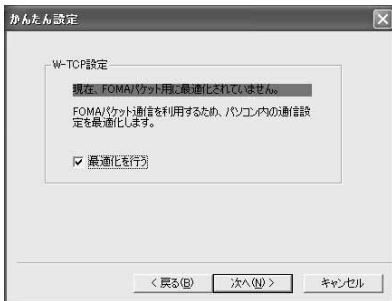
6 Click **次へ**.

- The entry of a **ユーザー名** (User name) or **パスワード** (Password) is not required.
- When the OS is Windows XP or 2000, select the users that are allowed to access the connection. For Windows Me or 98, selection of the users that are allowed to access the connection is not displayed.

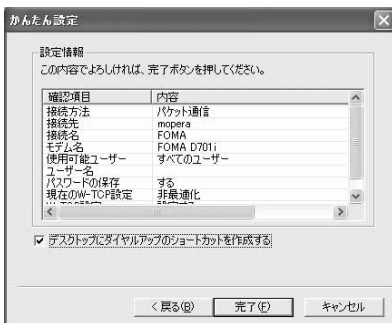


7 Check that **最適化を行う** (Optimize) is selected and click **次へ**.

- This screen is not displayed if optimization has already been performed.



8 Check the settings and click **完了**.



9 Click **OK**.

The PC must be rebooted for the changes to take effect. Click **はい** when a window prompts you to reboot the PC.

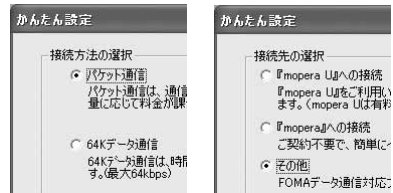
- If optimization of W-TCP setting has already been performed, rebooting is not required.
- Performing communication ◀P420

Using other providers

- Using mopera U / mopera ▶P416

1 Perform Steps 1 to 4 of "Using mopera U / mopera" of "Setting packet communication by easy setup". ▶P416

- Select **その他** (Others) in Step 3 for the dialup connection.



2 Enter any connection name and click **接続先 (APN) 設定** (Set dialup connection (APN)).

- The following characters (one-byte) cannot be entered:

¥ / : * ? ! < > | " ' `



Advanced setting (TCP/IP setting)

Click **詳細情報の設定** (Set detail info) to display **IP アドレス** (IP address) and **ネームサーバー** (Name server) setting screens.

When dialup information for the provider you subscribe to or the in-house LAN is required, register addresses based on the information assigned.

3 Set dialup connection (APN).

By default, "mopera.ne.jp" is registered in cid1, and "mopera.net" for cid3. The dialup connection (APN) must be registered either at cid2 or at anything from cid4 to cid10.

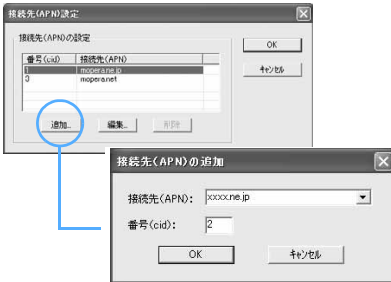
① Click **追加(Add)**.

接続先 (APN) の追加 (Add dialup connection (APN)) screen is displayed.

② Enter a dialup connection name (APN), which supports the FOMA packet communication of your provider, in the **接続先 (APN) (Dialup connection (APN))** correctly and click **OK**.

The display returns to **接続先 (APN) 設定** screen.

- Only one-byte alphanumeric characters, hyphens (-) and periods (.) can be entered in the **接続先 (APN)**.



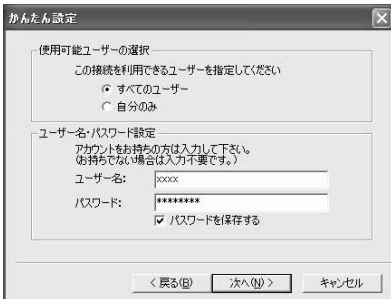
4 Click **OK**.

The display returns to the screen in Step 2. **接続先 (APN)** set in Step 3 is displayed in **接続先 (APN) の選択** (Select dialup connection (APN)).

5 Check the dial up connection name (APN) of **接続先 (APN) の選択** and click **次へ**.

6 Enter **ユーザー名** and **パスワード** and click **次へ**.

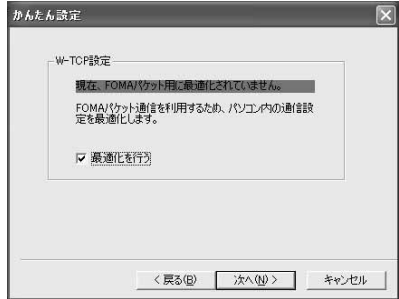
- Enter the **ユーザー名** and **パスワード** given by the provider correctly. Be careful about the upper/lower case of each character.
- When the OS is Windows XP or 2000, select the users that are allowed to access the connection. For Windows Me or 98, selection of the users that are allowed to access the connection is not displayed.



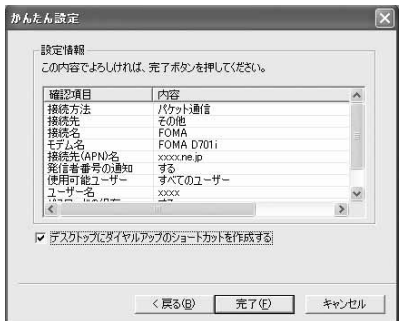
7 Check that **最適化を行う** is selected and click **次へ**.

This optimizes the W-TCP setup required for packet communication.

- This screen is not displayed if optimization has already been performed.



8 Check the settings and click **完了**.



9 Click **OK**.

The PC must be rebooted for the changes to take effect. Click **はい** when a window prompts you to reboot the PC.

- If optimization of W-TCP Setting has already been performed, rebooting is not required.
- Performing communication ◀P420

Setting 64K data communication by easy setup

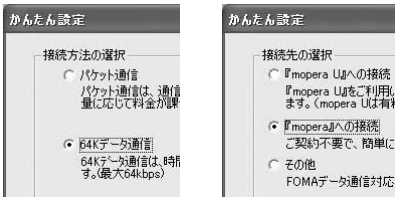
Example For Windows XP

Using mopera U / mopera

- Using other providers ◀P419

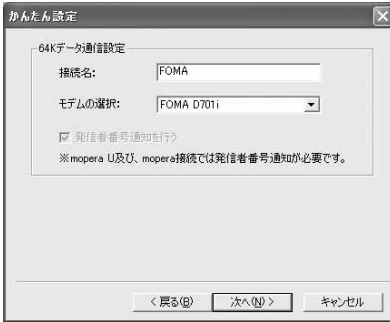
1 Perform Steps 1 to 3 of "Using mopera U / mopera" of "Setting packet communication by easy setup". ◀P416

- Select **64K データ通信** (64K data communication) in Step 2 for the communication procedure.



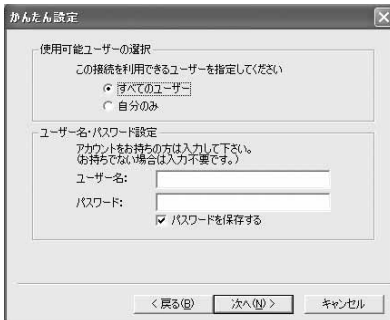
2 Enter any connection name and select the modem and click 次へ.

- The following characters (one-byte) cannot be entered:
¥ / : * ? ! < > | "
- Check that **FOMA D701i** is set for **モデムの選択** (Modem selection).

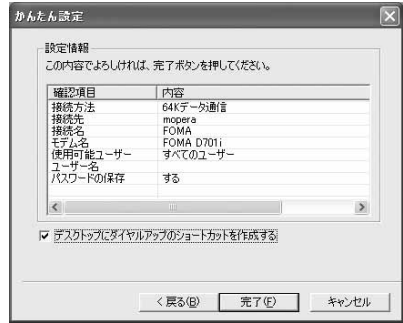


3 Click 次へ.

- The entry of **ユーザー名** or **パスワード** is not required.
- When the OS is Windows XP or 2000, select the users that are allowed to access the connection. For Windows Me or 98, selection of the users that are allowed to access the connection is not displayed.



4 Check the settings and click 完了.



5 Click OK.

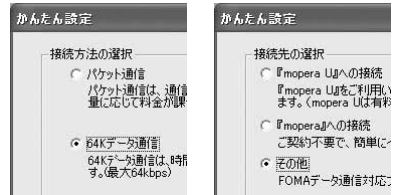
- Performing communication ◀P420

Using other providers

- Using mopera U / mopera ▶P418

1 Perform Steps 1 to 3 of "Using mopera U / mopera" of "Setting packet communication by easy setup". ▶P416

- Select **64K データ通信** in Step 2 for the communication procedure, and **その他** in Step 3 for the dialup connection.



2 Set each item and click 次へ.

- Register the following items:
 - 接続名**: Optional
 - モデムの選択**: FOMA D701i
 - 電話番号** (Phone number): Enter based on provider information.

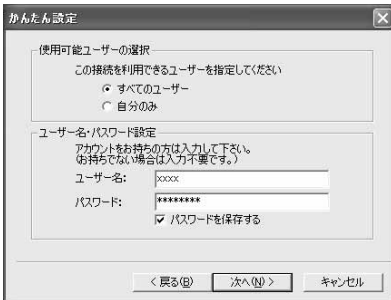


Advanced setting (TCP/IP setting)

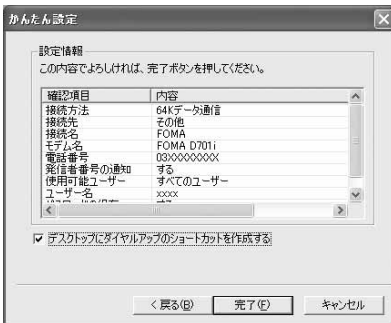
Click **詳細情報の設定** to display **IP アドレス** and **ネームサーバー** setting screens. When dialup information for the provider you subscribe to or the in-house LAN is required, register addresses based on the information assigned.

3 Enter **ユーザー名** and **パスワード** and click **次へ**.

- Enter the **ユーザー名** or **パスワード** given by the provider correctly. Be careful about the upper/lower case of each character.
- When the OS is Windows XP or 2000, select the users that are allowed to access the connection. For Windows Me or 98, selection of the users that are allowed to access the connection is not displayed.



4 Check the settings and click **完了**.



5 Click **OK**.

- Performing communication ●P420

Performing communication

Starting communication set with the FOMA PC configuration software and disconnection are explained here.

- 1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC. ●P412
- 2 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop.



Data communication starts.

- The icon varies depending on the OS.

- When there is no connection icon made on desktop, start from **スタート** (Start) menu.

Starting from **スタート** menu of Windows XP

- ① Click **スタート**, **すべてのプログラム**, **アクセサリ** (Accessories), **通信** (Communication), and **ネットワーク接続** (Network connection). Then double-click the connection icon.

Starting from Start menu of Windows 2000, Me or 98

- ① Click **スタート**, **プログラム**, **アクセサリ**, **通信** and **ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続** (Network and dialup connections) (ダイヤルアップネットワーク (Dialup network) for Me/98). Then double-click the connection icon.

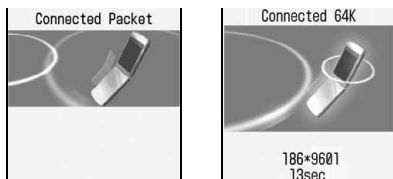
3 Establish a connection.

- When moperla U / moperla is selected, the entry of **ユーザー名** or **パスワード** is not required.
- If required by the instructions of a subscribed provider, enter **ユーザー名** and **パスワード**, and then click **ダイヤル** according to the input instruction information.
- The connection established screen may be displayed depending on the OS. Click **OK**.



INFORMATION

FOMA terminal displays a connecting screen when you execute packet or 64K data communication. The following screens are displayed when a connection has been established:




The communication status is displayed on the sub-display when FOMA terminal is closed. The transmission speed displayed on your PC may differ from actual speed. Data transmission is available only with FOMA terminal that was connected when the icon was created.

When connecting FOMA terminal other than D701i, installation of the communication configuration file for your FOMA terminal is needed.

Disconnecting

Just exiting the browser may not disconnect the connection. To ensure disconnection, perform the following operation:

- 1 Click  in the task tray.
 - Double-click for Windows Me and 98.
- 2 Click **切断** (Disconnect).




Optimizing packet communication setup

The method of optimizing the PC packet communication setup for FOMA network by means of "W-TCP setup" and canceling optimization is explained here.

The "W-TCP setup" is a "TCP parameter tuning tool" for optimizing TCP/IP transmission capacity during packet communication in the FOMA network. To enable full use of the communication capability of FOMA terminal, this communication set up is required.

For Windows XP

System optimization can be performed for each dialup connection.

- 1 Start **FOMA PC 設定ソフト** and click **W-TCP 設定 (W-TCP setup)**. 

Starting from the task tray

- ① Click .

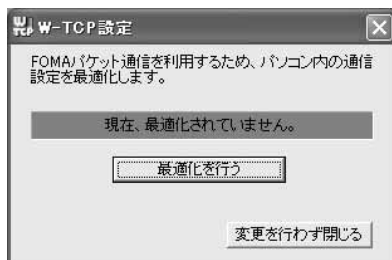
- 2 Perform the following:

When the system has not been optimized

- ① Click **最適化を行う** on the **W-TCP setting screen**.

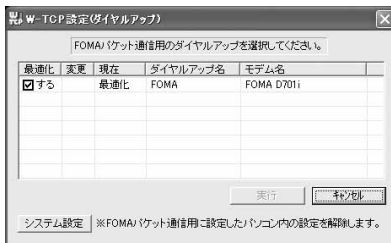
- ② **Select the dialup connection to be optimized and click 実行 (Execute).**

Optimization of the system settings and dialup settings are performed respectively.



When the system has been optimized

The following screen is displayed. Make the required settings if changes are to be made.



Deactivating optimization

- ① Click **システム設定 (System setting)** in **W-TCP 設定 (ダイヤルアップ) (Set W-TCP (dialup)) screen**.

The W-TCP setting screen is displayed.

- ② Click **最適化を解除する (Deactivate optimization)**.

- 3 Reboot Windows, following the instruction shown on the screen.

• The settings take effect after rebooting the PC.

1 Start *FOMA PC 設定ソフト* and click *W-TCP 設定 (W-TCP setup)*. ◀P416

Starting from the task tray

- 1 Click .

2 Perform the following:

When the system has not been optimized

- 1 Click *最適化を行う*.

Canceling the system setting that has been optimized

- 1 Click *最適化を解除する*.

3 Reboot Windows, following the instruction shown on the screen.

- The settings take effect after rebooting the PC.

Setting dialup connection (APN)

Set dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.

- Up to 10 dialup connections (APNs) can be set, which are to be registered under registration numbers (cid) 1 to 10 for management.
- By default, "mopera.ne.jp" is set for cid1 and "mopera.net" for cid3.
- Before setup, make sure that FOMA terminal and the PC are properly connected. ◀P413
- For dialup connection (APN) other than mopera U / mopera, inquire your provider or network administrator.

1 Start *FOMA PC 設定ソフト* and click *接続先 (APN) 設定*. ◀P416

FOMA 端末設定取得 screen is displayed.

2 Click *OK*.

FOMA terminal is accessed for reading the dialup connection (APN) information registered.

3 Make the dialup connection (APN) settings.



Adding dialup connections (APN)

- 1 Click *追加*.

Editing or correcting registered dialup connections (APN)

- 1 Select the dialup connection (APN) from the list and click *編集 (Edit)*.

Deleting registered dialup connection (APN)

- 1 Select the dialup connection (APN) from the list and click *削除 (Delete)*.
 - The dialup connection registered in cid1 and cid3 cannot be deleted. (Selecting cid3 and clicking *削除* do not actually delete, but return to "mopera.net".)

Saving settings as file

- 1 Click *ファイル (File)* and *名前を付けて保存 (Save as...)* or *上書き保存 (Overwrite)*.
 - Save the settings as a file to back up dialup connection (APN) settings registered in FOMA terminal or save dialup connection (APN) settings during editing.

Importing settings from file

- 1 Click *ファイル* and *開く (Open)*.
 - Import settings from a file to edit dialup connection (APN) saved on the PC or write to FOMA terminal.

Importing dialup connection (APN) information from FOMA terminal

- 1 Click *ファイル* and *FOMA 端末から設定を取得 (Import setting from FOMA terminal)*.
 - Access manually to FOMA terminal to import the dialup connection (APN) setting registered.

Writing dialup connection (APN) information to FOMA terminal

- 1 Click *FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む (Write setting to FOMA terminal)*.
 - The dialup connection (APN) setting displayed is written to FOMA terminal.

Creating dialup connections

- 1 Select an added or edited dialup connection (APN) and click *ダイヤルアップ作成 (Create dialup connection)*.
 - *FOMA 端末設定書き込み (Write setting to FOMA terminal)* screen is displayed.
- 2 Click *はい*.

When the dialup connection (APN) information have been written to FOMA terminal, *パケット通信ダイヤルアップの作成 (Create dialup connection for packet communication)* screen is displayed.

- 3 Enter any connection name and click *アカウント・パスワードの設定 (Set account and password)*.

- 4 Enter *ユーザー名* and *パスワード* and click *OK*.

- Not required for mopera U / mopera.
- When the OS is Windows XP or 2000, select the users that are allowed to access the connection.

- Some providers may request you to enter IP and DNS information settings. Should this be the case, click **詳細情報の設定** in **パケット通信ダイヤルアップの作成** screen, register the required information and click **OK**.
- 5 Click **FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む**.
A confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to overwrite.
 - 6 Click **はい**.


INFORMATION

The dialup connection (APN) setting is information saved in FOMA terminal. When connecting another FOMA terminal (terminal replaced by repair, etc.), re-register the APN. To continue to use the dialup connection (APN) saved in the PC, save the registration number (cid) of the same APN in FOMA terminal. When FOMA terminal is detected as number larger than COM20 by checking the communication configuration file, APN information cannot be obtained or written during APN setting. Set the information using "Hyper Terminal" that comes with Windows in that case. ●P424

Uninstalling FOMA PC configuration software

- Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation" ●P412

Uninstall preparations

Right-click  in the task tray, and click **常駐させない** (Do not reside), to cancel the resident of W-TCP setup.

Uninstalling

Example For Windows XP

- 1 Click **スタート, コントロールパネル and プログラムの追加と削除 icon**.

For Windows 2000, Me, 98

- 1 Click **スタート, 設定 and コントロールパネル**. Then **double-click アプリケーションの追加と削除 icon**.
- 2 Select **NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト** (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC configuration software) and click **変更と削除**.
- 3 Check that you have selected the correct program to delete and click **はい**.
The uninstall process of the FOMA PC configuration software starts.

Canceling W-TCP optimization

The confirmation screen is displayed when W-TCP has been optimized.

- Click **はい** when you want to uninstall the software after canceling the process of optimization.
- Canceling of W-TCP optimization is performed after the system is rebooted.

- 4 Click **OK**.

Communicating without using FOMA PC configuration software

The method of dialup network setup for packet communication/64K data communication without the FOMA PC configuration software is explained.

Setting operation procedures

Install the communication configuration file ●P413
Connect a PC to FOMA terminal ●P412



Set dialup connection (APN)
(For 64K data communication and packet communication via mopera U / mopera, dialup connection does not require this setting.)



Set to show/hide caller ID ●P425 (Set as required.)



Other settings (AT commands) ●P432
(Set as required.)



Dialup network setup

OS	Settings	Dialup connection → TCP/IP
	Windows XP	P425
Windows 2000	P427	P429
Windows Me	P430	P430
Windows 98	P431	P431

- For details settings, inquire your provider or network administrator.



Connect ●P432 (Disconnect ●P432)

Setting dialup connection (APN) for packet communication

Communication software to input AT commands is required for making settings. The method of setting using "HyperTerminal" that comes with Windows is explained here.

Default cid1 : mopera.ne.jp cid3 : mopera.net
cid2, 4 to 10 : not recorded

Example For Windows XP

- 1 Connect FOMA terminal to a PC. ●P412
- 2 Click **スタート, すべてのプログラム, アクセサリ, 通信** and **ハイパーターミナル (HyperTerminal)**. (And double-click **Hypertrm** under Windows 98.)
 - For other than Windows XP, **プログラム** is displayed for **すべてのプログラム**.
- 3 Enter any connection name in **名前** and click **OK**.



- 4 Enter a fictional phone number (such as 0) for **電話番号**, select **FOMA D701i** from **接続方法 (Connection procedure)**, and click **OK**.
 - Since **市外局番 (area code)** does not effect dialup connection (APN) setting, it is not necessary to change.



- 5 Click **キャンセル**, when the connection screen is displayed.

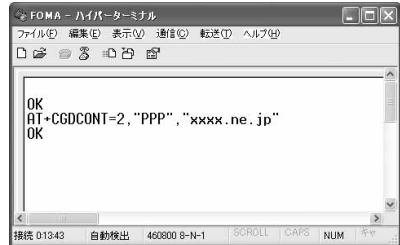
- 6 Enter the dialup connection (APN) and press **↵**.

• Enter in the format "AT+CGDCONT =<cid>, "PPP", "APN".

<cid> : Enter any number between 2, 4 to 10.

"PPP" : Enter "PPP".

"APN" : Enter the dialup connection name (APN) in quotation marks.



If **OK** is displayed, the dialup connection (APN) has now been set.

Resetting dialup connection (APN) settings

AT + CGDCONT= **↵** :

Reset all cids.

- The settings are restored to the default setting for <cid> = 1 and 3, and the settings for <cid> = 2, 4 to 10 are cleared.

AT + CGDCONT=<cid> **↵** :

Reset the specified cid

Checking dialup connection (APN) settings

AT + CGDCONT? **↵**

- For details ●P438

When nothing is displayed even if AT command is entered

ATE1 **↵**

- For details ●P436

- 7 Check that **OK** is displayed and click **ファイル, ハイパーターミナルの終了 (End Hyper Terminal)**.

• "XXX"と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか?
(Save the connection named "XXX"?) is displayed. Click **いいえ**.

Dialup connection (APN) and registration number (cid)

The dialup communication (APN) for packet communication can be set for registration numbers between cid1 to 10 in FOMA terminal. By default, "mopera.ne.jp" is set for cid1 and "mopera.net" for cid3. This setting is not required for mopera U / mopera. When connecting to any other service provider or to an in-house LAN, be sure that the dialup connection (APN) is registered either at cid2 or at anything from cid4 to cid10.

- For the dialup connection (APN), inquire your provider or network administrator.
- The dialup connection settings can be considered as phonebook registration for packet communication. The comparison between dialup connection settings and the FOMA terminal phonebook is as follows:

Dialup connection settings	FOMA terminal phonebook entries
Registration number (cid)	Registration number (Phonebook No.)
APN	Party's phone number

- The registered cid become the connection numbers of dialup connection setting.

Setting show/hide caller ID

Take care when disclosing your caller ID since it is important information.

- Settings must be "Show" for using mopera U / mopera.

Default not set

- 1 Perform Steps 1 to 5 of "Setting dialup connection (APN) for packet communication". ●P424
- 2 Set show (186)/hide (184) caller ID during packet communication.

Enter in the format "AT * DGPIR=<n>".

AT * DGPIR=1 :

When packet communication connection is being established, "184" is added to connect to the dialup connection (APN).

AT * DGPIR=2 :

When packet communication connection is being established, "186" is added to connect to the dialup connection (APN).

- 3 Check that **OK** is displayed and click **ファイル、ハイパーターミナルの終了**.
 - "XXX"と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか? is displayed. Click **いいえ**.

Setting to show/hide caller ID by dialup network settings

The dialup network settings can also be used to append "186 (show)" or "184 (hide)" to the dialup connection number.

If "186" (show) or "184" (hide) is set by both the AT * DGPIR command and dialup network settings, the show/hide caller ID setting is as shown below:

Show/hide caller ID setting made by AT * DGPIR command	Dialup network setting (<cid>=1)		
	not set	Hide	Show
* 99 * * * 1#	Caller ID is sent.	Caller ID is not sent.	Caller ID is sent.
184 * 99 * * * 1#	Caller ID is not sent.		
186 * 99 * * * 1#	Caller ID is sent.		

- To reset the show/hide setting made by the AT * DGPIR command to the default (not set), enter "AT * DGPIR=0".

Setting for Windows XP

Use the network connection wizard to set the dialup connection and TCP/IP protocol.

Setting dialup connection

- 1 Click **スタート、すべてのプログラム、アクセサリ、通信 and ネットワーク接続**. **ネットワーク接続** screen is displayed.
- 2 Click **新しい接続を作成する (Create new connection)** in **ネットワークタスク (Network task)**. **新しい接続ウィザード (New connection wizard)** screen is displayed.
- 3 Click **次へ**. A screen for selecting the type of network connection is displayed.
- 4 Select **インターネットに接続する (Connect to Internet)** and click **次へ**. The setup screen is displayed.
- 5 Select **接続を手動でセットアップする (Set up connection manually)** and click **次へ**. The Internet connection screen is displayed.

6 Select **ダイヤルアップモデム**を使用して接続する (Use dialup modem to connect) and click **次へ**.

- The device selection screen is displayed.
- If there is only one modem installed, the device selection screen is not displayed. Go to Step 8.

7 Select **モデム - FOMA D701i (COMx)** (Modem: FOMA D701i (COMx)*1) and click **次へ**.

*1 COMx varies depending on the PC you use.



8 Enter any connection name in **ISP名** (ISP name) and click **次へ**.



9 Enter the number of the dialup connection (one-byte) in **電話番号** and click **次へ**.

For packet communication

Enter " * 99 * * * <cid>#".

- For <cid>, enter the cid number, registered in "Setting dialup connection (APN) for packet communication", " * 99 * * * 3#" for mopera U and " * 99 * * * 1#" for mopera.

For 64K data communication

Enter the dialup connection phone number.

- " * 8701" for mopera U and " * 9601" for mopera.



10 Enter **ユーザー名**, **パスワード**, **パスワードの確認入力** (Check and Enter Password), and set the other items as shown and click **次へ**.

- When the access point is mopera U / mopera, the entry of **ユーザー名**, **パスワード** and **パスワードの確認入力** is not required. Set each items as shown and click **次へ**.



11 Click **完了**.

12 Check the settings and click **キャンセル**.

- Check the settings without connecting to the Internet immediately.

Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 Select the created dialup connection icon and click **ファイル** and **プロパティ** (Properties).



2 Check the setting of each item in **全般** (General) tab.

- When multiple modems are installed to the PC, in **接続方法**, select **モデム - FOMA D701i (COMx)*2**.
- *2 COMx varies depending on the PC you use.
- Uncheck () **ダイヤル情報を使う** (Use dial information).

6 Click *OK*.

Setting for Windows 2000

Use the network connection wizard to set the dialup connection and TCP/IP protocol.

Setting dialup connection

1 Click *スタート*, *プログラム*, *アクセサリ*, *通信* and *ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続*.

ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 screen is displayed.

2 Double-click *新しい接続の作成* icon.

所在地情報 (Location information) screen is displayed.

This screen is displayed for the first time you double-click *新しい接続の作成* icon. From the second time, go to Step 5.

3 Enter the number in *市外局番* (Area code) and click *OK*.

電話とモデムのオプション (Phone and modem options) screen is displayed.

4 Click *OK*.

ネットワークの接続ウィザード (Network connection wizard) screen is displayed.

5 Click *次へ*.

A screen for selecting the type of network connection is displayed.

6 Select *インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する* (Use dialup connection to Internet) and click *次へ*.

The Internet connection Wizard's start screen is displayed.

7 Select *インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続します* (Set Internet connection manually or connect using local area network (LAN)) and click *次へ*.

The Internet connection setting selection screen is displayed.



3 Click *ネットワーク* (Network) tab and check the setting of each item.

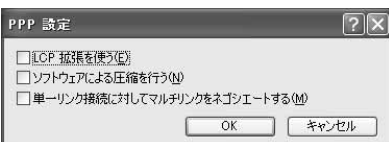
- Set *PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet as 呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類* (Type of dialup server to call).
- Select only *インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)* (Internet protocol (TCP/IP)) in *この接続は次の項目を使用します* (Use these items for this connection). Since *QoSパケットスケジューラ* (QoS packet scheduler) settings can not be changed, leave it as it is.



4 Click *設定*.

5 Uncheck () all items and click *OK*.

The dialup connection properties screen reappears.



- 8 Select **電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します** (Connect to Internet using phone line and modem) and click **次へ**.

The modem selection screen is displayed.

- This screen is not displayed if multiple modems are not installed. Go to Step 10.

- 9 Check that **インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する** (Select modem to use for connection to Internet) is set to **FOMA D70Ii** and click **次へ**.

The Internet account connection information screen is displayed.

- If **FOMA D70Ii** is not set, set **FOMA D70Ii**.

- 10 Enter the number of dialup connection (one-byte) in **電話番号** and click **詳細設定** (Detailed settings).

- Uncheck () **市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う** (Use area code and dial information).

For packet communication

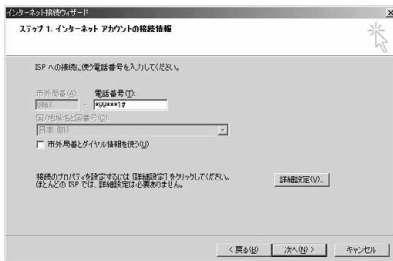
Enter “* 99 * * * <cid>#”.

- For <cid>, enter the cid number registered in “Setting dialup connection (APN) for packet communication”. “* 99 * * * 3#” for mopera U and “* 99 * * * 1#” for mopera.

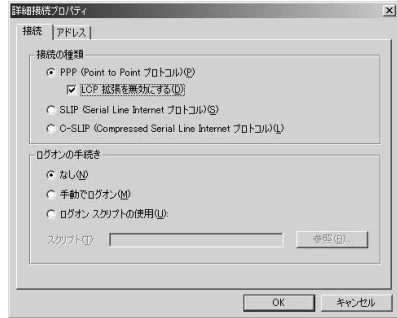
For 64K data communication

Enter the dialup connection phone number.

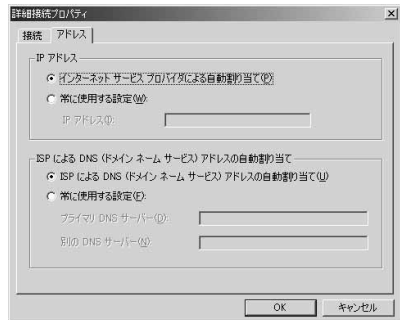
- “* 8701” for mopera U and “* 9601” for mopera.



- 11 Set each item in **接続** (Connection) tab as shown.



- 12 Click **アドレス** (Address) tab and set each item as shown.



- 13 Click **OK**.

The Internet account connection information screen reappears.

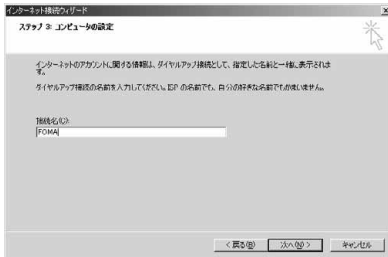
- 14 Click **次へ**.

The Internet account logon information screen is displayed.

- 15 Enter **ユーザー名** and **パスワード** and click **次へ**.

- When the dialup connection is mopera U / mopera, the entry of **ユーザー名** or **パスワード** is not required. When a confirmation screen for no entry is displayed, click **はい**.

16 Enter any connection name in **接続名** and click **次へ**.



17 Select **ダイヤル** and click **次へ**.



18 Click **完了**.
ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 screen reappears.

Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 Select the created dialup connection icon and click **ファイル** and **プロパティ**.



2 Check the setting of each item in **全般** tab.

- If multiple modems are installed in the PC, select **モデム - FOMA D70i (COM6)*1** in **接続の方法**.

When the modem is changed, all items in **電話番号** is initialized. Enter the dialup connection phone number again in that case.

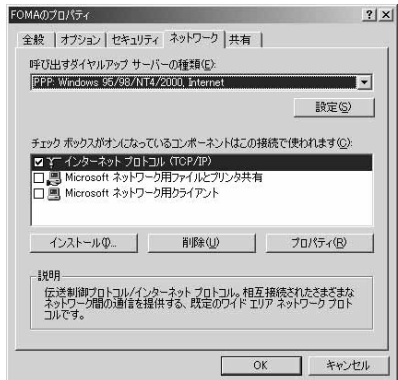
*1 COMx varies depending on the PC you use.

- Uncheck () **ダイヤル情報を使う**.



3 Click **ネットワーク** tab and check the setting of each item.

- Set **PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet as 呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類**.
- Select only **インターネット プロトコル (TCP/IP)** for component.



4 Click **設定**.

5 Uncheck all items () and click **OK**.

The dialup connection properties screen reappears.



6 Click **OK**.

Setting for Windows Me

Setting dialup connection

1 Click **スタート**, **プログラム**, **アクセサリ**, **通信** and **ダイヤルアップネットワーク**.

ダイヤルアップネットワークへようこそ (Welcome to dialup network) screen is displayed.

- This screen is displayed when **ダイヤルアップネットワーク** is selected for the first time. From the second time, go to Step 3.

2 Click **次へ**.

ダイヤルアップネットワーク screen is displayed.

3 Double-click **新しい接続** (New connection) icon.

4 Enter any connection name in **接続名** and click **次へ**.

- Check that **FOMA D701i** is set for **モデムの選択**. If it is not set, set **FOMA D701i**.



5 Enter the dialup connection number (one-byte) and click **次へ**.

For packet communication

Enter *** 99 * * * <cid>#**.

- For **<cid>**, enter the cid number registered in "Setting dialup connection (APN) for packet communication". *** 99 * * * 3#** for mopera U and *** 99 * * * 1#** for mopera.

For 64K data communication

Enter the dialup connection phone number.

- *** 8701#** for mopera U and *** 9601#** for mopera.
- **市外局番** does not need to be entered.



6 Check the name of the dialup connection and click **完了**.

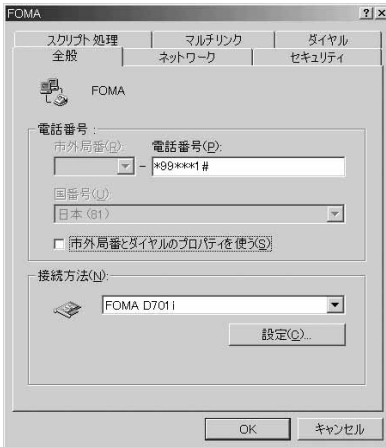
Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 Select the created dialup connection icon and click **ファイル** and **プロパティ**.



2 Check the setting of each item in 全般 tab.

- Uncheck () 市外局番とダイヤルのプロパティを使う(Use area code and dial properties).
- Check that *FOMA D701i* is set for 接続方法. If it is not set, set *FOMA D701i*.



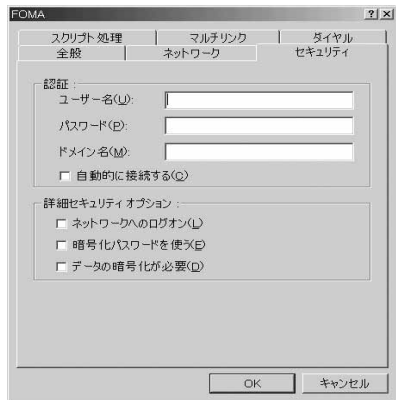
3 Click ネットワーク tab and check the setting of each item.

- Set *ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類* (Dialup server type) to *PPP: インターネット, Windows 2000/NT, Windows Me* (PPP: Internet, Windows 2000/NT, Windows Me).
- Uncheck () all *詳細オプション*.
- Select only *TCP/IP* for *使用できるネットワークプロトコル* (Available protocol).



4 Click セキュリティ (Security) tab, enter ユーザー名, パスワード and click OK.

- When the dialup connection is mopera U / mopera, the entry of *ユーザー名* or *パスワード* is not required.



Setting for Windows 98

Setting dialup connection

The operation procedures are the same as for Windows Me. ◀P430

Setting TCP/IP protocol

- 1 Follow steps 1 to 2 of "Setting TCP/IP protocol" of "Setting for Windows Me". ◀P430



- Click **サーバーの種類 (Server type) tab** and check the setting of each item.
 - Set **ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類** to **PPP: インターネット, Windows NT Server, Windows 98** (PPP: Internet, Windows NT Server, Windows 98).
 - Select only **TCP/IP** for **使用できるネットワーク プロトコル**.



- Click **OK**.

Connecting through dial-up

The method of dialup connection for packet communication/64K data communication is explained.

Example For Windows XP

- Connect FOMA terminal to a PC. ●P412
- Click **スタート, すべてのプログラム, アクセサリ, 通信 and ネットワーク接続**.
ネットワーク接続 screen is displayed.
 - Under the Windows 2000, Me or 98, click **スタート, プログラム, アクセサリ, 通信 and ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (ダイヤルアップネットワーク for Me and 98)**.
- Double-click the dialup connection icon.
- Check each items and click **ダイヤル (Dial)**.
 - Under the Windows Me and 98, check each items and click **接続**.
 - The number of dialup connection set for the dialup network is shown in **ダイヤル** or **電話番号**.

- When the dialup connection is **modera U / modera**, the entry of **ユーザー名** or **パスワード** is not required.



Disconnecting

Just exiting the browser may not disconnect the connection. To ensure disconnection, perform the following operation:

- Click  in the task tray.
 The connection screen is displayed.
 - Double-click for Windows Me and 98.
- Click **切断**.

AT command

AT commands are commands for setting FOMA terminal functions using a PC. FOMA terminals comply with AT commands and support some extended commands and proprietary AT commands.

About the AT command

AT command input format

"AT" must be entered before each AT command. Commands must be entered in one-byte alphanumeric characters. An input example is as follows:

ATD * 99 * * * 1#

Command Parameter Press Enter key.

AT commands and their parameters (numbers or symbols) must be entered on a single line. All the characters from the first character to the character just before `[↵]` must be entered on a single line. Up to 160 characters (including "AT") can be entered in each line.

AT command input mode

To operate FOMA terminal using AT commands, the PC must be in the terminal mode.

Terminal mode is a mode that lets the PC operate as a single communication terminal. Characters entered from the keyboard are sent to the device or line connected to the communication port.

- **Offline mode**
FOMA terminal in stand-by status. FOMA terminal must be in this status to use AT commands to control it.
- **Online data mode**
FOMA terminal is in the communication mode. If you enter AT commands when FOMA terminal is performing communication, the received characters are sent directly to the communication receiver and may cause the receiver's modem to malfunction. Do not enter AT commands while FOMA terminal is performing communication.
- **Online command mode**
AT commands allow you to operate FOMA terminal even when FOMA terminal is in the communication mode. These operations make it possible to execute AT commands without interfering with the connection to the communication receiver, and normal communication can continue after the commands have finished executing.

Switching between the online data mode and online command mode

To switch FOMA terminal from the online data mode to online command mode, you can use either one of the following procedures:

- Enter the "+ + +" command or the code set in the "S2" register.
- Turn the RS-232C*1 ER signal off when set in "AT&D1".

To switch from the online command mode to online data mode, enter "ATO `[↵]`".

*1 The USB interface emulates an RS-232C signal line, so RS-232C signal control using communication applications is possible.

AT command list

- When AT commands are input, entering “¥” may cause “/” to appear depending on the font settings for the PC or communication software in use.
- If the battery pack is removed from FOMA terminal before the terminal power is turned off, the setting values may not be recorded.
- AT command that can be used via the FOMA D701i Modem Port is described in this list.

*1 : Indicates that you can return the command setting to the default with the AT&F command.

*2 : Indicates that you can store the command setting into your FOMA terminal with the AT&W command and restore it with the ATZ command.

None : Indicates the AT command does not include any display command or test command.

[] : Indicates the parameter can be omitted.

Command	Description & Parameter						
AT%V	Shows the version of your FOMA terminal in the format of “Ver:xx”.						
ex.	Enter	AT%V	Display	None	Test	None	
AT&C [n]	Selects the operational conditions of the circuit CD signal outgoing to DTE. n=0: The circuit CD signal is always on. (when parameter omitted) n=1: The circuit CD signal varies depending on the other modem. (default)						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&C1	Display	None	Test	None
AT&D [n]	Determines an action to be taken when the circuit ER signal coming from DTE changes from on to off in the online data mode. n=0: Ignores the ER signal condition (always on). (when parameter omitted) n=1: Switches the mode to the online command mode when the ER signal changes from on to off. n=2: Disconnects the circuit and switches the mode to the offline mode when the ER signal changes from on to off. (default)						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&D1	Display	None	Test	None
AT&E [n]	Selects type of speed display used when connection is made. This command is effective only when the ATX command is other than “n=0”. n=0: Displays communication speed of wireless zone. n=1: Displays communication speed between PC and FOMA terminal. (default)						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&E1	Display	None	Test	None
AT&F [0]	Resets all FOMA terminal state to the default. When executed while receiving a call, it resets FOMA terminal state to the default without affecting the call. When executed during communication, the terminal state returns to default after you disconnect the communication.						
ex.	Enter	AT&F0	Display	None	Test	None	
AT&S [n]	Determines the control of the DR signal FOMA terminal outputs. n=0: Always on. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: The DR signal turns on when the circuit is connected.						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&S0	Display	None	Test	None
AT&W [0]	Writes the current settings into FOMA terminal.						
ex.	Enter	AT&W0	Display	None	Test	None	
AT * DANTE	Shows the signal strength (reception level) in the format of “ * DANTE:m”. m=0: Outside of the service area. m=1, 2, 3: Number of antennas displayed on FOMA terminal.						
ex.	Enter	AT * DANTE	Display	AT * DANTE?	Test	AT * DANTE=?	
AT * DGANSM=n	Specifies whether to reject or accept an incoming packet call. n=0: Sets both the incoming call rejection and the incoming call acceptance off (default). n=1: Sets the incoming call rejection on. n=2: Sets the incoming call acceptance on.						
ex.	Enter	AT * DGANSM=0	Display	AT * DGANSM?	Test	AT * DGANSM=?	
AT * DGAPL=n [,cid]	Specifies dialup connection (APN) to accept incoming packet calls from them. For an APN, use the cid parameter defined with “+CGDCONT”. n=0: Adds the APN defined with the cid parameter to the call acceptance list. n=1: Deletes the APN defined with the cid parameter from the call acceptance list. When you omit the cid parameter, all cids will be added or deleted.						
ex.	Enter	AT * DGAPL=0,1	Display	AT * DGAPL?	Test	AT * DGAPL=?	
AT * DGARL=n [,cid]	Specifies dialup connection (APN) to reject incoming packet calls from them. For an APN, use the cid parameter defined with “+CGDCONT”. n=0: Adds the APN defined with the cid parameter to the call rejection list. n=1: Deletes the APN defined with the cid parameter from the call rejection list. When you omit the cid parameter, all cids will be added or deleted.						
ex.	Enter	AT * DGARL=0,1	Display	AT * DGARL?	Test	AT * DGARL=?	

Command	Description & Parameter						
AT * DGPIR= n	Specifies whether to notify the caller ID for packet communication. This specification is effective both for incoming and outgoing calls. n=0: The APN is used as is when a packet communication is established. (default) n=1: Adds "184" to the APN when a packet communication is established. n=2: Adds "186" to the APN when a packet communication is established.						
ex.	Enter	AT * DGPIR=0	Display	AT * DGPIR?	Test	AT * DGPIR=?	
AT * DRPW	Shows the level of power reception in the format of " * DRPW:m", where the value of m ranges from 0 to 75.						
ex.	Enter	AT * DRPW	Display	None	Test	AT * DRPW=?	
+++	Changes FOMA terminal mode from the online data to the online command. The duration of escape guard is fixed to 1 sec.						
ex.	Enter	+++	Display	None	Test	None	
AT+CEER	Shows a reason of the disconnected communication. ◀P438						
ex.	Enter	AT+CEER	Display	None	Test	AT+CEER=?	
AT+CGDCONT	Specifies the APN for packet communication. ◀P438						
AT+CGEQMIN	Specifies the criteria for judging whether to approve the QoS (Quality of Service) level provisioned by the network when the packet communication is established. ◀P438						
AT+CGEQREQ	Specifies the QoS level requested to the network when transmission is performed during packet communication. ◀P439						
AT+CGMR	Shows the version of your FOMA terminal with a 16-digit number.						
ex.	Enter	AT+CGMR	Display	None	Test	AT+CGMR=?	
AT+CGREG= [n]	Determines whether to notify the network registration state. Either "inside the service area" or "outside the service area" is notified. n=0: Not notified. (default and when parameter omitted). n=1: Notified in the format of "+CGREG:n,stat". stat=0: outside the service area stat=1: Inside the service area (home) stat=4: Unknown stat=5: inside the service area (visitor)						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CGREG=1	Display	AT+CGREG?	Test	AT+CGREG=?
AT+CGSN	Shows the manufacturer's serial number of FOMA terminal.						
ex.	Enter	AT+CGSN	Display	None	Test	AT+CGSN=?	
AT+CLIP= [n]	Specifies whether to show the caller ID of an incoming 64K data communication on the PC's screen. n=0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the information. If you enter "AT+CLIP?", it shows "+CLIP:n,m". m=0: The network setting that does not show caller ID to the other party when originating a call. m=1: The network setting that shows caller ID to the other party when originating a call. m=2: Unknown						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CLIP=0	Display	AT+CLIP?	Test	AT+CLIP=?
AT+CLIR= [n]	Specifies whether to show your caller ID to the other party when you originate a 64K data communication. n=0: In accordance with the service agreement. (when parameter omitted). n=1: Not notified. n=2: Notifies the caller ID. (default) If you enter "AT+CLIR?", it shows "+CLIR:n,m". m=0: CLIR is not activated (caller ID always notified). m=1: CLIR is activated (caller ID always not notified). m=2: Unknown m=3: CLIR temporary mode (default for "not notified"). m=4: CLIR temporary mode (default for "notified").						
ex.	Enter	AT+CLIR=0	Display	AT+CLIR?	Test	AT+CLIR=?	
AT+CMEE= [n]	Specifies the error report format of FOMA terminal. ◀P438 n=0: Shows "ERROR". (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows in the format of "+CME ERROR:xxxx" (xxxx=numbers) n=2: Shows in the format of "+CME ERROR:xxxx" (xxxx=characters)						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CMEE=0	Display	AT+CMEE?	Test	AT+CMEE=?
AT+CNUM	Shows the Own Number data of your FOMA terminal in the format of "+CNUM: "number",type". number: Phone number type=129: Does not show "+81". type=145: Shows "+81".						
ex.	Enter	AT+CNUM	Display	None	Test	AT+CNUM=?	
AT+CR= [n]	Specifies whether to display the communication type (packet communication or 64K data communication) before <i>CONNECT</i> during line connection. n=0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted). n=1: Shows the information in the format of "+CR:serv". serv=SYNC: 64K data communication serv=GPRS: Packet communication						
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CR=0	Display	AT+CR?	Test	AT+CR=?

Command		Description & Parameter					
AT+CRG=[n]		Specifies whether to use result codes of "+CRING:type" for incoming calls. n=0: Does not use the result code of "+CRING:type". (default and when parameter omitted). n=1: Uses the result code of "CRING:type". The example of codes are as follows: Packet communication... +CRING:GPRS "PPP"... "mopera.ne.jp" 64K data communication... +CRING:SYNC					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CRG=0	Display	AT+CRG=?	Test	AT+CRG=?
AT+CREG=[n]		Specifies whether to show the "inside/outside the service area" information. n=0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted). n=1: Shows the information. If you enter "AT+CREG?", it shows the information in the format of "+CREG:n,stat". stat=0: outside the service area stat=1: Inside the service area (home) stat=4: Unknown stat=5: inside the service area (visitor)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CREG=0	Display	AT+CREG=?	Test	AT+CREG=?
AT+GMI		Shows the manufacturer's name of FOMA terminal.					
	ex.	Enter	AT+GMI	Display	None	Test	AT+GMI=?
AT+GMM		Shows FOMA terminal name.					
	ex.	Enter	AT+GMM	Display	None	Test	AT+GMM=?
AT+GMR		Shows the version of FOMA terminal.					
	ex.	Enter	AT+GMR	Display	None	Test	AT+GMR=?
AT+IFC=[n,[m]]		Specifies the local flow control between the PC and FOMA terminal. n is for setting the DCE-by-DTE control. n=0: Does not use the flow control. n=1: Uses XON/XOFF flow control. n=2: Uses RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. (default). m is for setting the DTE-by-DCE control. If you omit this parameter, the same value as n is assumed. m=0: Does not use the flow control. m=1: Uses XON/XOFF flow control. m=2: Uses RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. (default). If you omit both parameters, "AT+IFC=2, 2" is assumed.					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+IFC=2,2	Display	AT+IFC?	Test	AT+IFC=?
AT+WS46=[22]		Specifies the radio network FOMA terminal uses to originate a call.					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+WS46=22	Display	AT+WS46?	Test	AT+WS46=?
ATA		Specifies how to handle incoming packet or 64K data communications. For an incoming packet communications, you can specify the following: ATA184: Receives an incoming call without the caller ID displayed ATA186: Receives an incoming call with the caller ID displayed					
	ex.	Enter	ATA	Display	None	Test	None
A/		Reexecutes the previous command.					
	ex.	Enter	A/	Display	None	Test	None
ATD		Originates a packet or 64K data communication. • Packet communication: Enter "ATD * 99 * * * cid#". If you omit cid, "cid=1" is assumed. When you enter it in the format starting with "ATD184 * 99", 184 (hide caller ID) is attached to the call outgoing to the APN specified with cid (186 (show caller ID) is treated in the same manner). • 64K data communication: Enter it in the format of "ATD phone-number". • Redialing: Enter it in the format of "ATDL" or "ATDN".					
	ex.	Enter	ATD phone-number	Display	None	Test	None
ATE [n]		Echoes back the characters received from the PC. n=0: Gives no echo back. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Gives echo back. (default)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATE0	Display	None	Test	None
ATH		Disconnects the packet or 64K data communication.					
	ex.	Enter	ATH	Display	None	Test	None
ATI [n]		Shows the identification code. n=0: Shows "NTT DoCoMo". (when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows FOMA terminal name. n=2: Shows the version of FOMA terminal.					
	ex.	Enter	ATI0	Display	None	Test	None
ATO		Switched the mode from the online command to the online data.					
	ex.	Enter	ATO	Display	None	Test	None
ATQ [n]		Specifies whether to show the result code on the PC. n=0: Shows the result code. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Does not show the result code.					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATQ0	Display	None	Test	None
ATV [n]		Specifies whether to show the result with numeric codes or text messages. n=0: Shows the result with numeric codes. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the result with text messages. (default)					
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATV1	Display	None	Test	None

Command	Description & Parameter				
ATX [n]	Specifies whether to detect busy tone and dial tone, and whether to display the communication speed. n=0: Busy tone not detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed not displayed. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Busy tone not detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed displayed. n=2: Busy tone not detected, dial tone detected, communication speed displayed. n=3: Busy tone detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed displayed. n=4: Busy tone detected, dial tone detected, communication speed displayed. (default)				
*1, *2	ex.	Enter ATX1	Display None	Test None	None
ATZ	Resets FOMA terminal settings to those stored in the non-volatile memory with the AT&W command. If you enter this command during receiving a packet or 64K data communication, the settings are reset without affecting the call reception. If you enter it during communication, it disconnects the communication first and resets the settings.				
	ex.	Enter ATZ	Display None	Test None	None
ATS0= [n]	Specifies the number of ringing signals (RING) which triggers automatic call acceptance on FOMA terminal. n=0: Does not accept calls automatically. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1 to 255				
*1, *2	ex.	Enter ATS0=0	Display ATS0?	Test None	None
ATS2= [n]	Specifies an escape character. n=0 to 127 (43: default 0: when parameter omitted 127: to disable the escape processing)				
*1	ex.	Enter ATS2=43	Display ATS2?	Test None	None
ATS3= [13]	Specifies a carriage return (CR) character that indicates the end of AT command's character string. It is attached to the end of the echoed back command string and the result code. (The setting is not changeable.)				
*1	ex.	Enter ATS3=13	Display ATS3?	Test None	None
ATS4= [10]	Specifies the Line Feed (LF) character. It follows the CR character when the result code is displayed with text. (The setting is not changeable)				
*1	ex.	Enter ATS4=10	Display ATS4?	Test None	None
ATS5= [8]	Specifies a backspace (BS) character that deletes the last character in the input buffer while you are entering an AT command. (The setting is not changeable.)				
*1	ex.	Enter ATS5=8	Display ATS5?	Test None	None
ATS6= [n]	Specifies the pause period before dialing. This command sets the register but no action will occur. n=2 to 10: 2 to 10 seconds. (5: default and when parameter omitted)				
*1	ex.	Enter ATS6=5	Display ATS6?	Test None	None
ATS7= [n]	Specifies the waiting time after dialing till connection is established for the packet or 64K data communication. n=1 to 255: 1 to 255 seconds (60: default and when parameter omitted).				
*1, *2	ex.	Enter ATS7=60	Display ATS7?	Test None	None
ATS8= [n]	Specifies the comma dialing function (pause time). This command sets the register but the pause time is fixed to 3 seconds. n=0 to 255: 0 to 255 seconds. (3: default 0: when parameter is omitted)				
*1	ex.	Enter ATS8=3	Display ATS8?	Test None	None
ATS10= [n]	Specifies the permissible delay time before automatic disconnection. This command sets the register but no action will occur. n=1 to 255: in 1/10 seconds. (1: default and when parameter omitted)				
*1, *2	ex.	Enter ATS10=1	Display ATS10?	Test None	None
ATS30= [n]	Specifies the time elapsed after the last data transmission to activate automatic disconnection. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=1 to 255: 1 to 255 minutes. n=0: Does not disconnect. (default and when parameter omitted)				
*1	ex.	Enter ATS30=0	Display ATS30?	Test None	None
ATS103= [n]	Specifies a mark to be used to delimit a destination subaddress if attached. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=0: * (when parameter omitted) n=1: / (default) n=2: ¥				
*1	ex.	Enter ATS103=0	Display ATS103?	Test None	None
ATS104= [n]	Specifies a mark to be used to delimit a caller subaddress if attached. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=0: # (when parameter omitted) n=1: % (default) n=2: &				
*1	ex.	Enter ATS104=0	Display ATS104?	Test None	None
AT¥S	Shows the command settings and the contents of the S register.				
	ex.	Enter AT¥S	Display None	Test None	None
AT¥V [n]	Specifies whether to use the extended result code for connection. This command takes effect when the ATX command parameter is "n=1 to 4". n=0: Does not use the extended result code. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Uses the extended result code.				
*1, *2	ex.	Enter AT¥V0	Display None	Test None	None

Disconnection reason list

Packet communication

Value	Reason
27	APN is not present or is incorrect.
30	Disconnected by network.
33	Terminal does not subscribe to packet communication.
36	Normal disconnection.

64K data communication

Value	Reason
1	Specified number does not exist.
16	Normal disconnection.
17	Communication is impossible because remote device is busy.
18	You made a call but did not receive a response within the specified time.
19	Communication is impossible because the remote device is busy calling.
21	The remote device rejected incoming calls.
63	The service and option of the network are not valid.
65	Unavailable processing speed was specified.
88	You made a call to a terminal or received a call from a terminal with different terminal properties.

Error messages list

No.	Text display	Reason
10	SIM not inserted	No UIM (FOMA card) is set
15	SIM wrong	Other than DoCoMo SIM (IC card equivalent to UIM) is inserted
16	incorrect password	Incorrect password
100	unknown	Unknown error

Supplement to AT command

Command name: AT+CGDCONT= [parameter]
Sets the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.

Format

AT+CGDCONT=[<cid>[, "PPP" [, "<APN>"]]]

Parameter description

<cid>: 1 to 10

By default, "mopera.ne.jp is set for cid1 and "mopera.net" for cid3.

<APN>: Optional

Example of execution

The command used to register an APN named "abc" (when <cid>=2).

AT+CGDCONT=2, "PPP", "abc"

Operation performed when parameter is omitted

AT+CGDCONT=

Clears all <cid> settings. However, entry for "<cid>=1" and "<cid>=3" is restored to the default setting.

AT+CGDCONT=<cid>

Clears the specified <cid> settings. However, entry for "<cid>=1" and "<cid>=3" is restored to the default setting.

AT+CGDCONT=?

Displays a list of assignable values.

AT+CGDCONT?

Displays the current setting values.

Command name: AT+CGEQMIN= [parameter]

Registers the criteria for judging whether to approve QoS provisioned by the network when PPP packet communication is established.

Format

AT+CGEQMIN= [<cid>[,<Maximum bitrate UL>[,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]

Parameter description

<cid> : 1 to 10

By default, "mopera.ne.jp is set for cid1 and "mopera.net" for cid3.

<Maximum bitrate UL>: None or 64

<Maximum bitrate DL>: None or 384

For "Maximum bitrate UL" and "Maximum bitrate DL", the minimum communication speed (in kbps) is set for both upload and download traffic between FOMA terminal and the base station. If the parameter is set to "None (default)", all speeds are permissible. However, if "64" and "384" are set, any connection at a speed less than the above limit is not permitted, and chances are that packet communication will not be connected.

Example of execution

- Command used to permit all speeds both upload and download (when <cid>=2)
AT+CGEQMIN=2
- Command used to permit only 64 kbps upload and 384 kbps download (when <cid>=4)
AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64,384
- Command used to permit 64 kbps upload and all speeds download (when <cid>=5)
AT+CGEQMIN=5,,64
- Command used to permit all speeds upload and only 384 kbps download (when <cid>=6)
AT+CGEQMIN=6,,384

Operation performed when parameter is omitted

AT+CGEQMIN=

Clears all <cid> settings.

AT+CGEQMIN=<cid>

Returns the specified <cid> to the default setting.

AT+CGEQMIN= ?

Displays a list of assignable values.

AT+CGEQMIN ?

Displays the current settings.

Command name: AT+CGEQREQ=[parameter]

Sets QoS requested to the network when transmission is performed during PPP packet communication.

Format

AT+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]

Parameter description

Only commands that require connection at 64 kbps upload/384 kbps download can be set. The contents are set by default for each cid.

<cid>: 1 to 10

By default, "mopera.ne.jp is set for cid1 and "mopera.net" for cid3.

Example of execution

(when <cid>=2)

AT+CGEQREQ=2

Operation performed when parameter is omitted

AT+CGEQREQ=

Returns all <cid> to the default setting.

AT+CGEQREQ=<cid>

Returns the specified <cid> to the default setting.

AT+CGEQREQ= ?

Displays a list of assignable values.

AT+CGEQREQ ?

Displays the current settings.

Result codes**Result codes**

No.	Text display	Meaning
0	OK	Operation performed normally
1	CONNECT	Terminal connected to remote device
2	RING	Incoming call
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected
4	ERROR	Unable to accept command
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dial tone
7	BUSY	Detecting the busy tone
8	NO ANSWER	Connection completed. Time-out
100	RESTRICTION	The communication network is busy. Please wait for a while and retry.
101	DELAYED	Redialing restricted

Extended result code

No.	Text display	Meaning
5	CONNECT 1200	Connected at 1,200 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
10	CONNECT 2400	Connected at 2,400 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
11	CONNECT 4800	Connected at 4,800 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
13	CONNECT 7200	Connected at 7,200 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
12	CONNECT 9600	Connected at 9,600 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
15	CONNECT 14400	Connected at 14,400 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
16	CONNECT 19200	Connected at 19,200 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
17	CONNECT 38400	Connected at 38,400 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
18	CONNECT 57600	Connected at 57,600 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
19	CONNECT 115200	Connected at 115,200 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
20	CONNECT 230400	Connected at 230,400 bps between FOMA terminal and PC
21	CONNECT 460800	Connected at 460,800 bps between FOMA terminal and PC

INFORMATION

When the ATV [n] command (●P436) is set to “n=1”, the result code is displayed in the text display (default). When the command is set to “n=0”, the result code is displayed in the numeric display.

To retain compatibility with a modem connected via conventional RS-232C, communication speed is displayed, but it differs from the actual connection speed because FOMA terminal is connected to the PC with a FOMA USB cable (optional).

Communication protocol result code

No.	Text display	Meaning
1	PPPOverUD	Connected via PPPoverUD (BC=UDI, +CBST=116,1,0)
2	AV32K	AV (video-phone) connected via [32K]
3	AV64K	AV (video-phone) connected via [64K]
5	PACKET	Connected with PACKET

Display example of result codes

When “ATX 0” is set

Regardless of the settings of the AT¥V command (●P437), only CONNECT is displayed upon completion of connection.

Text display example : ATD * 99 * * * 1#
CONNECT (“1” in numeric display)

When “ATX 1” is set

- When “ATX1”, “AT¥V0” is set (default)

Upon completion of connection, the result code is displayed in the following format: CONNECT <speed between FOMA terminal - PC>

Text display example : ATD * 99 * * * 1#
CONNECT 460800 (“1 21” in numeric display)

- When “ATX1”, “AT¥V1” is set*1

The code is displayed upon completion of connection as follows.

Text display example : ATD * 99 * * * 1#
CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.ne.jp/64/384
 (“1 21 5” in numeric display)

Indicates that speed between FOMA terminal and PC is 460,800 bps and the terminal is connected to mopera.ne.jp providing a maximum upload speed of 64 kbps and a maximum download speed of 384 kbps.

*1 When “ATX1” and “AT¥V1” are set at the same time, it is likely that dialup connection will fail. It is recommended that only “AT¥V0” be used.

Character Entry

Entering characters	442
Entering characters using 5-touch Input Method	5-touch Input Method 443
Registering fixed phrases	Save Phrase 447
Copying/cutting and pasting characters	Copy Character 448
Entering characters using codes	KUTEN Code Input 448
Registering frequently used words	Save Word 448
Entering characters using Slot Input Method	Slot Input Method 449
Setting input method	Input Method Setting 450

Entering characters

FOMA terminal has many functions such as the phonebook and mail that require entering characters.

- There are “5-touch Input Method” and “Slot Input Method” for entering characters.
In 5-touch Input Method, several characters are assigned to each key and at each press, the character switches. ◀P456
In Slot Input Method, select characters from the upper and lower slots on the input board. ◀P449
- The character types which can be entered varies by each method:

: Available x : Unavailable - : No character

Input method \ Character type	5-touch Input Method		Slot Input Method	
	One-byte	Two-byte	One-byte	Two-byte
Hiragana/kanji	—		—	
Katakana				x
Alphabet				x
Numeric				x
Symbols				
Pictograms	—		—	


- There are 2 character types: one-byte characters and two-byte characters. 1 two-byte character, 1 two-byte blank or line feed is counted as 2 one-byte characters. For one-byte characters, voiced sound and semi-voiced sound characters are also counted as 1 character.
- Use KUTEN Code Input to enter characters whose readings you do not know.
- A total of 6,355 JIS level 1 and level 2 characters can be entered.
- Complex characters may be displayed in a changed or simplified form.

Character entry screen


There are 2 types of character entry methods: “full-screen entry” and “in-line entry”.

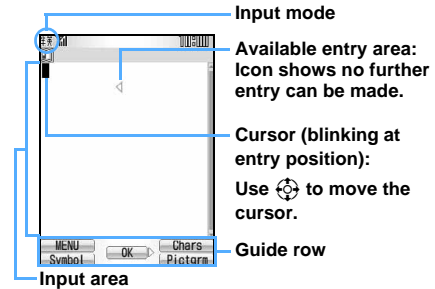
- Some entry fields may only be able to use either character entry method.
- When fixed phrases or pasted characters are entered exceedingly, they are truncated and fit to the input characters limit.

INFORMATION






In this manual, to enter characters including the operation of pressing  is referred to as “enter”.

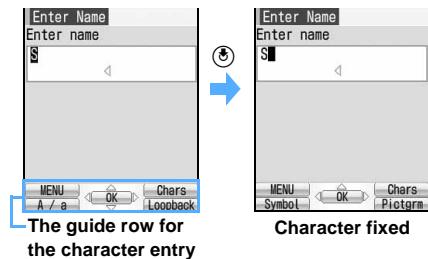
Full-screen entry

Place a cursor at the entry field and press  to display the full-screen entry area.




In-line entry

Place a cursor at the entry field and press  to , , and  to enable character entry directly. The character is fixed by pressing .



Character entry screen submenu


Press  on the character entry screen. The following operations are enabled. However, the submenu is not displayed before the character is fixed, or on the decoration selection screen of Deco-mail.

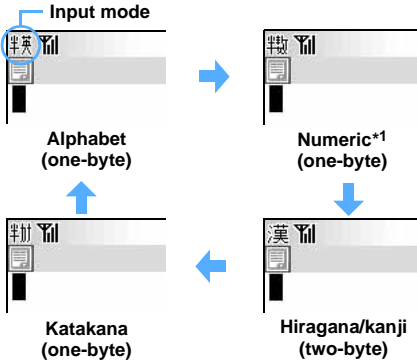
- Copy characters ◀P448
- Cut characters ◀P448
- Paste copied/cut characters ◀P448
- Quote the phonebook data ◀P446
- Save words ◀P448
- Save fixed phrases ◀P447
- Set the input method ◀P450
- Quote Own Number, result of calculation with Calculator or data read by Bar Code Reader (Items displayed varies by the entry field) ◀P446
- End character entry (displayed only when characters are entered in Slot Input Method)

Changing input modes

- The available input modes are different depending on the character entry screen.


Using to change modes

The input modes change each time  is pressed as follows:



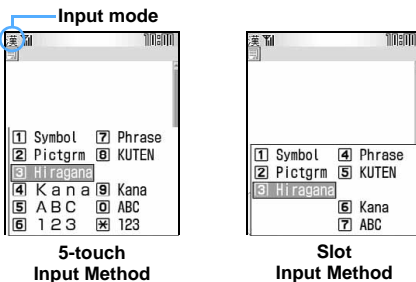
*1 Not displayed by Slot Input Method.


Using the input mode list to change modes

You can select the following input modes by pressing  on the character entry screen.


Item	Input mode	Item	Input mode
Hiragana	Hiragana/ kanji	漢	123*2 Two-byte numeric
		半か	One-byte katakana
Kana*2	Two-byte katakana	半英	ABC One-byte alphabet
		半数	123*2 One-byte numeric
ABC*2	Two-byte alphabet	半英	123*2 One-byte numeric

*2 This is not displayed by Slot Input Method.



- Press  or corresponding dial keys to select input mode.
- The following operations are also enabled by making selections from the input mode list:
 - Symbol** : enters symbols ◀P446
 - Pictgrm** : enters pictograms ◀P446
 - Phrase** : enters fixed phrases ◀P445
 - KUTEN** : uses KUTEN code to enter characters ◀P448

INFORMATION

 is displayed when only hiragana can be entered.


Entering characters using 5-touch Input Method

5-touch Input Method


Entering characters

Kana/Kanji Conversion

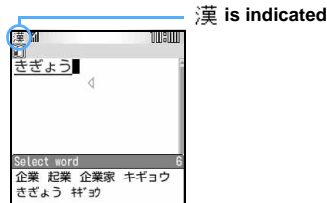
Example Entering “企業” in the phonebook


- Place the cursor at *Enter name* field and press .


The character entry screen is displayed.



- In English mode, the alphabet mode is displayed first. Press  to change to the hiragana/kanji mode.



- Enter “きぎょう”.






“き” Press  twice.


Press  to move the cursor 1 position to the right. (It is not necessary when the cursor was moved by the automatic cursor function.)



“ぎ” Press  twice and press .

“よ” Press  3 times and press .



“う” Press  3 times.

- Press  to delete the entry when you have pressed a wrong key.
- Enter the character and press  to enter “ ” and “ ”.

For example, after entering “ほ”, each pressing of  changes the character as: ほ ほ ほ. For characters that do not accept “ ” or “ ”, it is entered as two-byte characters.

- To change upper/lower case, enter the character and press .
- Pressing  changes characters to two-byte katakana characters.

Returning to the previous character




Pressing  immediately after entering a character brings back to the previous character. The character appears in the reverse order of character switching every time  is pressed. (e.g. ... 1 おえ う い あ 1 ...) However, when voiced or semi-voiced sounds are entered or upper and lower case are changed, you cannot switch characters.

Fixing hiragana without conversion








Go to Step 4 after entering the hiragana.

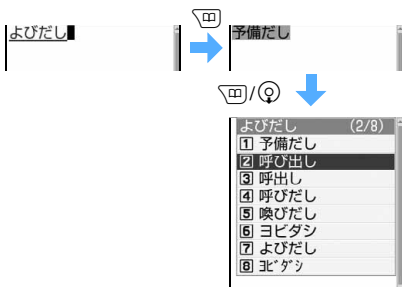
3 Press .



- Pressing  also converts text to kana/kanji when predict conversion options are not displayed. Predict conversion P445
- Press  to restore the entry before conversion.


Displaying the list of conversion options

When pressing  fails to display the desired character, a list of conversion options is displayed by pressing  or  again. If the list of conversion options has some pages, you can switch to the next page and the previous page by pressing  and , respectively. Press  to place the cursor at the conversion options and press  or press the key for the number of each option.




4 Press .





The character is fixed.

- When **Input prediction** of Input Method Setting is **ON**, select  (Close).


Inserting characters

Press  to move the cursor to the insertion point and enter the character. The entered character is inserted at the cursor position.

Deleting characters

- When the cursor is inside an entered character string (Example: 鈴木一郎)
 - Press  to delete a character at the cursor position.
 - Hold down  for over a second to delete the character at the cursor position and all following characters.
- When the cursor is at the end of an entered character string (Example: 鈴木一郎)
 - Press  to delete the character at the left of the cursor position.
 - Hold down  for over a second to delete all entered characters.




Entering line feed

Move the cursor to the location to enter a line feed and press .


- Some entry fields may not permit a line feed.

5 Press .

Character entry is exited.




- To leave the space as a blank, delete all characters and press , or press  when the text was newly entered.
- To edit the entered contents of character entry screen and return to the screen before editing, delete all characters and press  and select **Yes**.


INFORMATION

In the following input modes, when the specified time elapses without pressing any key in inputting, the automatic cursor function will automatically move the cursor to the right. You can not only change the time setting for move, but also disable the automatic cursor function. P450

- One-byte/two-byte alphabet
- Hiragana/kanji
- One-byte/two-byte katakana

You can perform the following operations after the automatic cursor function has moved the cursor to the right.

- : add voiced/semi-voiced sound
- : switch between upper/lower cases
- : return to the previous character

List of dial keys and character assignments
P456

Block conversion of multiple clauses

The characters can be converted as a block to simplify text entry.

- Up to 24 two-byte characters can be converted.

Example Entering “動物園に行こう。”

1 Enter characters and press .



Fix all characters



① Press .

Fix converted portion



① Press .

Change conversion range



① Press .

When pressing .

INFORMATION

You can enter symbols, pictograms, alphabetic characters, Greek characters, etc. by entering the readings in hiragana. ◀P460, P461

Entering characters using input prediction function

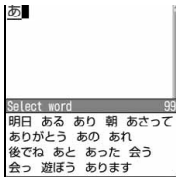
The input prediction function is to display a list of predict conversion options that match the initial part of the reading when characters are entered.

This function automatically registers previously entered characters as predict dictionary data; you can easily enter the same characters next time, quickly by entering only the first part.

- The following words and character strings are displayed as options:
 - Standard words
 - Words entered by Kana/Kanji Conversion
 - Character strings registered by Save Word
- Only the hiragana/kanji mode can be used in predict conversion. However, predict conversion is not available in the following cases:
 - During in-line entry
 - Entering with Slot Input Method
- You can also set not to display the predict conversion options. ▶P450

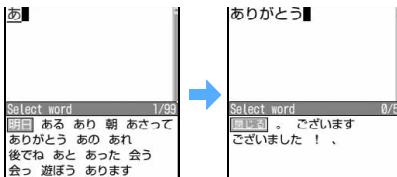
1 Enter characters.

A list of predict conversion options is displayed.



- The more characters are entered, the less the number of predict conversion options are available.

2 Press and to place the cursor at an option and press .



- While the cursor is placed in predict conversion options, the following operations are enabled:
 - / : switches to the previous/next page
 - : enables Kana/Kanji Conversion (Predict conversion options disappear)
 - : fixes the character

- When there are no appropriate words, press to convert text by Kana/Kanji Conversion and predict conversion options vanish.

3 Select .

The predict conversion options vanish.

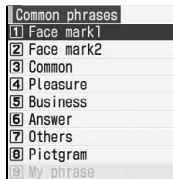
Entering fixed phrases

Enter previously registered sentences, face marks, or pictogram words.

1 Press on the character entry screen.

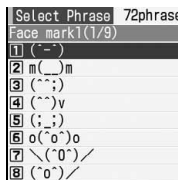
- You can also display by pressing .

2 Press to .



- When a fixed phrase has been created/registered, you can select by pressing .

3 Press to .



When selecting Face mark1

- Press to switch pages.
- Place the cursor at a fixed phrase and press to check it. Press to enter the fixed phrase.

INFORMATION

Mail using face marks may become deformed, look different or cannot be correctly displayed depending on the size of the display, number of displayed characters, or the fonts of the other terminal.








List of fixed phrases ▶P457

Entering symbols and pictograms

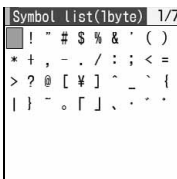
- Only available symbols are listed.
- Part of pictogram can be converted by entering “ え もじ ”. ◀P461



Example Entering symbols

1 Press on the character entry screen.

- Press  to enter pictograms.
- You can also display the symbol list by pressing   and the pictogram list by pressing  .
- There are multiple symbol list, and pictogram list pages. Press  or  to switch pages.

2 Select a symbol.



- When the left element (e.g. {) in the following brackets is selected, the right element (e.g. }) is also automatically selected:
() [] { } 「 」 () () [] { }
《 》 「 」 『 』 『 』 【 】
- If  is pressed on the symbol list or the pictogram list, the continuous input area appears and symbols or pictograms can be selected continuously. Up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte symbols can be entered and up to 10 pictograms can be entered continuously. Press  to enter the selected symbols or pictograms at one time. Note that selecting the left element of the above brackets in the continuous input area does not lead inputting the right element.

INFORMATION

Symbols and pictograms entered may not appear correctly if transferred by infrared communication.

Pictograms may not be displayed correctly when sent to another party using a non i-mode terminal.

Pictogram 2 used in mail may not be displayed correctly on some phone terminals.

Quoting data to enter characters

You can enter characters by quoting phonebook data, Own Number information, the result of calculation with Calculator or string information of the data scanned with Bar Code Reader.

- On the character entry screen in which you cannot quote data, operation cannot be made, since menu items are displayed in a light color, or not displayed.

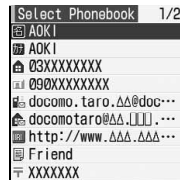
Quoting phonebook data entry



- Switch the character entry screen to full-screen entry.
- The phonebook data is unable to be quoted on the character entry screen of the phonebook.

1 Press on the character entry screen.

2 Select phonebook data to quote.

3 Select the entry to quote.



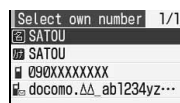
- When the contents are too long, they may be displayed shortly. To check, place the cursor at the content and press . It can be quoted by pressing .



Quoting Own Number entry

- The Own Number is unable to be quoted on the character entry screen of Own Number.

1 Press on the character entry screen.

2 Enter the terminal security code and select the Own Number Information to quote.



- When the contents are too long, they may be displayed shortly. To check, place the cursor at the content and press . It can be quoted by pressing .

Quoting a result of calculation with Calculator

- The result can be quoted only on the character entry screen of Scheduler and Notepad.

- 1 Press on the character entry screen.
- 2 Make calculation.
- 3 Press .

Quoting data scanned with Bar Code Reader

- The data can be quoted only on the character entry screen displayed during URL entry and i-mode.

- 1 Press on the character entry screen.
Bar Code Reader is activated.
- 2 Open the lens cover and switch the macro mode switch to (macro).
- 3 Scan JAN code or QR code.
- 4 Press .
The string of the scanned data is entered.

Registering fixed phrases

Save Phrase

Fixed phrases are registered in *My phrase*.

- Up to 50 phrases can be saved.

- 1 Press on the stand-by display.
- 2 Select **<New phrase>**.
The fixed phrase edit screen is displayed.
 - To edit the registered fixed phrase, select a phrase to edit.
 - To check the fixed phrase already registered, place the cursor at a fixed phrase and press . You can edit it by pressing .

Deleting fixed phrases

- 1 Place the cursor at a fixed phrase to delete, press and select *Yes*.
- 3 Select *Message* field and enter the fixed phrase (up to 128 one-byte or 64 two-byte characters).

- 4 Press .

- When you edit a registered fixed phrase, a confirmation screen is displayed. Select *Yes* to overwrite or *No* to cancel the operation.

Registering during character entry

Entered characters are selected and registered as a fixed phrase.

- 1 Press on the character entry screen.
- 2 Place the cursor at the start point and press .
 - To select the whole sentence, press . Go to Step 4.
- 3 Place the cursor at the end point and press .
The characters in the selected range are displayed on the fixed phrase edit screen.
 - To select from the start point to the beginning, press .
 - To select from the start point to the end, press .
- 4 Press .

INFORMATION

If a character string selected above contains blank spaces, it is processed as follows:

- Blank spaces only
: Cannot be registered as a fixed phrase
- Blank spaces before and after a character string
: Only character string is valid
- Blank spaces between characters
: Blank spaces are also valid

On the entry screen for message, you can also operate by pressing .

When there is no character entered, press to display the fixed phrase edit screen except in the message text entry screen.

When 50 fixed phrases have already been registered, the list of registered fixed phrases is displayed. To register a new item, you must either delete a phrase from this list or edit a registered phrase.

Copying/cutting and pasting characters

Copy Character

Characters copied or cut from a character entry screen are pasted elsewhere. They can also be pasted into another character entry screen.

- Copied and cut characters are retained until FOMA terminal is turned off and you can paste them in other locations any number of times.
- Only one item can be retained. When you cut or copy a new item, it overwrites the previously saved item.

Copying/cutting characters

Example Copying characters

- 1 Press **Menu** **I** **./@** on the character entry screen.
 - Press **Menu** **2** **カ ABC** to cut the characters.
- 2 Place the cursor at the start point and press **⏏**.
 - To select the whole sentence, press **Menu** **⏏**.
- 3 Place the cursor at the end point and press **⏏**.

The characters in the selected range is copied.

 - To select from the start point to the beginning, press **Menu** **⏏**.
 - To select from the start point to the end, press **☐** **⏏**.

INFORMATION

On the entry screen for message, you can also operate by pressing **Menu** and selecting *Copy/Cut*.

Pasting characters

- When the pasted phrase exceeds the number of characters permitted in the edited sentence, a message appears indicating that all characters will not be able to be pasted. When you select *Yes*, the allowable number of characters is pasted.

- 1 Place the cursor at the location to paste and press **Menu** **3** **DEF** on the character entry screen.

INFORMATION

On the entry screen for message, press **Menu** and select *Paste*.

When the type of the copied/cut characters does not match with the character type used in the destination field, pasting is disabled. For example, hiragana or kanji cannot be pasted into the mail address field (one-byte alphanumeric).

When a character string containing a line feed is pasted into an entry screen that cannot contain any line feeds, the line feed is replaced by a blank.

Entering characters using codes KUTEN Code Input

Characters, numbers and symbols on the KUTEN code list are entered using 4-digit code.

Example Entering “携” (code number 2340)

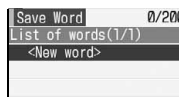
- 1 Press **☐** **8** **TYU** on the character entry screen.
- 2 Enter the 4-digit code (**2** **カ ABC** **3** **DEF** **4** **カ HI** **0** **0000**) in this case.
 - The available code range is 0101 to 8406.
 - Entry of codes without characters, numbers and symbols is invalid.

Registering frequently used words Save Word

Using registered readings makes it easy to convert characters.

- Up to 200 words can be saved.

- 1 Press **Menu** **8** **TYU** **9** **W XYZ** **I** **./@** on the stand-by display.
- 2 Select **<New word>**.



- To edit the registered word, select a word to edit.
- To check a registered word, place the cursor at a word and press **☐**. You can edit it by pressing **⏏**.

Deleting words

- 1 Place the cursor at a word to delete and press **Menu**.
- 2 Select **Delete**.
 - To delete all, select **Delete all**.

- 3 Select **Word** field, enter the word to register (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters).

- The following character types can be registered:
 - One-byte/two-byte alphabet
 - Hiragana/kanji
 - One-byte/two-byte katakana
 - One-byte/two-byte numeric
 - One-byte/two-byte symbol
 - Pictogram

- 4 Select **Reading** field and enter the reading (up to 16 two-byte characters).

- You can enter only hiragana.

- 5 Press **Enter**.

- A confirmation screen is displayed when editing registered words. Select **Overwrite** to replace the original word. To register a new word, keeping original word intact, select **New**.

Registering during character entry

You can select entered characters and register them as a word.

- 1 Press **Menu** **5** **JKL** on the character entry screen.
- 2 Place the cursor at the start point and press **Enter**.
 - To select the whole sentence, press **Menu** **Enter**. Go to Step 4.
- 3 Place the cursor at the end point and press **Enter**. The characters in the selected range is displayed on **Word** field.
 - To select from the beginning to the start point, press **Menu** **Enter**.
 - To select from the start point to the end, press **Enter** **Enter**.
- 4 Enter the reading and press **Enter**.

INFORMATION

Only words with a reading can be registered. Readings that contain characters other than hiragana, prolonged sound, voiced sound or semi-voiced sound characters cannot be registered. Any blank spaces entered are deleted when saved.

When the same word is already registered in the combination of a word and reading, the word cannot be registered.

Up to 5 words with the same reading can be registered. To register additional words with the same reading, change the reading of new words. If you register during character input, you can also register by pressing **Menu** **6** **MNO** **1** **JKL** on the message text entry screen.

For registration during character entry, pressing **Menu** **5** **JKL** in other than the message text entry screen when no characters have been entered causes the word edit screen to appear immediately.

When 200 words have already been registered, the list of registered words is displayed.

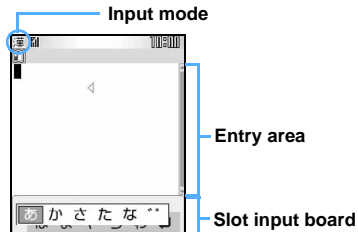
To register a new item, you must either delete a word from this list or edit a registered word.

Entering characters using Slot Input Method


Slot Input Method

You use **Enter** to select characters displayed on the slot input board.


- Slot Input Method must be set up before using this function. **P450**
- The predict conversion function cannot be used in Slot Input Method.
- When you are using the slot input board and want to use the entry area (for deleting characters, moving the cursor, etc.), press **Enter**. Press **Enter** again to use the slot input board.



Example Entering “企業” in the phonebook














1 Place the cursor at *Enter name* field and press .


The character entry screen is displayed.

- In English mode, the alphabet mode is displayed first. Press  to change to the hiragana/kanji mode.

2 Enter “きぎょう”.





- “き” Press  and .
 - “ぎ” Press , press  4 times and press .
 - “よ” Press , press  twice,  twice and press .
 - “う” Press , press  twice and press .
- Press  to replace the upper or lower slot with each other.

3 Press .

The characters are converted.



- Characters are converted in the same way as in 5-touch Input Method.
- To return converted characters to the state they had before conversion, press .
- Press  to fix the characters as hiragana and go to Step 5. The slot input board becomes active at the same time as fix.

4 Press .

The character is fixed.

- New characters can be added.

5 Press  and .

Character entry is exited.

INFORMATION

List of input slots and characters assignments





▶P457

Character entry screen submenu ▶P442

Setting input method

Input Method Setting

Default Input method: 5-touch Input prediction: ON
Auto cursor: Normal

1 Press     on the stand-by display.

2 Select each item to set.

Input method

- Specifies 5-touch or slot input method.
- When *Slot* is set, items below are disabled.

Input prediction

- Specifies whether to display predictive conversion options.


Auto cursor



- Sets the time period before the cursor automatically moves to the right.
- Setting *OFF* disables automatic movement.
- Setting *Slow* moves the cursor in about 1.5 seconds.
- Setting *Normal* moves the cursor in about 1 second.
- Setting *Fast* moves the cursor in about 0.5 seconds.






3 Press .

Changing settings during character entry

- This cannot be changed before characters are fixed or on the decoration selection screen of Deco-mail.
- Only the automatic cursor function can be changed during in-line entry.

1 Press   on the character entry screen.

2 Press  to .

- To switch between *Use 5-touch* and *Use Slot input*, press .
- To switch between *Prediction ON* and *Prediction OFF*, press .
- To set the time period before the cursor automatically moves, press  and then press  to .

Appendix/Data Interchange/ Troubleshooting

Menu list	452
List of dial keys and character assignments (5-touch Input Method)	456
List of input slots and character assignments (Slot Input Method)	457
List of fixed phrases	457
List of pictograms and symbols	459
List of special symbols for conversion	460
List of pictograms for conversion	461
KUTEN code input list	462
Combination of operations during Multiaccess	466
Combination of functions during Multitask	468
Services available for FOMA terminal	470
Options and related devices	470
Data Interchange using external devices	
About the data link software	471
Playing video data downloaded from the external devices on FOMA terminal Play Video	471
Playing video data recorded with FOMA terminal on a PC.....	472
Playing sound data downloaded from a PC on FOMA terminal Play Sound	472
Troubleshooting	
Troubleshooting	475
Example of Error messages	Error Message 477
Warranty and After-Sales Service	483
Updating Software	Software Update 485
Protecting FOMA terminal from hazardous data ...	Virus Scan Function 489
SAR certification information	492

Menu list

- The menu differs depending on the menu display format (Menu Setting).
 - One-byte and two-byte characters shown on the display may differ from those below.
- : When the settings have been changed, the default settings are not restored by resetting.

1 Mail

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Inbox	_____	P246
2 Compose message	_____	P221
3 Chat mail	_____	P267
4 Unsent messages	_____	P246
5 Outbox	_____	P246
6 Check new message		
1 mode message	_____	P239
2 SMS	_____	P276
3 Receive option	_____	P238
4 Message retrieval	selected (all)	P261
7 SMS		
1 Compose SMS	_____	P273
2 Received SMS	_____	P278
3 Sent SMS	_____	P278
4 SMS settings*1	Delivered report: Do not request Other than the above: use UIM settings	P276
8 Read templates	_____	P233
9 Mail setting		
1 Incoming message	Select mail ring tone: Melody/ パターン 1 (Pattern 1) Incoming msg. lighting: ON/Pattern 9 Set vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10	P266
2 Incoming chat mail	Incoming setting: Same: Msg setting	P272
3 Sort criteria	got mail criteria: ON sent mail criteria: ON	P258
4 Signature	Auto insert: Yes Signature: not set	P261
5 Reply format	Quote: Yes Quote characters: >	P263
6 Receive option	OFF	P262
7 Incoming msg attach	Image: Receive Melody: Receive	P264
8 Mail group	_____	P262
9 Display settings		
1 Message list	Display 2 rows	P264
2 Message attachment	Auto play	P264
3 Display priority	Show message	P266

2 mode

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Menu	_____	P182
2 Bookmark	_____	P190
3 Go to location		
1 Enter URL	_____	P188
2 URL history	_____	P188
4 Screen memo	_____	P193
5 Last visited URL	_____	P183
6 mode message	_____	P239
7 Message R&F		
1 Message R	_____	P204
2 Message F	_____	P204
3 Message settings		
1 Auto display	MessageR preferred	P203
2 Message retrieval	selected (all)	P261
3 Message attachment	Auto play	P264
4 Incoming msg. alert	Select ring alert: Melody/ パターン 1(Pattern 1) Incoming msg. lighting: ON/Pattern 9 Set vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10	P203
8 i-Channel		
1 i-Channel list	_____	P304
2 Stand-by telop	Display telop: Display Telop speed: Normal Telop color: Pattern 1	P304
9 mode setting		
1 mode shortcuts	Not recorded	P191
2 Image/Effect	Image, Animation: Display Use saved data: Yes Set lighting: Always on Sound effect setting: ON	P200
3 Display color	Font/BG color: Default Link color: Default	P201
4 motion settings	Auto Play ON	P212
5 Connection timeout	60 seconds	P198
6 Host selection	mode(FOMA Card)	P199
7 Set certificate*2	CA Certificate 1 to 9 Other than the above: use UIM settings	P207
8 Certificate download	_____	P208
9 Certificate host	DoCoMo	P210

3 ppli

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Software list	_____	P286
2 ppli settings		
1 Software sort	By download time	P299
2 Auto start	ON	P293
3 Software info display	OFF	P285
4 Light settings	Use phone setting	P289
5 Vibrate settings	ON	P289
6 ppli shortcut	Not recorded	P292
3 Display history	_____	P294 P296 P287

4 Phonebook & Logs

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Phonebook	_____	P101
2 Phonebook new entry	_____	P95
3 Phonebook(UIM) new entry	_____	P99
4 Received calls	_____	P66
5 Redial	_____	P56
6 Ans. machine/Voice memo		
1 Answer machine	Deactivate	P75
2 Recorded messages	_____	P77
3 Record voice memo	_____	P383
4 Voice memos	_____	P383
7 Own number	UIM settings	P50, P381

5 Data Box

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Image	_____	P306
2 motion	_____	P316
3 Melody	_____	P326

6 Tools




Menu item	Default	Page
1 Camera	_____	P160
2 Movie camera	_____	P162
3 Sound recorder	_____	P354
4 Bar code reader	_____	P172
5 Data exchange		
1 Send all Ir data	_____	P347
2 Receive Ir data	_____	P347
3 Data exchange settings	End alert: OFF Auto Authentication: OFF Ph.book image sending: ON	P354
4 USB mode settings	Communication mode	P412
6 miniSD card	_____	P335

7 Stationery

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Scheduler	_____	P367
2 Notepad	_____	P387
3 Alarm clock	not set	P365
4 Calculator	_____	P387

8 Settings

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Sounds/Vibrate		
1 Set sound	Phone, Mail: Melody/ パターン 1(Pattern 1), Chat mail: Sync msg alert MessageR, MessageF: Melody/ パターン 1 (Pattern 1) On-hold tone: Default tone, 保留音・ボイス (On-hold tone, voice) Video-phone: Melody/ 電話・メロディ A(Phone, melody A) Open phone: Melody/ 端 末・オープン音1 (Terminal opening sound 1) Close phone: Melody/ 端 末・クローズ音1 (Terminal closing sound 1)	P114
2 Ring volume		
1 Ring alert volume	Level4	P68
2 Msg. alert volume	Level4	P68
3 Volume	Level4	P68
4 Keypad sound	Keypad sound1	P117
5 Low battery alert	ON	P47
6 Silent mode	General	P119
7 Vibrator	OFF (all)	P116
8 Set mute seconds	OFF	P151
9 Charge alert	ON	P118
2 Display		
1 Stand-by	ドルチェ (Dolce)	P120
2 Mail/Call image		
1 Outgoing call	Display image: Default	P126
2 Incoming call	Ring alert: Melody/ パターン 1(Pattern 1) Show image: Standard image Vibrator: OFF Lighting: ON/Pattern 20	P69
3 Video-phone dialing	Display image: Default	P126
4 Video-phone receiving	Ring alert: Melody/ 電話・メ ロディ A(Phone, melody A) Show image: Standard image Vibrator: OFF Lighting: ON/Pattern 20	P69
5 Contact image	ON	P126

Menu item	Default	Page
2 Display		
2 Mail/Call image		
6 Outgoing msg. image	Display image: Default	P127
7 Incoming msg. image	Display image: Default	P127
8 Retrieving image	Display image: Default	P127
9 Receive display	Caller's phone number: Display Caller's name: Standard Receive mail/message: Display	P127
3 Color scheme	WhiteSmoke	P129
4 Battery icon	  	P131
5 Display light	Lighting method: Turn light ON Turn light on: 10 seconds Range: Display + Key Brightness: Normal AC adapter connected: Terminal settings	P128
6 Alert lighting	Indicator light: OFF During call: ON/Pattern 19 Incoming Video-phone, Incoming call: ON/ Pattern 20 Incoming Mail, Incoming Message R, Incoming Message F, Incoming Chat Mail: ON/Pattern 9 Alarm, Schedule: OFF Play melody: Sync melody Open phone, Close phone: ON/Pattern 13	P131
7 Sub-display		
1 Sub-display info	Show callers' info	P128
8 Font	Standard	P133
9 Select language	Japanese	P48
3 Security		
1 Lock		
1 All lock	not set	P141
2 PIM lock	OFF	P144
3 Remote lock	OFF	P141
4 Lock on close	OFF	P148
2 Secret mode	not set	P148
3 Keypad dial lock	OFF	P145
4 UIM	UIM settings	P137
5 Change security code	0000	P137
6 Privacy mode	Phonebook & Logs, Mail, My picture, i-motion, Schedule, i- ppli: Show all Auto start: OFF	P145

Menu item	Default	Page
3 Security		
7 Scanning function		
1 Update definition	_____	P490
2 Scanning settings	ON	P490
3 Scan version	_____	P492
4 Info/Reset		
1 Call duration	_____	P384
2 Confirm	_____	P393
3 Battery level	_____	P46
4 Call cost		
1 Last call cost	_____	P384
2 Call cost limit	Alert: OFF	P386
3 Remove call cost icon	_____	P386
4 Reset call cost	OFF	P385
5 Reset	_____	P393
6 Delete all data	_____	P394
5 Clock		
1 Date & time*3	Auto Time Set: ON Offset: +, 00h00m	P48
2 Auto power ON	OFF	P364
3 Auto power OFF	OFF	P364
4 Clock display format	Clock size: Digital 1/Large/ Top Day: Terminal settings Time format: 24 hour	P134
5 Alarm auto power ON	OFF	P367
6 Call/Answer		
1 Outgoing call	Display image: Default	P126
2 Incoming call	Ring alert: Melody/ パターン1 (Pattern 1) Show image: Standard image Vibrator: OFF Lighting: ON/Pattern 20	P69
3 Anonymous caller	Disable settings (all)	P150
4 Headset		
1 Headset switch	Headset + speaker	P392
2 Auto answer	OFF	P391
3 Headset quick dial	OFF	P391
5 Reject/Accept call	Cancel settings	P149
6 Memory reject call	OFF	P152
7 Status message	On-hold tone: Standard	P72
8 Any key answer	ON	P65
9 Priority comm mode	No Set Up	P70

Menu item	Default	Page
7 Call		
1 Noise reduction	ON	P61
2 Reconnect alarm	High alarm	P60
3 On-hold tone	Default tone, 保留音・ボイス(On-hold tone, voice)	P72
4 Quality alarm	High alarm	P118
5 Prefix dialing	009130010	P59
6 Auto assist setting	Auto	P59
7 Sub address	ON	P60
8 Close settings	End the call	P65
9 Open answer	OFF	P65
8 Video-phone		
1 Video-phone dialing	Display image: Default	P126
2 Video-phone receiving	Ring alert: Melody/ 電話・メロディ A (Phone, melody A) Show image: Standard image Vibrator: OFF Lighting: ON/Pattern 20	P69
3 Operation	Voice call auto switch: OFF Display setting: Both Sub screen: Me Display screen size: Large Send camera image: ON Sending image quality: Normal Display light: Always on (normal)	P90
4 Image	Substitutive image, Answer machine image, Response hold image, On-hold image: Default	P88
5 External device	Terminal	P92
6 Indicate V-phone		
1 Indication ON	active	P91
2 Indication OFF	_____	P91
3 Check Indication	_____	P91
9 Others		
1 Save word	_____	P448
2 Save phrase	_____	P447
3 Text input method	Input method: 5-touch Input prediction: ON Auto cursor: Normal	P450
4 Self mode	OFF	P143
5 NW search method	Auto select NW	P392
6 Software Update	_____	P485

9]NW Services

Menu item	Default	Page
1 Voice mail		
1 Voicemail service		
1 Activate Voice mail	_____	P399
2 Set ringing time	_____	P399
3 Deactivate Voice mail	_____	P399
4 Voice mail Status Request	_____	P399
5 Play messages	_____	P399
6 Voice mail settings	_____	P399
7 Check messages	_____	P399
2 Notification	Voicemail alert: ON Notification melody: パターン1 (Pattern 1)	P400
3 Notify missed call		
1 Activate Missed Call Notification	_____	P400
2 Deactivate Missed Call Notification	_____	P400
3 Missed Call Notification Status Request	_____	P400
4 Remove voicemail count	_____	P400
2 Call waiting		
1 Activate Call Waiting	_____	P401
2 Deactive Call Waiting	_____	P401
3 Call Waiting Status Request	_____	P401
3 Call forwarding		
1 Activate Call Forwarding	_____	P402
2 Deactivate Call Forwarding	_____	P403
3 Register The Forwarding Number	_____	P403
4 Setting at Forwarded Party Busy	_____	P403
5 Call Forwarding Status Request	_____	P403
4 Nuisance call barring		
1 Register Nuisance Caller	_____	P403
2 Delete all entries	_____	P404
3 Delete Most Recent Entry	_____	P404
5 Caller ID notification		
1 Activate/Deactivate Caller ID Notification	_____	P50
2 Caller ID Notification Status Request	_____	P50
6 Caller ID request		
1 Activate Caller ID Request	_____	P404
2 Deactivate Caller ID Request	_____	P404
3 Caller ID Request Status Request	_____	P404
7 Set arrival act		
1 Activate Arrival Act	_____	P406
2 Deactivate Arrival Act	_____	P406
3 Arrival Act Status Request	_____	P406

Menu item	Default	Page
8 Arrival call act	Answer	P406
9 Others		
1 Register USSD		P407
2 Record reply message		P407
3 Remote control		
1 Activate Remote Control		P407
2 Deactivate Remote Control		P407
3 Remote Control Status Request		P407
4 English guidance		
1 Guidance Setting		P405
2 Guidance Status Request		P405
5 Dual network		
1 Dual Network Switching		P405
2 Dual Network Status Request		P405

Menu item	Default	Page
9 Others		
6 Service Dialing Number		
1 ドコモ故障問合せ		P406
2 ドコモ総合案内・受付		P406
7 Multi number		P407
8 Call barring*4		

0 Own number

Menu item	Default	Page
Own number	UIM settings	P50, P381

*1 UIM settings are as follows by resetting:

- Font type : Japanese
- Delivered report: Do not request
- Keep in SMS center: 3 days
- SMSC: DoCoMo
- Address: 81903101652
- Type of Number: international

*2 Items of the certificates saved in UIM are all valid by resetting.

*3 Date and time remain unchanged after resetting.

*4 Unavailable on this terminal.

List of dial keys and character assignments (5-touch Input Method)

Key	Hiragana/kanji mode (two-byte)*1	Katakana mode (one-byte/two-byte)*1	Alphabet mode (one-byte/two-byte)*1	Numeric mode (one-byte/two-byte)*3
1 あいいうえお 1	アイウエオ 1	. / @ *2 - : _ [¥] ^ ` { } 1	1	
2 かきくけこ 2	カキクケコ 2	a b c 2	2	
3 さしすせそ 3	サシスセソ 3	d e f 3	3	
4 たちつてと 4	タチツテト 4	g h i 4	4	
5 なにぬねの 5	ナニヌネノ 5	j k l 5	5	
6 はひふへほ 6	ハヒフヘホ 6	m n o 6	6	
7 まみむめも 7	マミムメモ 7	p q r s 7	7	
8 やゆよ 8	ヤユヨ 8	t u v 8	8	
9 らりるれろ 9	ラリルレロ 9	w x y z 9	9	
0 わをんー、。・?!「」 0	ワランー、。・?!「」 0	! " # \$ % & ' () * + , ; < = > ? 0	0 +*4	
☎ (int)	☎	☎	The following character strings can be entered only in one-byte character: @docomo.ne.jp .com .or.jp .go.jp .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp http://www. www. .html .htm	* P*4
# (int)*5	Line feed	Line feed	Line feed	Line feed # T*4
↶	Brings back the previous character	Brings back the previous character	Brings back the previous character	
↷	Changes upper/lower case	Changes upper/lower case	Changes upper/lower case	

: Indicates blank space. ☎ : Press ☎ after entering a character to switch between upper and lower case.

*1 Numeric characters other than those entered in the two-byte numeric mode are entered as one-byte characters.

*2 This character is entered as "～" in the one-byte alphabet mode.

*3 In the numeric mode, " * ", "#", "P", "T" and " + " can only be entered in the entry field that supports them.

*4 Hold down the relevant key for over a second to enter the character.

*5 Line feed may not be possible depending on the entry field.

List of input slots and character assignments (Slot Input Method)

Input slot		Hiragana/kanji mode (two-byte)		Input slot		Katakana mode (one-byte)		Input slot		Alphanumeric mode (one-byte)	
Upper slot	あ	あいうえおあいうえお 1		Upper slot	ア	アイウエオアイウエオ 1		Upper slot	.	./@~ :_[\]^_{} 1	
	か	かきくけこ 2			カ	カキクケコ 2			A	ABC abc 2	
	さ	さしすせそ 3			サ	サシスセソ 3			D	DEF def 3	
	た	たちつとっ 4			タ	タチツテトッ 4			G	GHI ghi 4	
	な	なにぬねの 5			ナ	ナニヌネノ 5			J	JKL jkl 5	
..		定	@docomo.ne.jp .com .or.jp .go.jp .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp http://www. www. .html .htm				
Lower slot	は	はひふへほ 6		Lower slot	ハ	ハヒフヘホ 6		Lower slot	M	MNO mno 6	
	ま	まみむめも 7			マ	マミムメモ 7			P	PQR Spqrs 7	
	や	やゆよ やゆよ 8			ヤ	ヤユヨ ヲヨ 8			T	TUV tuv 8	
	ら	らりるれろ 9			ラ	ラリルレロ 9			W	WXYZ wxyz 9	
	わ	わをんー、。？！「」 0			ワ	ワランー、。？！「」 0			!	!#\$%&'()*+.;<=>? 0	
	↵	Line feed			↵	Line feed			↵	Line feed	

: Indicates two-byte space in hiragana/kanji mode and one-byte space in katakana, alphanumeric mode.

- " " and " " are switched with every press of (⊕) in hiragana/kanji mode.
- Numeric characters are displayed as one-byte characters.

List of fixed phrases

- Face mark 1 (72 items)

(^-)	m()m	(^;)	(^v)	(; ;)
o(^o^o)	\(^0^)/	(^o^)/	d=(^o^)=b	(*^_*^)
(^s)	(^.;)	σ(^.;	(ToT)	(^^)/^^
(ToT)/^^	(><)	(*^*)	(+_+)	(@_@)
(?_?)	(= =)	(^-)	(^ ^)	(-_-);
w(^o^w)	(^3^)/~☆	(☆o☆)	(-_-)zzz	☆彗
(^フ)	v(^o^)	(^◇^)	(^-/)	o(^-^o)
(^-)b	(^-)☆	(.^.)/	(.^-)☆	~(m^-)m
\(^o^)/	(#_3^-)	(^-I^-)	(^-)_E	\(^▽^)/
\(*^▽^*)/	~(^-▽^-)	^-)人(^-)	ε=∫(^-)∫	(^▽^σ)^0^)
(^▽^@)♪♪♪	v(^-◇^-)/))	ε=v(*^▽^)/	(^-;	(. .)
(. .)	(^ ^);	(^-~)	(><)	(^-)
(-_-#)	(^-)	_(. .)_	(^□^)	(^-)
(^-)	(^-w)	(^-_?)	(^-)	o(T T)o
Σ(□^-);	..(><).^.			

- Face mark 2 (28 items)

(.)ソォツ	(^-*)IA	(- ☆)キリ	(^-*)\^チ
(^->了解)	[壁_-] テラッ	(^-) AI~	(;-)アヤシ
(-s)ゴッゴッ	(;-)=3 フ	{{(><)}}サムイ	Σ(^0;)+;-!!
(^▽^)] モシモシ	v(*^-*)マダマ	(≧▽≦)/ ハハハ	φ(.)ヌヌヌ
(. .)ノノ 〇 〇イ	テカ-ウ(-)ノノ	o(^-^o)☆ハッテ	d (><) アウト!
__(-_-)_セフ!	(><) (><)イ-	\(o^-▽^-o)ハイ	(^-);v(-_-)オイ
(^-)モクモク	<(^0")> ナンゴツ!	凸\(^-) タイコハン	(. .)v(^-)ヨシヨシ

• Common (20 items)

おはよう	おやすみ
おはよー！今日も一日がんばりましょう。	昨日は、とっても楽しかったです。どうもありがとう。
連絡下さい。	今から電話してもいいですか？
ごめんなさい、遅れます。	今日は　　の日です。早く帰って来てね。
まで迎えに来て！お願いします。	について知っている人は　　までに　　に教えて下さい。
もう少し待ってて！	
いってらっしゃい。	留守電にメッセージをお願いします。
で待ってます。	ただいま電話にできることができません。メールでご用件をお知らせ下さい。
集合時間は　　、集合場所は　　です。	
今日は外で食べて帰ります。ご飯はいりません。	メールありがとう。
の写真送ります。	最近の　　の写真です。

• Pleasure (20 items)

今なにしてるの？電話かメールを下さい。	どこか、遊びに行こーよ！
電話ちょうだい！電話番号は　　です。	おくれちゃう、ゴメン！
どこにいるの？	集合！
時間だよーん！！	トラブル発生！！
会いたい！	大好き！
みんなで飲みませんか？　　に　　。	今日　　に、　　へ行きませんか？
の待ち合わせ時間と場所、決めようよ。	に行かない？
のメンバー募集！詳しくは　　まで連絡下さい。	
今度みんなで　　へ行きましょう。　　までで、都合の良い日を教えて下さい。	
今度みんなで　　へ行きましょう。いいところがありましたら、お知らせ下さい。	
しませんか？日時：　　、場所：　　。出欠をご連絡下さい。	
メッセージ下さい！！	の時の写真だよ。

• Business (20 items)

本日の　　会議は、　　となりました。	本日の　　訪問は、　　となりました。
へ直行します。	へ直帰します。
電車遅延のため、　　遅れます。	至急 TEL 下さい。
予定変更！TEL 下さい。	待ち合わせ変更！場所：　　、時間：
頃まで、携帯電話の電源を切ります。	振込口座：　　銀行　　支店、口座番号　　、名義人名　　です。
の件、よろしくお願ひ致します。	
今日、一杯どうですか？連絡下さい。	FAX 確認願ひます。
次の指示を待て。	変更します。
延期します。	中止します。
での写真送ります。	今わかりません。
あとで連絡します。	

• Answer (20 items)

Thank you!	Good!	OK です。	NG です。
いいよ。	行きます。	了解。	ダメ！
ごめんネ・・・	スミマセン、無理です。	本当？	おまかせっ！！
関係ないね！	うらやましー。	お疲れさま。	反対。
賛成。	待ってました！	それは残念。	写真届きました。

Combination of operations during Multiaccess

The following table shows whether or not a process that is generated or to be performed can be operated when any other operation is in progress:

Processes that occur or are performed Current status	Voice call		Video-phone call		i-mode	i-mode Mail	
	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Connect	Send	Receive
During a voice call	①	②	x	x *1			*2
During a video-phone call	x	x *1	x	x *1	x	x	x
In i-mode			*3	x *4	x		
During i-mode Mail reception/transmission			*3	x *4		*5	*5
During SMS reception/transmission						*5	*5
During 64K data communication	x	③	x	x *1	x	x	x
During packet communication			x	x *4	x	x	x
During data transmission (infrared communication/USB connection)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
During i- ppli operation	*6	*6	*6	*6	x		
miniSD memory card in operation (during copy or format processing)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
miniSD memory card in operation (other than copy or format processing)					x		
Updating software	x		x	x *4	x	x	x
While switching to miniSD mode	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Processes that occur or are performed	SMS		64K data communication		Packet communication		Data transmission (infrared communication)	
	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive
Current status								
During a voice call		*2	x	x *1			x	x
During a video-phone call	x	x	x	x *1	x	x	x	x
In i-mode			x	x *4	x	x	x	x
During i-mode Mail reception/transmission	*5	*5	x	x *4	x	x	x	x
During SMS reception/transmission	*5	*5	x	x			x	x
During 64K data communication	x	*2	x	x *1	x	x	x	x
During packet communication	*7	*2	x	x *4	x	x	x	x
During data transmission (infrared communication/USB connection)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
During i- ppli operation								x
miniSD memory card in operation (during copy or format processing)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
miniSD memory card in operation (other than copy or format processing)								x
Updating software	x	x	x	x *4	x	x	x	x
While switching to miniSD mode	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

: New communication can be performed while maintaining the current communication.

x : Another communication cannot be executed.

①: Subscribers to Call Waiting Service can make a call to another party during a call.

②: Subscribers to Call Waiting Service can receive a call from another party during a call. Subscribers to Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service can also use these services.

③: Voice call (Receive) and 64K data communication cannot be used simultaneously. If you subscribe to Call Waiting Service, you can select either exiting current communication to answer the phone or rejecting the call. Subscribers to Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service can also use these services.

*1 When the Call Waiting Service is subscribed, the call is recorded as missed call in the received call list.

*2 The ring tone does not sound.

*3 i-mode communication is disconnected if active.

*4 It will be recorded as missed calls regardless of the contract of Call Waiting Service.

*5 Sending while sending or receiving while receiving cannot be performed. Sending and receiving may not be allowed at the same time.

*6 Melody of i- ppli is stopped. When i- ppli is using i-mode communication, the following occurs:

- i-mode communication is disconnected when a video-phone call is made.
- Incoming video-phone calls are rejected.

*7 You can compose and send SMS from the phonebook.

Combination of functions during Multitask

Whether or not selections made in *New Task* menu can be combined with the currently run or set function is described in the following table:

: can be selected x : cannot be selected

New Task menu item Function in progress or status	Dial	1 Mail										2 i mode																										
		1 Inbox		2 Compose message		3 Chat mail		4 Unsent messages		5 Outbox		6 Check new message		7 SMS		8 Read templates		1 i Menu		2 Bookmark		3 Go to location		4 URL history		5 Screen memo		6 Last visited URL		7 Message retrieval		8 Message R&F		9 i-Channel list				
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	
Phone call/Dial input	x																																					
64K data comm.	x																																					
Outbox/Inbox/Unsent messages		x																																				
Compose i-mode Mail/SMS			x																																			
Chat mail		x	x																																			
Read templates		x																																				
Received/Sent SMS (UIM)		x																																				
Message Request/Message Free																																						
Check new message (Mail)																																						
Check new message (SMS)																																						
iMenu																																						
Enter URL/URL history/Bookmark/Last Visited URL																																						
Screen Memo																																						
i-Channel list																																						
Software list																																						
i ppli/i ppli download																																						
i-motion (Play Video/ Sound/ Melody/Image/ Chara-den/My Documents																																						
Camera/Movie Camera/ Sound Recorder																																						
Bar Code Reader																																						
Phonebook/Notepad/ Scheduler																																						
Calculator																																						
Received Calls/Redial																																						
Own Number																																						
Receiving i-mode Mail																																						
Receiving SMS																																						
PPP data comm.																																						
Answer Machine/Voice Memo																																						
Alarm sound																																						
miniSD memory card																																						
Video-phone call by external device	x																																					
UIM not inserted																																						
PUK blocked																																						
Self Mode set																																						
PIM Lock set																																						
Reading UIM																																						
Keypad Dial Lock set																																						

: can be selected x : cannot be selected

Function in progress or status	New Task menu item			4] Phonebook & Logs				5] Data Box			6] Tools			7] Stationery			0] Own number
	3] ppli	1] Phonebook	2] Received calls	3] Redial	4] Answer machine/Voice memo		5] Own number	1] Image	2] i-motion	3] Melody	1] Camera	2] Movie camera	3] Sound recorder	4] Bar code reader	1] Scheduler	2] Notepad	3] Calculator
					1] Recorded messages	2] Record voice memo	3] Voice memos										
Phone call						x						x	x				
Dial input																	
64K data comm.						x						x	x				
Outbox/Inbox/Unsent messages																	
Compose i-mode Mail/Compose SMS																	
Chat mail																	
Read templates																	
Received/Sent SMS (UIM)																	
Message Request/Message Free																	
Check new message (Mail)/(SMS)																	
iMenu	x																
Enter URL/URL history/Bookmark/Last Visited URL	x																
Screen Memo	x																
i-Channel list	x																
Software list	x							x	x	x							
i_ppli/i_ppli download	x							x	x	x							
i-motion (Play Video/Sound)									x		x	x	x	x			
Melody										x							
Image								x			x	x	x	x			
Camera								x	x		x	x	x	x			
Bar Code Reader								x	x		x	x	x	x			
Movie Camera/Sound Recorder					x	x	x	x	x		x	x	x	x			
Phonebook		x															
Notepad																x	
Scheduler														x			
Calculator																	x
Received Calls/Redial			x	x													
Own Number								x									x
Receiving i-mode Mail/SMS																	
PPP data comm.																	
Answer Machine/Voice Memo					x	x	x				x	x					
Alarm sound																	
miniSD memory card	x				x	x	x	x	x	x							
Video-phone call by external device						x						x	x				
UIM not inserted																	
PUK blocked																	
Self Mode set/Keypad Dial Lock set																	
PIM Lock set	x	x			x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Reading UIM																	

* Available functions in Multitask may be restricted depending on the status of activating or lock settings.
 And the operation by Multitask is invalid during a video-phone call, sending and receiving of infrared communication, Software Update or Update Definition (Virus Scan Function).

Services available for FOMA terminal

Service	Phone number
Collect call (reversed charge calls)	106 (no area code)
Directory assistance for general subscriber phones and for DoCoMo's mobile phones (charges apply) (unlisted phone numbers cannot be given)	104 (no area code)
Telegrams (charges apply) 8 a.m. - 10 p.m.	115 (no area code)
Time (charges apply)	117 (no area code)
Weather (charges apply)	Area code + 177
Police emergencies	110 (no area code)
Fire and ambulance	119 (no area code)
Marine emergencies and accident reports	118 (no area code)
Disaster Voice Mail Service (charges apply)	171 (no area code)

INFORMATION

If you use the collect call service (106), the call charge is billed to the receiver together with a commission of 90 yen (94.5 yen with tax included) per call. (as of August, 2005)

If you use the directory assistance service (104), a service charge of 100 yen (105 yen with tax included) is billed together with the call charge. Note that this service is available free from charge for those who are under special conditions. For further information, inquire at 116 (NTT sales center) from a general subscriber phone. (as of August, 2005)

Note that calls to 110, 119 or 118 from FOMA terminal cannot be located. Since the police or fire department authorities may call you to confirm, inform them that you are calling from a mobile phone, give your number and detailed information of your whereabouts. To make sure that you are not cut off during the call, stay in one place when you make the call and do not turn off the phone after the call, but keep it on for about 10 minutes.

Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected to the local police or fire department. Use a public payphone or general subscriber phone if you cannot get in touch with the local authorities.

A general subscriber phone, when it is set for "Call Forwarding", can forward an incoming call to a mobile phone. In this case, even when the receiver's side is busy, is outside the service area, or is turned off, the sender may still hear ringing tones. It is due to some optional setting applied to the receiver's side.

You may not be able to call 116 (NTT sales center), Dial Q², Message Dial and make credit card calls.

However, credit card calls can be made from a general subscriber phone/pay phone to FOMA terminal.

Options and related devices

Combining FOMA terminal with optional accessories supports a wide variety uses from personal use to business use. Some products are unavailable depending on the region. For details, contact DoCoMo Shops.

For details about the optional accessories, refer to the instruction manual for each device.

- Battery pack D05
- FOMA AC adapter 01
- Desktop holder D05
- FOMA DC adapter 01
- FOMA domestic/overseas AC adapter 01
- Flat type earphone/microphone set with switch P01/P02
- In-car holder D04
- Flat type stereo earphone set P01
- Earphone jack converter adapter P001
- Earphone/microphone set with switch P001*1/P002*1
- Stereo earphone set P001*1
- Earphone terminal P001*1
- FOMA USB cable
- Data communication adapter D01
- FOMA indoor auxiliary antenna
- Rear cover D05
- In-Car Hands-Free kit 01*2
- FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01

*1 The earphone jack converter adapter P001 is required.

*2 In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 is required to connect to FOMA D701i.

About the data link software

The FOMA D Series Data Link Software can be used to transfer data such as Bookmark between your FOMA terminal and a connected PC. You can install the FOMA D Series Data Link Software from the attached CD-ROM or download it from the following web sites:

<http://www.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp/d701i/>

For details on the installation of data link software, see "README_DL.TXT" of "DataLink" folder in the attached CD-ROM.

For details on how to download, transferable data, operating procedure and operation environment, access the web site above or refer to the data link software Help menu.

- The FOMA USB cable (optional) is required for connecting to PC.
- Copyright laws forbid transfer of downloaded information from FOMA terminal to external sources even in its use of the data link software. Also, you cannot forward the data if it is prohibited from being output from FOMA terminal.

Supported OS

Windows 98 Second Edition, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP Professional, Windows XP Home Edition

- A PC/AT compatible machine for the above OS is required.

When using the data link software

- Copyright laws
Although this software is distributed as freeware, note that the copyright belongs to Mitsubishi Electric Corporation.
- Liability
Mitsubishi Electric Corporation assumes no legal responsibility for defect liability, including software issues and false operations and other responsibility. Additionally, Mitsubishi Electric Corporation makes no guarantees whatsoever as to the merchantability of the software and conformance to specific purposes of customers.

Contact information for technical matters concerning the data link software

Mitsubishi Electric Data Link Support Center: 03-5319-3762

Business hours: weekdays 9:00 to 12:00/13:00 to 17:00 (Closed on Saturdays, Sundays, national holidays, new year's holidays and company holidays)

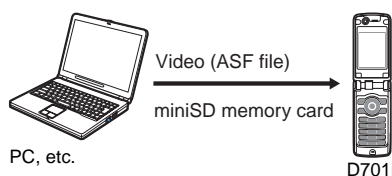
- To avoid mistakes, please double-check the number before dialing.

Playing video data downloaded from the external devices on FOMA terminal

Play Video

You can play videos (MP4 and ASF files) created with external devices such as a PC on FOMA terminals by storing in the miniSD memory cards.

- Playing video in the miniSD memory card ●P335
- Playable MP4 files ●P158
- The specifications of playable ASF files are as follows:



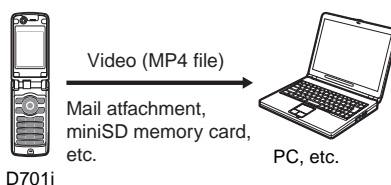
File format	SD-Video (ASF)
Encoding method	Video: MPEG-4 Sound: G.726

- Some ASF files may not be playable.
- To play a video stored in the miniSD memory card, you need to save the video data to fixed folders using the supplied data link software, etc.
The miniSD memory card folder structure ◀P329
- In case the saved video data are not displayed, update the miniSD memory card information ◀P338

Playing video data recorded with FOMA terminal on a PC

You can play videos (MP4 files) recorded with FOMA terminals on PCs by storing in the miniSD memory cards or sending by transfer via mail.

- Video files supported by FOMA terminals ◀P158



About Video playing software

Playing videos (MP4 file) on a PC requires QuickTime Player (free of charge) ver. 6.4 or later (or ver. 6.3 + 3GPP), which is provided by Apple Computer Inc.

QuickTime Player can be downloaded from the website below:

<http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/>

- Downloading the software requires a PC with Internet access. Communication charges are separately required for downloading.
- For details including the operating environment, downloading procedure and operation instructions, visit the website shown above.

Playing sound data downloaded from a PC on FOMA terminal

Play Sound

The music got via Internet or contained in a CD can be stored in the miniSD memory card using a PC and played on FOMA terminal.

- This section describes the procedures of storing the music file in the miniSD memory card and replaying it by using the software (available on the market) and the supplied data link software. the following items are required to replay the music:
 - miniSD memory card
If you have no miniSD memory card, you can purchase it at electric appliance stores. For the information and usage precautions of the miniSD memory card, refer to "Before using the miniSD memory card" ◀P328
Unformatted miniSD memory cards must be formatted with FOMA terminal before using. ◀P337
 - FOMA USB cable (optional)
It is necessary in case of connecting FOMA terminal and a PC using *miniSD mode* (the operating system supporting *miniSD mode* are Windows XP and Windows 2000 only). It is not required in case miniSD memory card can be used on a PC.
 - FOMA D Series Data Link Software
It is contained in the attached CD-ROM. Install in a PC. For the details, refer to "About the data link software". ◀P471
 - Software (available on the market) that can convert the music in CD etc. into the AAC format
Install in PCs. For the details of the usage of the software, confirm on the web pages of each provider of the software.

- The music data protected by the copyright law cannot be replayed on FOMA terminal.
- When downloading sound data via Internet websites, etc., confirm usage conditions (license or prohibited act, etc.) before use.
- Tunes saved in the miniSD memory card are for personal use only. You must not infringe on intellectual property rights of a third party such as the copyright and other rights.
- Tunes saved in the miniSD memory card must not be reproduced or moved into other media such as PCs.
- Please note that DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for coping with the cases of handling with CCCD(Copy Control CD) or where sound data cannot be converted to AAC format.
- Music files stored in the miniSD memory card are replayed as video/i-motion on FOMA terminal.

1 Convert CD music, etc. you got into AAC format using the software (available on the market) and store in a PC.

- The extensions of files that can be stored in the data link software as video/i-motion are “mp4”, “m4a” and “3gp” (however, “m4a” changes to “mp4” after being stored in the data link software).

2 Insert the miniSD memory card in FOMA terminal.




- If the miniSD memory card can be used in a PC, insert the miniSD memory card into a PC or reader/writer etc. and execute the following operations of Step 4 to 11.

3 Switch *USB Mode Setting to miniSD mode* on FOMA terminal and connect a PC and FOMA terminal using FOMA USB cable. ◀P412

4 Activate the data link software and click (Multimedia data).

The Multimedia data screen appears.

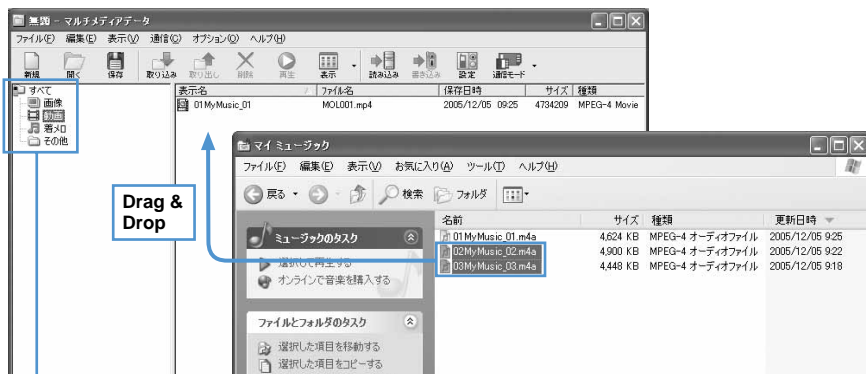
5 Make the setting of the data link software.

- ① Click  in  on the tool bar and select **メモリーカードリーダー/ライターを使用** (use memory card reader/writer).
- ② Click  on the tool bar and set **機種設定** (model setting) to **D70i**.

6 Select 動画 (video) from the folder list and drag & drop the music file stored in Step 1 to the video file list of the data link software.


File name is converted and the music file is stored in the data link software.

- File name is converted to “MOLzzz.mp4” (A hexadecimal value 001 to FFF in “zzz”).
- In case that characters that cannot be registered are included in the display name or file name, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to change into the name that can be registered. Click [OK].



Folder list

7 Confirm the converted file name and click [OK].

8 Select the music file and click  on the tool bar.

- Multiple music files can be selected.

9 Confirm the contents of a confirmation screen and click [OK].

10 Select the drive in the miniSD memory card and click [OK].

The music file is stored in the miniSD memory card. A confirmation screen appears when completed.

- The miniSD memory card is recognized as a removable disk.
- It may take some time to store depending on the number of files to store.
- The music file is stored in the “PRL001” folder within the “SD_VIDEO” folder as video/i-motion. In case video/i-motion is already stored, the smallest number available is assigned for the file name automatically.

11 Confirm the contents and click [OK].

12 Remove the FOMA USB cable after removing the hardware on a PC.






- Switch *USB Mode Setting* to *Communication mode* on FOMA terminal.

INFORMATION



Some stored music files may not be displayed on the miniSD memory card. In such a case, update the miniSD memory card information or store again using the data link software. However, keep it in mind when updating the miniSD memory card information, the display name of the music file is changed to the title or file name (MOLzzz (A hexadecimal value 001 to FFF in “zzz”)).

Playing the music file in the miniSD memory card on FOMA terminal


The music file saved in the miniSD memory card is replayed as video/i-motion. Operate with the miniSD memory card inserted in FOMA terminal.

1 Press     .

2 Select the folder (PRL001) in which the music file is saved and select a music file to replay.

- For operation while replaying, see Step 4 in “Playing video/i-motion”. ◀P318
- Press   in the data list within the folder to replay the music file in the folder continuously. After replaying the last music file, replay returns to the first music file. The operation during continuous replay ▶“Continuously playing video/i-motion” in P336

INFORMATION

While playing video/i-motion, if other functions such as incoming call/mail and schedule alarm are activated, play is paused. If you end the other functions and press , a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to replay from the interrupted position. If you select *Yes*, video/i-motion is played from the interrupted position and if you select *No*, video/i-motion is played from the beginning.

In case of playing per music, replaying is temporarily stopped when closing FOMA terminal.

Troubleshooting

- Check if updating software is required first and perform Software Update if necessary. ➤P485

Power supply and charging

FOMA terminal cannot be turned on (the terminal cannot be used).

- Is the battery pack connected properly? ➤P42
- Is the battery depleted? ➤P46
- When the mova terminal is on when using Dual Network Service, the FOMA terminal service is not available. Check whether or not FOMA terminal is on. For details, see "Network Services User's Guide".

FOMA terminal cannot be charged.

- Is the battery pack connected properly? ➤P42
- Is the charger terminal dirty? Clean the terminal with dry cotton swab, etc.
- Is the AC adapter (optional) connector securely inserted to the FOMA terminal's jack or the desktop holder (optional) connection terminal? ➤P44
- Is FOMA terminal correctly mounted on the desktop holder (optional)? ➤P45

The charging light flashes in red during charging.

- End any calls or communications immediately. Disconnect the optional AC adapter (Desktop holder) or DC adapter from FOMA terminal. Then connect all the devices correctly and start over. ➤P44, P45
- If the problem still persists, contact "Repairs" listed on the back of this manual.

The icon on the top of the display flashes and a rapid beep alarm is heard.

- The battery is almost discharged. Charge the battery. ➤P43

Phone

"Please wait." is displayed and does not go out.



- The line is congested. Wait and dial again. The message can be deleted by pressing a dial key.
- You can call the number 110, 119 and 118. However the call may not be connected depending on the status.

Calls cannot be made using the dial keys.

- Have you set All Lock? ➤P141
- Have you set Remote Lock? ➤P141
- Have you set Keypad Dial Lock? ➤P145
- Have you set Self Mode? ➤P143
- Have you set Lock on Close? ➤P148

国外 (outside service area) is indicated on the display and you hear busy signals.

- Are you outside the service area or in an area with poor signal strength? ➤P47

After dialing a number, you hear busy signals and cannot establish your call.

- Have you dialed the area code? ➤P52
- Did you hear the dial tone before entering a phone number?
- Is 国外 indicated? ➤P47

The ring alert does not sound.

- Is Ring volume set to *Silent*? ➤P68
- Is the following function set?
 - Reject/Accept Call ➤P149
 - Anonymous Caller ➤P150
 - Mute Seconds Setting ➤P151
 - Reject non-Reg. Caller ➤P152
- Have you set Silent Mode? ➤P119
- Have you set Driving Mode? ➤P73
- Have you set All Lock? ➤P141
- Have you set Self Mode? ➤P143
- Is the ringing time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service set to *0 sec*? ➤P399, P402

An incoming voice call cannot be responded with the Any Key Answer function.

- Is Any Key Answer set to *OFF*? ➤P65

During a voice call, the other party's voice is hard to listen or too loud.

- Has the volume setting been changed? Adjust it appropriately. ➤P68

The redial data/received call history is erased unexpectedly.

- Is Keypad Dial Lock set on? ➤P145
- Is PIM Lock set on? ➤P144

When there is an incoming call, a ring alert not set sounds.

- Ring tones set in multiple functions sound depending on the priority levels given below:
 - ① Settings of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ② Group Setting in the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ③ Sound Setting, Incoming Call Setting or Video-phone Receiving Setting
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ➤P145

When there is an incoming call, an image not set appears.

- When video/i-i-motion containing sound and image is set as ring tone for Incoming Call Setting, the set video/i-motion is used as the image.
- When call images are set in multiple functions, the image appears depending on the priority levels given below:
 - ① Settings of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ② Group Setting in the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ③ Incoming Call Setting or Video-phone Receiving Setting
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ➤P145

When there is an incoming call, the call indicator operates in a lighting pattern and lighting color not set.

- If a lighting pattern or lighting color is set for multiple functions, the call indicator operates depending on the priority levels given below:
 - ① Settings of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ② Group Setting in the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ③ Alert Lighting Setting/Incoming Call Setting or Video-phone Receiving Setting
- Is Privacy Mode activated? P145

Settings and operations

Key icon is displayed instead of menu icon and icon cannot be selected.

In case some functions cannot be activated because of various lock functions or the UIM not inserted, is displayed and some icons cannot be selected.

The Keypad sound is not generated.

- Is Keypad Sound set to *OFF*? P117
- Have you activated Silent Mode? P119

A message *Insert UIM* is displayed when FOMA terminal is powered on.

The UIM may not be properly attached or may be damaged. Check to see if the UIM is properly attached. P39

Terminal security code entry screen appears whenever FOMA terminal is opened.

Lock on close is set. Cancel it. P148

Card not recognized appears on the display.

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. P39

All locked appears on the display.

All Lock is set. Cancel All Lock. P141

Remote locked is displayed and cannot operate the terminal.

Remote Lock is set. Cancel Remote Lock. P141

Nothing is indicated on the display.

Is *Turn light on* in Display Light Setting set to other than *Always*? Screen display disappears after about 5 minutes have elapsed without any operation. P128
Display reappears by any key operation.

is indicated on the display.

The side keys cannot be used because Side Key Lock is set. Cancel Key Lock. P147

Pressing side keys has no effect when FOMA terminal is closed.

The side keys cannot be used because Side Key Lock is set. Cancel Key Lock. P147

appears on the display and cannot operate the terminal.

Lock on close is set. Cancel it. P148

The date appears in Japanese.

- Is Select Language set to 日本語 (Japanese)? P48
- Is the day for Clock Display Format set to *Japanese*? P134

The display is dim.

Is the brightness in Display Light Setting set to *Low*? P128

The lighting for the display and dial keys does not go ON.

Is lighting method in Display Light Setting set to *Turn light OFF*? P128

When Auto Power ON is set, FOMA terminal cannot be turned on at the specified time.

If the power is turned off in a manner other than the power-off operation or Auto Power OFF function (battery pack came off, for example), these functions are not activated.

Even if Alarm Clock or schedule alarm is set, the alarm does not operate at the specified date and time when the power is turned OFF.

- If the power is turned off in a manner other than the power-off operation or Auto Power OFF function (battery pack came off, for example), this function is not activated.
- Set Alarm Auto Power ON to *ON*. P367

Call cost has not been charged.

The total cost for the UIM may exceed the limit (approx. 16,770,000 yen).
You can reset to 0 yen. P384

Mail and data

Still images and video taken with the camera are blurred.

When shooting an object nearby, switch the macro mode switch to (macro) P168

Downloaded data, file attached to mail, or Message R/F cannot be displayed or played.

Because of the UIM operation restriction function, these functions are not available when the UIM is replaced or no UIM is inserted. P41

Mail reception is announced by other ring alert than that set for incoming mail.



- When the mail ring alert is set for multiple functions, the ring tone sounds depending on the priority levels given below:
 - ① Settings of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ② Group Setting in the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ③ Sound Setting/Incoming Msg. Setting
- When multiple mails are received at the same time, the mail ring alert sounds depending on the conditions set for the last mail received.
- Has the mail address of the mail sender correctly recorded in the phonebook and the mail ring alert been set?
- Is Privacy Mode activated? P145



Names are not displayed or ring tone does not sound at the time of mail reception even though they have been registered in the phonebook.

- The number or mail address of the other party does not match that registered in the phonebook. Register correct phone numbers and mail address in the phonebook. ➤P95
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ➤P145

When mail is received, the call indicator operates in other lighting pattern and lighting color than those set for incoming mail.

- When the incoming mail lighting pattern and color are set for multiple functions, the call indicator operates depending on the priority levels given below:
 - ① Settings of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ② Group Setting in the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ③ Alert Lighting Setting/Incoming Msg. Setting
- When multiple mails are received at the same time, the call indicator lights or flashes in the incoming mail lighting pattern and the color depending on the conditions set for the last mail received.
- Has the mail address of the mail sender correctly recorded in the phonebook and the incoming mail lighting pattern or the incoming mail lighting color been set?
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ➤P145

The image and video is displayed as  and .

If the data has been destroyed, it cannot be correctly displayed and  or  appears.

The screen reacts slowly when a key is pressed.

While transferring large-size data between FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card, reactions on the FOMA terminal screen may have a delay.

Example of Error messages

Error Message

Main error messages displayed on FOMA terminal are shown in the alphabetical order as follows:

- The “(number)” or “XXX” in error messages is a code used to distinguish the error sent from i-mode Center.

Address is not valid. (451)

Failed to transmit the i-mode Mail or SMS messages. Make sure that the address is correct.

Attached file space is not available.

Exceeds the maximum number of files attachable to one mail.

Authentication interrupted.

Displayed when you stop authentication in the basic authentication screen.

Authentication type is not supported. (401)

The authentication type is not supported and connection to the specified i-mode or internet web site is disabled.

Cannot execute because of other tasks.

Stop all other functions running before updating the definition file.

Card error.

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. Check that UIM is inserted correctly. ➤P39

Certificate is rejected. (tampered)

The site certificate is altered. Connection is suspended.

Chat mail data damaged. Restore default settings?

The data of chat mail contains error. Select *Yes* to return to the default setting. Select *No* to quit chat mail without returning to the default setting.

Check address.

Failed to transmit SMS. Make sure that the address is correct.

Check address.

The mail address in the mail group contains error or no mail address is entered. Check the mail address.

Check SMS center setting.

SMS setting at *SMSC* is incorrect. Check the setting. ➤P276

Connection failed.

Failed to connect to the i-mode Center. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

Connection failed. (403)

Connection to the specified i-mode or Internet web site was rejected.

Connection failed. (562)

Failed to connect to the i-mode Center. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

Connection interrupted.

Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry. If the error persists, try again later.

Contains bad data.

i- ppli cannot be started from invalid data read with Bar Code Reader.

Content length exceeds replayable size for i-motion

Reception was suspended because the data size exceeds 500 Kbytes while downloading i-motion data.

Could not check new messages.

Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry. If the error persists, try again later.

Data damaged. Restore default settings?

The data of the mail contains error. Select *Yes* to return to the default setting. Mail cannot be started without restoring the default setting.

Data or miniSD card damaged.

The miniSD memory card cannot be accessed because it has a problem. Initialize the miniSD memory card or insert a new miniSD memory card.
 • P337, P331

Date and time not set. Unable to start.

Activating i- ppliDX requires the date and time setting. Set the date and time correctly before start.
 • P48

Dial callout restricted.

This prohibited operation is unavailable in Keypad Dial Lock on.

Download failed.

Communication was interrupted during reception. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

Error in image.**Does not work correctly.**

It does not operate correctly because an error occurs during playing Flash movie on Site.

Error occurred. Unable to save.

Cannot be saved because an error occurred during saving attachment.

Exceeded number of maximum characters. Failed to quote partly.

SMS message exceeded 70 characters (160 characters for the font type of English) for reply, so some characters cannot be quoted.

Failed to clear call cost information.

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. • P39

Failed to connect.

Because the receiver sets Caller ID Request Service on for outgoing video-phone, connection is unavailable.
 Please call back after setting to send your caller ID.

Failed to copy.

- When copying selected items or all items of Data Box, all data cannot be copied.
- An attempt has been made to copy PIM data in an uncopyable format.

Failed to move.

When moving selected items or all items of the data, all data cannot be moved.

Failed to obtain channel information.

Failed to connect to i-mode Center. Please move to another location with better radio condition and retry.

Failed to read call cost information.

The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. • P39

Failed to restore.

An attempt was made to restore data in unrestorable format.

Failed to save.

Cannot be saved because the still image above 10,000 byte to be saved contains an error.

Failed to view message data.

- When deleting received mail, unsent mail or folder, the mail data to be deleted cannot be referenced. Retry later.
- Mail data cannot be referenced in chat mail. Retry later.

Folder is full.

Unable to receive i-mode Mail and Message R/F because the memory space for the Inbox and Message R/F is insufficient. Please read unread i-mode Mail and Message R/F, release protection of i-mode Mail and Message R/F or delete unnecessary i-mode Mail and Message R/F.

i- ppli stand-by display terminated due to security error.

i- ppli standby display has exited because an attempt was made to perform unpermitted operation.

i-mode Mail service is busy. Please try again later.(555)

The i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later.

Inbox full. Unable to retrieve new messages.

Unable to receive all SMS messages because there is insufficient storage space in the Inbox of FOMA terminal or the UIM. Please read unread mail, release mail protection or delete unnecessary mail and execute Check SMS again.

Inbox full. Unable to retrieve new messages.

Unable to receive SMS because there is insufficient storage space in the Inbox of FOMA terminal or the UIM. Please read unread mail, release mail protection or delete unnecessary mail.

Inbox is full.

Unable to receive i-mode Mail because there is insufficient memory space in the Inbox. Please read unread i-mode Mail, release i-mode Mail protection or delete unnecessary i-mode Mail.

Incoming message data damaged. Restore default settings?

The received data of chat mail contains error. Select *Yes* to return to the default setting. Select *No* to quit chat mail without returning to the default setting.

Infrared Connection interrupted.

An error occurred during infrared communication. During infrared communications, do not move FOMA terminal pointed at the other party's infrared data port before data sending and receiving is complete.
 • P345

Infrared Failed to connect via authentication.

Sending all data was failed because the authentication password is not correct. Enter the same authentication password between sender and receiver. • P347, P348

Infrared No response. Initiate data exchange?

After entering into the infrared communication state, 5 or more seconds have elapsed with no other terminals for communications found. Point FOMA terminal at the other terminal's infrared data port with a distance of 20 cm or less and select **Yes**. ◀P345

Infrared No UIM. Unable to start requested software.

Because no UIM is inserted, the specified i- ppli cannot be started even when i- ppli To is set in the data received by infrared communications.

Input error (205)

Input data for i-mode or Internet web site contains error. Check the input data for errors.

Insufficient memory.

Operation is interrupted due to insufficient memory.

Invalid data.

The downloaded Deco-mail template or still image above 10,000 byte is invalid.

Invalid data (XXX)

- The specified i-mode or Internet web site does not support i-mode.
- The URL may be incorrect. Make sure that the URL is correct.
- Unable to display because there is an error in the received data.

Invalid data. Connection cannot be established. (400)

Cannot be connected because of the error in i-mode or Internet web site. The URL may be incorrect. Make sure that the URL is correct.

Invalid data. Unable to save.

Data received through infrared communications cannot be saved because it is in a format incompatible with FOMA terminal.

Invalid information. Unable to play.

A play was impossible because attached data of melodies or video/i-motion is incorrect.

Invalid UIM, requested service not available.

You tried to display/play back data downloaded from i-mode or Internet web site or saved from attachments of a mail or Message R/F using a UIM different from the one you were using when you stored the data. Insert the same UIM as used when those data were downloaded to use it.

Invalid UIM, requested software can't start.

The i- ppli to be used together with the UIM used when downloading it from a site, etc. cannot be started. Insert the same UIM as used when the software was downloaded to use it.

Invalid URL

The entered URL contains error. Check the URL.

Mail address not recorded.

The mail address is not saved in the selected mail group. Save the mail address in the mail group. ▶P262

Mails could not be sent to following address.(561)

Sending i-mode Mail is failed for some receivers. Pressing (Ⓜ) displays the receiver that the transmission failed. Check to see if the address of the receiver is correct and retry transmission at another location with good radio wave condition.

Memory in My Picture/Other Images/Movie/Melody folder full./Number of saved data reached limit in PIM folder.

Copying/moving selected items, copying/moving all items, back up and Sync Data Info is unavailable because the number of saved items in folders of the miniSD memory card is full. Delete unnecessary data. ▶P336, P337

Memory is full. Unable to save.

FOMA terminal or UIM does not have enough memory space and the i-mode Mail or SMS cannot be saved. Move SMS to UIM or FOMA terminal or delete i-mode Mail.

Memory shortage Return to Main Menu.

Operation is interrupted due to insufficient memory. The main menu reappears.

Message kept in center.

SMS messages have already been sent.

Message rejected by recipient.

SMS is rejected by the SMS Center.

Message rejected by recipient.

Transmitting SMS is rejected.

miniSD card damaged. Saving to phone memory.

When *miniSD* has been specified as the destination for saving still images or videos recorded with the camera but the miniSD memory card cannot be accessed, the destination automatically switched to *Phone*.

miniSD card full.

When the miniSD memory card becomes full with *miniSD* set as the destination in Still Image Setting or Recording Setting for the camera, the destination is automatically switched to *Phone*.

miniSD card memory full.

Copying/moving selected items, copying/moving all items, back-up of data and update of information is not allowed because the memory in the miniSD memory card is full. Delete unnecessary data. ▶P336, P337

Name too long. Saved with incomplete name.

When registering an item selected from the display of a site, etc. to the phonebook, the number of characters has exceeded the specified value. Pressing (Ⓜ) causes the phonebook registration screen to be displayed, with characters exceeding the limit deleted for each item.

No applicable data.

Entered number is not saved in the phonebook. Register it in the phonebook.

No content is available. (204)

Could not find data at the specified site.

No miniSD card found.

Unless a miniSD memory card is inserted to FOMA terminal, still images or videos recorded with the camera cannot be saved in the miniSD memory card or data saved in FOMA terminal cannot be copied or moved to it. Insert the miniSD memory card before saving or copying/moving data. ◀P331

No Requested File (492)

The specified file could not be found during download of a still image above 10,000 bytes.

No requested software.

The i- ppli specified by the site, mail and external equipment is not stored in your FOMA terminal.

No response (408)

Unable to receive a response from i-mode or Internet web site within the specified time. Retry later.

No UIM, requested software can't start.

The i- ppli to be used together with the UIM used when downloading it from a site, etc. cannot be started. Insert the same UIM as used when the software was downloaded to use it.

Now calling. Unable to record movie.

When using the camera during a call, it cannot be switched to video shooting and voice recording. End the call before switching to video shooting and voice recording.

Number of characters exceeds limit.

i-mode Mail message exceeded 10,000 one-byte (5,000 two-byte) characters for reply. Please send after decreasing some characters.

Out of service area.

Unable to execute because the terminal is in a place where radio waves do not reach or out of the service area.

Outgoing message data damaged. Restore default settings?

The send data of chat mail contains error. Select *Yes* to return to the default setting. Select *No* to quit chat mail without returning to the default setting.

Page is not found. (404)

Unable to find i-mode or Internet web site. Make sure that the URL is correct.

Password is not correct. (401)

The user name or password entered in the basic authentication screen of i-mode or Internet web site is incorrect. Please try again.

PIM lock.

This prohibited operation is unavailable in PIM Lock on.

Please set the clock to obtain data.

Unable to receive because the date and time are not set. Please set the date and time correctly. ◀P48

Please wait.

- The line is congested. Please try again later.
- Use of i-mode is restricted. Retry later.

PUK blocked.

Inquire at DoCoMo Shops.

Receiving data exceeds replayable size for i-motion

Reception was suspended because the data size exceeded 500 Kbytes while downloading i-motion data or when playback was performed while downloading data.

Receiving messages stopped. Some messages unreceived.

Unable to receive all SMS messages because an error occurred during reception. Please move to another location with good radio reception and execute Check SMS again. ◀P276

Registration is in progress. (554)

User registration with i-mode is in process. Please try again later.

Remotely Controllable Services Denied.

Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service that you tried to control remotely has not subscribed yet. It is required to subscribe to Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.

Replay period has not yet started.

Unable to play because of the term prior to the playback period specified for i-motion. Please try again after the playback period has started. ◀P319

Requested software unavailable.

The i- ppli cannot be started because of an error in i- ppli. Starting specified i- ppli by i- ppli To function from a site, mail or an external device is disabled if there is a problem in i- ppli operation settings or start-up conditions.

Root certificate has expired. Do you connect?

The term of validity of the certificate in FOMA terminal is premature or overdue. To connect, select *Yes*; to stop, select *No*.

Root certificate is not valid.

The certificate in FOMA terminal is off. To establish a connection, change the setting. ◀P207

Save unsaved data to phone memory or delete.

Infrared communications cannot end, leaving data saved in INBOX for infrared communications. Save the data in Inbox into FOMA terminal or delete it. ◀P349

Self Mode activated.

This prohibited operation is unavailable during Self Mode.

Service is not registered.

- Unable to run because you are not an i-mode subscriber. Apply to use the i-mode service.
- If you have subscribed to i-mode after purchasing FOMA terminal, once turn FOMA terminal power off and then turn on.


Service unavailable.

SMS is not available.

Signature space is not available.

- When i-mode Mail with a message and a signature includes more than 10,000 one-byte (5,000 two-byte) characters, the signature cannot be attached. Send by reducing the number of characters of the message or without attaching a signature.
- The signature cannot be attached when *English* is set for *Font type* in SMS Setting. Change *Font type* to *Japanese*. ➤P276

Size of this page is not supported.

- Reception has stopped because i-mode or internet web site size was larger than the limit size. Press  to display the data already received normally.
- Reception was interrupted because the data size exceeds maximum size while downloading Deco-mail template or a still image above 10,000 bytes.

Software terminated due to security error.

- i- ppli has exited because an attempt was made to perform unpermitted operation.

Software updated.

- The i- ppli cannot be upgraded because it has already been upgraded to the latest version.

SSL session cannot be established.

- Communication was interrupted due to an SSL communication error or an error on the server concerning the client authentication.

SSL session failed.

- A problem was detected with the authentication process during SSL communication. Connection is suspended.

SSL session was terminated.

- Some problem is detected with the site certificate during SSL communication. The message is displayed when you select *No* in the connection confirmation screen and SSL communication is disconnected.

Terminal memory full.

- Copying/moving selected items, copying/moving all items and restoration of data is unavailable because the number of saved items in FOMA terminal is full. Delete corresponding unnecessary data.

The data cannot be saved. Download?

- This i-motion file cannot be saved. Select *Yes* to download; select *No* not to download.

The data may not be replayed.

- Video/i-motion file format not supported by FOMA terminal. They may not be played in some cases.

This certificate has expired. Do you connect?

- CN name (server name) of the site certificate does not match the actual server name. To connect, select *Yes*; to stop, select *No*. ➤P207

This certificate has expired. Do you connect?

- The term of validity of the site certificate is premature or overdue. ➤P207 Select *Yes* to connect or *No* not to connect. This message may be displayed when the date and time have not been set or are incorrect. Set the time and date correctly. ➤P48

This i-motion type is not supported

- Replay could not be performed because of the streaming type i-motion.

This site is not certified. Do you connect?

- The site certificate is not supported by FOMA terminal. Select *Yes* to connect or *No* not to connect.

This software contains an error.

- Unable to download because the i- ppli data contains an error.

This software contains an error. Unable to download.

- Unable to download because the i- ppli data contains an error.

This software is not supported by this phone.

- The i- ppli cannot be downloaded because it is not compatible with FOMA terminal.

This software is presently out of use.

- Using the i- ppli is stopped by IP (Information service provider).

This UIM cannot be recognized.

- The UIM is not correctly installed or the card is faulty. Check if the UIM is installed correctly. ➤P39

Time out

- The i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later.

Too much data was entered.

- Unable to transmit data because too many characters were entered in the entry field of i-mode or Internet web site. Please reduce the number of characters and retry transmission.

Transmission failed.

- Failed to transmit the i-mode Mail or SMS. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry transmission.

Transmission failed. (552)

- Failed to transmit the i-mode Mail or SMS due to the error of i-mode Center or the SMS Center. Please try to send again later.

UIM full.

- UIM does not have enough storage space and SMS cannot be saved. Delete SMS from the UIM or move to FOMA terminal. ➤P279, P278

UIM not inserted. Requested service unavailable.

- The UIM is not inserted. Please use your FOMA terminal after inserting the UIM. ➤P39

Unable to call.

- A voice/video-phone call cannot be made during voice/video-phone calls or 64K data communication.

Unable to change stand-by telop setting now.

- Setting cannot be changed because i-channel service is canceled or automatic update is deactivated. Subscribe to i-channel service and receive the information or resume automatic update before setting.

Unable to display data.

- Display failed because an error occurred in mail template.

Unable to display image.

Unable to display because original file for the image to be attached cannot be found or the image contains error. Check the image.

Unable to display message.

Unable to display because there is an error in the received/sent mail.

Unable to display version info.

The definition file version cannot be confirmed. Update the definition file again. ➡P490

Unable to download. Data exceeds maximum size (452)

Reception is disabled because i-mode or Internet web site size is too large.

Unable to enter any more.

The number of characters exceeds the maximum limit. Reduce the number of characters.

Unable to move specified page.

When an i-motion ticker contains a link to a site (Web To), etc., in case the URL contains more than 256 characters or downloading was interrupted, the linked page cannot be displayed.

Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error.

Cannot obtain because the replay restriction data is incorrect.

Unable to play.

Melody or i-motion data cannot be played.

Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)

The i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later.

Unable to save specified image.

The image cannot be saved because the image in the site, screen memo or Message R/F contains error.

Unable to save.

Cannot be saved because the data to be saved as a mail template contained an error.

Unable to start.

i-channel cannot be activated while mail / Message R/F is being received or mail is being sent. Retry after sending/receiving.

Unable to update pattern definitions.

Updating the definition file has failed. Stop all other functions currently running and retry the update in a place with strong radio wave signals.

Unable to use data type.

Data in a file format incompatible with FOMA terminal cannot be copied or moved from a miniSD memory card to FOMA terminal or searched for.

Unable to view file. Access to URL is limited. (491)

The specified access count was exceeded while downloading a still image above 10,000 bytes.

Unsent message data damaged. Restore default settings?

The unsent data of chat mail contains error. Select *Yes* to return to the default setting. Select *No* to quit chat mail without returning to the default setting.

Unsupported Content.

A code containing contents not compatible with FOMA terminal cannot be read with Bar Code Reader.

URL address changed. (301)

URL of i-mode or Internet web site was changed. Check the correct URL.

URL is too long to register.

Unable to register as a bookmark or a screen memo because the URL is too long.

You have no certificate. Do you connect?

The user certificate has not been downloaded. To continue the connection, select *Yes*; to stop, select *No*.

Your certificate has expired. Do you connect?

The user certificate has expired. To continue the connection, select *Yes*; to stop, select *No*. ➡P207

Warranty and After-Sales Service

Warranty

- A written warranty is provided with every FOMA terminal; make sure that you receive it. Store the warranty in a safe place when you have read it and checked that it contains the “shop name/date” you purchased it. If it does not contain the necessary information, contact the shop where you bought it. The warranty is valid for a period of one year from the date of purchase.
- This product and all accessories are subject to change, in part or whole, for the sake of improvement without prior notice.
- Data registered in the phonebook, etc. may be lost or become corrupted due to failure, repair or other handlings of FOMA terminal. It is recommended that you make a note of the data in the phonebook, etc. If you have a PC (Window 98 Second Edition, Windows Me, Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP Professional, Windows XP Home Edition), you can use the specified data link software to transfer and store the data registered in the phonebook, etc. on a PC. When your FOMA terminal is repaired and so on, downloaded information via i-mode or i- ppli (except some data) are not forwarded to a new FOMA terminal according to the copyright laws.

After-Sales Service

When problems occur

Before requesting service, read the section “Troubleshooting”. ➡P475

If the problem still persists, contact “Repairs” on the back of this manual.

If the result of inquiries indicates that a repair is required

Take your FOMA terminal to a repair office designated by DoCoMo. Be sure to check the opening hours of the repair office before you go. Note that you must present the warranty.

In the warranty period

- The FOMA terminal will be repaired at no charge subject to the conditions of the warranty.
- The written warranty must be presented to receive warranty service. The subscriber will be charged for the repairs without presentation of the written warranty or repairs of defects resulting from misuse, accident or neglect even during the warranty period.
- The subscriber is charged even during the warranty period for the repair of failures caused by the use of devices or consumable items that are not DoCoMo-specified.

Repairs may not be possible in the following cases:

- Repair is not possible when corrosion due to exposure to moisture, condensation or perspiration is detected in a moisture seal reaction or test, or if any of the internal boards are damaged or deformed. Since these conditions are outside the scope of the warranty, a repair, if at all possible, will be charged.

After expiration of the warranty

- All repairs that are requested are charged.

Replacement parts

- FOMA terminal's replacement parts (parts required to maintain product function) will be kept in stock for at least 6 years after termination of production. The product can be repaired during this period. Depending on the nature of the required repair, it may still be possible to repair your phone even after this period. Contact the service center listed on the back of this manual.
- For details, see “List of service stations” attached.

Notes

- Do not modify the FOMA terminal or its accessories.
 - Fire, injury or damage may result.

- In order to prevent interference of radio waves or network breakdown, the FOMA terminal and UIM are manufactured according to technical standards stipulated by law. Do not use FOMA terminals or UIMs that do not meet these standards.
- If the FOMA is modified (part replacement, modification, painting, etc.) it will be repaired only after the modified parts have been restored to the condition at the time of purchase. However, repair may be refused depending on the nature of modification.
- Repair of failures or damage caused by modification are charged even during the warranty period.
- Do not remove any inscription stickers attached to your FOMA terminal.
The inscription stickers certify that the FOMA terminal satisfies specific technical standards. Note that if stickers are removed intentionally or are reattached in such a way that confirmation of the sticker's contents is impossible, repair or servicing may be refused because confirmation of whether or not the phone conforms to relevant technical standards cannot be made.
- The on/off function settings and the information of the total calls, etc. may be cleared (reset) by failure, repair or other handling processes. Should this happen, set up the functions again.
- Magnetic components are used in the earpiece and speaker of the FOMA terminal. Do not allow cash cards or other devices that are vulnerable to magnetism to come into contact with the phone.
- If your phone becomes wet or moist, turn the power off and remove the battery pack immediately and bring it to a repair office designated by DoCoMo as soon as possible. However, repair may not be possible depending on the condition of the phone.

Phonebook data or downloaded data

- Maintain a separate record of the data you register in your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo will not accept any liability and responsibility whatsoever for changes or loss of information.
- Data created, imported or downloaded by the subscriber may become corrupted or be lost when changing the model or repairing mobile phone. DoCoMo will not accept any responsibility for that. Also, DoCoMo may, at its option, repair a mobile phone by replacing it. In such an event, it will not be possible to transfer the data (except some data) to the new phone. Regarding this FOMA terminal, images and incoming melodies downloaded via i-mode official sites can be transferred when repairing the mobile phone (some contents cannot be transferred).

This function checks for the necessity for updating FOMA terminal software and downloads part of the software as required through packet communication*1 to make updates of the software.

When software update is required, the information will be posted in “お知らせ&ヘルプ (Notice & Help)” on the DoCoMo website or iMenu.

*1 Packet communication for software update is free of charge.

- Software may be updated in the following two methods:
 - Immediate update : Update on the spot as desired.
 - Advanced update : Reserve a day and time-slot for automatic update of the software in the specified day and time.
- Software cannot be updated in the following cases:
 - During All Lock
 - When the date and time are not set
 - When the battery is not fully charged
 - When PIN1 code is locked
 - When PIN1 code is being entered
 - The power is off
 - While talking
 - While using other functions
 - When UIM is not inserted
 - During packet communication connecting with a PC
 - When 圏外 is indicated
 - During PIM Lock
 - In Self Mode on
 - During Remote Lock
- At the time of updating software, the unique information of your mobile phone terminal (model or serial number, etc.) will be automatically sent to the server (or the server for updating software managed by DoCoMo). DoCoMo will not use the sent information for any other purpose than software update.

INFORMATION

If software has been already updated, when checking software update, a message is displayed indicating update is not necessary, so use as it is.

Software update is available even if the host selection setting is other than i-mode.

Software update (downloading or rewriting) may take time.

If software update is executed when *ON* is set for PIN1 Code On/Off, the PIN code entry screen will be displayed at the time of automatic reload after completion of software updating. You cannot make/receive calls and operate communication functions if the incorrect PIN1 code is entered.


Other functions are not available while software is being updated. Only incoming voice calls can be answered while downloading.


If *Movie ringtone* has been set as a ring tone, a melody sounds for an incoming call during download instead of Movie ringtone. If you set video/i-motion as an image, the first image is displayed.

Any incoming video-phone call cannot be answered during download. Unanswered calls are recorded as missed ones in the received call history.

Even if any alarm is set while software is being updated, the updating continues without activating the alarm.

For software update, SSL session is established to the server (our site). Enable SSL certificate in Certificate Setting. Configured as valid by default. ◀P207

Software update should be done with battery fully charged and enough battery power ().

It is recommended that software update be executed when good signal quality is obtained, 3 bars of the antenna icon () are displayed and the terminal is not being moved.

- If radio wave signals become weaker during software downloading or downloading has stopped, retry software update in a place with strong radio wave signals.

A displayed icon for the message stored at i-mode Center disappears after software update.

If Receive Option Setting is set to *ON* and mail arrives during software updating, the screen that notifies an arrival of mail in the i-mode Center may not appear after the software update being completed.

Never remove the battery pack while updating software. Update may fail.

Software update can be done while various data, such as phonebook data registered in FOMA terminal, camera images, downloaded data are retained; however, note that data protection sometimes cannot be secured according to the conditions of your FOMA terminal (such as malfunction, damage, or water leak). DoCoMo recommends to back up necessary data. (Note that some data such as downloaded data may not be backed up.)

When software update has failed, the message *Rewrite failed* appears and all the operations are unavailable. In such a case, please bring FOMA terminal to a repair office designated by DoCoMo.

Starting Software Update

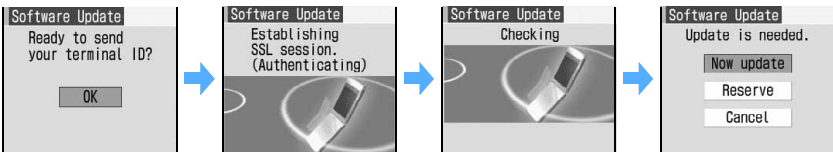
1 Press **Menu** **8** **9** **6** on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code, check notice and press **OK**.



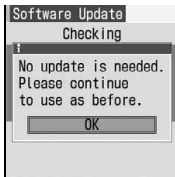
- The entered terminal security code (4 to 8 digits) is displayed as “ * ”.
- The terminal security code by default is set to “0000”.

3 Confirm whether software update is required by pressing **OK** twice.



- Pressing **OK** on the confirmation screen for sending terminal ID makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.

When updating is not necessary



If software updating has been found to be unnecessary as a result of checking for the necessity of updating, the screen as shown on the left is displayed. Press **OK** to use FOMA terminal as it is.

Updating software immediately

Immediate Update


- Immediate update may not be available when the server is busy.

1 Display the selection screen for the update procedure.

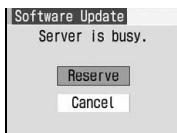
2 Select *Now update* and press .



Downloading is started and the call indicator flashes.


- Press  to cancel downloading. If downloading is canceled halfway, the data downloaded up to then is deleted.
- After starting downloading, updating process is executed without the operation of selecting the menu.

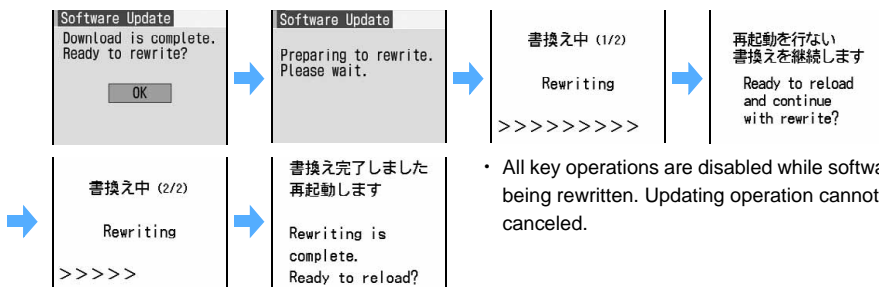
When the server is busy



- Select *Reserve* and reserve a date and time for update.

3 After completion of downloading, software is rewritten automatically.

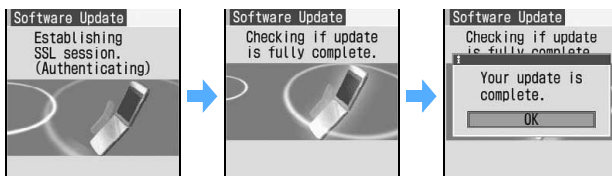
As downloading completes, software rewriting is automatically started. Rewriting is started by pressing  after downloading as well. During rewriting, the call indicator flashes.



- All key operations are disabled while software is being rewritten. Updating operation cannot be canceled.

4 Automatically reloaded after the completion of rewriting.

After reload, wait while connection is made again to the server.



5 Press .

Update is completed and the stand-by display appears.

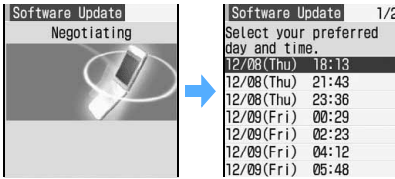
Updating software at pre-specified time

Reserved Update

When downloading takes time or the server is busy, you can choose to set the time to start software update in advance by communicating with the server.

1 Display the selection screen for the update procedure.

2 Select *Reserve*.



Inquire the option for preferred day and time by communicating with the server.

- Available date and time for reservation will be shown by the time of the server.

3 Select preferred day and time.

Selecting from the options displayed

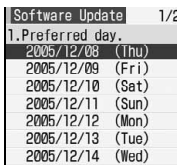
① Select preferred day and time and select *Yes*.



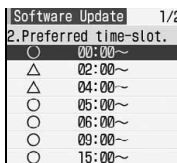
- If there are more than one option page for preferred day and time, press \leftarrow to switch to the next or previous page.

Selecting from other than options displayed

① Select *Others*.



② Select preferred day and time-slot.



Availability for reservation at each time-slot will be shown:

○ : available △ : barely available

- If there are more than one option page for preferred day, press \leftarrow to switch to the next or previous page.

③ Select preferred day and time-slot.

Connection is made to the server and the options close to preferred day and time-slot are displayed.


- If there are more than one option page for preferred time-slot, press \leftarrow to switch to the next or previous page.
- Press \square to display the description of the symbol on the left of time-slot.

④ Select preferred day and time and select *Yes*.

- If there are more than one option page for preferred day and time, press \leftarrow to switch to the next or previous page.

4 Press \downarrow .

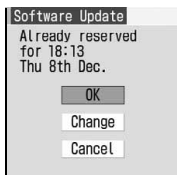
Reservation is completed and the menu is displayed.

-  is shown on the stand-by display when reservation is made.

Checking/changing/canceling reservation

1 Press on the stand-by display.

2 Enter the terminal security code and check the contents.



- Select **OK** to stop checking.

Changing reservation

① Select **Change** and press .

The option selection screen is displayed.

- Follow the procedure from Step 2 in “Updating software at pre-specified time”.
- Pressing on the confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.

Canceling reservation

① Select **Cancel** and select **Yes**.

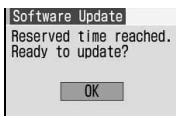
A confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID is displayed.

② Press twice.

The reservation is canceled and the menu is displayed.

- Pressing on the confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.

When the reserved time arrives



- When the reserved time arrives, the screen as shown on the left is displayed and updating software is started automatically. Before the reserved time, make sure that the battery is fully charged and the handset is in a location where radio waves reach and then show the standby display. When downloading is completed, rewriting software is automatically started, followed by reload.
- To cancel the software update, press and select **Yes**.

INFORMATION

Note that updating software may not be activated even though the reserved time arrives in case of using the other functions. In case the reserved time arrives while talking or receiving messages, updating software starts after finishing talking or receiving messages.

If software update is executed when **ON** is set for PIN1 Code On/Off, the PIN code entry screen will be displayed at the time of automatic reload after completion of software updating. You cannot make/receive calls and operate communication functions if the incorrect PIN1 code is entered.

If any alarm is set for the same time, the alarm takes precedence and the software update may not be started.

Protecting FOMA terminal from hazardous data

Virus Scan Function

Update pattern definition first to keep the pattern definition up-to-date.

For the data or program downloaded via a website or received mail, this function detects data that may cause troubles and then deletes it or inhibits activation of applications in order to protect FOMA terminal from viruses.

- Pattern definition used for checking needs to be upgraded, because it is updated whenever a new trouble is detected.
- Virus Scan Function is for preventing the data that cause some problem to mobile phone from invading when viewing websites or receiving mail. Please note that if pattern definition corresponding to specific troubles has not been downloaded to the mobile phone or such pattern definition does not exist, this function cannot prevent the trouble from happening.
- Pattern definition is different depending on the model of mobile phone. Please keep in mind that DoCoMo may stop distributing the pattern definition for the models that have been on the market for 3 years or more.
- When updating pattern definition, your private information concerning the mobile phone (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for the scan function managed by DoCoMo). DoCoMo does not use the sent information for purposes other than the scan function.

Setting scan function

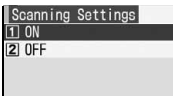
Scanning Setting

If Scanning Setting is set to *ON*, data or program is checked automatically when it is executed.

Default ON

1 Press **Menu** **8** **3** **7** **2** on the stand-by display.

2 Press **1** and select *Yes*.



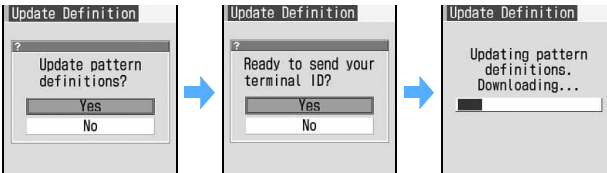
- When the virus scan function, when set, has detected data that may cause troubles, it displays a message in one of 5 warning levels. ●P491
- To cancel scan function, press **2** and select *Yes*.

Updating pattern definition

Update Definition

1 Press **Menu** **8** **3** **7** **1** on the stand-by display.

2 Select *Yes* twice to update the pattern definition.



3 Press **End Call**.

Update is completed.

- If pattern definition update has been found to be unnecessary as a result of checking for the necessity of updating, the message meaning that the pattern definition is up-to-date is displayed. Please use FOMA terminal as it is.

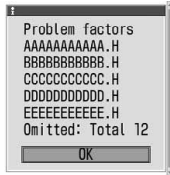
INFORMATION

Updating pattern definition is stopped with a voice call arrived. When there is a video-phone call or data is received using an external device or the infrared communication function, updating is not interrupted.

If the date/time set for an alarm or a schedule alarm is reached, the screen for notifying the date and time is displayed during updating pattern definition and the alarm sounds, but updating is continued.

Set the date of FOMA terminal correctly.

When displaying a list of detected problem elements



- ① **Select *Detail* while a warning message is being displayed.**
 The list of the name of problem elements detected by scan is displayed.
 - When 6 or more problem elements have been detected, the names of the 6th and subsequent problem elements are omitted and the total count of the detected problem elements is displayed.

Display of the scan result

Warning level	Message	Handling method
Warning Level 0		<i>OK</i> : Continues processing of the started application. <i>Detail</i> : Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Warning Level 1		<i>Yes</i> : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles. <i>No</i> : Continues processing of the started application. <i>Detail</i> : Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Warning Level 2		<i>OK</i> : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles. <i>Detail</i> : Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Warning Level 3		<i>Yes</i> : Deletes data that may cause troubles. <i>No</i> : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles. <i>Detail</i> : Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Warning Level 4		<i>OK</i> : Deletes data that may cause troubles. <i>Detail</i> : Lists names of the detected problem elements.

INFORMATION

In case some problem is detected through scan in the i- ppli set as the i- ppli stand-by display and activating i- ppli is stopped, the i- ppli stand-by display is canceled.

1 Press      on the stand-by display.



SAR certification information

This model phone FOMA D701i meets the MIC's*1 technical regulation for exposure to radio waves. The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and through evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)*2 averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP*3.

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone is 0.632 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC) and the test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO): <http://www.who.int/peh-emf/>

ICNIRP: <http://www.icnirp.de/>

MIC: <http://www.soumu.go.jp/english/index.html>

TELEC: http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/index_e.html

NTT DoCoMo: <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/product/> (Japanese only)

MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC: <http://www.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp/d701i/>

*1 Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications

*2 The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.

*3 International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

INDEX/Quick Reference Manual

INDEX.....	504
Quick Reference Manual	508

A

Add Address 222
 Added Service 407
 Adjust volume 68
 After-Sales Service 483
 Alarm Auto Power ON 367
 Alarm Clock 365
 Album 339
 Alert Lighting Setting 131
 All Lock 141
 Anonymous Caller 150
 Answer Machine 75
 Greeting Response Time 76
 Greeting Setting 77
 Play/delete messages 77
 Quick Record Message 75
 Any Key Answer 65
 Arrival Act Setting 406
 Arrival Call Act 406
 AT command 432
 Attachment
 Attaching 229
 Auto playing (Message Attachment) 264
 Changing/removing 231
 Deleting 246
 Display images 241
 Play melodies 244
 Receive setting (Incoming Msg. Attach.) 264
 Save images 241
 Save melodies 245
 Save still images 242
 Attach/remove battery pack 42
 Auto Answer 391
 Auto Assist Setting 59
 Auto Display 203
 Auto Power ON/OFF 364
 Automatic time correction 48
 AV Phone To (Phone to)

B

Bar Code Reader 172
 Battery Icon 131
 Battery Level 46
 Battery pack 42
 Bookmark 189
 Deleting 191
 Display sites by shortcut 191
 Displaying 190
 i-mode Shortcut 190
 Moving/copying 191
 Register from mail 257
 Register from site 189
 Rename folder 190
 Rename title 190
 Sort 192

C

Cache 185
 Calculator 387
 Calendar (Scheduler)
 Call Cost 384
 Call Cost Limit 386
 Checking 384
 Remove Call Cost Icon 386
 Reset Call Cost 385
 Call Duration 384

Checking 384
 Continuous call time 43
 Call Forwarding Service 401
 Call indicator 27
 Call Waiting Service 400
 Caller ID Notification 50
 Set for each call 57
 Caller ID Request Service 404
 Caller ID Setting 109
 Camera 156
 Auto timer 167
 Brightness 170
 Camera effect 170
 Color density 171
 Compact light 160
 Compose mail from image 161
 File 158
 Frame 169
 Image size 169
 Lens cover 157
 Macro 168
 Movie Camera 162
 Number of saved still images 158
 One-shot Message 171
 Quality 169
 Recording Setting 165
 Recording time of video 159
 Restore default setting 171
 Shooting screen 157
 Size restrictions 170
 Still Camera 160
 Still Image Setting 165
 Switch in-camera/out-camera 160
 Use from i- ppli 300
 Zoom 167
 Certificate Download 208
 Certificate operation 207
 Certificate Setting 207
 Character Encode 189
 Characters entry 442
 Change input modes 442
 Character assignments (Slot Input Method) 457
 Character assignments (5-touch Input Method) 456
 Copying 448
 Cutting 448
 Deleting 444
 Enter face marks 445
 Enter fixed phrases 445
 Enter pictograms 446
 Enter symbols 446
 Full-screen entry 442
 In-line entry 442
 Input Method Setting 450
 Input prediction function 445
 Kana/Kanji Conversion 443
 KUTEN Code Input 448
 Line feed 444
 Pasting 448
 Quote data 446
 Save Phrase 447
 Save Word 448
 Slot Input Method 449
 5-touch Input Method 443
 Charge Alert 118
 Charging 43
 Charging time 43

Chat Mail
 Broadcast address 270
 Chat Member Setting 267
 Composing 267
 Deleting 270
 Edit chat members 271
 Exiting 272
 Incoming Setting 272
 Receiving 269
 Sending 268
 Set personal information 271
 Check i-mode Message 239
 Setting 261
 Check Messages (Voice Mail) ... 399
 Check new message
 Check i-mode Message 239
 Check SMS 276
 Message Retrieval Setting 261
 Check No. of Items 111
 Check phone number 50
 Clock Display Format 134
 Close Setting 65
 Color Scheme 129
 Column Search 104
 Communication configuration file 413
 Compact light 27
 Confirm Settings 393
 Connection Timeout Setting 198
 Contact Image 126
 Copying 448
 Custom Menu 377
 Custom stand-by display 123
 Customize Silent Mode 119
 Customized Call 58
 Cutting 448

D

Data communication 410
 Communication configuration file 411
 Connecting 412
 Dialup network 423
 FOMA PC configuration software 411
 Glossary 411
 Setup work 411
 Data interchange with external device 471
 Data link software 471
 Date and Time Setting 48
 Date To function 389
 Deco-mail
 Composing 223
 Template 232
 Delete All Data 394
 Display 26
 Guide row 30
 Reading 29
 Task bar 30
 Display Address 251
 Display Color Setting 201
 Display Light Setting 128
 i- ppli 289
 Display Priority 266
 Display sites by shortcut 191
 DoCoMo for General Inquiries 406
 Driving Mode 73
 Dual Network Service 405

E

Earphone/microphone jack	27
Earphone/microphone set with switch	
Connecting	27
Use the set	389
Earpiece	26
Easy Selector Plus	26
Emotional lighting (Alert Lighting	
Setting)	131
English Guidance	405
English mode	48
Enter characters (Characters	
entry)	
Error Message	477
External connection terminal	27

F

Face marks	
Entering	445
List	457
FirstPass	209
Fixed phrases	
Entering	445
List	457
Registering	447
Flash function	185
Flat type earphone/microphone set	
with switch (Earphone/	
microphone set with switch)	
Focus Mode	38
FOMA card (UIM)	
FOMA PC configuration software	
.....	414
Font	133
Font Size	265
Forward Mail	240
Fwd-Party-Busy Setting	403

G

G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller	
.....	351
Group Search	102
Group Setting	100

H

Headset Quick Dial	391
Headset Switch	392
Host setting	
Certificate Host	210
ISP Connection Communication	
.....	199

I

i-channel	302
Channel List	304
Image	
Adjusting	315
Change brightness or tone	311
Change size	310
Clipping	310
Compose mail from image	307
Create animation	308
Cutting	314
Deleting	344
Display from mail	241
Displaying	306
Editing	309
Effects	312
Frames	312
Limit file size for saving	315
Moving/copying	339
Paste Text	314
Reversing/rotating	312

Save from mail	241
Save from site	194
Set as stand-by image	307
Settings	316
Shooting	160
Sorting	344
Stamps	313
View/Edit Detail Info	342
Image & Effect Setting	200
i-melody	195
iMenu	177
i-mode	176
i-mode Mail (Mail)	
i-mode password	136
Changing	187
i-mode Setting	198
i-mode Shortcut	
Bookmark	190
i- ppli	292
i-motion	210
Playing/saving	243
Setting	212
i-motion Mail	218
Playing/saving	243
Sending	229
i-motion (Data Box)	316
Deleting	344
Sorting	344
Use album	339
Inbox	246
In-camera	26
In-car Handsfree	61
Incoming Call Setting	69
Incoming Msg. Alert	203
Incoming Msg. Attach.	264
Incoming Msg. Image	127
Incoming Msg. Setting	266
Infrared communication	345
Data Transfer Setting	354
INBOX	349
Receiving	347
Remote control function	350
Sending	346
Use from i- ppli	300
Infrared Communication Mode	350
Input Method Setting	450
Input prediction function	445
International call	58
Internet Connection	188
i-shot	217
ISP Connection Communication	
.....	199
i- ppli	282
Auto Start	293
Auto Start Info Setting	293
Check number of items	299
Create/delete folders	297
Deleting	298
Detail Info	287
Downloading	284
i- ppli Shortcut	292
i- ppli To	294
Light setting	289
Moving	299
One-touch Button	292
Pre-installed i- ppli	289
Protecting	297
Quitting	286
Security Error History	287
Settings	287
Software in Folder	299
Software Info Display	285
Software Information	299
Sorting	299
Start Failure History	294
Starting	286

Trace information	287
Upgrade	296
Use Bar Code Reader	300
Use Camera	300
Use infrared communication	
.....	300
Vibrator setting	289
i- ppli DX	282
i- ppli Shortcut	292
i- ppli Stand-by Display	
Abnormal Exit History	296
Operation	295
Setting	122

K

Kana/Kanji Conversion	443
Keypad Dial Lock	145
Keypad Sound	117
KUTEN code	
Entering	448
List	462

L

Light setting (Display Light	
Setting)	
Lock on Close	148
Low Battery Alert	47

M

Mail	214
Add Address	222
Attach images	229
Attachment	229
Auto Receive	236
Check i-mode Message	239
Check number of items	251
Compose from phonebook	101
Compose from schedule	374
Compose Message	221
Copy text	256
Copying	252
Create/delete folders	250
Deco-mail	223
Delete Attachment	246
Deleting	254
Display Priority	266
Display Type	265
Display/Save Image	241
Editing	235
Folder list screen	247
Font Size	265
Forwarding	240
Inbox/Outbox	246
Insert signature	221
List screen	248
Mail List Setting	264
Make calls from mail	253
Moving	252
Msgs. in Folder	251
Play/Save Melody	244
Protecting	253
Quick Mail	235
Receiving	236
Register data in phonebook	257
Register URL in bookmark	257
Replying	239
Saving	234
Sorting	252
View screen	248
Mail address	214
Display Address	251
Mail Group	
Setting	262
Mail List Setting	264
Mail Menu	220
Mail Reply Format	263

Mail Setting (FOMA terminal).....	258
Mail Setting (i-mode Center).....	215
Mail templates.....	232
Mail To (Mail).....	256
Mail To (Site).....	196
Mail/Call Image Setting.....	126
Make calls (Phone).....	
Melody.....	326
Compose mail from melody.....	326
Deleting.....	344
List.....	115
Moving.....	339
Playing.....	326
Save from mail.....	245
Save from site.....	195
Set as ring tone.....	327
Settings.....	327
Sorting.....	344
Use album.....	339
View/Edit Detail Info.....	342
Member list.....	375
Menu.....	33
Change design.....	130
Describe function.....	36
List.....	452
Menu Setting.....	130
Submenu.....	37
Message i- ppli.....	283
Message Retrieval Setting.....	261
Message R/F.....	201
Auto Display.....	203
Check i-mode Message.....	239
Deleting.....	206
Display by Type.....	207
Display Priority.....	266
Displaying (Message R/Message F).....	204
Incoming Msg. Alert.....	203
Protecting.....	206
Receiving.....	201
Reloading images.....	205
Microphone.....	26
miniSD memory card.....	328
Back up.....	334
Check free space.....	332
Copying/moving.....	333
Display data.....	335
Folder structure.....	329
Format.....	337
Inserting/removing.....	331
Scan Card.....	338
Update information.....	338
miniSD memory card adapter.....	329
miniSD memory card slot.....	27
Missed Call Notice.....	400
Missed call.....	67
Movie Camera (Camera).....	
Multiaccess.....	360
Combination.....	466
Multi-address transmission.....	222
Multi Number.....	407
Multitask.....	362
Combination.....	468
Mute Seconds Setting.....	151
My Menu.....	187
My Picture.....	306
Deleting.....	344
Sorting.....	344
Use album.....	339

N

Name displays.....	94
Name Search.....	102
Names and functions of parts.....	26
Network security code.....	136
Network Service.....	398

Noise Reduction.....	61
Noteepad.....	387
Notification (Voice Mail).....	400
Nuisance Call Blocking Service.....	403
Number of saved, registered and protected items in FOMA terminal.....	39
Number Search.....	103
NW Search Method.....	392

O

On hold.....	
On-hold while talking.....	53
Response and Hold.....	71
One-shot Message.....	171
One-touch Button.....	292
On-hold Tone.....	72
Open Answer.....	65
Options and related devices.....	470
Outbox.....	246
Out-camera.....	27
Outgoing Call Image.....	126
Outgoing Msg. Image.....	127
Own Number.....	
Displaying.....	50
Recording.....	381

P

Packet communication.....	410
Dialup connection (APN) setup.....	422
Optimization.....	421
Settings.....	416
Pasting.....	448
Pause.....	54
Personalized silent mode.....	119
Ph Book No. Search.....	103
Phone.....	
Customized Call.....	58
Make calls.....	52
Receive calls.....	62
Switch to video-phone call.....	55
Phone To (Mail).....	256
Phone To (Site).....	196
Phonebook.....	94
Caller ID Setting.....	109
Change the order.....	107
Check No. of Items.....	111
Check phonebook entries.....	105
Copy information.....	106
Copying.....	107
Deleting.....	108
Display in Japanese syllabary.....	102
Editing.....	105
Group Setting.....	100
Quick Dial.....	112
Register from mail.....	257
Register from site.....	197
Register to FOMA terminal.....	95
Register to UIM.....	99
Reject/Accept Call.....	149
Searching.....	101
Secrecy Search.....	111
Secret Attribute.....	110
Secret Code Setting.....	110
V-phone Setting.....	109
Pictogram words.....	
Entering.....	445
List.....	459
Pictograms.....	
Conversion list.....	461
Entering.....	446
List.....	459
PIM Lock.....	144

PIN1 Code ON/OFF.....	137
PIN1 code/PIN2 code.....	136
Changing.....	138
Play Sound.....	472
Play Video.....	471
Power (ON/OFF).....	47
Auto Power ON/OFF.....	364
Predict conversion function.....	445
Prefix setting.....	59
Priority Comm Mode.....	70
Privacy Mode Setting.....	145
PUK (PIN Unblocking Key).....	40

Q

Quality Alarm.....	118
Quick Dial.....	112
Quick Mail.....	235
Quick Record Message.....	75
Quick Reference Manual.....	508

R

Ranking Search.....	103
Reason for no caller ID.....	63
Receive calls (Phone).....	
Receive Display.....	127
Receive Option.....	238
Setting.....	262
Received Calls.....	66
Deleting.....	67
Received mail (Mail).....	
Reconnect Alarm.....	60
Redial.....	56
Register USSD.....	407
Reject non-Reg. Caller.....	152
Reject nuisance caller.....	403
Reject/Accept Call.....	149
Remote Control.....	407
Remote control function.....	350
Remote Lock.....	141
Remove Voicemail Count.....	400
Repairs.....	406
Reply to Mail.....	239
Reset.....	393
Response and Hold.....	71
Retrieving Image.....	127
Ring tone.....	114
Ring Volume Setting.....	68

S

SAR.....	492
Save Phase.....	447
Save Word.....	448
Scheduler.....	367
Calendar View Mode.....	368
Check No. of Items.....	376
Checking.....	373
Compose mail from schedule.....	374
Copying/pasting.....	373
Day Off Setting.....	368
Deleting.....	374
Holiday Setting.....	369
Member list.....	375
Saving.....	369
Secret Attribute.....	376
When the set time arrives.....	372
Screen Memo.....	192
Deleting.....	194
Displaying.....	193
Protecting.....	193
Renaming.....	193
Saving.....	192
Secrecy Search.....	111
Secret Attribute.....	
Phonebook.....	110

Schedule	376
Secret Code Setting	110
Secret Mode	148
Security code	136
Security Scan (Virus Scan Function)	
Select Language	48
Self Mode	143
Send DTMF	89
Sent mail (Mail)	
Service Dialing Number	406
Short Message (SMS)	
Shortcut operations	35
Side Key Lock	147
Signature setting	261
Silent Mode	119
Simple menu	33
Site	177
Connect to SSL page	183
Display URL	186
Displaying	182
Last Visited URL	183
Operating	184
Reloading	186
Scrolling	186
Slot Input Method	449
SMS	219
Check SMS	276
Compose from phonebook	102
Composing (Compose SMS)	
273	
Deleting	254
Delivered report	220
Display Priority	266
Folder list screen	247
Insert signature	273
List screen	248
Quick Mail	235
Receiving	274
Save to UIM	277
Setting	276
Sort Criteria	258
View screen	248
Software Update	485
Immediate Update	486
Reserved Update	487
Sort Criteria	258
Sound Recorder	354
Sound Setting	114
Speaker	27
Speakerphone	
Video-phone call	81
Voice call	53
SSL communication	179
Connecting	183
Stand-by display	47
Stand-by Display Setting	120
Clock Display Format	134
Stand-by Telop Setting	304
Stand-by time	43
Stand-by Voice Memo	382
Status Message	72
Still Camera (Camera)	
Still image (Image)	
Sub Address	60
Sub-display	27
Reading	31
Sub-display Info Setting	128
Submenu	37
Symbols	
Conversion list	460
Entering	446
List	459

T

Talking Voice Memo	382
--------------------	-----

TASK key	27
Template	232
Downloading	229
Read Template	233
Save Template	233
Terminal security code	136
Changing	137
Timed pause	54
Transmit tone signals (DTMF)	89
Troubleshooting	475

U

UIM (FOMA card)	
Functional differences	41
Inserting/removing	39
Operation restriction function	41
Register phonebook data	99
Security codes	40
Unlock PIN lock	139
Unsent mail (Mail)	
Unsent messages (folder)	246
URL	
Copying	196
Displaying	186
Entering	188
History	188
Last Visited URL	183
Register in phonebook	198
USB Mode Setting	412

V

Vibrator Setting	116
i- ppli	289
Video-phone	80
Brightness/color density	87
Camera Effects	86
Change images (Image Setting)	
88	
Compact light	90
Display settings	89
External Device	92
Indicate V-phone	91
Make calls	80
Quality of outgoing images	86
Receive calls	84
Send still image (Select Image)	
87	
Send tone signals	89
Settings	90
Settings during a call	90
Switch in-camera/out-camera	89
Switch outgoing images	86
Switch to voice call	83
Zoom	88
Video-phone Dialing Image	126
Video-phone Receiving Setting	69
Video/i-motion	
Capture	320
Compoe i-motion Mail	317
Custom Edit	321
Deleting	344
Edit by Size	322
Edit Ticker	323
Editing	320
Moving/copying	339
Play album	341
Playing	316
Recording	162
Replay restrictions	319
Set as stand-by image	319
Set bookmark	318
Settings	325
Sort	344
View/Edit Detail Info	342
Virus Scan Function	489
Scan Version	492

Scanning Setting	490
Update Definition	490
Voice call (Phone)	
Voice Mail Service	398
Voice Memo	382
Volume Setting	68
V-phone Setting	109

W

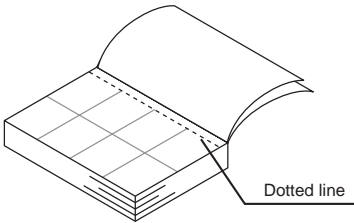
Warranty	483
Web To (Mail)	256
Web To (Site)	196
WORLD CALL	58
WORLD WING	41

Other

186/184 Call	57
5-touch Input Method	443
64K data communication	410
Settings	418
✕ 31##/31#	57
+	59

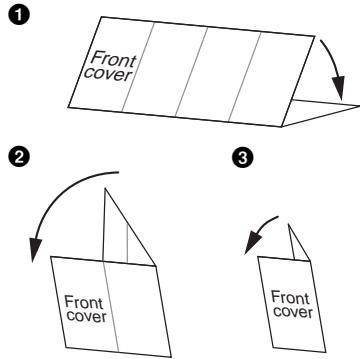
Quick Reference Manual

Use Quick Reference Manual included in this manual as follows.



Cut along the dotted line.

Be careful not to hurt yourself when cutting.



Fold the sheet along the line so that the front cover is on top.

Camera

Shooting still image/video

Shooting still image

- 1 In stand-by, open the lens cover
- 2 Point the camera at the object and or
- 3 or

Recording video

- 1 for over a second on the stand-by display
Open the lens cover
- 2 Point the camera at the object and or
- 3 or
- 4 or

Displaying or playing shot image/video

Displaying image

- 1 (1.8) on the stand-by display
- 2 Select **Camera** Select image
 - Displaying other images in folder:

8

File attachments

- 1 Select attachment field on the mail composition screen
 - P11
 - 2 Select attachment type
 - Shooting and attaching still image: **Image**
Use still camera
 - Recording and attaching video: **i-motion**
Use video camera
 - If **miniSD memory card** is not inserted for the melody, go to Step 4
 - 3 Select **Phone memory** or **miniSD card**
 - 4 Select a file
 - Removing attachment: Place the cursor at the attachment field Select **Yes**
- Editing and sending unsent/sent i-mode Mail**
<Example> Editing unsent mail

12

Playing video

- 1 (2.3) on the stand-by display
- 2 Select **Camera** Select video
 - Operation available during video playback
- 3 (1.4) Adjust volume
- 4 (1.4) Play fast forward
- 5 (1.4) Pause/replay
- 6 (1.4) Stop

Video-phone

Making video-phone calls

- 1 Enter a phone number on the stand-by display
- 2 (3.3) Select call type dialing: (3.3) Select **Yes**
 - Specifying the communication speed for dialing: (3.3) Select call type
- 3 Talk with the other party
 - Placing call on hold:
 - Switching the speakerphone call: (3.7)
 - Switching the image to send:

9

Menu list

- 1 (4.4) on the stand-by display
 - Editing sent mail: (5.3)
- 2 Select a folder
- 3 Select a mail
 - Editing sent mail:
- 4 Edit

Receiving i-mode Mail

- 1 Receive mail
 - The mail ring tone sounds, the call indicator lights/flashs and the reception result screen is displayed
- 2 or
- 3 Select a folder
- 4 Select a mail

Checking for i-mode Mail

- 1 for over a second on the stand-by display

13

When you finish a call,

Receiving video-phone calls

- 1 Receive a call
 - Holding answer:
- 2 (1.4)
 - Operation during a call is the same as Step 3 of "Making video-phone calls"
- 3 When you finish a call,

i-mode Mail

Number of characters sent/received

Item	One-byte characters	Two-byte characters
Subject	30 characters	15 characters
Address	50 characters	-
Message	10,000 characters	5,000 characters

10

Menu list

Press on the stand-by display and input the number of each item.

<Example> Activating a camera

1 Mail	2 Compose message
1 Inbox	2 Unsent messages
3 Chat mail	
5 Outbox	
6 Check new message	
1 i-mode message	2 SMS
3 Receive option	4 Message retrieval
7 SMS	
1 Compose SMS	2 Received SMS
3 Sent SMS	4 SMS settings
8 Read templates	
9 Mail setting	
1 Incoming message	2 Incoming chat mail
3 Sort criteria	4 Signature
5 Reply format	6 Receive option
7 Incoming msg attach	8 Mail group
9 Display settings	
1 Message list	2 Message attachment
3 Display priority	

14

Composing and sending i-mode Mail

- 1 for over a second on the stand-by display
 - Remaining number of one-byte characters that can be entered
- 2 Select address field Select input method Enter or select address
- 3 Select subject field Enter subject
- 4 Select message field Enter message
 - Composing Deco-mail: on the message text entry screen Select decoration method Enter characters
- 5
 - Saving mail: (2.3)



11

Menu list

2 i-mode	2 Bookmark
1 i Menu	2 URL history
3 Go to location	5 Last visited URL
1 Enter URL	
4 Screen memo	
6 i-mode message	
7 Message R&F	2 Message F
1 Message R	
3 Message settings	
1 Auto display	2 Message retrieval
3 Message attachment	4 Incoming msg. alert
8 i-Channel	
1 i-Channel list	2 Stand-by help
9 i-mode setting	
1 i-mode shortcuts	2 Image/Effect
3 Display color	4 i-motion settings
5 Connection timeout	6 Host selection
7 Set certificate	8 Certificate download
9 Certificate host	
3 i- pp1	
1 Software list	
1 i- pp1 settings	2 Auto start
1 Software sort	3 Software into display
5 Vibrate settings	6 i- pp1 shortcut
3 Display history	

15

Cut here

Playing back voice mail message

- 1 on the stand-by display
- 2 Select **Yes**
- 3 Follow the voice prompts

Call Waiting Service

- Separate application (pay) is required.
- Activating/deactivating the service**
- 1 on the stand-by display
 - 2 (Start) or (Stop)
 - 3 Select **Yes**

Answering another call

- during a call
 - Switching the other parties:
- Making another call**
- during a call Enter phone number
 - Switching the other parties:

24

Reading the display

Top of the display



- 1 : Battery level 漢: Character input mode
- 2 : Received signal level 圏外: Out of service area
- 3 : During data transfer
- 4 : In i-mode communication (site connection in service)
- 5 : In i-mode communication (packet communication in service)
- 6 : During infrared communication
- 7 : Speakerphone function used
- 8 : During USB hands-free communication
- 9 : Total call cost exceeds the maximum limit
- 10 : Mail storage status in i-mode Center
- 11 : Received mail status
- 12 : Received Message R status

28

Ending a call

- When you finish another call, display
- Call resumption with on-hold person:

Call Forwarding Service

- Separate application (free) is required.
- Activating the service**

- 1 on the stand-by display
- 2 Select **Yes**
- 3 Select **Yes**
- 4 Enter the forwarding destination phone number
 - Entering the destination from the phonebook:
- 5 Select **Yes**
- 6 Enter ringing time

Deactivating the service

- 1 on the stand-by display
- 2 Select **Yes**

25

⑨ : Received Message F status

- 10 : i- ppll stand-by display on
- 11 : i- ppll DX stand-by display on
- 12 : i- ppll/i- ppll DX execution
- 13 : During SSL page display
- 14 : Secret Mode is set
- 15 : i- ppll Auto Start failed

Bottom of the display



- 1 : Number of missed calls
- 2 : Number of recorded messages
- 3 : Number of new voice mail messages
- 4 : Number of unread mail
- 5 : General silent mode is set
- 6 : Personalized silent mode is set
- 7 : Ring alert volume is silent
- 8 : Vibrator for incoming voice call is set

29

Caller ID Request Service

- Separate application is not required (free).
- Activating/deactivating the service**

- 1 on the stand-by display
- 2 (Start) or (Stop)
- 3 Select **Yes**

26

- : Ring alert volume is silent and vibrator for incoming voice call is set

- 7 : Driving Mode is set
- 8 : Answer Machine is set
- 9 : Recorded messages full
- 10 : Lock on Close is set
- 11 : Using video-phone from external device via USB

- 12 : USB cable connected
- 13 : Effective Easy Selector Plus keys in Focus Mode
- 14 : miniSD memory card inserted
- 15 : Reading UIM
- 16 : PIM Lock is set
- 17 : Keypad Dial Lock is set
- 18 : Side Key Lock is set
- 19 : Alarm Clock is set
- 20 : Schedule alarm is set
- 21 : Alarm Clock and schedule alarm are set simultaneously
- 22 : Software Update reserved

30

Services available from FOMA terminal

Service	Phone No.
Collect calls (calls charged to receiver)	106
Directory assistance for general subscriber phone numbers and DoCoMo mobile phone numbers (charged) (unlisted phone numbers cannot be given)	104
Telegrams (charged)	115
Time (charged)	117
Weather (charged)	Area code +177
Police (emergency calls)	110
Fire and ambulance (emergency calls)	119
Emergency calls at sea	118
Disaster Voice Mail Service (charged)	171

27

General Inquiries

<DoCoMo Information Center>

(In English)

- ☎ **0120-005-250 (toll free)** (In English)
- * Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.
- (In Japanese only)

☎ **No prefix 151 (toll free)**

- * Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS.

☎ **0120-800-000 (toll free)**

- * Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.
- * Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

Repairs

(In Japanese only)

☎ **No prefix 113 (toll free)**

- * Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS.

☎ **0120-800-000 (toll free)**

- * Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.

- * Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
- * For further information, refer to the "Nationwide Service Station List" included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.

31

Cut here

Mobile phone etiquette

When using your FOMA terminal, always be considerate of your environment and those around you.

Turn the power off in the following situations

In prohibited areas

Use of mobile phones in the following places is prohibited. You must turn the power off.

- Airplanes
- Hospitals

You must also turn the power off when in lobbies or waiting rooms of hospitals as there could be people in such areas who could be adversely affected by mobile phone signals.

While driving

Using your FOMA terminal while driving could cause an accident. Stop the vehicle in a safe place before using the phone or use the phone in Driving Mode.

On crowded trains or in other areas where there could be a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator

Operating a mobile phone could interfere with implanted cardiac pacemakers or defibrillators.

When visiting live events, movie theaters, museums or other public spaces

The ringing of your phone and your telephone conversations could disturb others around you in quiet public spaces.

Be considerate of your location and those around you with respect to the volume of your speaking voice and your FOMA terminal's ring tone

When using a mobile phone in a restaurant, hotel lobby or other quiet places, always remember to lower your voice.

When using a mobile phone on the street, find a place that does not interfere with passing traffic.

Consider privacy

 **Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.**

Functions convenient for public etiquette

You may select a mode to reject incoming calls, turn off all sounds generated by your FOMA terminal, or choose some other modes to keep from disturbing those around you.

Silent Mode/Customize Silent Mode

Keypad sound, ring tones and other sounds generated by the FOMA terminal are turned off except for the shutter sound while shooting (Silent Mode). ☛P119

The user is allowed to change Silent Mode operations (Customize Silent Mode). ☛P119

Driving Mode

When a call is received while driving, an announcement informs the caller that you cannot answer the call because you are driving and the call is then disconnected. Your driving concentration is not affected as the ring tones are silenced. ☛P73

Vibrator

When a call is received, the FOMA terminal vibrates instead of ringing. ☛P116

Answer Machine

When you cannot answer a call, the caller can leave a brief voice message. ☛P75

You may also use optional services such as Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.

☛P398, P401

You can apply to useful services such as “Voice Mail Service”, “Call Waiting Service”, “Call Forwarding Service”, “Nuisance Call Blocking Service” and “WORLD CALL” from an i-mode phone or a PC.

From i-mode iMenu 料金&お申込(Charges & Application) ドコモeサイト(DoCoMo e-site)
Packet communication charges free

From PC My DoCoMo (<https://www.mydocomo.com/>) 各種手続き(ドコモeサイト)
(Application procedure (DoCoMo e-site))

You will need your “network ID” to access e-site from i-mode.

No packet communication charges are incurred when accessing e-site from i-mode. Accessing from overseas will incur charges. You will need your “My DoCoMo ID/password” to access e-site from PC.

If you do not have or you have forgotten your “network ID” or “My DoCoMo ID/password”, contact the DoCoMo Information Center listed below.

DoCoMo e-site may not be available depending upon the content of your subscription.

You may not be able to access some e-site services due to system maintenance, etc.

General Inquiries < DoCoMo Information Center >

(In English)

 **0120-005-250 (toll free)**

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

(In Japanese only)

 **(No prefix) 151 (toll free)**

* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

 **0120-800-000 (toll free)**

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

Repairs

(In Japanese only)

 **(No prefix) 113 (toll free)**

* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

 **0120-800-000 (toll free)**

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

For further information, refer to the “Nationwide Service Station List” included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.



Do not forget your cellular phone
... or your manners!

When using your portable phone in a public place, do not forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION



To prevent damage to the environment, bring used battery packs to an NTT DoCoMo service counter, an NTT DoCoMo agent or a recycle center.

Li-ion



Made from 100% recycled paper.



This manual is printed using an ink based on soy bean oil.



* 8 6 0 0 1 6 5 A *

'05.9 (1st edition)